GUILLAUME DE PALERNE

THE ROMANCE OF

William of Palerne

or

William and the Werwolf

together with

a fragment of the alliterative romance of

Alisaunder

edited by

Walter W. Skeat

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

Extra Series, 1

1867

KRAUS REPRINT CO.
Millwood, New York
1973

TYLER STATE COLLEGE LIBRARY

Unaltered Reprint produced with the permission of the Early English Text Society

KRAUS REPRINT CO.
A U.S. Division of Kraus-Thomson Organization Limited

Printed in Germany

TYLER STATE COLLEGE LIBRARY

William of Palerne.

Early English Text Society.
Extra Series. No. I.
1867.

DUBLIN: WILLIAM McGEE, 18, NASSAU STREET.
EDINBURGH: T. G. STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET.
GLASGOW: OGLE & CO., 1, ROYAL EXCHANGE SQUARE.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., UNTER DEN LINDEN, 20.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
BOSTON, U.S.: DUTTON & CO.

THE ROMANCE OF

William of Palerne:

(OTHERWISE KNOWN AS

THE ROMANCE OF "WILLIAM AND THE WERWOLF")

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH AT THE COMMAND OF
SIR HUMPHREY DE BOHUN, ABOUT A.D. 1350;

TO WHICH IS ADDED A FRAGMENT

OF THE ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE OF

Alisaunder;

TRANSLATED FROM THE LATIN BY THE SAME AUTHOR,
ABOUT A.D. 1340;

THE FORMER RE-EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. IN THE LIBRARY OF KING'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE;

THE LATTER NOW FIRST EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. IN THE BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD;

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A.,
LATE FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE; AUTHOR OF "A MŒSO-GOTHIC GLOSSARY," EDITOR OF "PIERS PLOWMAN," ETC.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.
MDCCCLXVII.

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

CONTENTS.

PREFACE.

INTRODUCTION TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE:"

§ 1. The "Extra Series" of the E. E. T. S. § 2. "William and the Werwolf;" edition of 1832. § 3. Missing portions supplied from the French. § 4. The story. § 5. Description of the MS. i

Preface to the edition of 1832; by Sir F. Madden. (Reprinted.) vii

Note on the word "Werwolf;" by Sir F. Madden ... xxv

INTRODUCTION TO "ALISAUNDER:"

§ 1. Alliterative Romances of *Alexander*. § 2. The *Alisaunder* in MS. Greaves 60, by the author of *William of Palerne*. § 3. Description of MS. Greaves 60. § 4. The Story. § 5. Its origin. § 6. On the dialect of the poems. § 7. On the distinction between "thou" and "ye." xxix

WILLIAM OF PALERNE 1

THE GESTES OF THE WORTHIE KING AND EMPEROUR, ALISAUNDER OF MACEDOINE 177

Notes to "William of Palerne" 219

Notes to "Alisaunder" 236

Glossarial Index 250

Index of Names 324

PREFACE.

INTRODUCTION TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE."

§ 1. The "Extra Series" of the publications of the Early English Text Society, of which this is the first volume, is intended to be supplementary to the ordinary series in such a way as to expedite the printing of the whole quantity of work to be printed. It has been proposed that it shall be reserved entirely for reprints and re-editions, and this rule will in general be adhered to. At the same time, a little laxity of definition must be allowed as to what constitutes a *reprint*. Thus, the editions of "Piers Plowman" (Text A) and of "Pierce the Ploughmans Crede," being entirely new, and from entirely new sources, have been issued with the ordinary Series, though both have been edited before more than once; whilst, on the other hand, more than a thousand lines, never before printed, have purposely been included in the present volume, as belonging to the same date, and as having been written by the same author as the rest.

§ 2. Of the two poems here printed, it is the former that has been edited before, in a volume of which the title is—"The Ancient English Romance of William and the Werwolf; edited from an unique copy in King's College Library, Cambridge; with an introduction and glossary. By Frederick Madden, Esq., F.R.S., F.S.A., M.R.S.L., Assistant-Keeper of the MSS. in the British Museum. London: printed by William Nicol, Shakspeare-Press. MDCCCXXXII." It forms one of the "Roxburghe Club" series, and only a limited number of copies were printed.

'The thorough excellence of both the text and glossary of this edition is known to all who have had the opportunity of access to it, and it has always ranked as a contribution of great importance to our knowledge of Early English literature. Sir F. Madden justly claims to have been one of the first editors who insisted on the necessity of strict and literal accuracy, and it is impossible to say how much we owe to him, directly and indirectly. His edition is, in fact, almost a facsimile of the MS., being printed in black-letter, and with all the contractions of the original, a table of these being added to explain them to the reader. A copy of it having been provided for my use, it was sent to the printer, after I had expanded all the contractions by the use of italic letters, numbered the lines, inserted marks of punctuation, and added side-notes. Had the proof-sheets been corrected by this only, the volume would have contained no error of importance; but I judged it to be due to Sir F. Madden and to subscribers to make it absolutely correct (as I hope it now is, in the text at least,) by reading the proof-sheets with the MS. itself, to which I had ready access through the kindness of Mr Bradshaw, Fellow of King's College, and our University Librarian.[1] I have also added a few words within square brackets where there are obvious omissions; they are chiefly taken from Sir F. Madden's notes. As his glossary contained references to the *pages*, and our object is to have references to the *lines* of the poem, I have re-written it entirely, incorporating with it the more difficult words in the fragment of "Alisaunder." For the sidenotes, most of the notes at the end, and indeed for the whole volume in its present state, I am alogether responsible; but I consider it as no little gain that Sir F. Madden, with very great kindness, has looked over the revises of the whole work, and I am much indebted to him for his suggestions. The glossary is, of course, copied from his almost wholly; but to some illustrative notes that are left entirely in his own words I have drawn special attention by attaching to them the letter "—M." He has also per-

[1] May not some of the alleged difficulty of the study of Old English be fairly attributed to the shameful inaccuracy of some of the texts? The portion of "William and the Werwolf" printed by Hartshorne is, in places, simply inexplicable.

mitted the reprinting of his preface to the former edition, and of his note on the word "Werwolf" (with fresh additions).

§ 3. We are also under great obligations to M. Michelant, of the Bibliothèque Impériale at Paris. To him we owe the transcript of a considerable portion of the beginning of the French version of the poem, enabling me to supply the missing portions of the English version at pp. 1—6 and 19—23, and further to compare the French with the English throughout the first 500 lines; some of the results of which comparison will be found in the "Notes." He even did more; for he secured for us the accuracy of the portions printed by comparing the proof-sheets with the MS. Bibl. de L'Arsenal, *Belles Lettres*, 178, from which his transcript was made.

§ 4. THE STORY.

Most of the details of the story can be gathered from the "Index of Names" at the end of the volume, and from the head-lines and side-notes, but a *brief* sketch of it may be acceptable.

Embrons, King of Apulia, by his wife Felice, daughter of the Emperor of Greece, had a fair son named William. The brother of Embrons, wishing to be heir to the throne, bribed two ladies, Gloriande and Acelone, to murder the child. But at this very time, as the child was at play (at Palermo), a wild wolf caught him up, ran off with him, swam the Straits of Messina, and carried him away to a forest near Rome, not injuring, but taking great care of him. But while the wolf went to get some food for him, the child was found by a cowherd, who took him home and adopted him. (Now you must know that the wolf was not a true wolf, but a *werwolf* or *man-wolf;* he had once been Alphouns, eldest son of the King of Spain, and heir to the crown of Spain. His stepmother Braunde, wishing her son Braundinis to be the heir, enchanted him so that he became a werwolf.) One day the Emperor of Rome, going out a-hunting, lost his way, and met with the boy William, with whom he was much pleased, and took the child from the cowherd behind him on his horse to Rome, and committed him to the care of his own daughter Melior, to be her page. William, growing up beloved by *everybody*, attracted, as might have been expected, the love of Melior in particular; who, in a long but amusing soliloquy, concludes that, though she is degrading herself to think upon a foundling, she finds it harder still *not* to think of him, and seeks the advice of her dear friend Alisaundrine, a daughter of the Duke of Lombardy. This young damsel bids her be at ease, and, having some slight knowledge of witchcraft, causes William to dream of Melior, and to fall in love with her hope-

lessly. All his consolation is to sit in Melior's garden, and he considers himself sufficiently fed by gazing at her window the whole day. Worn out by this, he falls asleep there, and is found by the two ladies, and, by Alisaundrine's devices, the young couple are soon betrothed; but it has to be kept a great secret, lest the emperor should come to hear of it. About this time the emperor's lands are invaded by the Duke of Saxony. William, knighted for the occasion, is, by his prowess, the chief instrument of the invader's defeat; a defeat which the duke takes so much to heart that he shortly dies of grief. The emperor thanks and praises William greatly, very much to his daughter's delight. But the next circumstance is untoward enough. The Emperor of Greece (who be it remembered, is William's grandfather) sends an embassy, headed by Lord Roachas, to ask the hand of Melior for his son Partenedon. The emperor at once accepts the proposal, and the Emperor of Greece and Prince Partenedon set out for Rome. William falls ill at the news, but is soon recovered by the expressions of devoted constancy which he receives from Melior. The Greeks arrive at Rome, and great preparations are made; what is to be done? Melior and William consult their unfailing friend Alisaundrine, who, not knowing what else to do, steals the skins of two white bears from the royal kitchen, sews her friends up in them, and lets them out by a postern-gate from Melior's garden, and bids them a sad farewell. But they had been observed; for a Greek, walking in this garden, had seen, to his great astonishment, two bears walking off on their hind legs, and tells his companions of his adventure, for which he is well laughed at, nothing more being thought of it at the time. The lovers hurry away till they find a den, wherein they conceal themselves, but fear to die of hunger. In this strait the werwolf finds them, and brings them sodden beef and two flasks of wine, having robbed two men whom he met carrying them. Meanwhile, great are the preparations for the wedding, which is to take place at St Peter's church. But at the last moment, *where is the bride?* The Emperor of Rome, frantic with rage, questions Alisaundrine, who evades his questions, but at last avows her conviction that, if *William* cannot be found, neither will *Melior*. William is indeed missing, and the Greek's story about the two white bears is at once understood, and a hue and cry is raised after them. They are not found, and the Greeks return to their own country. The lovers, still disguised as bears, and guided and fed by the werwolf, flee to Benevento, where they are nearly caught, but escape by the werwolf's help. Finding their disguise is known, they dress up as a hart and hind, and at last, after a strange adventure at Reggio, cross the Straits of Messina to Palermo, the werwolf still guiding them. Palermo is in a state of siege. King Embrons is dead, and Felice is queen, but is hard pressed by the Spaniards, as the King of Spain has asked the hand of her daughter Florence (William's sister) for his son Braundinis, and, on her refusal, has come to enforce his claim. Queen Felice has a dream of happy omen, and, perceiving the hart and hind, dresses herself also in a hind's skin, and goes to meet them, welcoming them and offering them protection, if

William will deliver her from the Spaniards. Rejoiced at this, William, on Embrons' horse, and with a werwolf painted on his shield, performs marvels, and takes both the King and Prince of Spain prisoners, never to be released till the wicked Queen Braunde shall disenchant the werwolf. She is sent for, and arrives, and reverses the charm, restoring Alphouns to his right shape, for which she is pardoned; and the Prince Alphouns receives great praises for his kindness to William, it being now seen that he did but steal him away to save his life from the plots of King Embrons' brother. By way of further reward, he is to marry Florence, and William is, of course, to marry Melior. William sends a message to this effect to Melior's father, who, for joy to hear that she is alive, promises to come to the wedding, and to bring Alisaundrine with him. At the same time the Emperor of Greece, Queen Felice's father, sends Partenedon his son to Palermo to help the queen against the Spaniards; but the prince is not a little chagrined at finding that he has come to see Melior, whom he once wooed, and whom he lost at the last moment, married to the husband of her own choice. Seeing no help for it, however, he submits as well as he can. But there is another disappointed suitor, Prince Braundinis; can nothing be done for him? It is at once arranged that he can marry Alisaundrine, and the triple wedding of William and Melior, Alphouns and Florence, Braundinis and Alisaundrine, is celebrated in one day; after which, Partenedon returns to Greece, and the Spaniards return to Spain. The Emperor of Rome dying, William is elected to succeed him as emperor, and is crowned at Rome; and Alphouns, his steadfast friend, who has become King of Spain on his father's death, is present at the joyful ceremony. And thus the Queen of Palermo lived to see her dream come true, that her right arm reached over Rome and her left arm lay over Spain; for her son was the emperor of the former country, and her daughter queen of the latter; nor was the kind cowherd forgotten, for his adopted son gave him an earldom, and brought him out of his care and poverty.

It ought to be remarked that the curious fancies about the enchantment of Alphouns into a werwolf, and the dressing up of William and Melior, firstly in the skins of two white bears and afterwards in the skins of a hart and a hind, as also the wearing of a hind's skin by the Queen of Palermo, form the true groundwork of the story, and no doubt, at the time, attracted most attention. To a modern reader this part of the narrative becomes tedious, and one wonders why the disguises were kept on so long. But as a whole, the story is well told, and the translator must have been a man of much poetic power, as he has considerably improved upon his original. For further remarks upon him, see Sir F. Madden's preface, and the "Introduction to Alisaunder."

§ 5. DESCRIPTION OF THE MS.

In addition to Sir F. Madden's remarks, I may observe that the size of the pages of the volume is about 12 inches by 8, and the class-mark is No. 13. The folios have been renumbered, it being ascertained that the missing leaves are the first three and the tenth. Thus *fol.* 1 of the former edition is now called *fol.* 4, and *fol.* 7 is now *fol.* 11. With this slight change, the numbering of the folios in the margin furnishes a ready way of comparing the two editions.[1]

The volume consists of two MSS. :—

I. William of Palerne, here printed; containing 86 leaves (of which three are lost);

II. An imperfect copy of the Lives of the Saints, &c., attributed to Robert of Gloucester, and containing—

1. A description of bible-subjects for Lent, with the passion of Christ, &c.: Begins (fol. 1)—

"Seint marie dai in Leinte · among oþer daies gode"—

ends, "Now ihesu for þe swete crois · þat þou were on ydo
Bring [vs] to þe blisse of h[e]uene · þat þou vs bouȝtest to.
AMEN."

2. *Judas.* Begins (fol. 32)—"Ivdas was a luþer brid · þat Ihesu solde to þe rode;" ends—"þer we weneþ þat he be."

3. *Pilate,* (fol. 34). "Pilatus was a luþer man · and come of a luþer more;" ends—"fram so deolfol cas."

4. *Seint Marie Egiptiak,* (fol. 37 *b*). "Seint Marie Egipciake · in egipte was y-bore;" ends—"þoru penaunce þat heo gan lede."

5. *Seint Alphe,* (fol. 40 *b*). "Seint alphe þe martir · þat good man was ynow;" ends—"to þe blisse of heuene wende. AMEN."

6. *Seint George,* (fol. 43). "Seint George þe holi man · as we findeþ of him y-write;" ends—"lete vs alle þider wende. AMEN."

7. *Seint Dunston,* (fol. 44 *b*). "Seint Dunston was in Engelonde . icome of gode more;" ends—"þat aungles þi soule to bere. AMEN."

8. *Seint Aldelme,* (fol. 46 *b*). "Seint Aldelme þe confessour was man of good liue;" ends—"þat he is on ido. AMEN."

[1] See also the *Note* at the end of the Glossarial Index.

9. *Seint Austyn*, (fol. 47 *b*). "Seint Austyn þat brouȝte · *cr*istendom to Engelonde ;" ends—"ȝif we were wel vnderstonde."

The last poem is imperfect, but has lost *only four lines*, which I venture here to transcribe from MS. Laud. 108, fol. 31 *b*, to complete it :—

"His day is toward þe ende of May · for in þat day he wende
Out of þis lijf to iheſu criſt · þat after him þo sende
Bidde we ȝeorne ſeint Auſtin · þat *cri*ſtindom so brouȝte
þat we moten to þulke Ioye come · to ȝwan ore louerd uf bouȝte."

The Lives of *Judas*, *Pilate*, and *Seint Dunston* have been printed for the Philological Society, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1862.

Of the names scribbled on the margins of the MS., the one which occurs most frequently is that of Nicholas Williams, to whom it must have belonged in the sixteenth century. We find, on fol. 45, the entry, "Nicholas Williams was poysond, but by God's grace escaped it. Gloria patri, Amen. by lacon in Salop." Lacon is a township in the parish of Wem, some ten miles due N. of Shrewsbury.

For remarks upon the *dialect* of the poems, see the end of the "Introduction to Alisaunder," p. xxxvii.

PREFACE TO THE ORIGINAL EDITION OF 1832.

BY SIR FREDERICK MADDEN.

The Romance of "William and the Werwolf," contained in the present volume, is printed from an unique MS. preserved in the Library of King's College, Cambridge, and its literary history renders it of more than common interest to the poetical antiquary. It is to the memorable Rowleian controversy we are indebted for the first notice of this poem in its English dress. In that singular dispute, in which Jacob Bryant, Fellow of King's College, and the Rev. Jeremiah Milles, D.D., Dean of Exeter, so notably distinguished themselves in defence of the pseudo-Rowley and his writings, the former, by a piece of good fortune, stumbled on the Romance, and, still more fortunately for us, resolved to force it into his service

in support of the antiquity of Chatterton's forgeries. Accordingly, in his "Observations," 8vo. Lond. 1781, pp. 14—23, he gives a short account of the poem, with a few extracts from it. His argument tends to prove it written in a provincial dialect, and for this purpose he produces a list of words, which he pronounces of a local nature. But however profound Bryant may have been as a classic scholar, he possessed very little, or rather, no knowledge of the formation or genius of the old English language. Indeed, his attempt to prove Chatterton's poetry the production of the 15th century, is quite sufficient to acquit him of any such pretensions. The consequence is natural. Nearly all the words considered by him provincial, are to be met with in every other writer of the period, and even those of rarer occurrence are, for the most part, found in the Scottish alliterative Romances of the same century.[1] But the citations made by Bryant from this MS. were sufficient at a somewhat later period to attract the attention of the kennel of 'black-letter hounds' then in full cry after the pothooks of Shakspeare's prompter's book, and George Steevens, I believe, applied for permission to inspect it. The volume was then in the hands of Dr Glynne, Senior Fellow of King's College, who, like Bryant, was a sturdy Rowleian,[2] and he, fancying

[1] Bryant's blunders in explaining these words are marvellous. A few instances, which may be compared with the Glossary at the end of this volume, will serve to show how little he understood the subject. Thus, he interprets *arnd*, around; *bourde*, a public house or shop; *bretages*, bridges; *kud*, good; *kinne*, can; *maid*, madam; *welt*, held; *warder*, further; *boggeslyche*, boyishly! Many are also copied so incorrectly that they can scarcely be recognised, as *eni* for *em*, *asthis* for *aschis*, *gemlych* for *gamlyche*, *kevily* for *kenely*, *komchaunce* for *konichaunce*, *wlouke* for *wlonke*, *satheli* for *scathli*, *neege* for *neize* [*neiże*], *henden* for *hiezeden* [*hiezeden*], *feyful* for *feizful* [*feiżful*], *wyeth* for *wyez*, *fayte* for *fayre*, *path* for *paye*. And yet this is the man who pretended to judge of Chatterton's forgeries, and even correct them by his own notions of Rowley's fancied original. We may truly apply to him some of the precious lines he wastes his commentary on:

> "Wordes wythoute sense fulle groffyngelye he twynes,
> Cotteynge his storie off as wythe a sheere;
> Waytes monthes on nothynge, & hys storie donne,
> Ne moe you from ytte kenne, than gyf you neere begonne."
> p. 69. *Ed. Tyrwhitt.*

[2] Dr Glynne bequeathed to the British Museum the original parchments fabricated by Chatterton, which now remain a 'damning proof,' were any wanted, of the imposture. They present a series of the most contemptible and clumsy forgeries.

that an examination of the book might not assist the claims of Rowley to originality, very prudently locked the treasure up, and there it slumbered till it was once more brought to light by the Rev. C. H. Hartshorne, about the year 1824.[1] By permission of the Provost, about 560 lines of the commencement were copied, and they form a portion of a volume intitled "Ancient Metrical Tales," published in 1829, 8vo., pp. 256—287. Of the inaccuracy of this transcript I shall say nothing, as it will sufficiently appear by comparison with the text now printed.

Having thus briefly stated the mode in which this MS. became known to the public, the next point of inquiry will be the author of the poem in its present shape; and here, I regret to add, no information can be gained. All we know on the subject is derived from the writer himself, who tells us, he translated it from the French at the command of Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford. These are his words, at the end of the first *fytte* or passus:

> Thus passed is the first pas of this pris tale,
> And ȝe that loven and lyken to listen ani more,
> Alle wiȝth on hol hert to the heiȝ king of hevene,
> Preieth a pater noster prively this time,
> *For the hend Erl of Herford, sir Humfray de Bowne,*
> *The king Edwardes newe, at Glouseter that ligges,*
> *For he of Frensche this fayre tale ferst dede translate,*
> *In ese of Englysch men, in Englysch speche.*—(fol. 3.)

And at the end of the poem, in similar but in fuller terms:

> *In thise wise hath William al his werke ended,*
> *As fully as the Frensche fully wold aske,*
> And as his witte him wold serve thouȝh it were febul[2] . . . .
> But faire frendes, for Goddes love, and for ȝour owne mensk,

MSS. Add. 5766. A.B.C. Alas, for the shade of Rowley! [For specimens of these poems, and critical remarks upon them, see Warton, Hist. English Poetry. § xxvi.—W. W. S.]

[1] Weber has, indeed, pointed it out as one of those Romances worthy of publication, but he never saw the MS. itself. See Metr. Rom. Introd. p. lxviii.

[2] Sir F. Madden did not quote these first three lines in this place (though he quoted them farther on, see p. xxii); but it is worth while to observe that they tell us the poet's own Christian name, which (like his hero's) was *William*.—W.W.S.]

ȝe that liken in love swiche thinges to here,
Preiȝeth for that gode Lord that gart this do make,
The hende Erl of Hereford, Humfray de Boune;
The gode king Edwardes douȝter was his dere moder;
He let make this mater in this maner speche,
For hem that knowe no Frensche, ne never understo[nd]:
Biddith that blisful burn that bouȝt us on the rode,
And to his moder Marie, of mercy that is welle,
ȝif the Lord god lif, wil he in erthe lenges,
And whan he wendes of this world, welthe with-oute ende,
To lenge in that liking joye, that lesteth ever more.—(fol. 82.)

It has been the more necessary to quote these passages at length, in order to correct the absurd mistakes of Bryant, who, not understanding the phrases, "at Glouseter that *ligges*," and "ferst *dede* translate," nor the import of the line, "ȝif the Lord god lif," &c., has supposed, first, that the Earl himself had made a prior translation to the one before us, and secondly, that he was dead and buried at Gloucester, when the second version was undertaken! It is scarcely necessary to point out, that the words "ferst *dede* translate," only mean first *caused* to be translated, and are strictly synonymous with "*gart* this do make," and "*let* make." Then, as to the Earl's lying dead at Gloucester, the Poet can have no such meaning, for at the conclusion of the Romance he begs his hearers to pray to God and the Virgin to give the Earl "good life," and after his decease, eternal felicity. The line simply means, resident or dwelling at Gloucester,[1] and although the term *to ligge* was in subsequent times more often used in the sense understood by Bryant, yet there is no reason, in the above instance, to depart from its original and obvious meaning.

[1] In the 21 Edw. 3, Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, obtained the royal license to embattle his Manor-Houses in the Counties of Gloucester, Essex, Middlesex, and Wiltshire. In the former of these only one mansion is mentioned, that of Whitenhurst, or Wheatenhurst, situated about eight miles south from Gloucester, and it is very probable that this is the spot alluded to in general terms by the Poet. We know, moreover, that the Earl was not buried at Gloucester, but at the Augustine Friars, in London, which he had himself re-edified in 1354. See Dugdale, Baron. i. 184; Rudder's Glouc. p. 813; and Stowe's Survey, p. 185.

The nobleman thus alluded to was the sixth Earl of Hereford of the name of Bohun, and third son of Humphrey de Bohun, fourth Earl of Hereford, and Elizabeth Plantagenet, seventh daughter of King Edward the First; consequently he was nephew to King Edward the Second, as intimated in the poem, and first cousin to King Edward the Third. He succeeded to the earldom at the age of twenty-four, on the death of his brother John without issue, 20th Jan., 1335-6, and died, unmarried, 15th Oct., 1361.[1] We are, therefore, enabled to fix the date of the composition of the English Romance with sufficient accuracy, nor shall we greatly err, if we refer it to the year 1350. This will agree extremely well with the scanty notices transmitted to us of De Bohun's life, which, like most of those relating to the belted barons of this chivalric period, are chiefly of a military character.[2] Yet it may be doubted whether, as a soldier, the Earl of Hereford was at any time distinguished, and whether he may not have been confounded by Froissart with his brother, the Earl of Northampton. And this conjecture corresponds with the instrument preserved in Rymer,[3] dated 12th June, 1338, by which the King ratifies Humphrey de Bohun's resignation of his hereditary office of Constable of England, in favor of his brother, "*tam ob corporis sui inbecillitatem, quàm propter infirmitatem diuturnam qua detinetur, ad officium Constabulariæ exercendum*," &c. We may, therefore, with

[1] Dugd. Baron. i. 184.; Milles, p. 1072.

[2] In 1337, he was entrusted with the guard of the important garrison of Perth in Scotland. (Dugd. Baron. i. 184). Three years afterwards he is said to have taken a part, together with his warlike brother, William de Bohun, Earl of Northampton, in the battle of the Sluys, fought in the King's presence, (Froissart, by Lord Berners, f. 30. Ed. 1525), and commemorated by Laurence Minot, a contemporary poet. The next year, 1341, we meet with him in the magnificent feast and jousts held by the King at London in honor of the Countess of Salisbury—the same to whom the noble Order of the Garter is said to owe its origin (Froissart, f. 46). In 1342, he was ordered to provide forty men of arms and sixty archers for the King's service in Britanny, and to attend the Council at London, to treat concerning their wages. (Dugd. Baron. i. 184). In 1346 he accompanied the King into France to relieve the town of Aguillon, then besieged by the French, (Froissart, f. 59 *b*); but it is not stated by our historians whether he was present at the famous battle of Cressy, fought shortly after. In 1359, he again attended the King on a similar expedition, (Froissart, f. 100), and nothing further is recorded of him till his death, which took place two years afterwards.

[3] Vol. v. p. 52.

great probability conclude, that the Earl's weak state of bodily health exempted him from taking an active part in the warfare of the time, although he might have assisted the King with his counsels. To the same cause we may doubtless ascribe that love for literature which induced him to cause the Romance of William and the Werwolf to be translated from the French,—not, as is evident, for his own use, since French was then the language of the Court, but for the benefit of those persons of the middle class, to whom the French language was unknown. By the influence of a similar motive, we possess the translations made by Robert of Brunne at the commencement of this century:

"Not for the lerid bot the lewed,
For tho that in this land wonn,
That the Latyn no Frankys conn,
For to haf solace and gamen,
In felawschip whanne thai sit samen."[1]

Higden's testimony to the prevalence of French in the education of gentlemen's children at that period is very precise, and it became so much the fashion towards the middle of the century, that a proverb was made of inferior persons who attempted to imitate the practice of the higher classes: "Jack wold be a gentylman yf he coude speke Frensshe."[2] Trevisa adds, that "this was moche used tofore the grete deth [1349], but syth it is somdele chaunged;" which was, doubtless, accelerated by the Act passed in 1362, ordering all pleadings to be in the English tongue, and much more by the popular compositions of Gower, Chaucer, and the author of Piers Plouhman. From all these circumstances it would seem most probable that the work was executed after the Earl's return from France, in 1349, between which year and his second expedition in 1359, he appears to have resided on his estates. That this style of composition was much admired and encouraged in England during the 14th century is apparent from the alliterative Romances still extant of the period. But it is very seldom we are indulged with the names of the persons by whom or for whom these poems were written, and, in

[1] Prol. to Chron. ap. Hearne, Pref. p. xcvi.
[2] Descr. of Brit. c. 15. Ed. 1515. *Jul. Notary.*

that respect, the present poem becomes more intitled to notice, from its introducing us to a nobleman, whose claims to biography are so very feeble, and who would never otherwise have been known as a patron of literature.

The history, however, of the Romance does not conclude here. We must next trace it in its original form; and here, also, we shall find some circumstances which render it worthy of attention. The origin and progress of French poesy, both of the Trouvères and Troubadours, have been successfully illustrated by Fauchet, Roquefort,[1] De la Rue, Raynouard, and others, but, more particularly, by the authors of the *Histoire Litteraire de la France*. From these authorities we know that many Romances were composed by the Norman poets previous to the year 1200, which subsequently became the text-books of the English versifiers of the 14th century. Most of these were founded on the two great sources of fiction throughout Europe; the exploits of Charlemagne and his *Douze Pairs*, and of Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table, amplified from the fictitious histories of Turpin and Geoffry of Monmouth. The chief exceptions to this cycle of poetry at the period we are treating of, are the Romances of Havelok, Horn, Benoit's Guerre de Troie, Garin le Loherain, Alexander, Athys et Porfilias, Florimond, Gerard de Rousillon, and, perhaps, some few others composed by Raoul de Houdane, and Thiebaut de Mailli, all of which come under the class

[1] When speaking of our English Romances, Roquefort is by no means to be relied on. Thus, describing the English *Kyng Horn*, he says it was composed in the 8th or 9th century. He then confounds it with the Frankish fragment of Hildebrand and Hathubrand, published by Eckard, and takes Ritson to task, for saying that the French text was the original; who would not, he writes, have committed such an error, if he had consulted MS. Harl. 2253, where the Romance exists in Anglo-Saxon!!! The reply is easy. The copy of *Kyng Horn* in the Harleian MS. was written about the year 1300, and it was from this very MS. Ritson published his text. The editor of the present volume [i. e. of the edition of 1832] was fortunate enough to discover another copy of *Kyng Horn* in the Bodleian, of the same age, which, in many respects, gives preferable readings. M. Roquefort goes on to call the Auchinleck MS. a collection of *French* poetry, &c. See his Dissertation "*De l'état de la Poésie Françoise dans les xii. et xiii. siecles.*" 8vo. Paris, 1815, pp. 48, 49. [NOTE. There is a still better copy of *Kyng Horn* in the Cambridge University Library, first printed for the Bannatyne Club by Mr T. Wright, and reprinted by Mr Lumby in his edition, published for the E. E. T. S. in 1866.—W. W. S.]

of *Romans mixtes.* Among these also we are intitled to place our Romance of William and the Werwolf, the title of which in the original, is, *Roman de Guillaume de Palerne.* The popularity of this singular tale, (which one would suppose was formed on some Italian tradition, picked up by the Norman adventurers in Apulia and Sicily), must have been considerable, since in the ancient inventories of the libraries of the Dukes of Burgundy, taken in 1467 and 1487, we find no less than three copies of it.[1] At present, the catalogues of MSS. in England have been searched in vain for the poem, and in France, on a similar inquiry being made, only *one* copy has been discovered, preserved in the Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal, at Paris,[2] and, to all appearance, is the same MS. which was formerly at Brussels.[3] By the obliging attentions of M. Van Praet, the distinguished Librarian of the Bibliothèque Royale, the Editor is enabled to give some account of this unique volume. It is a vellum MS. of a small folio size, consisting of 157 leaves, and written in double columns of 31 lines each, towards the close of the thirteenth century. It contains the *Roman d' Escouffle* (fol. 1—77), and the *Roman du Guillaume de Palerne.* The latter commences thus:

Nus ne se doit celer ne taire, &c.,[4]

and ends in the following manner:

Del roi Guill*iaume* et de sa mere,
De ses enfans et de son guerre, (?)
De son empire et de son regne,
Trait li estoires ci a fin.
Cil q*ui* tos iors fu et sans fin
Sera, et pardoune briement,
Il gart *la contesse Yolent*,
La bonne dame, la leial,
Et il descort son cors de mal.

[1] See a curious volume, intitled "Bibliothèque Protypographique." 4to. Paris, 1830, pp. 199, 302, 323.

[2] Marked *Belles Lettres*, 178.

[3] See the work just cited, p. 323. It is there called of the *fourteenth* century.

[4] Here Sir F. Madden quotes the first 24 lines, which I omit, as, by the great kindness of M. Michelant, of the Bibliothèque Impériale, I am enabled to give much longer extracts; see pp. 1—6, and 19—23, of this book.—W. W. S.]

Cest liure fist diter et faire,
Et de Latin en Roumans traire.
Proions dieu por la bonne dam[e]
*Que*n bon repos en mete lame,
Et il nous doinst ce deseruir,
*Qu*a boine fin puissons venir. Amen.
Explicit li Roumans de Guilliaume de Palerne.

The lady here referred to can be no other than Yoland, eldest daughter of Baldwin IV., Count of Hainault, and Alice of Namur. She was married, first, to Yves, or Yvon, Count of Soissons, surnamed *le Viel*, who is characterised by an old Chronicler as a nobleman "de grande largesse, et sage sur tous les Barons de France." [1] On his death, without issue, which took place in 1177, she married, secondly, Hugh Candavene IV., Count of St. Paul, by whom she had two daughters, the eldest of which carried the title into the family of Chastillon. By the union of Judith, daughter of Charles the Bold, with Baldwin I., Count of Flanders, the Countess Yoland claimed descent from the blood of Charlemagne, and by the marriage of her brother Baldwin the Courageous with Margaret of Alsace, heiress of Flanders and Artois, she became aunt to Baldwin VI., Count of Hainault and Flanders, who in 1204 was elected Emperor of Constantinople,[2] and to Isabel of Hainault, who, in 1180, shared the throne of Philip Augustus, King of France. Such was the splendid alliance of the lady to whom our poem owes its origin. In accordance with the prevailing taste of the age, we find the Counts of Hainault and Flanders distinguished patrons of poesy. Chrestien de Troyes is said to have dedicated several of his Romances to Philip of Alsace, Count of Flanders, who died in 1191,[3] and Baldwin V., Count of Hainault,

[1] Du Chesne; Hist. de la Maison de Chastillon, fol. Par. 1621. *Preuves*, p. 33.

[2] The author of the analysis of this Romance, in the *Nouv. Bibl. des Romans*, t. ii. p. 41, who copies from the printed prose version, hereafter to be noticed, makes a singular mistake, by confounding the Countess of St. Paul with Yoland, sister of the Emperor Baldwin, and wife of Peter de Courteney, who was subsequently, in her right, Emperor of Constantinople, and died in 1221. He says also, that the Countess Yoland found the Romance among the papers of her nephew after his death [1205], but this is a mere invention of the writer himself, and contradicted by the original text.

[3] Hist. Litt. de la France, xiii. 193.

having found at Sens, in Burgundy, a MS. of the Life of Charlemagne, gave the work at his death [1195] to his sister Yoland (the same lady above mentioned), who caused it to be translated into French prose.[1] We have once more to lament that the author of our original (most probably, a native of Artois,) should have concealed his name, but the time of its composition may be assigned between 1178, the probable date of her marriage with the Count of St. Paul, and the year 1200. The Count died at Constantinople before 1206, and Yoland did not, in all probability, survive him long. She was, certainly, alive in 1202, as appears from an instrument in Du Chesne. This Romance may therefore be ranked among the earliest of those composed at the close of the 12th century, and it is surprising it should have been overlooked by Roquefort and the Benedictines.

At a much later period, apparently, at the beginning of the 16th century, this poem was converted into French prose. Three editions of it are known to book-collectors; the first printed at Paris, by Nicolas Bonfons, 4to *litt. goth.*;[2] the second at Lyons, 1552, by Olivier Arnoult, 4to;[3] and a third at the same place (probably a reprint) by the widow of Louis Coste, *s. a.* about 1634. The 'traducteur,' in a short preface, tells us he obtained the original by gift of a friend, and finding the language to be "romant antique rimoyé, en

[1] Ib. xiii. 386. Fauchet, Recueil de l'Origine de la Langue Françoise, fol. Par. 1581; p. 34.

[2] Copies of this exist in the British Museum, and in Mr Douce's library. In the former there is a note in the handwriting of Ritson, who supposes it to have proceeded from the press of Nicholas, the *father* of John Bonfons, whose *son* Nicholas printed from about 1550 to 1590. The title is as follows: "*L'Historie du noble preux & vaillant Cheualier Guillaume de Palerne. Et de la belle Melior. Lequel Guillaume de Palerne fut filz du Roy de Cecille. Et par fortune & merueilleuse auenture deuint vacher. Et finablement fut Empereur de Rome souz la conduicte dun Loupgaroux filz au Roy Dispagne.*" The text is accompanied with wood-cuts. This volume is noticed both by Du Verdier, t. iv. p. 169, Ed. Juvigny, and Bibl. des Romans, t. ii. p. 245, but neither of these writers mention the author. [NOTE. Besides these three, there is a *fourth* edition, printed at Rouen by Louys Costé (about 1620?), of which there is now a copy in the British Museum (class-mark 12513 *e*). It is in Roman type, not black-letter, and seems to be merely copied from the first edition. A search for a particular passage shewed that both prose versions omit the portion contained in ll. 2449—2567.—W. W. S.]

[3] See Dr Dibdin's Tour, vol. ii. p. 337, who describes a copy of this, and the later edition, in the Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal.

sorte non intelligible ne lisible," he turned it into modern French, with some additions of his own, for the assistance of those who might wish to read it: "Car en icelle lisant," he adds, "pourra l'on veoir plusieurs faictz d'armes, d'amours, & fortunes innumerables, & choses admirables, q' aduindrent au preux & vaillant cheualier Guillaume de Palerne, duquel l'histoire port le nom." He afterwards adverts to the Countess Yoland, and her nephew Baldwin, Emperor of Constantinople, who was slain by the infidels at the siege of Adrianople, in 1205. And adds: "Pour l'honneur de laquelle & de si haut empereur pouuons facillement accroistre les choses au present liure contenues." Whether the story will appear quite so credible at the present day is rather questionable. The French bibliographers are silent as to the author of this prose version, and Dr Dibdin's sagacity seems to have failed him here. But at the end of the volume is an acrostic of twelve lines, the first letters of which form the name of *Pierre Durand*, who, no doubt, is the compiler. Any further information respecting him I have been unable to obtain, unless he is the same with the Pierre Durand, Bailli of Nogent le Rotrou, en Perche, mentioned by Lacroix du Maine, who adds, that he was an excellent Latin poet, and composed many inedited verses both in Latin and French.[1] No notice is supplied of the period at which he lived. It was, most likely, from this prose translation, that the imperfect analysis of the Romance was borrowed, printed in the *Nouvelle Bibliothèque des Romans*, tom. ii. pp. 41—68, 12mo. Par. an. vi. [1808] where it is placed in the class of "Romans de Féerie," although professedly extracted from a MS. of the 14th century.

By the assistance of Durand's version we are enabled to judge of the accuracy of the English versifier, since they both translate from the same text, and it is surprising how closely the latter has adhered to his original. Another advantage gained from it is to supply the *hiatus* which, unfortunately, occur in the English poem. To avoid the prolixity of the prose author, the substance of the passages wanting, is here annexed:[2]

[1] Bibl. Françoises, tom. ii. p. 272; ed. 1772. He is said also to have had an *œnigma* or rebus in the front of his house, which seems to indicate the same taste which prompted the composition of the acrostic cited above.

[2] These missing passages are supplied in this re-edition from the original rimed French version.—W. W. S.]

"There was formerly a King of Sicily, named Ebron, who was also Duke of Calabria and Lord of Apulia; rich and powerful above all other princes of his time. He married Felixe, daughter of the Emperor of Greece, and not long after their union, they were blessed with a son named William, the hero of the present story. The infant was intrusted to the care of two sage and prudent ladies, named Gloriande and Esglantine, who were chosen to superintend his nurture and education. But the brother of King Ebron, foreseeing that his succession to the throne would be now impeded, soon formed a resolution to destroy the boy, and, by means of promises and bribes so wrought on the governesses, that they at length consented to a plan by which both the Prince and King were to be put to death. At that time the Court was held at the noble city of Palerne [Palermo], adjoining to which was a spacious garden, abounding with flowers and fruits, in which the King was often accustomed to take his recreation. But one day, when Ebrons was walking here, accompanied by the Queen and the Prince (then about four years old), attended by the two governesses, an event took place which turned all their joy into the deepest consternation and grief. For, whilst the King's brother and the two ladies were holding a secret conference how to carry their project into execution, a huge werwolf, with open jaws and bristled mane, suddenly rushed forth from a thicket, at which the ladies were so terrified, that they swooned away, and the rest fled, leaving the child alone, who was immediately carried off, without injury, by the beast. The King ordered pursuit to be made, but in vain, for the swiftness of the animal soon enabled him to distance his pursuers; to the great distress of the monarch and his court. The werwolf bore the child away to a place of safety, and thence, pursuing his course night and day, at length conveyed him to a forest, not far from the city of Rome, where he remained some time, taking care to provide what was necessary for his sustenance; and having dug a deep pit, and strewed it with herbs and grass for William to sleep on, the beast was accustomed to fondle the boy with his paws in the same manner a nurse would have done."

Here commences the English Romance, which, with the exception of a folio (or 72 lines) missing between ff. 6—7, proceeds regularly to the end. This second defect occurs at the close of the Emperor's speech to his daughter Melior, and the text again begins with Melior's reproaches to herself for loving William. What intervenes may be easily supplied, even from fancy, but in the prose Romance we read as follows:

"The Emperor's daughter received the infant, which proved of so gentle a disposition, that it seemed to have been bred at court all its life-time. It was soon clothed in dresses of silk and velvet, and

became the plaything of the fair Melior. 'Et alors,' says the writer, 'le faisoit mout beau veoir: car en toute la court ny auoit si bel enfant que luy, ne si aduenant. Sobre estoit en son manger & boire, facilemens fut apprins à seruir les dames à tables; a tous ieux, & à deuiser & à dire ioyeuses sornetes a tous propos.' But above all, William studied how best to serve his lady and mistress Melior, whom he loved above every one else. As he advanced in age he began to share in the chivalrous exercises of the time; to bear arms, ride on the great horse, and practise various feats of strength, all for the love of Melior, his 'mie'; and so great a favourite was he with all the ladies and demoiselles, that Melior heard of nothing but his praises. The Emperor, too, was so fond of William, as to keep him constantly by his side. In the mean time, the Princess would often withdraw to her chamber to dwell secretly on the personal attractions and graceful demeanor of William, and was at length so pierced by love's keen arrow, that she could not refrain from sighing, and desiring to hold him in her arms. But then again, considering with herself, that a lady of her noble birth ought not to bestow her affection on any one but a Knight of her own rank, she often vainly endeavoured to drive William from her thoughts."

The remaining part of *la belle Melior's* soliloquy will be found in our poem, and the translation is sufficiently *naïve* to be interesting even to those who may, in general, despise the simple language of our old Romances.

The tradition developed in this story, and which forms its chief feature, namely, the transformation of a human being into a wolf, but still retaining many of the attributes of his nature, has been so learnedly and ably discussed by the author of the Letter annexed to the present remarks,[1] as to render any additional illustration unnecessary. But it may not be improper here to suggest, that the belief in this notion in the southern provinces of Europe may have been partly derived through the medium of the Northmen, among whom, as appears from various authorities, it was very general. A curious story of a *were-bear* in Rolf Kraka's Saga is quoted by Sir Walter Scott,[2] which has some slight features of resemblance with our werwolf, and it is singular, that this metamorphosis should have been accomplished by striking the person transformed with a glove of *wolf-skin*. In the

[1] [In the Edition of 1832, a Letter by the Hon. Algernon Herbert, addressed to Lord Cawdor, on the subject of Werewolves, was annexed to the Preface.—W. W. S.]

[2] Border Minstr. ii. 110, ed. 1803. [The story, condensed, is given in S. Baring-Gould's Book of Werewolves, pp. 21—27.—W. W. S.]

Volsunga Saga, also, cap. 12, we read of the similar change of Sigmund and Siufroth into wolves.[1] In general, the transformation was supposed to be accomplished, as in our Romance, by the aid of certain magical unguents.[2] With regard to the supposed form of these werwolves, and whether they differed from those of natural wolves, I have searched many writers, without much success, but Boguet informs us, that in 1521, three sorcerers were executed, who confessed they had often become *Loupsgaroux*, and killed many persons.[3] A painting was made to commemorate the fact, in which these werwolves were each represented with a knife in his right paw. This picture, we are told, was preserved in the church of the Jacobins, at Pouligny,[4] in Burgundy. One distinctive mark, however, of a werwolf is said to have been the absence of a tail,[5] yet this does not seem to correspond with the vulgar notions on the subject, since in the wooden cut prefixed to the prologue of the prose translation of this Romance, representing the werwolf carrying off the infant Prince of Palermo, there certainly appears a tail of due proportions.

On the style in which this poem is written, and its peculiarities of language, it is needless to dwell long. The history of our alliterative poetry has already been illustrated by Percy, Warton, and Conybeare, and the principle on which it was composed, even to so late a date as the middle of the 16th century, is sufficiently known.[6] The

[1] Biörner's Kämpa-Dæter, fol. 1737. [See S. Baring-Gould's Book of Werewolves, p. 18.—W. W. S.]

[2] See *Discours des Sorciers*, par Henry Boguet, 12mo. Lyon, 1608. 2de ed. pp. 363, 369; Verstegan's *Restitution of Decayed Intelligence*, 4to. Antv. 1605, p. 237; Jamieson's Dictionary, in v. *Warwolf*, and Nynauld's treatise *De la Lycanthropie*, 8vo., Par. 1625, where several of these ointments are described.

[3] Another account says *two* sorcerers, named Pierre Bourgot and Michel Verdung. See *A Book on Werewolves*, by S. Baring-Gould, p. 69.]

[4] Boguet, p. 341. Wierus *de Præstigiis*, lib. v. c. 10.

[5] Boguet, pp. 340, 361. [A little girl described a werwolf as "resembling a wolf, but as being shorter and stouter; its hair was red, *its tail stumpy*, and the head smaller than that of a genuine wolf." See the story in S. Baring-Gould's Book on Werewolves, p. 91.—W. W. S.]

[6] See Essay in the Reliques of English Poetry, vol. ii.; Warton's Hist. of Engl. Poetry, vol. ii. § 10, 8vo. ed.; Whitaker's Introductory Discourse to Piers Plouhman, and Conybeare's Essay on Anglo-Saxon Metre, prefixed to the Illustrations of Anglo-Saxon Poetry, 8vo., Lond. 1826. [In the new edition of Bp Percy's Folio MS. by Hales and Furnivall, Percy's Essay has been replaced by a fuller and longer one by myself, to which I beg leave to refer the reader.—W. W. S.]

lines in the poem consist of an indeterminate number of syllables, from eleven to thirteen, but sometimes more or less, which, like Piers Plouhman, and other compositions of this class, may be divided into distichs, at the cæsural pause, so as to give them the Saxonic character on which they are all formed. Thus, for instance :

Hit bi-*f*el in that *f*orest,
there *f*ast by-side,
There *w*oned a *w*el old cherl,
that *w*as a couherde,
That *f*ele winterres in that *f*orest
*f*ayre had kepud, &c.

It adds, however, to the value of this Romance, that we have in it the earliest specimen of unrimed alliterative metre yet discovered ; for of the other pieces of this kind extant, there is not one which may not be placed subsequent to Piers Plouhman, composed after the year 1362.[1] It is also matter of satisfaction to be able to fix the date of this work prior to the period which produced such writers as Gower and Chaucer. We can now trace the English language step by step from the year 1300, since the writings of Robert of Gloucester, Robert of Brunne, Robert Davies, William of Shoreham,[2] Robert Rolle, and Laurence Minot, lead us up to the precise period when our poem was composed, and which forms the connecting link with Langland and the subsequent writers. Without deciding with Bryant, that our Romance betrays very distinctly a provincial dialect, we may accede to his conjecture of its author being, probably, a native of Gloucestershire, or an adjoining county ; although the orthography by no means betrays that decided western pronunciation

[1] Mr Conybeare is certainly mistaken in assigning the Romances of Sir Gawayn and Alexander to the 13th century, as I shall endeavour to show in another place. [See Sir F. Madden's notes to Sir Gawayn. See on the other hand my "Introduction to Alisaunder," (p. xxx), which poem is now found to be somewhat earlier than "William of Palerne."—W. W. S.]

[2] The poems of this writer, who flourished from 1320 to 1340, are preserved in an unique MS. belonging to Alexander Henderson, Esq., of Edinburgh, who intends, at some period or other, giving them to the public. [*The Religious Poems of William de Shoreham* were edited for the Percy Society by T. Wright, M.A., London, 1849. The MS. is now MS. Additional 17376 in the British Museum.—W. W. S.]

which characterises the poems ascribed to Robert of Gloucester. Of his ability as a poet we ought on the whole to form a favorable judgment; and when we consider the fetters imposed on him by the metre he adopts, and by the closeness of his translation, we may readily forgive the repetitions he abounds in, as well as the somewhat tedious minuteness of his narrative. There are some lines, such as for instance these:

> And than so throli thouȝtes thurlen myn herte,
> That I ne wot in the world where it bi comse;

and again,

> So many maner minstracie at that mariage were,
> That when thei made here menstracie, eche man wende
> That heven hastili and erthe schuld hurtel to gader;

which would seem to mark the author capable of better things. But the poet shall plead his own apology, in some lines at the close of the Romance:

> In this wise hath William al his werke ended,
> As fully as the Frensche fully wold aske,
> And as his witte him wold serve, thouȝh it were febul;
> *But thouȝh the metur be nouȝt mad at eche mannes paye,*
> *Wite him nouȝt that it wrouȝt, he wold have do beter*
> *Ȝif is witte in eny weiȝes wold him have served.*

It would seem from this, as if the alliterative form of alexandrine verse had not yet become popular, and was, in fact, but lately introduced. It is worth observing also, that the number of French words here introduced, will serve to exonerate Chaucer from the charge made against him of debasing the English language by Gallicisms. Such a remark could only have come from one ignorant of what early English literature owes to our continental neighbours.

There are some minuter details respecting the grammatical construction of the poem, which perhaps deserve notice, such as the use of the present tense for the past, as *askes*, *arise*, *bere*, *seweth*, &c., for *asked*, *arose*, *bore*, *sewede*, &c., the use of the singular for the plural (if, indeed, it be not a contracted form of the plural, which I am inclined to believe, like *childer* from *childeren*), in the instances of *daie*,

dede, burgeys, bere, &c., for *daies, dedes, burgeyses, beres*, &c.; but the fact is, these are not peculiarities, but authorised by usage, and many similar forms are retained, even at present, in familiar conversation, particularly among the lower classes.

It only remains to give a brief description of the MS. from which the present poem has been transcribed. It is a moderate-sized folio, written on vellum soon after the middle of the 14th century, and consisting of 130 folios, 82 of which are occupied by the Romance. A quire is wanting at the commencement, and a single leaf shortly after. The text is disposed in single columns, of 36 lines in a page, and the writing is in a remarkably distinct, but rather thick and inelegant, letter, with small blue and red initials.[1] . . . .

At the conclusion of the Romance, f. 86, is written in a hand of the early part of the 16th century as follows:[2] "Praye we all to that heaven kinge that made all y^e^ world off nowght to *pardon* the solle of *humfray* boune, that was erlle of herford, for hys grete dylygens and peyns takynge to translate thys boke owt off freynche In to englys; to y^e^ entent to kepe youythe from ydellnes, [he] hathe sete furthe thys goodly story, wher apon we showld bestow *our* tym apon the holy day, & suche other tym*es* when we haue lytle or nothynge a doyng elle*s*, & In so doynge ye may put awey all ydell thowght*es* & pensyffnes [of] harte, for the wyche traueyll pray we all to that heuy*n* kynge to graunt hym eternall lyf for hys good wyll." The rest of the volume is occupied by a portion of the Metrical Lives of the Saints, composed in the reign of Edward the First, and written in a different and rather earlier hand. The lives are those of *Judas, Pilatus, Seint Marie Egiptiak, Seint Alphe, Seint George, Seint Dunston, Seint Aldelme, and Seint Austyn.*[3] There are several other

[1 I here omit the words "A fac-simile of the first seven lines is subjoined," which are followed by the fac-simile itself. The marks of abbreviation are explained further on; see p. xxiv. A peculiarity of the MS. is that the initial letter of every line is separated from the rest by a slight space, as in Sir F. Madden's edition. The central metrical pause is *nowhere* marked by a dot. I am responsible for the *insertion* of these, which will, I believe, be found to assist the reader.—W. W. S.]

[2 These words were clearly suggested by the concluding lines of the poem, and it was hence, perhaps, that Bryant adopted the idea that Sir Humphrey translated the French *himself*.—W. W. S.]

[3 There is a poem preceding *Judas*, and belonging to the same series. See the first lines, &c., on p. vi.—W. W. S.]

perfect copies of these curious legends in existence. With respect to the history of this MS. volume before it was presented to King's College Library, I could gain no information, nor even the name of the donor. There are several names scribbled on the margins, but all of a late period, and of no importance.

The Romance has been printed, as nearly as possible, in exact accordance with the MS., and not the slightest liberty has been taken, either with the punctuation or the orthography. It is, in short, as near a fac-simile of the original as could be imitated by typography. But for the convenience of those unacquainted with the mode of contracting words in old MSS., a list of the abbreviations is placed at the end of these remarks. The Glossary has been compiled with much care, and rendered as comprehensive as possible, but with all due regard to avoid unnecessary prolixity. Only those words are illustrated which appeared absolutely to require it: it being deemed in other cases sufficient to mark the immediate derivation of the term.

The Editor, in conclusion, has to express his thanks to the Rev. George Thackeray, D.D., Provost of King's College, for his permission to copy the MS.; and also to Martin Thackeray, Esq., M.A., Vice Provost; John Heath, Esq., M.A., Dean; and George Crauford Heath, Esq., M.A., Bursar of the College, for their very obliging attentions during the residence made among them.

FREDERICK MADDEN.

British Museum, January 6th, 1832.

MARKS OF ABBREVIATION.

ꝯ , *con* or *com*, as ꝯseil, ꝯfort—[*con*seil, *com*fort].

ꝑ, *er*, above the line, as þid'e, daung', man', s'ue, wint'res, þ'e, gou'ne, v'aly—[þid*er*e, daung*er*, man*er*, s*er*ue, wint*er*res, þ*er*e, gou*er*ne, v*er*aly]. After p', *re*, as p'stely—[p*re*stely].

ihc, *Ihesus.**

ꝑ, *per* or *par*, as ꝑile, ꝑtizes, spe—[*per*ile, *par*tizes, spe*re*].

[* See note to l. 692. W. W. S.]

ꝑ, *pro*, as ꝑfite, ꝑue—[*pro*fite, *pro*ue].

q, *quod*—[q*uod*].

ⁱ, *ri*, above the line, as pⁱnce, cⁱſt—[p*ri*nce, c*ri*st].

ʳ, *ra*, above the line, as fm̃, g̃ce, py̆—[f*ra*m, g*ra*ce, p*ra*y]—sometimes *a*, as Willm̃—[Will*ia*m]. *

⁓, *ur*, above the line, as m̃ꝺe, tn̄e, o͂—[m*ur*ꝺe, t*ur*ne, o*ur*].

The simple stroke over a letter denotes the absence of *m* or *n*, as sū, hī, hoūd—[su*m*, hi*m*, hou*n*d].

NOTE ON THE WORD "WERWOLF."

(Reprinted, with additions, from the edition of 1832.)

BY SIR FREDERICK MADDEN.

THIS term has the same meaning, and is compounded of the same elements, as the λυκ-ανθρωπος of the Greeks. From the high antiquity of the tradition respecting werewolves, and its having been current among the Celtic as well as Gothic nations, we find the expression in most of the dialects formed from each of the parent languages, and all corresponding to the signification above affixed of *man-wolf*, i. e. a wolf partaking of the nature of man, or, in other words, a man changed, by magical art, into the temporary form of a wolf. All the northern lexicographers agree in this interpretation, as applied to the Su.-G. *warulf*, Teut. *werwolf*, *währwolf*, Sax. *werewulf*, Dan. *varulf*, Belg. *waer wolf*, *weer wolf*, Scotch, *warwolf*, *werwouf*, &c., but as the very learned and ingenious author of the Letter addressed to Lord Cawdor on the subject of Werewolves, prefixed to the present poem, [i. e. in the edition of 1832,] has called their united opinion in question, it may be worth while to discuss more fully the truth of the usual derivation. It is true, that the hypothesis of Mr Herbert, which deduces the first part of the phrase from the Teutonic *wer*, bellum, (whence the French *guerre*, and the Dutch *were* have been formed) may be, in some measure, countenanced by the similar compounds of *wær-boda*, a herald, *were-man*, a soldier, *were-wall*, a defence in war, &c., as well as by the instance of a warlike machine made by King Edward the First, called *war-wolf*, and rightly interpreted by Matthew of Westminster *lupus belli*, p. 449, the *ludgare* or *loup de guerre* of Peter Langtoft, vol. ii. 326. But in conceding thus much, it

[* The mark really is a roughly written *a*, and means an abbreviation wherein *a* occurs, commonly *ra* or *ia*.—W. W. S.]

must be remarked, that all these latter terms are used in a military sense, and could not otherwise be interpreted. They bear no analogy whatever to the *were-wolf* of our Poem, which, supposing we receive it in the sense contended for by the author of the Letter, viz. a *wolf of war*, conveys no distinct or very intelligible meaning. On the other hand, the plain, obvious signification of man-wolf is consonant to the fabulous tradition of the phrase, and to the genius of the languages in which it has been adopted. Only one example of this word in Anglo-Saxon has been found. It occurs in the ecclesiastical laws of King Canute, ap. Wilkins, p. 133, § 26, where, after describing the duties of Pastors of the Church, the text proceeds: "thæt syndon bisceopas and mæssepreostas, the godcunde heorda bewarian and bewerian sceolan, mid wislican laran, thæt *se wodfreca were wulf* to swithe ne slyte, ne to fela ne abite of godcundre heorde," i. e. "Such are the bishops and priests, who shall guard and defend the holy flock with their wise doctrine, that the furious were-wolf may not too greatly tear or lacerate the members of it." Here the term is applied to the Devil, not, as Wachter remarks, "quod Diabolus sit *lycanthropos*, sed quod homines rapiat et occidat;" and the metaphor is evidently drawn from the story of the metamorphosis of a man into a wolf, and subsequent attacks on his own race. The derivation from *wer*, or *wera*, a man, does not, as the author of the Letter supposes, rest on slight authority. One glance at Lye, who has nearly three columns filled with instances, would satisfy him in this respect. It is the Gothic *wair* (Luke viii. 27, ix. 14), Su.-Goth. *wär*, Isl. *ver*, Teut. *wer*, Francic *uuara*, Celtic *Gur*, *Gwr*, or *Ur*, Irish *fair*, *fear*, Latin *vir*, Barb. Lat. *bar-o*, Span. *var-on*, and French *bar-on*; all of which may be referred to a primitive root, expressive of existence. But an unquestionable evidence in the case before us is that of Gervase of Tilbury, who wrote in the reign of Henry II., when the Saxon language had suffered no very material change, and who, assuredly, must be allowed to know the meaning of his own maternal tongue. He writes thus: "Vidimus enim frequenter in Anglia per lunationes homines in lupos mutari, quod hominum genus *Gerulfos* Galli nominant, Angli vero *werewlf* dicunt; *were* enim Anglicè virum sonat, *wlf*, lupum." *Otia Imp. ap. Scriptt. Brunsv.* p. 895. The modern French express the term by *loupgarou*, concerning which it is truly said by Wachter, "mire nugantur eruditi." The sum of these *nugæ* may be found collected in Menage, and the Dictionnaire de Trevoux; to which may be added the conjectures noticed in the *Cœlum Astronomico-Poeticum* of Cœsius, p. 295. But the etymology of the Saxon, Teutonic, and Suio-Gothic phrase will here equally well apply. One of the Lays of Marie, an Anglo-Norman poetess, who wrote about the middle of the thirteenth century, is founded on a Breton fable of a werwolf, and she thus alludes to the appellation:

"*Bisclaveret* ad nun en Bretan,
Garwaf, l'apelent li Norman;

Iadis le poeit hume oir,
E souent suleit auenir,
Humes plusurs *garual* deuindrent,
E es boscages meisun tindrent;
Garualf cet beste saluage," &c.
MS. Harl. 978. f. 152. b.[1]

Roquefort (who has taken some liberties in printing this passage) justly observes, that the Norman *Garvalf* or *Garwaf* is derived from, and the same with, the Saxon and Teutonic term. It may, indeed, have been brought by the Normans from Scandinavia, for in Verelius I find " *Vargulfur*, Brett. Str. [*Bretta Streinglekr Roberti Abbatis*] Biselaretzlïod, Lycantropos. Som löperwarg." *Index Scytho-Scand.* fol. 1691. Whence he has derived the second term, is not clear, nor is it elsewhere explained, but it appears the same with the *Bisclaveret* of Marie (whose writings could not have been known to Verelius), which is supposed by Ritson, Metr. Rom. iii. 331, to be a corruption of *Bleiz-garv*, loup sauvage, for which, in more modern times, the natives of Britanny used *Den-bleiz*, homme-loup. See Rostrenen and Pelletier. *Garv* or *Garo*, is explained in these writers, *âpre, cruel*, yet there is great reason to doubt whether when coupled with *bleiz* it has not, like the Norman *garou*, *guaroul*, been borrowed from a Gothic source. That *loup* is superfluous, and that *garou* of itself expresses *man-wolf* is evident from the passages in Gervase of Tilbury and Marie, and may be confirmed by the following authorities. " *Warou*, loup-garou." Dict. Roman, Walon, &c. 4to. Bouillon, 1777. " *Warou*, *warous*, *warrou*, Garou, espèce de loup." *Roquefort.* So, in a MS. Life of the Virgin, quoted by Charpentier, in his Supplement to Du Cange,

" De culuevre nous font anguile,
Aignel de *Waroul* & de leu."

And in the life of St Bernard, Opp. 2, p. 1288. " Transiens autem per quandam villam audivit ab incolis ejusdem loci, duas feras immanissimas, quæ *uuigo varol-i* [appellebantur], in nemore proxime desævire." In the same manner the Scotch have formed their *Wurl*, *Wroul*, and *Worlin*, as appears from Jamieson. Roquefort also gives us the term in another shape, " *Loup-beroux*," but this again is nothing more than the Teut. *Bærwolf*, homo-lupus, from *bar*, vir, which is only a dialectical variation of *Wer*. A similar instance of retaining a pleonastic interpretation is presented in the word *luke-warm*, where *warm* is an adjunct of no real utility, since *luke* means warm by itself, and was anciently so used. For more minute details respecting the etymology here adopted, the philologist is referred to Ihre, Wachter, Kilian, and Jamieson.

Mr Herbert has remarked, at p. 42 of his letter, that "among the Erse or Gael of Erin, the notion of lycanthropy was prevalent; we

[1] In Thoms's " Lays and Legends," 1834, is a translation of this *Lai de Bisclaveret.*

read of their voracious cannibalism on the ocular and undeniable testimony of St Jerome, and another author pretends that a certain Abbot in the district of Ossory had obtained from heaven a decree that two persons of that district (a married couple) should every seven years be compelled to leave the country in the shape of wolves, but, at the end of those years, they might if yet living return to their homes and native shape, and two other persons were condemned in their place to the like penalty for another seven years. J. Brompton, Chron. p. 1078." In the Latin Poem "de rebus Hibernie admirandis," of the 12th or 13th century, preserved in the Cotton MS. Titus D. xxiv (and printed in the *Reliquiæ Antiquæ*, ii. 103), are some lines descriptive of the werwolf, from which we learn that at that period there were men in Ireland who could change themselves into wolves and worry sheep, leaving their real bodies behind them; and (as in the traditions of other countries), if they happened to be wounded, the injury would also appear on their bodies.[1]

Allusion is also made to a similar story in Malory's *Morte d'Arthure*, where mention is made of "Sir Marrok the good knyghte, that was bitrayed with his wyf, for she made hym seuen yere a *werwolf*." Morte d'Arthure, lib. xix. c. xi.; ed. Southey, ii. 385.

In the "Maister of Game," a treatise on Hunting, composed for Henry the Fifth, then Prince (I quote from MS. Sloane 60), is the following passage.

[1] Sunt homines quidam Scottorum gentis habentes
Miram naturam, majorum ab origine ductam,
Qua cito quando volunt ipsos se vertere possunt
Nequiter in formas lacerantum dente luporum,
Unde videntur oves occidere sæpe gementes;
Sed cum clamor eos hominum, seu cursus eorum
Fustibus aut armis terret, fugiendo recurrunt.
Cum tamen hoc faciunt, sua corpora vera relinquunt,
Atque suis mandant ne quisquam moverit illa.
Si sic eveniat, nec ad illa redire valebunt.
Si quid eos lædat, penetrent si vulnera quæque,
Vere in corporibus semper cernuntur eorum;
Sic caro cruda hærens in veri corporis ore
Cernitur a sociis, quod nos miramur et omnes. (*Rel. Ant.* ii. 105.)

Cf. *Spenser*, View of the State of Ireland, ed. Todd, p. 522 (Moxon, 1856); and *O'Brien*, Round Towers of Ireland, p. 468.

Speaking of the Wolf—(fol. 43)—

"And somme ther ben . . . that eten children and men, and eten non other fleische from that tyme that thei ben acharmed with mannes fleisch. For rather thei wolden be deed. And thai ben cleped *werewolves*, for that men schulden be *war* of hem.[1] And thei ben so cawtelous, that whenne thei sailen a man, thei haue an holding vppon hem or the man se hem. And ȝit, if men se hem, thei wol come vpon him gynnously, that he ne be take and slayn. For thei can wonder wel kepe hem from any harneyse that any man bereth," &c.[2]

INTRODUCTION TO "ALISAUNDER."

§ 1. The fragment of the *Romance of Alisaunder* at the end of this volume is now printed for the first time from MS. Greaves 60 (in the Bodleian Library), where it was discovered by Sir Frederick Madden. There are no less than *four* MSS. containing fragments *in*

[1] An odd etymology! This sentence is quoted by Halliwell, in his Dictionary of Archaisms, s. v. *A-charmed*, from MS. Bodley, 546.

[2] It seems unnecessary to enter into further details concerning this curious superstition; for the reader may consult Mr Herbert's Letter (which is too diffuse to be reprinted here); or, if that be not easily accessible, may refer to "The Book of Were-wolves," by S. Baring-Gould, M.A., which the author defines as being "a monograph on a peculiar form of popular superstition, prevalent among all nations, and in all ages." The following references to a few of the most interesting passages may be useful. *Herodotus*, bk. iv. c. 105 (in which the Neurians are said to change themselves into wolves once a year for a few days); *Virgil*, Ecl. viii. 95—99; *Ovid*, Met. i. 237 (where Lycaon, King of Arcadia, is changed by Jupiter into a wolf); a story from *Petronius*, quoted at length both by Herbert (p. 7), and Baring-Gould (p. 11); *Olaus Magnus*, Historia de Gent. Septent. Basil. lib. xviii. c. 45; *Gervase of Tilbury*, Otia Imperialia, Dec. i. c. 15, p. 895; *Camden*, Britannia, vol. iv. p. 293, ed. 1806; *King James I.*, Dæmonologie, L. iii. p. 125; &c. See also Thorpe's Northern Mythology. In the present poem, the chief instrument of Alphonse's re-transformation is a *ring* (l. 4424). The following quotation (which I render into English from the German) may serve to illustrate this:—"By help of a magic girdle or *ring* men could change themselves and others into the forms of beasts; into *wolves*, bears, horses, cats, swans, geese, ravens, and crows. The most notorious and perhaps the oldest of these changes is that into the *Werwolf* or *loupgarou*. Even this might be classed amongst the instances of Rune-magic (*Runenzaubers*), for runic characters may have been scratched upon the girdle or ring, or magic formularies may have been repeated whilst putting it on." *Karl Simrock*, Handbuch der Deutschen Mythologie; Bonn, 1855; p. 537. The latter method was the one adopted by Queen Braundins (l. 4433).—W. W. S.]

alliterative verse upon this subject, of which two are merely different copies of the same poem. The four fragments are these: A, that contained in MS. Greaves 60; B, that contained in MS. Bodley 264, which relates to Alexander's visit to the Gymnosophists; C, that in MS. Ashmole 44; and D, a second copy of the *same* poem as C, in MS. Dublin. D. 4. 12, beginning at a later place, and ending at an earlier one. Of these, A, B, and C seem to be distinct from each other, and by different authors, the last bearing traces of a *northern*, the former two of a *western* dialect. The two latter are printed at length in "The Alliterative Romance [? Romances] of Alexander," ed. Rev. J. Stevenson, printed for the Roxburghe Club, 1849. They are, however, of different dates, for the Ashmolean MS. can hardly be older than about A.D. 1450, and "there seems no reason to conclude that the poem is anterior to the date of the MS. from which it is printed," as Mr Stevenson justly observes. Fragment B is probably older. It is bound up with the splendid French MS. of Alexander, one of the chief treasures of the Bodleian library. Sir F. Madden says of it,[1] that "the writing of this portion is of the reign of Henry the Sixth,[2] nor is there any reason to believe the poem itself very much earlier than the year 1400." It treats at length of Alexander's visit to the Gymnosophists, and of the letters that passed between him and Dindimus, "lord of Bragmanus lond," a subject which is introduced much more briefly in Passus xviii. of fragment C. But fragment A, which is now only found in a copy evidently written in the sixteenth century (the original MS. having been lost), is not only older than both these, but may fairly claim to be the *oldest existing specimen* of English alliterative verse, unmixed with rime, and of the usual type, since the Conquest.[3] This point is, moreover, easily ascertained in the manner following.

§ 2. In the first place, it was conjectured by Sir F. Madden, from internal evidence, that it was written by the author of *William of Palerne;* and nothing can be stronger than the internal evidence, if

[1] See notes to Sir Gawayne, ed. Madden; Bannatyne Club, 1839; p. 304.

[2] May it not be even a little earlier?

[3] *Seinte Marherete*, written before A.D. 1200 in a more negligent metre, is here excepted.

it be weighed with sufficient care. The resemblance in the language, style, and method of versification is extraordinary; there is the same "run" upon certain words and phrases, and we even find (what we should hardly have expected to find), lines almost identical in their expression in the two poems. If we find in *William of Palerne* (which poem I shall briefly denote by *Werwolf*) the phrase,

"þat þei nere semli serued · & sette at here riȝttes" (l. 4906),

we can match this from *Alisaunder*, l. 980, by the phrase,

"As soone as þei were sett · & serued too-rightes;"

and it would be difficult to discover two lines more closely related than are these:—

"It betid in a time · tidly thereafter" (*Alis.* 974), and,
"But þanne tidde on a time · titly þer-after" (*Werw.* 1416).

But even such coincidences as these are less convincing than the peculiar recurrence of certain phrases, such as *to waite at a window* (see note to Alis. l. 760), *doluen and ded* (see note to Alis. l. 1026), *nied þe niȝt* (see note to Alis. l. 817), *liuand lud* (see note to Alis. l. 992), and the like; and also the curious, yet evidently unintentional, resemblance in such lines as,

"He wend to haue lauȝt þat ladi · loueli in armes"

(*Werw.* 671); and

"As that Ladie, with loue · too lachen in armes" (*Alis.* 199);

or again, in

"But lete him in his blisse · & his burde alse,
& touche we ferre · as þis tale forþeres" (*Werw.* 5396); and,
"But lete hem liue in lisse · at oure lordes wille,
Of þe rich emperour of rome · redeliche to telle" (*Werw.* 5466);

as compared with—

"Now let wee þis lued · lengen in bliss,
And sithe myng wee more · of þis mery tale" (*Alis.* 44).

Indeed, it seems useless to adduce many further proofs; for, if any reader has any lingering doubts upon the subject, he may convince himself by trying to rewrite a portion of the glossary; for, in construct-

ing this, the language of the poems is at once found to be identical, as far as the subject-matter permits it. It may be noted, too, that the dialect is the same; e. g. one curious characteristic of the "Werwolf" is the plural imperative in *-es*, which reappears in *kares*=care ye (Alis. 563), and in *kairus* = *kaires* = go ye (Alis. 623); also present participles both in *-and* and *-ing* are found in both poems.[1] Assuming then that these poems are by the same author—and, consequently, that our poet, known to us only by the name of *William*, has the credit of being the earliest writer (as far as we know at present) in the usual alliterative metre—the question still remains, which poem did he write first? On this point I have, myself, no doubt, feeling sure that the "Alisaunder" is the older poem. It is very curious to remark how often it presents fuller inflexions and older forms, and this, too, *in spite of* the fact that we have only a late sixteenth-century copy of it, whilst of the other poem we have a MS. two centuries older. Most noticeable among these are the infinitives in *-en*, such as *lachen*, *thinken*, &c., and in many other cases we find *-en* where in the other poem we more commonly find *-e*.[2] The numerous cases where in the "Alisaunder," the final *-e* is omitted, can be accounted for by the fact of the MS. being a late copy. And this is the right account to give; for the preservation of the *-en* ending shews that the final *-e's* should have been preserved also. Besides this, the spelling of the MS. presents one very curious mark of antiquity, viz., the use of the letter Ð or ð to represent *Th* or *th*; see note to l. 33 on page 236. I know of no instance of the use of this letter in a verse composition

[1] A comparison of the *metre* of the poems affords a test of much subtlety, and requiring much care and patience. The details are tedious: I can only say here that I have considered this, and believe their general structure of versification to be identical, and to have, at the same time, some peculiarities that are *not* common to all alliterative poems. They differ, e. g., from *Piers Plowman*, though that too was written by a *William*, and not long afterwards.

Hence also the reason for printing the two poems together, viz. because of their common authorship, is at once apparent; and both poems gain by it. The language of the "Werwolf" is often well illustrated by that of the "Alisaunder," whilst, on the other hand, an editor can never be so well fitted to edit the latter poem accurately as at a time when he happens to know hundreds of lines of the former by heart.

[2] The only instance of *i-* used as a prefix to a verb in the infinitive, occurs in Alis. l. 607.

(excepting here) later than about A.D. 1300, in MS. C.C.C. 444, containing the "Story of Genesis and Exodus," edited by Mr Morris for the E. E. T. S. in 1865. There is yet another point which may have some weight, viz., that our author must surely have produced *something* of importance before he was selected by the Earl of Hereford to translate a poem of such length as "Guillaume de Palerne;" and that something was really expected of him, from his known reputation, seems to be implied by his apology for himself and his versification at the end of the latter work (*Werwolf*, ll. 5521—5526). If this be thought likely, if his skill in translation was a known fact, it may have been that his reputation was due to his "Alisaunder," as to the *length* of which, in its original condition, we know nothing more than this, viz., that the 1249 lines still preserved represent but a *very small* fraction of the whole story.

§ 3. It is necessary to describe the MS. Greaves 60 somewhat further. It is a small and shabby-looking MS., about 8 in. by 6, apparently bought to be used as a note-book or exercise-book, as it contains notes upon Virgil's Æneid, Terence's Andria, &c.; and the English romance was afterwards copied out wherever there was a blank space for it, which accounts for there being only three lines of the text on fol. 7. The English occupies fol. 1 *b*—6 *a*, part of fol. 7, fol. 7 *b*—8 *b*, fol. 11 *a*, part of fol. 11 *b*, fol. 12 *a*—16 *a*, fol. 16 *b*—20 *a* (which portion is scored at the side, as being out of place), and fol. 21 *a*—24 *b*. The last two portions require to be transposed, and then 20 *a* comes last, fol. 20 *b* being blank. Even when this is done, a portion is lost between fol. 24 *b* and fol. 16 *b* (which I have supplied from a French prose text), and another portion (probably a large one) is lost at the end. On the fly-leaf is, besides other things, "Ye schoole of Rhetorik, or Ye skyll too speake well: deuised and made by H. G." This and a title about a "compendium of Virgil's Æneid,"[t] are scratched through, and the following written below in the same hand—"Radulph*us* de Sto Albano eiusdem fani Albani monach*us* et Abbas ex po*m*peio, Trogo, Origine, Josepho, Isidoro, Beda, et alijs hanc historiam de Reb*us* gestis Alexandri Maccedonis edidit; obijt anno do*m*ini MCLI, in eode*m* cœnobio sepult*us*, sub stephano Anglorum rege. Balæus." Assuming, for convenience, that H. G. are the scribe's own

initials, we see that H. G. has merely copied the above title from Bale, and that there is not any necessary connection between it and the poem which he partly copied out. Nevertheless, the clue was worth following up, and I found that a MS. in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, No. 219, has for its title—"Incipit hystoria regis Macedonum, Philippi filiique eius Alexandri Magni excepta (*sic*) de libris pompeii, trogi, orosii, iosephi, ieronimi, solini, augustini, bede, & ysodori." It is a Latin MS., beautifully written in a hand of the fourteenth century, containing the history of Alexander in four books, and followed by the letters of Alexander to Dindimus, and of Dindimus to Alexander. That our poet made use of this compilation is very probable; he says (*Alis.* l. 458) that he translates from Latin books, and the principal of these seem to have been, (1) the compilation of Radulphus; (2) the history of Orosius; and (3) the "Historia Alexandri *de prœliis*." The two former supplied him with the more historical part of his story, such as the particulars about Eurydice, Philip, Byzantium, &c.; the latter supplied him with the legendary portion. He seems to have considered them all equally veritable, and to have turned from one to the other at pleasure, as I have pointed out in the notes. Of the various Latin forms of the legend, the "Historia *de prœliis*," as it may conveniently be called for distinctness,[1] is evidently the one he has most closely followed. It is also evident that the writer of the poem preserved in MS. Ashmole 44 followed the very same original, and it is interesting to compare the two translations, and to observe how far the exigencies of the metre have caused them to vary. Returning to "H. G." after this digression, a few remarks must be made upon his method of copying the poem. He seems to have done it upon the whole very carefully, though he has sometimes misread his original (writing *kipen* for *kiþen*, *ferkerd* for *ferked*, and the like), and, in particular, has left out a large number of the final *-e's*, besides occasionally omitting whole lines. In several cases, he has modernized or modified the spelling, and in many instances has given us *both* the forms, as, e. g. in l. 767, where we have *liche* with *ke* over the *che*, thus rightly

[1] It may be known by the initial words—"Sapientissimi egiptii scientes mensuram terre," &c. I have used the printed copy of 1490.

explaining *liche* as meaning *like*. All the variations of importance are noticed in the foot-notes. The handwriting is peculiar, but not uncertain, though he at times used a straight horizontal stroke like a hyphen to denote an *m* or an *n*, joining it on to the letter following. Over many of the long vowels he has made a circumflex, writing "sôule" in l. 41, "fône" in l. 83, "gôse" in l. 409. As this seemed to be a mere freak of his own (for it is sometimes wrongly introduced), I have not noticed it. The only other point of interest is that he marked all the harder words by underscoring them, evidently with the view of finding out their meaning. The list of these has some importance, for we may conclude that such words were so far *obsolete* about the time of James I. as to be unintelligible to a man interested in our older literature. It is on this account that I subjoin the list, in alphabetical order, referring the reader to the Glossarial Index for further information. It is as follows, omitting a few which seem to have been marked for some other reason. *Alosed*, *Bed*, *Bern* (l. 219), *Beurde*, *Chees*, *Cofly*, *Deraine*, *Deric*, *Fele*, *Fode*, *Fonde*, *Frotus*, *Gamus* (read *Gainus*,) *Gist*, *Gome*, *Graithes*, *Grathly*, *Grempe*, *Hende*, *Hendely*, *Hote*, *Kipe*, *Kith*, *Lache*, *Laught* or *Lauht*, *Lelich*, *Mensk-full*, *Of-souhte*, *Pris*, *Purlich*, *Queme*, *Rigge*, *Rink* or *Renk*, *Rode*, *Segges*, *Spedly*, *Stightlich*, *Swipe*, *Trie*, *To-rihtes*, *þristliche*, *þroliche*, *Ungome*, *Wulte*, *Wowes*, *Wus*, *Yeeme*. Nearly all of these were certainly as unintelligible to most men two hundred and fifty years ago as they are now, though some may exist in provincial dialects. Several of them may have been unintelligible even a century earlier.

§ 4. THE STORY OF "ALISAUNDER."

The contents of the fragment may be briefly described thus. It commences with a mention of Amyntas, and his sons Alexander and Philip. Philip ascends the throne of Macedonia, conquers Larissa and Thessalonica, weds Olympias, sister of the King of Molossis, takes Methone, and helps the Thebans against the Phocians; all of which is from Radulphus, Orosius, and like sources. This portion includes ll. 1—451. Then begins the legend, from the "Historia de preliis," occupying the portion in ll. 452—899; and telling how Nectanabus, King of Egypt, fled in disguise from his own country

for fear of the Persians, and, coming to Macedonia, beguiled Queen Olympias by his magic arts, and, personating the god Ammon,[1] became the father of Alexander. He also appeared before Philip's army in the guise of a dragon, and, fighting for him, greatly discomfited the Lacedæmonians and Phocians. Next, after an historical account (ll. 900—954) of the occupation of the Pass of Thermopylæ by the Athenians, and of Philip's treachery and cruelty towards the Thebans, we return to the legend (ll. 955—1201) and learn how Philip greeted Olympias, how Nectanabus appeared once more as a dragon at a feast given by Philip, and how Philip was one day surprised to find that a bird had laid an egg in his lap, out of which issued a serpent which, after awhile, tried to re-enter the egg-shell, but died before it could do so; an omen that Alexander would die before he could return to his own land. Next Alexander is born, and carefully educated. One evening he goes out with Nectanabus to view the stars, and, hearing the magician say that he feared he would die by the hand of his own son, drowns him in a ditch to prove him a liar; but the drowning man cries out that he has told *the truth*. Next follows the story of the taming of Bucephalus, which bears some points of resemblance to the story of the taming of King Ebrouns' horse by William of Palerne (see p. 107). In the last paragraph the poet returns to historical details, and begins to narrate the siege of Byzantium by Philip, at which point the poem abruptly ends.

§ 5. This is not the place to discuss the long and difficult question of the "Alexander Romances." Roughly speaking, the form of the story here adopted—I speak of the legendary portion—is derived from the Greek text known as the *Pseudo-callisthenes*, of which the best MS. is the one now numbered 1711 in the Imperial Library at Paris, beginning—"Οἱ *σοφώτατοι Αἰγύπτιοι θεῶν ἀπόγονοι, κ.τ.λ.*"; but I have referred in the notes to another MS. (Supplem. No. 113) in the same collection, as a portion of this latter one has been printed.[1]

[1] "A dragon's fiery form belied the god;
Sublime on radiant spires he rode,
When he to fair Olympia prest," &c.
Dryden; *Alexander's Feast.*

[1] See notice on p. 236.

The three principal Latin versions hence derived are (1) that by Julius Valerius; (2) the "Itinerarium Alexandri" (relating to Alexander's wars); and (3) that by the Archpresbyter Leo, which is also known as the "Historia de preliis." With the *second* of these we have *here* nothing to do. The *first* begins—"Ægypti sapientes, sati genere divino," &c.; the *third* begins—"Sapientissimi Egyptii, scientes mensuram terræ," &c. The portion supplied to complete the story at p. 209 is from a French version, as contained in MS. 7517 in the Imperial library. I have already said that our text follows the *third* rather than the *first* of these Latin versions.

For further information, see Zacher, *Pseudo-callisthenes*, Halle, 1867; the editions of Julius Valerius by Angelo Mai (Milan, 1817), and Karl Müller (Paris, 1846); the Old High German version edited by H. Weismann (Frankfort-on-the-Main, 1850), the second volume of which, in particular, contains much information; the introduction to Kyng Alisaunder in Weber's Metrical Romances, &c. The edition called "Li Romans d'Alixandre, par Lambert li Tors et Alixandre de Bernay," ed. H. Michelant, and published by the Literary Society of Stuttgart in 1846, has not much to do with our present poem, as it declares Nectanabus *not* to have been Alexander's father. I have already enumerated the alliterative romances extant in English. Besides these there are, in rimed metre, the "Kyng Alysaunder" printed by Weber, and other poems referring, not to the infancy of Alexander, but to his acts and death, such as, e. g., "The Buik of the most noble and vailzeand Conquerour Alexander the Great," printed at Edinburgh for the Bannatyne Club in 1831, being a reprint from The Romaunce of Alexander, containing the Forray of Gadderis, first printed at the same place by A. Arbuthnot in 1580. There is also a fragment about the death of Alexander in "Ancient Metrical Romances from the Auchinleck MS."; Abbotsford Club, 1836; and there may be others, for I have not thought it necessary to make further search.

§ 6. ON THE DIALECT OF THE POEMS.

The spelling of the "Alisaunder" being uncertain owing to the lateness of the MS., it is not necessary to say more about its dialect

than has been said already. The following remarks refer, therefore, to the "Werwolf."[1]

The plurals of nouns generally end in *-es*, but there are several plurals in *-us*, such as *dedus;* in *-is*, as *bestis* (l. 181), and *talis;* in *-ys*, as *buschys* (21); in *-en*, as *stepchilderen, eiȝyen* (eyne, eyes); and even in *-esse*, as *bodiesse, lordesse* (4539), *heiȝresse* (4778), with which should be compared the curious spelling *antresse* for *antres* or *aunteres* = she ventures. The plural of *hors* is the same as the singular; the plural of *fo* is both *fon* (or *fone*) and *fos*. Also *ken, kin*, and *kyn* occur for *kine*. The genitive singular ends commonly in *-es*, but sometimes in *-is*, as in *godis* (266), *goddis* (254); cf. *goddes* (340). We also find the genitive forms *fader, moder, douȝter, William, Marie, sonne*.

As regards adjectives, we may note the comparatives *herre, nerre* (higher, nearer), and the superlatives *frelokest* and *manlokest*, the former of which is used adverbially. The endings *-ly* and *-liche* are used both for adverbs and adjectives, and without any distinction. *Eche a* is used for *each;* *selue* sometimes has the sense of *very* (1149); whilst *wiche a* answers to the German *was für*, what sort of a, as in l. 3354. *Þe* and *Þa* are used sometimes for *Þat;* *Þis* as well as *Þise* is used to mean *these;* *Þo* to mean *those;* *Þilke* is used in the plural, and *swiche* is used to mean *such*. For *I*, the forms are *i, y, ich;* for *thou*, we have *Þou, Þow, Þouȝ;* pl. *ȝe* in the nominative, *ȝow, ȝouȝ, ow* (l. 106) in the dat. and accusative. The third personal pronoun is *he*, gen. *his, is*, or *hise;* dat. and acc. *hym, him:* feminine, *sche, che, ȝhe* (and *hue* in the "Alisaunder"); gen. dat. and acc. *her, hir, here, hire;* neuter, *hit, it;* acc. *hit, it*. Plural nom. *Þei, Þai, Þey;* gen. *here, her;* dat. *hem* (and once *Þaim*); acc. *hem*. *Min* is a possessive pronoun, as *min* hert, *min* avowe. The pronoun of the second person is often joined on to the verb, as in *artow, knowestow, bestow, seidestow, schaltow* or *schalstow, findestow, witow* or *wittow;*

[1] I apologize for the slip-shod name here given to the poem, and which is here, and elsewhere throughout the volume, used for brevity's sake, and because it cannot be mistaken. It is an abbreviation of "William and the Werwolf," the title used by Sir F. Madden in the former edition. Strictly, however, the true title is—*William of Palerne.*

and often also to the word *þat*, as *þatou* or *þatow*. *Ho* is used for *who*, *ho-so* for *who-so*, *whos* for *whose*, *wham* for *whom*.

But the most noticeable and distinctive endings are found amongst the verbs, and I pass on to them as being of more interest. The infinitive ends in *-en* or *-e*, but occasionally also in *-y* or *-ye*, as *deseuy*, *wonye*; cf. *derie* in *Alis.* 1240. In the present tense, 2nd person, we find both *-est* and *-es*; the former occurring frequently, as in *kuþest* (603), *komest* (330); examples of the latter are *trestes* (970), *knowes* (1174). They seem to be used indifferently, for *tellest* and *trestes* occur in the same line, and *hast* in l. 604 is followed by *þow has* two lines lower. In the same way, we find *grettes* and *menskfulles* written for *grettest* and *menskfullest*, showing that the pronunciation of the *t* was very slight. Besides which, the vowel may have been pronounced thickly or indistinctly, thus accounting for such a form as *clepus* (249). In the 3rd person singular, we find *-es*, as in *lenges* (961); *-is*, as in *hentis* (907); and *-us*, as in *sittus* (446); as well as *-eþ*, as in *knoweþ* (559). In the 3rd person pl. we have *-un*, as in *clepun*; *-en*, as in *þurlen*; *-e*, as in *singe*; *-us*, as in *tellus* (198); *-es*, as in *calles* (239), *longes* (360). The following are examples of the past tense singular; strong verbs, *gaf*, *ȝald*, *founde*, *seiȝe*, *lad*, *dede*, *kom*, *rod*, *lep*, *aros*, &c.; weak verbs, *grette*, *lerde*, *pleide*, *clipte*, *praide*, *clepud*, &c. The plural generally ends in *-en* or *-e*, but the *-e* is occasionally dropped. Examples are *blesseden*, *gretten*, *sewede*, *come*, *told* (1366). But we should especially observe the endings of the imperative mood plural, which besides the ending *-eth*, as in *preieth* (164), *sendeþ* (2068), *witeþ* (2069), *troweþ* (2112), frequently takes the ending *-es*, as in *listenes*, *gretes*, *mornes*, *standes*, *awakes*, *fodes*, *leses*, *leues*, &c. It is worth notice, further, that the very same word takes both forms; for we find both *preieth* and *preiȝes* (which, however, is written *preiȝed*, 5529), *listenes* and *lusteneþ*, and *gretes* in l. 355 is followed by *greteþ* in l. 359.[1] We should also especially note the forms of the present participle, which ends in *-and*, as *deland*, *wepand*, *glimerand*, *liand*, *ligand*, *lourande*, *liuand*; in *-end*, as *touchend*, *heriend*, *lastend*, *slepend*, *hotend*, *braundissende*; occasionally in *-inde*, as *lorkinde*, *sikinde*,

[1] So also *lengþes*, 4348; *lengþeþ*, 4353.

gapind; and sometimes in *-ing*. Here again, the same word takes all the forms; for we find *sikande, sikand, sikende, sikinde,* and *siking*. The more usual form seems to be in *-and*, but the pronunciation of the *a* seems to have been obscure, and we may consider the usual ending to be *'nd;* for if we throw the accent on the first syllable, it is not easy to enunciate the unaccented vowel very clearly. Examples of past participles are *slawe, sleie, slayn, schapen, bi-hold, portreide, gladed, maked, take, arise* (1297), *lore* (1360), *bore, seie, seiȝen, y-charged, y-clepud*. The ending *-e* in the infinitive is sometimes dropped. For the forms of the auxiliary and anomalous verbs, see the glossary; s.v. *Ben, Can, Dar, Mot, Mow, Out, Schal, Thurt, Wite, Wol*. Here also numerous forms occur; e. g. the present plural of *to be* is *ben, bene, buþ, arn,* and *aren*.

The word *ne* often coalesces with the verb following; hence *nis* (ne is), *nas* (ne was), *nere* (ne were), *nath* (ne hath), *nadde* (ne hadde), *nel* (ne wil), *nold* (ne wold), *not* (ne wot), *nist* (ne wist).

A few peculiarities of spelling may be noted. The *sh* sound is denoted both by *sch* and *ch;* hence *chamly, chold, chortly,* are put for *schamly, schold, schortly*. Also *scheche* is written for *seche*. *C* sometimes takes the place of *s*, as in *plece, sece, wice*. *Wh* is written for *w*, as in *whar* (were), and *whieȝs*. *Th* is sometimes used where we should expect *t*, as in the *Romans of Partenay;* thus *wiȝtthli* is put for *wiȝtli, miȝth* is used to mean (*I*) *might*. *V* is sometimes found for a final *u*, as in *nov, hov, inov*. *H* occurs at the beginning of words where it should not, as in *hordere, hende* (end), *held* (eld, old age). *N* is prefixed to *eiȝ, ones, oþer,* &c., thus forming *neiȝ, nones, noþer,* in places where it really belongs to the word preceding. *Þe* is joined sometimes to the word following, as in *þemperour, þerþe, þende*. For the careful and exact manner (exact, probably, because the scribe did it without thinking and as a matter of course), in which *nay* is distinguished from *no*, and *ȝe* from *ȝis*, see the Glossarial Index. For the distinction between *þou* and *ȝe*, see p. xli.

In what part of England, then, was the poem written? The forms seem to be mainly West Midland, with admixture both of Northern and of Southern ones. The frequency of the imperatives in *-es*, and other indications, lead Mr Morris to call it a specimen of

Shropshire dialect,[1] whilst Sir F. Madden subscribes to the opinion of Bryant, that it may belong to Gloucestershire; and, indeed, Gloucester is the only place which is mentioned in it. There is also, perhaps, some significance in the fact that the MS. contains, besides "William of Palerne," some poems that have been attributed to Robert of *Gloucester*. In either case, we are sure of the locality within the compass of a county or two, and may, I think, call it West Midland without error, though the exact border between the West Midland and Southern cannot be expected to be very clearly defined. It may be remarked that both Gloucester and Wheatenhurst (where Sir Humphrey de Bohun's mansion was situated) lie close to the important river Severn, and it is possible that the dialect of that part of Gloucestershire may have been affected by that circumstance, just as we often trace the influence of the Danish element near our sea-coasts. The real difficulty consists in this, that it is hard to account for the use of the Northumbrian plural-ending *-es* at a place situated so far to the South. A comparison of the vocabulary with the glossary of Shropshire words in Hartshorne's *Salopia Antiqua* shewed less resemblance than I had expected to find; yet it may be useful to mention that his list contains (and sometimes illustrates) the following words in particular, viz.:—*Bell* (vb.), *Chall* (= *Chaul*), *Clip*, *Clout*, *Cratch*, *Delue*, *Dever*, *Eam* (*Eme*), *Gain* (cf. *Gaynest*), *Haws*, *Heps* (*Hepus*), *Hye* (to hasten), *Lap* (vb.), *Learn* (to teach), *Litherly* (*Luþerly*), *Mase*, *Pill* (vb.), *Rin*, *Shaws*, *Sike*, *Stive*, *Thirl*, *Twinne*, *War*.

§ 7. ON THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN "THOU" AND "YE."

The distinction between the use of *thou* and *ye* (with their accompanying *singular* and *plural* verbs) is so well kept up throughout

[1] Compare Audelay's poems (in the Shropshire dialect), ed. J. O. Halliwell, for the Percy Society. It may be said that, if the scribe of "William of Palerne" lived in Gloucestershire, he may yet have been a Shropshire man; but this argument loses in force if it has to be often appealed to in cases of difficulty. We must first try to reconcile the evidence we possess, before rejecting any portion of it. In the present instance, the MS. is a very good one. It may be confidently expected, however, that something tolerably definite may be known about English dialects at no very distant period, and the present question may be then more easily decided.

these poems that it would not be well to lose so good an opportunity of pointing it out. It was one of those niceties of speech which it was the poet's especial business to observe. The clearest way of pointing out the distinction is to tabulate the best examples of it.

P. 13. The child, addressing the emperor, uses *ye, you,* &c. P. 14. Emperor to child—*thou;* child to his (supposed) father—*ye;* emperor to cowherd—*thou.* P. 16. Cowherd to child—*thou.* P. 29. Alexandrine to Melior—*ye;* Melior to Alexandrine—*thou.* P. 30. Melior to William—*thou.* Pp. 37—39. Alexandrine to William, and William to Alexandrine—*thou.* P. 43. William to emperor, and lords to emperor—*ye.* P. 50. Messengers to Melior—*ye.* P. 57. Melior to William, *after betrothal*—*ye.* P. 73. One emperor to another—*thou.* P. 80. Melior to William, *in excitement*—*thou.* P. 81. Melior to William, *in submission*—*ye.* P. 92. Melior to William, *after escaping peril*—*thou.* P. 96. Priest to queen—*ye.* P. 104. Queen to her handmaid—*thou;* handmaid to queen—*ye.* P. 105. Queen to William, begins with *ye* in the *conventional* phrase "ȝe me saye," but otherwise uses *thou,* until she has virtually abdicated in William's favour, after which she uses *ye,* p. 113, and especially note ll. 3954, 3955. P. 126. William, now of high rank, to his prisoner, a king—*thou.* P. 129. The captive king to the queen—*ye.* P. 134. King to William (asking)—*ye;* William to the king (granting)—*thou.* P. 136. Messengers to the Queen of Spain—*ye;* but in relating *William's* message, containing rebukes and violent threats, they change to *thou.* P. 142. Queen to her step-son—*thou;* but in putting a polite question—*ȝe* (l. 4460). P. 144. Alphouns to William, uses the *conventional* phrase "crist mot *ȝou* saue"—but otherwise uses *thou.* He is answered by William with *ye,* expressing the *utmost deference,* and asking him who he is. This is sufficient to show that *thou* is the language of a lord to a servant, of an equal to an equal, and expresses also companionship, love, permission, defiance, scorn, threatening; whilst *ye* is the language of a servant to a lord, and of compliment, and further expresses honour, submission, entreaty. *Thou* is used with singular verbs, and the possessive pronoun *thine;* but *ye* requires plural verbs, and the possessive *your.* In the "Alisaunder" we find the same usages. The Prince of Persia

calls the King of Egypt—*ye;* the king scornfully replies with *thou.* The same Nectanabus, who "speaks lordly," and is too proud to call Queen Olympias *Madam,* and will only call her *Lady,* audaciously addresses her as *thou,* but there are in one or two places exceptions which shew a corruptness in the text. She replies with *thou,* as a lady should who would preserve her dignity. As for Alexander, he coolly uses *thou* to everybody, and especially to his father, l. 1198, and his mother, l. 1103. Besides the insight we thus get into our forefathers' ways of speech, this investigation may serve to remind us editors that we are not to mistake *you* for *þou,* as in some MSS. is easily done, and that the frequent interchange of the forms is the result, not of confusion, but of design and orderly use.

In the present edition, every variation of spelling has had its own references assigned to it in the Glossary, at the cost of no small amount of labour; I hope this may prove of use to the student of our old English orthoëpy.

CORRECTIONS AND EMENDATIONS.

The only misprints of importance (of which I am aware) are these three:

William of Palerne, l. 2160. *For* ȝifter-neue *read* ȝister-neue.
„ „ „ l. 4054. *For* Karþe *read* Karpe.
„ „ „ l. 4827. *For* þempour *read* þemperour.

A few misprints occur of a more trivial nature, of which the principal are these:

William of Palerne, l. 46. *For* a baye *read* a-baye. L. 143. Insert a hyphen in "man-kynne." 219. The metrical dot should *precede* "miȝt," instead of *following* it. 225. Insert a comma after "fair." 787. Fol. 16 begins with this line, not with the next. 1004. Insert a hyphen in "middel-erþe." 1418. The MS. has "soſoū," not "soſou." 1576. No comma at the end of this line.

1597. The metrical dot should *precede* "reken." 1624. There should be a full stop at the end of the line. 1860. Insert a comma at the end of the line. 2100. *For* on-liue *read* on liue. 2204. This is correctly printed, according to the MS. But I propose to read, "*but* the witti werwolf, &c." 2430, 2560. Insert a hyphen in "bere-felles." 2580. Insert a comma after "crist." 3116. The metrical dot should *precede* "riȝt." 3995. Insert a hyphen in "þer-tille." 4068. Insert quotation-marks at the end of the line. 4263 (*note*). *For* 3622 *read* 3623. Page 220, l. 6. *For* Altera *read* altera.

Lines 5346, 5347, 5348 of *William of Palerne* rime together. This was, no doubt, unintentional.

In l. 396 of *Alisaunder*, the reading *hem* is necessary to the alliteration.

In the Glossary, the word *Hastely* is said to occur in l. 233. This should be corrected to 323.

By an unfortunate mistake on my part, the following notes by Sir F. Madden reached me too late for insertion in the Glossary.

"*Nones.* See Glossarial Remarks on *Laȝamon*, v. 17304, vol. iii. p. 492; and the Glossary to *Syr Gawayne*, in v. *Nonez.*

"*Peter.* See the Glossary to *Syr Gawayne*, in v. *Peter*, where other instances are given."

William of Palerne;

or

William and the Werwolf.

[Three leaves being lost at the beginning of the MS., their place is here supplied from the French Text.]

[Nus ne se doit celer ne taire,	[No one should keep it to himself or be silent,
ail set chose qui doie plaire,	If he knows something that will please,
kil ne le desponde en apert;	But should declare it openly;
car bien repont son sens et pert,	For he hides and loses his knowledge
qui nel despont apertement	Who does not declare it openly,
en la presence de la gent.	In the presence of people
por ce ne voel mon sens repondre,	Wherefore I will not hide my knowledge
que tot li mauvais puissent fondre;	That all the wicked may come to naught:
et cil qui me vaurront entendre,	And that those who would fain hear me
i puissent sens et bien aprendre.	May be able to learn knowledge and what is good.
car sens celes qui nest ois,	For knowledge hidden and unheard
est autresi, ce mest avis,	Is just like, in my opinion,
com maint tresor enferme sont,	Many treasures that are shut up,
qui nului bien ne preu ne font;	Which do good or advantage to no one;
tant comme il soient si enclos,	Just as they are when thus enclosed,
autresi est de sens repos;	So is it with concealed knowledge;
por ce ne voel le mien celer.	Wherefore I will not conceal mine.
ancois me plaist a raconter	Thus it pleases me to recount
selonc mon sens et mon memoire,	According to my knowledge and memory
le fait dune anciene estoire,	The event of an ancient story.

qui en Puille jadis avint
a .i. roi qui la terre tint.
Li rois embrons fu apeles ;
mult par fu grans sa poestes ;
bien tint em pais sa region,
et mult par fu de grant renon.
moilher avoit gente roine,
gentix dame de franche orine ;
et fille a riche empereor,
qui de Gresse tenoit lounor.
Felise avoit a non la dame ;
mult fu amee en son roiame.
navoient cun tot seul enfant,
petit tousel, ne gaires grant.
de .iiii. ans ert li damoisiax,
qui a merveilles estoit biax.
Guilliaumes ot lenfes a non,
mais la roine tout par non
lot a .ii. dames commande,
quele amena de son regne.
Gloriande est lune nounee,
Acelone ert lautre apelee.
celes le commande a garder,
a enseignier et doctriner,
moustrer et enseignier la loi,
comme on doit faire fil a roi.
en eles sest asseuree,
mais traie est et enganee,
et deceue laidement ;
mult porres bien oir comment.
Li rois Embrons .i. frere avoit,
a cui li regnes escaoit ;
et cil douna tant et promist,
et tant porchaca et tant fist
as gardes qui lenfant gardoient,
que dit li ont quil locirroient,

That happened once in Apulia
To a king who ruled the land.
The king was named Embrons ;
Very exceeding great was his power ;
He governed well his country in peace,
And was of exceeding great renown.
He had to wife a beauteous queen,
A gracious dame of noble origin ;
And who was daughter to a rich emperor,
Who ruled the dominion of Greece.
Felice was the lady's name ;
She was much loved in her kingdom.
They had but one only child,
A little lad, not very tall.
The prince was four years old,
And was marvellously fair.
William was the child's name,
But the queen very specially (?)
Has entrusted him to two ladies
Whom she brought from her own country.
One is named Gloriande,
The other was called Acelone.
To these she entrusts him, to keep him,
To teach and instruct him,
To shew and instruct him the law,
As one ought to teach a king's son.
In them she confided,
But was betrayed and defrauded
And deceived shamefully ;
You shall very soon hear how.
King Embrons had one brother,
To whom the kingdom would fall ;
And he bribed and promised so much,
And so contrived and managed
With the guardians who kept the child,
That they have told him they would kill it,

et le roi meisme ensement.
ja ont porquis lenherbement
dont il andoi mort recevront,
se Diex nel fait, li rois del mont.
En Palerne orent sejorne,
un mois entier en la cite,
entre le roi et la roine.
desous le maistre tor marbrine,
ot .i. vergier merveilles gent,
tot clos de mur et de cyment ;
si ot mainte sauvage beste.
.i. jor par une haute feste
i vint esbanoier li rois,
si chevalier et si borjois ;
et maint baron i ot venu,
la roine meisme i fu.
celes qui lenfant ont en garde,
(cui male flambe et maus fus arde !)
lont mene avoec lautre gent ;
mais por ce ne le font noient
que sel seussent la dolour,
qui de lenfant avint le jor.
Par le vergier li rois ombroie,
et la roine, a mult grant joie.
mais ne sevent com lor grans dex
lor est presens devant lor ex.
lenfes florietes va cuellant,
de lune a lautre va jouant.
atant esgardent la ramee,
saut un grans leus, goule baee,
a fendant vient comme tempeste ;
tuit se destornent por la beste ;
devant le roi, demainement,
son fil travers sa goule prent,
atant sen va ; mais la criee
fu apres lui mult tost levee.

And the king himself at the same time.
They have already provided the poison
From which they will both receive death,
If God, king of the world, permits it.
In Palermo they have dwelt,
A whole month in the city,
With the king and the queen.
Beneath the chief marble tower
Was an orchard wondrously fair,
All enclosed with walls and mortar ;
There was many a wild beast there.
One day, on a high festival,
The king came there to divert himself,
His chevaliers and his burgesses ;
And many a baron had come there,
The queen herself was there.
Those who have the child in charge,
(Whom evil flame and evil fire burn !)
Have brought him along with the rest ;
But they would have done nothing of the kind,
Had they but known the sorrow
That happened that day because of the child.
In the orchard the king shades himself,
And the queen, with very great joy.
But they know not how their great grief
Is present to them, before their eyes.
The child goes gathering flowers,
And playing from one to the other.
Just then they look at the bushes,
A huge wolf, with mouth open, leaps in,
Comes in at the opening like a tempest ;
All turn aside to avoid the beast ;
Before the king, noiselessly,
He takes his son across his mouth,
And then makes off ; but the cry
Was very soon raised after him.

lieve li dels, lieve li cris
del fil le roi qui est trais.
la roine souvent sescrie,
" aidies, aidies, Sainte Marie !
maisnie au roi, que faites vos ?
ja me morrai sil nest rescous ! "
Li rois demande ses chevax,
et fait monter tous ses vassax.
toute la vile si esmuet,
casceuns i keurt plus tost quil puet.
li rois le siut a esperon,
le gart acaingnent environ ;
mais li leus ert fors saillis,
a la campaigne sestoit mis ;
lenfes souvent sescrie et brait,
li rois lentent qui apres vait.
garde sel voit monter .i. mont,
de tost aler sa gent semont,
donques se par efforcent tuit,
li leus a tout lenfant sen fuit.
fuit sen li leus, et cil apres,
qui del ataindre sont engres.
desi au far le vont chacant,
il saut en leve a tout lenfant.
le far trespasse, perdus lont
li rois et cil qui o lui sont ;
ensi sen va en tel maniere
a tout lenfant la beste fiere.
li rois arriere sen retorne,
mult a le cuer et triste et morne,
de son enfant qua si perdu ;
a la cite sont revenu.
La roine maine tel duel,
morte voudroit estre, son vuel ;
pleure sovent, et crie, et brait,
a la beste son fil retrait.

The plaint arises, the cry arises
Of the son of the king that is borne away.
The queen oftentimes exclaims,
" Aid me, aid me, Holy Mary !
Ye household of the king, what do ye ?
Now I shall die if he be not rescued ! "
The king calls for his horses,
And makes all his vassals mount.
All the town is in commotion,
Every one runs as quickly as he can.
The king follows the wolf on the spur,
Watches him, encircling (him) around.
But the wolf had leapt far away,
And betaken himself to the plain ;
The child oft cries out and wails ;
The king, who goes after him, hears him.
He looks and sees him mount a hill,
Summons his men to come quickly.
Then all hasten on very fast,
The wolf flees away with the child.
The wolf flees away, and they after him,
Who are very desirous of reaching him.
Unto the Far [Straits of Messina] they chase him,
He leaps into the water with the child.
He crosses the Far, they have lost him,
The king and they who are with him ;
Thus in such a manner, flees away
The wild beast with the child.
The king returns back,
Very sorrowful and sad at heart,
For his child whom he has st ;
To the city have all returned.
The queen makes such a mourning,
She would fain be dead, had she her will ;
She weeps often, and cries and wails,
And demands back her child from the beast.

" fix, dous amis," fait la roine,
" tendre bouche, coulor rosine,
chose devine, espiritex,
qui cuidast que beste ne leus
vos devorast ! dix, quel eur !
lasse ! por coi vif tant ne dur ?
fix, ou sont ore ti bel oel,
li bel, li simple, sans orguel ?
tes frons li gens, et ti bel crin,
qui tuit sambloient fait dor fin ?
ta tendre face, et tes clers vis ?
ha cuers ! por coi ne me partis ?
quest devenue ta biautes,
et tes gens cors, et ta clartes ?
tes nes, ta bouche, et tes mentons,
et ta figure, et ta facons,
et ti bel brac, et tes mains blanches,
tes rains beles, et tes hanches,
tes beles jambes, et ti pie ;
lasse ! quel duel et quel pechie !
ja devoies tu estre fais
por devises et por sourhais !
or es a leu-garoul peuture,
li miens enfes, quele aventure !
mais je ne cuit, por nule chose,
beste sauvage soit si ose,
qui ton gent cors ost adamer,
plaier, sanc faire, ne navrer ;
ne cuit que ja dame dieu place,
ne que tel cruaute en face ! "

Ensi la dame se demente,
ensi por son fil se gaimente,
ensi le ploure, ensi le plaint.
mais tant le castoie et constraint
li rois, que tout laissier li fait
la dolor quele maine et fait ;

" Son, sweet love," saith the queen,
" Tender mouth, rosy colour,
Thing divine and spiritual,
Who could believe that beast or wolf
Could devour you ? O God ! what fortune !
Alas ! wherefore live I or last so long ?
Son, where are now thy beautiful eyes,
So beautiful, so innocent, without pride ?
Thy fair forehead, and thy lovely hair,
Which seemed all made of fine gold ?
Thy tender face, and thy clear looks ?
Oh heart ! wherefore hast thou not left me ?
What is become of thy beauty,
Thy sweet body, and thy fairness ?
Thy nose, thy mouth, and thy chin,
And thy form and fashion,
And thy fair arm, and thy white hands,
Thy fair reins and thy thighs,
Thy fair legs, and thy feet ;
Alas ! what sorrow and what fault !
Thou oughtest only to have been made
For pleasures and for desires !
Now art thou food for the werwolf,
My child ! what a mischance !
But I cannot believe, on any account,
A wild beast would be so daring
As to hurt thy tender body,
To wound it, make it bleed, or tear it ;
I cannot believe that it would please our Lord God,
Or that He would do such cruelty to it."
Thus the lady is in despair,
Thus she laments for her son,
Thus she weeps, thus she complains for him.
But the king so corrects and restrains her,
That he makes her altogether leave off
The grief which she was continuing and making ;

ensi la dame se rapaie. — Thus the lady becomes tranquilized.
mais or est drois que vos retraie — But now it is right for me to tell you
del leu qui o lenfant senfuit ; — About the wolf that fled with the child;
tant la porte et jor et nuit, — So far he carries it both day and night,
et tante terre trespassee, — And traverses so much ground,
que pres de Roume en la contree — That in the country near Rome,
en une grant forest sarreste, — In a great forest, he stops;
ou ot mainte sauvage beste. — Where was many a wild beast.
la se repose .viii. jors entiers ; — There he rests for eight whole days;
lenfant de quanques fu mestiers — Whatever the child had need of,
li a porquis la beste franche, — The noble beast provided for it,
conques de rien not mesestance. — So that it had discomfort in nothing.
en terre a une fosse faite, — In the ground he has made a trench,
et dedens herbe mise et traite, — And in it placed and put grass,
et la feuchiere et la lihue, — And also fern and herbs (?)
que par dedens a espandue. — Which within it he has spread.
la nuit le couche joste soi ; — At night, he lies down near him:
li leus-garous le fil le roi — The werwolf embraces the king's son
lacole de ses .iiii. pies. — With his four feet.
si est de lui aprivoisies, — And so familiar with him
li fix le roi, que tot li plaist — Is the king's son, that all pleases him,
ce que la beste de lui fait ;] — Whatever the beast does for him;]

[Fol. 4.] The child is pleased and obedient.

þat it apertly was apayed · for *pro*fite þat he feld,
& [wrouȝt][1] buxu*m*ly by þe bestes wille · in wise as it coube.

An old cowherd dwelt in the forest,

Hit bi-fel in þat forest · þere fa t by-side,
þer woned a wel old cherl · þat was a couherde,
þat fele winte*r*res in þat forest · fayre had kepud
Mennes ken of þe cuntre · as a comen herde ;
& þus it bitide þat time · as tellen oure bokes,

who kept men's kine there.

He came by chance to the burrow where the child was.

þis cowherd comes on a time · to kepen is bestes
Fast by-side þe borwȝ · þere þe barn was inne.
þe herd had wiþ him an hound · his hert to liȝt,

[1] A verb is evidently wanting to complete the sense. Perhaps we should read, "And *wrouȝt* buxumly by the bestes wille, &c."—M.

forto bayte on his bestes · wanne þai to brode went.
þe herd sat þan wiþ hou*n*d · aȝene þe hote sunne,
Nouȝt fully a furlong · fro þat fayre child,
clouȝtand kyndely his schon · as to[1] here craft falles.
þat while was þe werwolf · went a-boute his praye,
what behoued to þe barn · to bring as he miȝt.
þe child þan darked in his den · dernly him one,
& was a big bold barn · & breme of his age,
For spakly speke it couþe tho · & spedeliche to-wawe.
Louely lay it a-long · in his lonely denne,
& buskede hi*m* out of þe buschys · þat were blowed grene,
& leued ful louely · þat lent grete schade,
& briddes ful bremely · on þe bowes singe.
what for melodye þat þei made · in þe mey sesoun,
þat litel child listely · lorked out of his caue,
Faire floures forto fecche · þat he bi-fore hi*m* seye,
& to gadere of þe grases · þat grene were & fayre.
& whan it was out went · so wel hit him liked,
þe sauor of þe swete sesou*n* · & song of þe briddes,
þat [he][2] ferde fast a-boute · floures to gadere,
& layked him long while · to lesten þat merþe.
þe couherdes hou*n*d þat time · as happe by-tidde,
feld foute of þe child · and fast þider fulwes ;
& sone as he it seiȝ · soþe forto telle,
he gan to berke on þat barn · and to baie it hold,
þat it wax neiȝ of his witt · wod for fere,
and comsed þan to crye · so kenly and schille,
& wepte so wonder fast wite þou for sothe,
þat þe son of þe cry com · to þe cowherde euene,
þat he wist witerly it was · þe voys of a childe.
þan ros he vp radely · & ran þider swiþe,
& drow hi*m* toward þe den · bi his dogges noyce.
bi þat time was þe barn · for bere of þat hou*n*de,

He sat with his dog, and clouted his shoes.

The child lay hid in the den.

Lured by the birds and by the fair flowers.

he came out and gathered flowers, and played about.

The dog tracked him, and began to bark

[Fol. 4 *b*.] The child was frightened, and cried out.

The cowherd followed the child to the den,

[1] MS. "afto."
[2] Read, "that *it* ferde," or "*he* ferde."—M.

drawe him in to his den · & darked þer stille,
& wept eu*er*e as it wolde · a-wede for fere ;
& eu*er*e þe dogge at þe hole · held it at a baye.
and looked in. & whan þe kouherd com þid[*er*]e [1] · he koured lowe
to bi-hold in at þe hole · whi his hou*n*d berkyd.
þanne of-saw he ful sone · þat semliche child,
þat so loueliche lay & wep · in þat loþli caue,
He saw the child lying there in clothes of gold. cloþed ful komly · for ani kud kinges sone,
In gode cloþes of gold · a-greþed ful riche,
wiþ perrey & pellure · pertelyche to þe riȝttes.
þe cherl wondred of þat chau*n*ce · & chastised his dogge,
He rebuked his dog, and enticed the child to come to him. bad him blinne of his berking · & to þe barn talked,
acoyed it to come to him · & clepud hit oft,
& foded it wiþ floures · & wiþ faire by-hest,
& hiȝt it hastely to haue · what it wold ȝerne,
appeles & alle þinges · þat childern after wilnen.
The child came out, and he took it in his arms, so, forto seiȝ al þe soþe · so faire þe cherl glosed,
þat þe child com of þe caue · & his criynge stint.
þe cherl ful cherli þat child · tok in his armes,
& kest hit & clipped · and oft crist þonkes,
þat hade him sent þo sonde · swiche prey to finde.
and took it home to his wife. wiȝtliche wiþ þe child · he went to his house,
and bi-tok it to his wif · tiȝtly to kepe.
a gladere wommo*n* vnder god · no miȝt go on erþe,
She asked the child its name, and it said, "William." þan was þe wif wiþ þe child · witow for soþe.
sche kolled it ful kindly · and askes is name,
& it answered ful sone · & seide, "william y hiȝt."
þan was þe godwif glad · and gan it faire kepe,
þat it wanted nouȝt · þat it wold haue,
[Fol. 5.] þat þei ne fond him as faire · as for here state longed,
They had no children of their own, & þe beter, be ye sure · for barn ne had þei none
brouȝt forþ of here bodies ; · here bale was þe more.
so agreed to adopt it. but soþly þai seide þe child · schuld weld al here godis,
Londes & ludes as eyer · after here lif dawes.
but from þe cherl & þe child · nov chaunge we oure tale,

[1] Read "thidere."—M.

For i wol of þe werwolf · a wile nov speke.

Whanne þis werwolf was come · to his wolnk[1] denne,
& hade brouȝt bilfoder · for þe barnes mete,
þat he hade wonne with wo · wide wher a-boute,
þan fond he nest & no neiȝ · for nouȝt nas *þer* leued.
& whan þe best þe barn missed · so balfully he g[r]inneþ,[2]
þat alle men vpo*n* molde · no miȝt telle his sorwe.
For reuliche gan he rore · & rente al his hide,
& fret oft of þe erþe · & fel doun on swowe,
& made þe most dool · þat man miȝt diuise.
& as þe best in his bale · þer a-boute wente,
he fond þe feute al fresh · where forþ þe herde
hadde bore þan barn · beter it to ȝeme.
wiȝtly þe werwolf · þan went bi nose
cuene to þe herdes house · & hastely was þare.
þere walked he a-boute þe walles · to winne in siȝt;
& at þe last lelly · a litel hole he findes.
þere pried he in priuely · and p*er*tiliche bi-holdes
hov hertily þe herdes wif · hules þat child,
& hov fayre it fedde · & fetisliche it baþede,
& wrouȝt wiþ it as wel · as ȝif it were hire owne.
þanne was þe best bliþe i-nov · for þe barnes sake,
For he wist it schold be warded · wel þanne at þe best.
& hertily for þat hap · to-heuene-ward he loked,
& þroliche þonked god · mani þousand siþes,
& seþþen went on is way · whider as him liked;
but whiderward wot i neuer · witow for soþe.
ak nowþe ȝe þat arn hende · haldes ow stille,
& how þat best þerwe bale · was brouȝt out of kinde,
I wol ȝou telle as swiþe · trewly þe soþe.

When the werwolf returned, he found the *nest*, but no *eggs* in it.

He roared, rent his hide, and swooned.

Soon he found the cowherd's track,

and went to his house.

Looking through a hole, he saw how well the child was being tended,

and thanked God, and went his way.

Listen and hear how he became a werwolf.

Werwolf was he no*n* · wox of kinde,
ac komen was he of kun · þat kud was ful nobul;
For þe kud king of spayne · was kindely his fader.

[Fol. 5 *b*.]
He was of noble birth, for his father was King of Spain.

[1] *Sic* in MS; *read* wlonk? Cf. ll. 468, 1634. [2] See note.

he gat him, as god ȝaf grace · on his ferst wyue,
This king's first wife died, & at þe burþ of þat barn · þe bold lady deyde.
sipþen þat kud king so · bi his conseyl wrout,
and he married the daughter of the prince of Portugal, another wif þat he wedded · a worchipful ladi,
þe princes douȝter of portingale · to proue þe soþe.
but lelliche þat ladi in ȝouþe · hadde lerned miche schame,
For al þe werk of wicchecraft · wel y-nouȝ che couȝþe,
nede nadde ȝhe namore · of nigramauncy to lere.
a lady skilled in witchcraft, named Braunde. of coninge of wicche-craft · wel y-nouȝ ȝhe couȝde,
& braunde was þat bold quene · of burnes y-clepud.
þe kinges furst child was fostered · fayre as it ouȝt,
& had lordes & ladies · it louely to kepe,
& fast gan þat frely barn · fayre forto wexe.
She, seeing her stepson's beauty, þe quene his moder on a time · as a mix þouȝt,
how faire & how fetis it was · & freliche schapen.
feared that her own son would never be king. & þis þanne þouȝt sche þroly · þat it no schuld neuer
kuuere to be king þer · as þe kinde eyre,
whille þe kinges ferst sone · were þer a-liue.
She therefore studied how to harm her stepson, þan studied sche stifly · as stepmoderes wol alle,
to do dernly a despit · to here stepchilderen ;
Feþli a-mong foure schore · vnneþe findestow on gode.
but truly tiȝt hadde þat quene · take hire to rede
to bring þat barn in bale · botles for euer,
þat he ne schuld wiȝtli in þis world · neuer weld reaume.
and made a strong ointment, and anointed him with it. a noynement anon sche made · of so grete strengþe,
bi enchaunmens of charmes · þat euel chaunche hire tide,
þat whan þat womman per-wiȝt · hadde þat worli child
ones wel an-oynted þe child · wel al a-bowte,
He became a werwolf, but still had his wit. he wex to a werwolf · wiȝtly þer-after,
al þe making of man · so mysse hadde ȝhe schaped.
ac his witt welt he after · as wel as to-fore,
but lelly oþer likenes · þat longeþ to man kynne,
but a wilde werwolf · ne walt he neuer after.
[Fol. 6.] & whanne þis witty werwolf · wiste him so schaped,
he knew it was bi þe craft · of his kursed stepmoder,

& þouȝt or he went a-way · he wold ȝif he miȝt
wayte hire sum wicked torn · what bi-tidde after.
& as bliue, boute bod · he braydes to þe quene,
& hent hire so hetterly · to haue hire a-strangeled,
þat hire deth was neiȝ diȝt · to deme þe soþe.
but carfuli gan sche crie · so kenely and lowde,
þat maydenes & miȝthi men · manliche to hire come,
& wolden brusten þe best · nad he be þe liȝttere,
& fled a-way þe faster · in-to ferre londes,
so þat pertely in-to poyle · he passed þat time,
as þis fortune bi-fel · þat i told of bi-fore;
þus was þis witty best · werwolf ferst maked.
but now wol i stint a stounde · of þis sterne best,
& tale of þe tidy child · þat y of told ere.

He sought to avenge himself, and tried to strangle her. She cried out, and he fled, and went to Apulia. We now return to the child.

þus passed is þe first pas · of þis pris tale,
& ȝe þat louen & lyken · to listen a-ni more,
alle wiȝth on hol hert · to þe heiȝ king of heuene
preieth a pater noster · priuely þis time
for þe hend erl of herford · sir humfray de bowne,
þe king edwardes newe · at glouseter þat ligges.
For he of frensche þis fayre tale · ferst dede translate,
In ese of englysch men · in englysch speche;
& god graunt hem his blis · þat godly so prayen!

Here ends the first Passus. Pray for Sir Humphrey de Bohun, earl of Hereford, who caused this tale to be translated.

Leue lordes, now listenes · of þis litel barn,
þat þe kinde kowherde-wif · keped so fayre.
ȝhe wist it as wel or bet · as ȝif it were hire owne,
til hit big was & bold · to buschen on felde,
& coupe ful craftily · kepe alle here bestes,
& bring hem in þe best lese · whan hem bi-stode nede,
& wited hem so wisly · þat wanted him neuer one.
a bowe al-so þat bold barn · bi-gat him þat time,
& so to schote vnder þe schawes · scharplyche he lerned,
þat briddes & smale bestes · wiþ his bow he quelles

The cowherd's wife took care of William, who grew up as a herdsman. He learnt to shoot well,

so plenteousliche *in* his play · þat, pertly to telle,
[Fol. 6 b.] whanne he went hom eche niȝt · wiþ is droue of bestis,
and brought home conies and hares. he com him-self y-charged · wiþ conyng & hares,
wiþ fesau*n*s & feldfares · and oþer foules grete ;
þat þe herde & his hende wif · & al his hole meyne
þat bold barn wiþ his bowe · by þat time fedde.
He had many young comrades, & ȝit hadde fele felawes · in þe forest eche day,
ȝong bold barnes · þat bestes al-so keped.
& bliþe was eche a barn · ho best miȝt him plese,
& folwe him for his fredom · & for his faire þewes.
with whom he always shared what he shot. for what þing willam wan · a-day wiþ his bowe,
were it feþered foul · or foure-foted best,
ne wold þis william neu*er* on · wiþ-hold to him-selue,
til alle his felawes were ferst · feffed to here paie.
so kynde & so corteys · comsed he þere,
þat alle ledes him louede · þat loked on him ones ;
& blesseden þat him bare · & brouȝt in-to þis worlde,
so moche manhed & murþe · schewed þat child eu*er*e.

One day, the emperor of Rome rode out to hunt, Hit tidde after on a time · as tellus oure bokes,
as þis bold barn his bestes · bliþeliche keped,
þe riche emp*er*our of rome · rod out for to hunte
In þat faire forest · feiþely for to telle,
wiþ alle his menskful meyne · þat moche was & nobul.
and found a great boar. þan fel it hap þat þei fou*n*de · ful sone a grete bor,
& huntyng wiþ hou*n*d & horn · harde alle sewede.
þe emp*er*owr entred in a wey · euene to attele
to haue bruttenet þat bor · & þe abaie seþþen ;
The emperor lost his way in the forest. but missely marked he is way · & so manly he rides,
þat alle his wies were went · ne wist he neu*er* whider.
so ferforþ *fra*m his men · feþly for to telle,
þat of horn ne of hou*n*d · ne miȝt he here sowne,
&, boute eny liuing lud · left was he one.
Riding along, he saw a werwolf chasing a hart. þemp*er*our on his stif stede · a sty forþ þanne takes
to herken after his hou*n*des · oþer horn schille ;
so komes þ*er* a werwolf · riȝt bi þat way þenne,

grimly after a gret hert · as þat god wold,
& chased him þurth chaunce · þere þe child pleide,
þat kept þe kowherdes bestes · i carped of bi-fore. [Fol. 7.]
þemperour þanne hastely · þat huge best folwed — He followed them, but lost sight of both.
as stiffuly as is stede miȝt · strecche on to renne ;
but by-þan he com by þat barn · & a-boute loked,
þe werwolf & þe wilde hert · were a-weye boþe,
þat he ne wist in þis world · were þei were bi-come,
ne whiderward he schuld seche · to se of hem more.
but þanne bi-held he a-boute · & þat barn of-seye, — Then he beheld William, and wondered at his fairness,
hov fair how fetys it was · & freliche schapen ;
so fair a siȝt of seg · ne sawe he neuer are,
of lere ne of lykame · lik him nas none,
ne of so sad a semblant · þat euer he say wiþ eiȝyen.
þemperour wend witerly · for wonder of þat child, — thinking him of fairy birth.
þat feiȝþely it were of feyrye · for fairenes þat it welt,
& for þe curteys cuntenaunce · þat it kudde þere.

Riȝtly þenne þemperour · wendes him euene tille, — William greets the emperor,
þe child comes him agayn · & curtesliche him gretes.
In hast þemperour hendely · his gretyng him ȝeldes,
and a-non riȝttes after · askes his name, — who asks him his name and kindred.
& of what kin he were kome · komanded him telle.
þe child þanne soberliche seide · "sir, at ȝoure wille
I wol ȝow telle as tyt · trewely alle þe soþe.
william, sire, wel y wot · wiȝes me calles ; — "William is my name.
I was bore here fast bi · by þis wodes side.
a kowherde, sire, of þis kontrey · is my kynde fader, — A cowherd is my father.
and my menskful moder · is his meke wiue.
þei han me fostered & fed · faire to þis time,
& here i kepe is kyn · as y kan on dayes ;
but, sire, by crist, of my kin · know i no more." — I know no more of my kindred."
whan þemperour[1] hade herd · holly his wordes,
he wondered of his wis speche · as he wel miȝt,
& seide, "þow bold barn · biliue i þe praye,

[1] Read "themperour." The bar across the *p* is deficient.—M.

"Go, call the cowherd," said the emperor.

Go calle to me þe cowherde · þow clepus þi fadere,
For y wold talk [wiþ] him[1] · tiþinges to frayne."

"Nay, sir, it may turn to his hurt."

"nay, sire, bi god," quaþ þe barn, "be ȝe riȝt sure,
bi *crist*, þat is krowned · heye king of heuen,
[Fol. 7 b.] For me no*n* harm schal he haue · neue*r* in his liue!"

"Rather, it may turn to his profit."

"ac pe*r*auenture þurth goddis [grace][2] · to gode may it turne,
For-þi bring him hider · faire barn, y preye."

"I will trust your word for that."

"I schal, sire," seide þe child · "for saufliche y hope[3]
I may worche on ȝour word · to wite him fro harm."
"ȝa, safliche," seide þempe*r*our · "so god ȝif me ioie!"
þe child witly þanne wende · wiþ-oute ani more,

William tells the cowherd that a great lord would speak with him.

comes to þe couherdes hows · & clepud him sone;
For he feiȝliche wen[d][4] · þat he his fader where;
& seide þan, "swete sir · s[o] ȝou criste help!
Goþ yond to a gret lord · þat gayly is tyred,
& on þe feirest frek · for soþe þat i haue seie;
and he wilnes wiȝtli · wiþ ȝou to speke;
For godis loue goþ til him swiþe · lest he agreued wex."

"Did you tell him I was here?"

"what? sone," seide þe couherde · "seidestow i was here?"

"ȝa, sire, sertes," seide þe child · "but he swor formest

"He promised your safety."

þat ȝe schuld haue no harm · but hendely for gode
he praide ȝou com speke wiþ him · & passe a-ȝein sone."
þe cherl grocching forþ goþ · wiþ þe gode child,
& euene to þempe*r*our · þei etteleden sone.

The emperor asks the cowherd if he has ever seen the emperor.

þempe*r*our a-non riȝt · as he him of-seie,
clepud to him þe couherde · & curteysly seide;
"now telle me, felawe, be þi feiȝþ · for no þing ne wonde,
sei þou eue*r* þempe*r*our · so þe crist help?"

[1] The sense and cadence of the line seem to require "with" before "him."—M.

[2] Read "thurth goddis *grace*."—M.

[3] MS. for y saufliche y hope, *where there seems to be a* y *too much.*

[4] See note.

"nay, sire, bi crist," quaþ þe couherde · "þat king is of heuen,
I nas neuer ȝet so hardi · to neȝh him so hende
þere i schuld haue him seie · so me wel tyme." 279
"sertes," þan seide þemperour · "þe soþe forto knowe,
þat y am þat ilk weiȝh · i wol wel þou wite;
al þe regal of rome · to riȝtleche y weld.
þerfore, couherde, i þe coniure · & comande att alle,
bi vertu of þing þat þou most · in þis world louest, 284
þatow telle me tiȝtly · truly þe soþe,
whether þis bold barn · be lelly þin owne,
oþer comen of oþer kin · so þe crist help!"
þe couherd comsed to quake · for kare & for drede 288
whanne he wist witerly · þat he was his lorde,
& biliue in his hert be-þout · ȝif he him gun lye,
he wold prestely perceyue · pertiliche him þout.
þer-fore trewly as tyt · he told him þe soþe, 292
how he him fond in þat forest · þere fast bi-side,
clothed in comly cloþing · for any kinges sone,
vnder an holw ok · þurth help of his dogge,
& how faire he hade him fed · & fostered vij winter.
"bi crist," seide þemperour · "y con þe gret þonke, 297
þat þou hast [seide][1] me þe soþe · of þis semly childe,
& tine schalt þou nouȝt þi trawayle · y trow, at þe last!
ac wend schal it wiþ me · witow for soþe, 300
Min hert so harde wilnes · to haue þis barne,
þat i wol in no wise · þou wite it no lenger."
whan þemperour so sayde · soþe forto telle,
þe couherde was in care · i can him no-þing white. 304
ac witerly dorst he nouȝt werne · þe wille of his lord,
but grauȝted him goddeli · on godis holy name,
Forto worchen his wille · as lord wiþ his owne.
whan william þis worþi child · wist þe soþe, 308
and knew þat þe cowherde · nas nouȝt his kinde fader,

"Nay, sir, at no time."

"Know that I am he;

and I command you to tell me the truth.

Is this child yours?"

[Fol. 8.] The cowherd began to quake,

and told him all the truth.

"I thank you for telling me true;

the child shall go with me."

The cowherd grieved, but dared not refuse.

[1] Read "thou hast *seide* me the sothe."—M.

TYLER STATE COLLEGE LIBRARY

William began to lament sorely, and said,

he was wiȝtliche a-wondered · & gan to wepe sore,
& seide saddely to him-self · sone þer-after,
"a ! gracious gode god ! · þouȝ grettest of alle !
Moch is þi mercy & þi miȝt · þi menske, & þi grace !

"I know not my birth nor my destiny, and am much beholden to this man and his wife."

now wot i neuer in þis world · of wham y am come,
ne what destene me is diȝt · but god do his wille !
ac wel y wot witerly · wiþ-oute ani faile,
to þis man & his meke wif · most y am holde ;
For þei ful faire han me fostered · & fed a long time,
þat god for his grete miȝt · al here god hem ȝeld.
but not y neuer what to done · to wende þus hem fro,
þat han al kindenes me kyd · & y ne kan hem ȝelde !"

"Cease from thy sorrow," said the emperor,

"bi stille, barn," quaþ þemperour · "blinne of þi sorwe,
For y hope þat hal þi kin · hastely here-after,
ȝif þou wolt ȝeue þe to gode · swiche grace may þe falle,

[Fol. 8 b.]
"thou shalt requite thy friends."

þat alle þi frendes fordedes · faire schalstow quite."
"ȝa, sire," quaþ þe couherde, "ȝif crist wol · þat cas may tyde,
& god lene him grace · to god man to worþe."

The cowherd then counselled William

& þan as tit to þe child · he tauȝt þis lore,
& seide, "þou swete sone · seþþe þou schalt hennes wende,
whanne þou komest to kourt · among þe kete lordes,
& knowest alle þe kuþþes · þat to kourt langes,
bere þe boxumly & bonure · þat ich burn þe loue.

to be no teller of tales,

be meke & mesurabul · nouȝt of many wordes,
be no tellere of talis · but trewe to þi lord,

to take the part of poor men,

& prestely for pore men · profer þe euer,
For hem to rekene wiþ þe riche · in riȝt & in skille.

and to be faithful and of fair speech;

be feiȝtful & fre · & euer of faire speche,
& seruisabul to þe simple · so as to þe riche,
& felawe in faire manere · as falles for þi state ;
so schaltow gete goddes loue · & alle gode mennes.

a lesson which the cowherd had learnt from his father.

Leue sone, þis lessoun · me lerde my fader,
þat knew of kourt þe þewes · for kourteour was he long,
& hald it in þi hert · now i þe haue it kenned ;

þe bet may þe bi-falle · þe worse bestow neuere." 344

Þe child weped al-way · wonderliche fast,
but þemperour had god game · of þat gomes lore, The emperor tells the cowherd to set William on his horse,
& comande[1] þe couherde · curteysli and fayre, 347
to heue vp þat hende child · bi-hinde him on his stede.
& he so dede deliuerly · þouȝh him del þouȝt,
& bi-kenned him to crist · þat on croice was peyned.
þanne þat barn as biliue · by-gan for to glade and the child was pleased to think he should ride royally.
þat he so realy schuld ride · & redeli as swiþe 352
Ful curteisle of þe couherde · he cacces his leue,
& seþþen seyde, "swete sire · i bes[e]che[2] ȝou nowþe, William bids the cowherd farewell,
For godes loue, gretes ofte · my godelyche moder,
þat so faire haþ me fed · & fostered till nowþe. 356
& lellyche, ȝif our lord wol · þat i liif haue, and sends a message to his foster-mother,
sche ne schal nouȝt tyne hire trauayle · treuly for soþe.
& gode sire, for godes loue · also greteþ wel oft
alle my freyliche felawes · þat to þis forest longes, 360 and to his old playmates,
han pertilyche in many places · pleide wiþ ofte, [Fol. 9.]
hugonet, & huet · þat hende litel dwerþ,[3] Hugonet, and Huet, Abelot, Martynet, and Akarin,
& abelot, & martynet · hugones gaie sone;
& þe cristen akarin · þat was mi kyn fere, 364
& þe trewe kinnesman · þe payenes sone,
& alle oþer frely felawes · þat þou faire knowes, and all the rest.
þat god mak hem gode men · for his mochel grace."
of þe names þat he nemned · þemperour nam hede, 368
& had gaynliche god game · for he so gretteالle
of his compers þat he knew · so curteysliche & faire.
& þan be-kenned he þe kouherde · to crist & to hal alwes, The emperor then rides away.
& busked forþ wiþ þat barn · bliue on his gate. 372
þe kouherde kayred to his house · karful in hert, The cowherd goes home, very sorrowful,
& neiȝ to-barst he for bale · for þe barnes sake.
& whan his wiif wist · wittow for soþe,

[1] In l. 236 we have "komanded;" but see the note.
[2] MS. "beſche." Read "beseche."—M. [3] See note.

how þat child from here warde · was wente for euer-more,
and his wife weeps most bitterly. þer nis man on þis mold · þat miȝt half telle
þe wo & þe weping · þat womman made.
sche wold haue sleie hire-self þere · soþly, as bliue,
ne hade þe kind kouherde · conforted here þe betere,
& pult hire in hope to haue · gret help þer-of after.
No more of them now. but trewely of hem at þis time · þe tale y lete,
of þemperour & þe bold barn · to bigynne to speke.

Lordes, lusteneþ her-to · ȝif ȝou lef þinkes !
The emperor finds his men, þemperour bliþe of þe barn · on his blonk rides
Fast til þe forest, til he fond · al his fre ferd,
þat hadde take þat time · moche drye game.
and the spoil which they had taken. boþe bores & beres · fele hors charge,
hertes & hindes · & oþer bestes manye.
& whan þe loueli ludes · seie here lord come,
þei were geinliche glad · & gretten him faire,
All wondered at seeing the child, but alle a-wondered þei were · of þe barn him bi-hinde,
so faire & so fetyse it was · & freliche schapen ;
& freyned faire of þemperour · whar he it founde hadde.
which, said the emperor, "God had sent him." he gaf hem answere a-gayn · þat god it him sent,
oþer-wise wist non · where he it founde.
[Fol. 9 b.] þan rod he forþ wiþ þat rowte · in-to rome euene,
He rides to Rome, and alights at his palace. & euer þat bold barn · by-hinde him sat stille.
so passed he to þe paleys · and presteliche a-liȝt.
& william þat choys child · in-to his chaumber ledde.
Now the emperor had a dear daughter a dere damisele to douȝter · þis emperour hadde þanne,
of alle fasoun þe fairest · þat euer freke seiȝe,
& witerly william & ȝhe · were of on held,
of the same age as William, as euene as ani wiȝt · schuld attely bi siȝt.
& þat menskful mayde · melior was hoten,
named Melior. a more curteyse creature · ne cunnyngere of hire age,
was nouȝt þanne in þis world · þat ani wiȝt knewe.
To her care the emperor commends William, þemperour to þat mayde · mekliche wendeþ,
& william þat worþi child · wiþ him he ladde,
and seide, "dere douȝter · y do þe to wite,

I haue a pris presant · to plese wiþ þi hert. — saying he has brought her a
haue here þis bold barn · & be til him meke, — rich present;
& do him kepe clenly · for kome he his of gode;
I hent þis at hunting · swiche hap god me sent;"
& told here þanne as tit · treweli al þe soþe,
how he hade missed is mayne · & malskrid a-boute, — relating to her the whole story about the werwolf,
& how þe werwolf wan him bi · wiþ a wilde hert,
& how sadly he him sewed · to haue slayn þat dere,
til þei hadde brouȝt him þere · þat barn bestes kept, — his meeting with the child,
& how sone of his seiȝt · þe bestes seþþen ware;
& how þe couherde com him to · & was a-knowe þe soþe,
how he him fond in þat forest · ferst, þat faire child,
& how komeliche y-cloþed · for ani kinges sone;
& how þe kouherde for kare · cumsed to sorwe, — the cowherd's grief,
whanne he wold wiþ þe child · wende him fromme;
& how boldely þat barn · bad þe couherde þanne — and William's messages to his step-mother and comrades.
to grete wel his gode wiif · & gamely þer-after
alle his freliche felawes · bi-forn as i told.
"& þer-fore, my dere douȝter" · þemperour seide,
"For mi lof loke him wel · for lelly me þinkes, — "Love him well, for I suspect he is of noble kin;
bi his menskful maneres · & his man-hede,
þat he is kome of god kin · to crist y hope;

[*The next folio* (*Fol.* 10) *being lost, its place is here supplied from the French text.*]

[car mult par est et biax, et gens, — For he is very fair and handsome
de cors, de vis, et de faiture. — In body, in face, and in fashion.
encor orrons, par aventure, — We shall yet hear, peradventure,
de quex gens est estrais et nes. — Of what kin he is descended and born.
ma douce fille, or retenes — My sweet daughter, now take care of
lenfant que je vos amain ci." — The child whom I here bring you."
"ce soit la vostre grant merci," — "Great thanks are due to you for this,"
dist meliors, "biau sire chiers, — Said Melior, "fair father dear;
je le retieng mult volentiers." — I take care of him very willingly."
puis prent lenfant et si lenmaine. — Then she takes the child and leads him away,
en la soie chambre demaine, — Brings him into her chamber.

uns dras li a fait aporter,
sel fait vester et conreer.
Quant des dras fu apareillies,
et a sa guise fu chaucies,
or fu si gens et si tres biax
et si apers li damoisiax,
con ne recourast son pareil,
desos la clarte du soleil,
de sa biaute, de sa semblance.
et meliors, qui tant ert france,
li a fait par .i. sien sergant
aporter le mangier devant.
et cil manga qui fain avoit,
or revient auques a son droit.
por cou se il est fix de Roi,
nest desenors, si com ie croi,
sil sert a cort dempereor,
et pucele de tel valor
com meliors estoit la bele.
ensi remest o la pucele
Guill*iaumes*, com poes oir;
mult se paine de li servir
et des autres tous ensement.
mult si acointe belement,
si com li hom qui nestoit mie
norris en cort nentre maisnie,
mais auques le prueve nature,
et il sor tote creature
sentente et tot son cuer velt metre
a quanque se doit entremetre.
nus damoisiax de nul service
a cort si haute ni si riche.
Tant i a lenfes son cuer mis,
et tant entendu et apris,
quancois que fust passes li ans,
fu il si prex et si sachans,

Has a robe brought for him,
And has him clothed and well cared for.
When he was dressed in the robes,
And fittingly provided with shoes,
So gracious and so very fair
And so frank was the boy,
That his equal could not be met with
Beneath the light of the sun,
For his beauty, for his appearance.
And Melior, who was so bountiful,
Caused one of her servants
To carry a repast before him.
And he, being hungry, ate it,
And returned then to his duty.
Wherefore if he is a king's son
'Tis no dishonour, as I believe,
If he serves at the emperor's court
And (serves) a damsel of such worth
As was Melior the beautiful.
Thus remained with the damsel
William, as you may hear;
Much pains he takes to serve her
And all the others likewise.
Very excellently he demeans himself,
Like, indeed, a man who had never been
Nourished in court or household,
But nature also proves him,
And he, above every creature,
Gives attention and puts his whole heart
To whatever he ought to undertake.
There was no youth, in any service,
So high and so rich at court.
The child so gave his attention there,
And understood and learnt so much,
That before the year was passed,
He was so prudent and so wise,

quil nest hom qui le puist reprendre,
tant i sache garder, nentendre
de riens nule que veoir sace,
que riens mesprenge ne mefface.
oi aves pieca retraire,
que li oisiax de gentil aire
safaite meisme aparlui,
tot sans chastiement dautrui ;
comme vos ci oir poes,
sest si Guill*iaumes* doctrines.
Ensi Guill*iaumes* est a cort,
a tos desert que on lounort,
ne fait riens qui doie desplaire.
mult par est frans et debonnaire,
servicables, cortois, et prous,
et mult se fait amer a tous,
et larges de quanquavoir puet.
et sachies bien, pas ne lestuet
a chastoier de ses paroles,
queles soient laides ne foles,
mais asises et delitables.
si set plus desches et de tables,
doisiax, de bois, de chacerie,
que nus qui soit en Lombardie,
nen toute la terre de Rome ;
nia vallet, fil a haut home,
na riche prince natural—
quant Guill*iaumes* siet a cheval,
lescu au col, el poing la lance—
tant par soit de fiere semblance,
si gens, ne si amanevis ;
ne sai que plus vos en devis ;
que tuit samblent a lui vilain,
et li lombart et li romain.
bien samble a tos estre lor sire
en tot le regne nen lempire.

That no one could reprove him
(So well can he take care), nor perceive
For anything that he could see,
That he mistook or misdid anything.
Ye have long ago heard say
That the bird of gentle breed
Learns even by himself,
Without correction by another ;
Even as ye here may hear,
William thus taught himself.
Thus William lives at the court,
He deserves that all should honour him,
And does nothing to displease.
He is very frank and amiable,
Serviceable, courteous, and prudent,
And makes himself much loved by all,
And (he is) bounteous as far as he is able.
And know well, there is no need
To correct him for his words,
Which are neither rude nor silly,
But staid and pleasing.
He knew more of chess and tables,
Of hawking, of the woods, of the chase,
Than any one in Lombardy,
Or in all the territory of Rome ;
There is no lad, son to a great man,
Nor rich prince by birth
(When William sits on his horse,
Shield on his neck, lance in his fist),
Can be of such fierce appearance,
So gracious, nor so dexterous ;
I know not that I can tell you more about it
So that all seem plebeian beside him,
Both Lombard and Roman.
He seems to be the lord of them all
In all the kingdom and empire.

ni a .i. seul, ne bas ne haut,
a cui il soit, de ce me vant(?),
des biens, de lui que la gens conte ;
chascuns en fabloie et raconte.
tous li pueples, communement,
et lempereres ensement
li porte honor, aime, et tient chier
comme le fil de sa moillier ;
et quant il va en esbanoi,
toudis maine Guill*iaume* o soi ;
en grant afaire ou en besoing
tos jors iva, soit pres ou loing.
et cil del regne denviron,
li grant signor et li baron,
por lamor a lempereor,
laiment et portent grant honor,
et plus encor por sa franchise,
dont chascuns tant le loe et prise.
et ke diroie des puchieles,
des dames et des damoisieles ?
certes, et se diex me doinst joie,
ne cuit que nule qui le voie
ne qui son los oie retraire,
tant par i soit de haut afaire,
bele, cortoise, ne prisie,
nestraite de haute lignie,
ne sage, orgeilleuse, ne cointe,
qui ne vausist estre sa-cointe !
Mult a boin los par la contree,
par tot en va sa renoumee.
si fut a cort .iii. ans tos plains
Guill*iaumes* entre les Romains,
com vos dire maves oi,
forment crut et bien enbarni ;
et devint gens li damoisiax,
et fors et aformes et biax ;

There is no one, low or high,
Who possesses—whereof I boast(?)—
The virtues, which people relate of him ;
Every one speaks of them and tells them.
All the people, in common (honour him),
And the emperor, in like manner,
Honours, loves, and holds him dear
As the son of his own wife ;
And when he goes out for amusement,
He always takes William with him ;
In great affairs, or in case of need,
Always he goes there, whether near or far.
And those of the country round about,
The great lords and barons,
For love of the emperor,
Love and greatly honour him,
And still more for his bounty,
For which every one praises and esteems him.
And what can I say of the maidens,
Of the ladies and the damsels ?
Certes, so God give me joy,
I believe there is none who sees him
Or hears his praise told,
Of however great consideration she may be,
However fair, courteous, and estimable,
However noble by birth,
However wise, proud, or clever,
But she wishes to be his love !
He has great good praise in the country,
Everywhere spreads his renown.
Thus at the court three full years
Was William, among the Romans,
As ye have heard me tell,
Well grown and of good stature ;
And the youth became gracious,
And strong and of fine form and fair ;

de la chambre est merveilles bien ;
les puceles sur tote rien,
por sa franchise et sa valor,
li portent mult tres grant honor.
Quant meliors la debonaire
ot del vallet le los retraire,
et les grans biens qui en lui sont,
et voit quil na si bel el mont,
ne damoisel de sa valor,
fil de roi ne dempereor,
ne de si boine renoumee,
trestot son cuer et sa pensee
tot maintenant vers lui atorne.
or est si tres pensive et morne
quele nentent a autre chose.
son cuer reprent et blasme et chose,
et dist sovent, "cuers ! que as tu ?
quas tu esgarde ne veu,
que tout mi oel moustre ne fait,
qui mas embatue en cest plait ?
que je ne sai que puisse avoir,
ne quel error me fait doloir,
ne plaindre plus que je ne suel.
Diex ! quex maus est dont tant me duel,
qui si me fait estendillier ?]

In the chamber he is very admirable ;
The maidens above everything,
For his frankness and his valour,
Accord him very great honour.
When Melior the amiable
Hears the praise of the lad told,
And the great goodness that is in him,
And sees there is none in the world so fair,
No youth of his worth,
(Whether) son of king or of emperor,
Nor any of such good renown,
Soon her heart and her thought
Very quickly turns she towards him.
Then she is so very sad and sorrowful,
That she minds nothing else.
She reproves and blames and rebukes her heart,
And says often, "Heart, what hast thou ?
What hast thou beheld or seen—
For mine eye shews or tells me nothing—
That has cast me into this debate ?
So that I know not what is the matter,
Nor what fault makes me grieve,
Or complain more than I am wont.
Oh God ! what evil is it I thus grieve for,
That makes me thus move restlessly ?

& seþþe sike i & sing · samen to-gedere, [Fol. 11.]
& melt neiȝh for mournyng · & moche ioie make.
Min hert hol i haue now · for al þat hard y fele,
saue a fers feintise · folwes me oft,
& takes me so tenefully · to telle al þe soþe,
þat i mase al marred · for mournyng neiȝh hondes,
but redeliche in þat res · þe recouerere þat me falles,
as whan i haue ani hap · to here of þat barne,
For wham myn hert is so hampered · & aldes so nobul.

I sigh and sing together.
A faintness often seizes me.
I recover when I hear of that

flower of mankind.

þat flour is of alle frekes · of fairnes and miȝt.
prince is noȝt his pere · ne in paradiȝs non aungel,
as he semes in mi siȝt · so faire is þat burne. 444

I have portrayed him within my heart,

I haue him portreide an paynted · in mi hert wiþ-
inne,
þat he sittus in mi siȝt · me þinkes euer-more.
& faire so [1] his figure · is festened in mi ȝout,[2]

and would not scrape out his portrait for all the world.

þat wiþ no coyntise ne craft · ne can y it out scrape. 448
& be marie, þouȝh i miȝt · to mengge al þe soþe,
I ne wold nouȝt for al þis world · so wel it me likes,
þeiȝh i winne wiþ mi werk · þe worse euer-more!
so gret liking & loue i haue · þat lud to bi-hold, 452
þat i haue leuer þat loue · þan lac al mi harmes.

Since it is so, I am wrong to blame my heart.

Nou certes, seþþe it is so · to seie þe trewþe,
þann haue y had gret wrong · myn [hert] so to blame,
For eni werk þat he wrouȝt · seþþe i wol it hold, 456
ne wold i it were non oþer · al þe world to haue.

I ought rather to blame my eyes.

whom schal i it wite · but mi wicked eyiȝen,
þat lad myn hert þrouȝ loking · þis langour to drye?
nad þei [ben, i miȝt] · boute [3] bale haue schaped; 460
redeli bi resoun *þer*fore · hem rette i mai mi sorwe."
but þanne þouȝt che þat þrowe · in þis selue wise,

Yet my eyes are my heart's subjects.

"Min eiȝen sorly aren sogettes · to serue min hert,
& buxum ben to his bidding · as boie to his master; 464
eke wite i al þe wrong · þe werk of mi eiȝen,
& þouȝh sertes, so may i nouȝt · by no soþe riȝt;
For seþþe i knowe þat mi siȝt · is seruant to mi hert,
& alle my noþer wolnk wittes · to wirchen his hest. 468

[Fol. 11 b.]

My sight can do no harm, unless my heart assent.

For þouȝh i sette my siȝt · sadly on a þing,
be hit briȝtter oþer broun · beter oþer worse,
Mi siȝt may in no maner · more harme wirche,
but ȝif myn hauteyn hert · þe harde a-sente. 472
eke soþly my siȝt · is soget to my hert,

My sight only does his duty.

& doþ nouȝt but his deuer · as destine wol falle.

[1] so faire (?) [2] þout (?)
[3] MS. "nad þei i am a boute." See note.

þan has my hasty hert · holly þe wrong,
him wol i blame & banne · but he my bales amende,
þat haþ him so strangly set · in swiche strau*n*ge burne,
þat wot neue*r* in þis world · whennes þat he come,
but as mi fader him fond · in þe forest an herde,
keping me*n*nis kin · of þe kuntre a-boute.
what? fy! schold i a fundeling · for his fairenesse tak?
nay, my wille wol nou3t a-sent · to my wicked hert.
wel kud kinges & kaysers · krauen me i-now,
I nel leie mi loue so low · now at þis time;
desparaged were i disgisili · 3if i dede in þis wise,
I wol breke out fr*a*m þat baret · & blame my hert."

So I must still blame my heart.

Why should I esteem a foundling for his fairness?

I will not lay my love so low."

Sche turned here þan ti3tly · to haue slept a wile,
& seide sadly, of hire hert · sche wold seche ame*n*dis
For sche so wrongly had wrou3t · but wi3tly þe*r*-after,
sche seide sikinde to here-self · in þis selue wise.
"now witte*r*ly ich am vn-wis · & wonderliche nyce,
þus vn-hendly & hard · mi herte to blame.
to whom mi3t i me mene · amendis of him to haue,
seþþe i am his souerayn · mi-self in alle þing?
nis he holly at my hest · in hard & in nesche?
& now, bi crist, i knowe wel · for al my care newe,
he wrou3t neue*r* bot my worchepe · ne wol nou3t, i leue.
I se wel he haþ set him-self · in so nobul a place,
þat perles of alle puple · is preised ouer alle,
of fairnesse of facioun · and frely þeuwes,[1]
For kurteysie, vnder krist · is king ne kud duk.
& þou3h he as fundeling where founde · *in* þe forest wilde,
& kept wiþ þe kowherde kin · to karp þe soþe,
eche creature may know · he was kome of gode.
For first whan þe fre was *in* þe forest · fou*n*de *in* his denne,
In comely cloþes was he clad · for any kinges sone.
whan he kom first to þis kourt · bi kynde þan he schewde,

She tries to sleep in vain, and sighs, and says,

"I am foolish to blame my heart so.

Am I not its sovereign?

My heart hath set itself in a noble place.

Though William were a foundling, surely he was of noble birth.

[Fol. 12.]

His clothes and his manners proved it.

[1] A line lost here?

his maners were so menskful · a-mende hem miȝt none.
& seþþe forsoþe til þis time · non vn-tetche he ne wrouȝt,
but haþ him bore so buxumly · þat ich burn him preyseþ,
All men honour him. & vch a burn of þis world · worchipeþ him one,
Kinges & kud dukes · kene kniȝtes and other,
þouȝh he were komen of no ken · but of kende cherls,
as i wot witterly · so was he neuere!
ȝut wiþ worchepe i wene · i miȝt him wel loue.
Since then he is so peerless, & seþþe he so perles is preised · ouer princes & oþer,
& eche lord of þis lond · is lef him to plece
For most souereyn seg · & semlyest of þewes,
I did wrong to blame my heart. þanne haue i wited alle wrong · þe werk of myn herte,
For he has don his deuere · dignely as he out.
he het me most worþi · of wommen holde in erþe,
Kindely þurth kinrade · of cristen lawe;
For, in truth, my heart has done well; and could not have done better. For-þi myn herte hendely · has wrouȝt in his dedes
to sette him-self so sadly · in þe soueraynest burne
þat leuis in ani lond · of alle ludes preised,
I ne wot neuere in þis world · what wise he miȝt betere
wirche for me in þis world · my worschipe to saue.
For ȝif eny man on mold · more worþi were,
Min hert is so hauteyn · þat herre he wold.
I am sorry I blamed my heart, & for i so wrongely[1] haue wrouȝt · to wite him, me greues;
I giue me holly in his grace · as gilty for þat ilk,
& to mende my misse · i make myn a-vowe.
I wol here-after witerly · wiþ-oute more striue,
and will work all its will henceforth. wirche holly mi hertes wille · to harde & to nesche,
& leye my loue on þat lud · lelly for euere.
to god here i gif a gift · it gete schal neuer oþer,
wile him lasteþ þe liif · my loue i him grante."

Alas! I fear this sorrow will have no remedy; And whan sche so was a-sented · sche seide sone after,
sadli sikand & sore · for sorwe atte here herte,
"Allas! i trowe þis bitter bale · botlesse wol hende!

[1] MS. "worngely."

For i not in þis world ! · how þat worþi child [Fol. 12 b.]
schal euer wite of my wo · wiþ-oute me selue.
nay ! sertes my-selue · schal him neuer telle ; for I will never tell him my love.
For þat were swiche a woȝh · þa neu*er* wolde be mended.
For he miȝt ful wel · for a fol me hold, He might think me foolish.
& do him loþe mi loue · ȝit haue y leuer deie !
nay ! best beþ it nouȝt so · ȝif better miȝt bi-falle,
Ich mot worche oþer wise · ȝif i wol out-spede.
what, i suppose þe selue · ȝif it so bi-tidde Or suppose I *did* speak to him,
þat i wrouȝt so wodly · & wold to him speke,
þat were semlyest to seye · to saue my worchep ?
ȝif i told him treuli · my tene and myn anger, and told him my sorrow,
what liif for longyng of loue · i lede for his sake,
He wold wene i were wod · or witerly schorned, he would think me mad, or that I mocked him.
or þat i dede for despit · to do him a schonde ;
& þat were a schamly schenchip · to schende me eu*er*.
what ȝif i saide him sadly · þat i sek were, Or suppose I said I am sick ;
& told him al treuly · þe entecches of myn euele ?
he knoweþ nouȝt of þat kraft · bi krist, as i trowe,
wherfore he ne schold in no wise · wite what i mente ; he would not understand me.
but whanne i hade al me mened · no more nold he seie
but " serteinly, swete damisele · þat me sore rewes."
þanne wold mi wo · wex al newe,
& doubel is now mi duel · for i ne dar hit schewe. My grief would only be doubled.
allas ! whi ne wist þat wiȝh · what wo þat me eyles,
what sorwes & sikingges · i suffer for his sake !
I sayle now in þe see · as schip boute mast, I sail in the sea like a mastless ship, without anchor, oar, or sail."
boute anker or ore · or ani semlyche sayle ;
but heiȝh heuene king · to gode hauene me sende,
oþer laske mi liif daywes · wiþ-inne a litel terme."
þus þat maiden meliors · in mornyng þa liuede, Thus Melior lamented.
& hit held hire so harde · i hete þe for soþe,
& schorttily wiþ-in seueniȝt · al hire slep sche leues,
here mete & al merthe · sche missed in a while,
& seeceleed in a seknesse · þe soþe for to telle, She sickened and pined,

[1] MS. " world þis ;" instead of " þis world."

þat þer nas leche in no lond · þat liif hire bihi3t,[1] 576
[Fol. 13.] 3it couþe non by no craft · knowen hire sore;
but duelfulli sche dwined a-waie · boþe dayes & ni3tes,
and her colour faded. & al hire clere colour · comsed for to fade.

Þanne hadde þis menskful melior · maydenes fele 580
a-segned hire to serue · & to seuwe hire a-boute;
Melior's favourite maiden but among alle þe maidenes · most sche loued one
þat was a digne damisele · to deme al þe soþe,
& komen of hire oune kin · h[er]e[2] kosin ful nere, 584
of lumbardie a dukes dou3ter · ful derworþ in wede,
was Alexandrine, daughter of the duke of Lombardy; & þat amiabul maide · alisaundrine a-hi3t.
& from þe time þat melior · gan morne so strong,
þat burde was euer hire bi · busy hire to plese, 588
More þan ani oþer damisele · so moche sche hire louede.
& whan sche sei3 here so sek · sche seide on a time,
who said to her, "Tell me the cause of your sickness; "Now for marie, madame · þe milde quene of heuene,
& for þat loue þat 3e loue · leliest here in erþe, 592
Sei3th me al 3our seknesse · & what so sore 3ow greuis.
3e knowen icham 3our kosyn · & bi krist of heuene,
3ut bi cas of cunsail · ful wel can ich hele,
& be tristy and trew · to 3ow for euer-more, 596
I may be able to help you." and help 3ow hasteli at al · 3oure hele to gete,
3if 3e saie me 3oure sores · & ich se what may gayne."
whan melior þat meke mayde · herd alisaundrines wordes,
sche was gretly gladed · of hire gode bi-hest,[3] 600
& wiþ a sad sikyng · seide to hire þanne;—
"Dear cousin," said Melior, "thou speakest comfort to me. "a! curteyse cosyne · crist mot þe it 3elde
of þi kynde cumfort · þat þow me kuþest nowþe,
þow hast warsched me wel · wiþ þi mede wordes. 604
I 3iue me al in þi grace · to gete me sum hele,
as þow me here has be-hi3t · of mi harde peynes;
I will tell you all my grief. now wol i telle þe my tene · wat so tide after.

[1] Here follows the catchword—'3it couþe." [2] MS. "he."
[3] This line and the next are transposed in the MS.

serteynly þis seknesse · þat so sore me greues
Is feller þan any frek · þat euer ȝit hadde.
& ofter þan [ten][1] times · hit takeþ me a-daye,
& [ix.][1] times on þe niȝt · nouȝt ones lesse ;
and al comes of a þroly þouȝt · þat þirles min hert ;
I wold meng al mi mater · ȝif i miȝt for schame.
ac wond wold ich nouȝt to þe · witow for soþe,
ay whan ich hent þe haches · þat so hard aren.
It komses of a kene þouȝt · þat ich haue in hert
of william þat bold barn · þat alle burnes praisen ;
nis no man vpon mold · þat more worchip winnes.
him so propirli haue i peinted · & portreide in herte,
þat me semes in my siȝt · he sittes euer meke.
what man so ich mete wiþ · or mele wiþ speche,
Me þinkes euerich þrowe · þat barn is þat oþer ;
& fele times haue ich fonded · to flitte it fro þouȝt,
but witerly al in wast · þan worche ich euer.
þer-for, curteise cosynes · for loue of crist in heuene,
Kiþe nouȝ þi kindenes · & konseyle me þe best ;
For but ich haue bote of mi bale · bi a schort time,
I am ded as dore-nail · now do al þi wille !"

[Fol. 13 b.]
It comes from a heart-piercing thought,
of a thought about that William, whom all praise.
Every man I speak to seems to be William.
Counsel me, cousin, or I am as dead as a door-nail."

Þanne alisaundrine a-non · after þat ilk,
wax gretly a-wondered · & wel hire bi-þouȝt,
what were hire kuddest comfort · hire care to lisse ;
& seide þanne til hire softily · sone þer-after ;
"a ! madame, for marie loue · mornes no lenger !
nis it no sekenes bote þat · so sore ȝouȝ eiles,
I schal þurth craft þat ich kan · keuer ȝou i hope,
Mow i geten a grece · þat i gaynli knowe !
haue ȝe sleiliche[2] it seie · & a-saide ones,
& feled þe sauor & þe swetnesse · þat sittes in þe rote,
hit schal veraly þurth vertue · do vanisch ȝour soris !"
oþer-wise wold sche nouȝt · wissen here ladi
bi what maner che ment · last sche were a-greued.

Alexandrine was amazed, and said,
"Mourn not, I will heal you.
I know of a herb whose virtue can cure you."

[1] See note.
[2] MS. "ȝe it fleiliche it."

Melior thanked her, and prayed her to get it.

þan þat melior ful mekeli · þat mayden ȝanked,
& preide hire priueli · wiþ pitous wordes,
to gete hire þat gode gras · as sone as sche miȝt.
& alisaundrine a-non · answeres and saide,

She said she would try. [Fol. 14.]

" Madame, I wol do mi miȝt · wiþ-oute more speche."
þanne þis maiden melior · gan menden here chere.
þus was ferst here sad sorwe · sesed þat time.

Alexandrine planned how to let William know of this,

alisandrine algate þan · after [þat] þrowe
bi-þouȝt hire ful busily · howe best were to werche,
to do willi*a*m to wite · þe wille of hire lady,
properly vnparceyued · for reproue after.
Ful conyng was sche & coynt · & couþe fele þinges,
of charmes & of chau[*n*]temen*s* · to schewe harde castis;

and, by her craft, as he lay asleep,

So þurȝh þe craft þat sche couþe · to carpp þe seþe,
as willi*a*m þat worþi child · on a niȝt slept,
boute burn in his bour · but him-self one,

she made him dream a dream,

a ful solcouþe sweuene · set sche him to mete;
þat melior, þat menskful may · mekli al-one
com ful comliche clad · & kneled him bi-fore,
al bi-weped for wo · wisly him þouȝt;
& sikand ful sadli · seide þus him tille—

that Melior came to him, and said,

" a! loueliche lemman! · loke on me nowþe!
I am Meliors, neiȝh marred · man, for þi sake.
I meke me in þi merci · for þow me miȝt saue!

"Oh take me, love, in thine arms!"

Leue lord, mi lemman · lacche me in þi narmes,
& wirche wiþ me þi wille · or witterli in hast
Mi liif lelly is lorn · so loue now me hampris."
þus willi*a*m þouȝt witterly · & wiȝtly wiþ þat ilk,
as a gome ful glad · for þat grace fallen,

He tried to do so, but seized his pillow,

He wend to haue lauȝt þat ladi · loueli in armes;
& clipte to him a pulwere · & propirly it gretes,
and welcomes hir worþli · for wisseli him þouȝt
þat it was þe menskful mayde · melior his ladi!

and awoke, kissing it.

þat puluere clept he curteisly · & kust it ful ofte,
& made þer-wiþ þe most merþe · þat ani man schold;
but þan in his saddest solas · softili he a-waked.

ak so liked him his layk · wiþ þe ladi to pleie,
þat after he was a-waked · a ful long þrowe,
he wende ful witerly · sche were in is armes; 680 She was gone; it was only his pillow.
ac peter! it nas but is puluere · to proue þe soþe.
but whan he wit*ter*ly was a-waked · he wayted a-boute, [Fol. 14 *b*.]
to haue bi-hold þat burde · his blis to encrese.
þanne p*er*ceyued he þe puluere · pertely in his armes,
oþer wiȝt was non · wiþ-inne þat chambur.[1] 685
þan brayde he vp of his bed · as burn neiȝh amased,
& loked after þat ladi · for lelli he wende He looked for her in every corner in vain, and sighed, and said,
þat sche here had hed in su*m* hurne · in þat ilk time,
to greue him in hire game · as þeiȝh he gyled were.
but whan he wist it was wast · al þat he souȝt,
he gan to sike & sorwe · & seide in þis wise:—
"a! ih*es*u crist, iustise · now iugge þouȝ þe riȝt, 692
how falsly has fortune · founde me nowþe.
nas mi menskful ladi · meliors h[*er*]e-inne,[2] "Was not my lady Melior here?
& lowed hire to be mi lemman · & lai i*n* myn armes,
oþer elles soþli, sche seide · þat sche dei schuld? 696
ȝis, i-wisse, was it sche · y wot wel þe soþe;
Metyng[3] miȝt it be non · in no maner wise; It could not have been a dream.
so louely lay þat ladi & ich · layking to-gaderes.
& soþly, soþ it is · a selcouþe, me þinkes, 700
whider þat lady is went · and wold no lenger dwelle."
þanne lep he vp liȝteli · & loked al a-boute,
but feȝtly al was fanteme · & al was in wast.
þanne seide he to him-self · sikinde ful soft:— 704
"For soþe, ich am a mad man · now wel ich may knowe, Yet I must be mad to think it could be true,
Forto wene in þis wise · þis wrong metyng soþe.
Min hert is to hauteyn · so hyeȝ to climbe,
so to leue þat ladi · wold louwe hire so moche, 708
þat is an emp*er*ours eir · and euene his pere, for she is an emperor's heiress.
to come to swiche a caytif · nay, crist it for-bede
þat ich more of þat matere · so misseliche þenke!

[1] MS. "chanbur."
[2] MS. "he inne." Read "*here* inne."—M. [3] MS. "Metynt."

For þer nys lord in no lond · þat þe liif weldes,
emperour ne kud king · knowen so riche,
þat soþli nere simple i-nouȝ · þat semly to haue.
I must be mad to think of such a thing. ek witterli am i wod · to wene swiche a þing,
þurth a mys metyng · þat swiche a maide wold
[Fol. 15.] Leye hire loue so lowe · lemman me to weld.
I dare not lay my love so high. nay, ich haue wrouȝt al in wast · ac i nel na more
Leie mi loue so heiȝe · mi ladi for to wilne,
þouȝh it nere for nouȝ[t] elles · but for noñ in erþe
no wot i neuer wisseli · of whom i am come.
I know neither my kin nor my country, Mi-self knowe ich nouȝt mi ken · ne mi kontre noiþer,
For-þi me [bi-]houes[1] · þe buxumlier me bere,
Oþer-wise þan a wiȝh · þat were wiþ his frendes.
For ȝif ich wrout oþer-wise · & it were parceyued,
& knowe were in þis kourt · mi kare were þe more.
and I have no friend to speak for me." for feiþli, frend haue ich non · þat [for][2] me wold speke,
ȝif þemperour were wiþ me wroþ · his wraþþe forto slake.
þer-for mi hauteyn hert · bi-houes me to chast,
& bere me debonureli · til better mow bi-tide."

Yet her image so dwelt in his heart, Lo, in þis wise william · wende to haue schaped,
but certes þat semly · sat so in his hert,
for merþe of þat metyng · of melior þat schene,
þat heng heui in his hert · & so hard cleued
that it would not away. þat, to winne al þe world · a-wai wold it neuer.
but gan to studie stoundemele · so stifly þer-onne,
þat lelly be a litel while · his langure gan wex,
He left his meat, and lay awake by night, so þat he morned neiȝh mad · & his mete left,
& forwandreþ in wo · & wakeþ i-wisse on niȝtes,
swiche listes of loue · hadde lapped his hert,
þat he nist what bote · his bale best miȝt help.
and arose in the morning, and wrapped himself in his mantle, but in his mochel morning · on a morwe he rises,
For kare þat kom to his hert · & cloþed him sone,
& whan he geinliche was greiþed · he gript his mantel,

[1] MS. "houes;" but see l. 729, and the note.
[2] Read "that *for* me."—M.

as a weiȝh woful · he wrapped him þer-inne,
For no man þat he met · his mornyng schuld knowe.
þat vnglad gom þan goþ · in-to a gardin euene, — and went into a garden
þat was a perles place · for ani prince of erþe,
& wynli wiþ heie wal[1] · was closed al a-boute.
þat preui pleyng place · to proue þe soþe,
Ioyned wel iustly · to meliors chamber, — adjoining Melior's chamber.
þider went william euene · wittow for soþe, [Fol. 15 b.]
& vnder a tri appeltre · tok him tid[2] a sete,
þat was braunched ful brode · & bar gret schadue, — He sat beneath her window under an apple-tree,
& was euen vnder a windowe · of þat worþeis chaumber,
For þat william for wo · was bounde so harde.
þat tre so fayre was floured · & so ful leued, — so thick-leaved that he could not be seen.
þat no wiȝth miȝt william se · but ȝif he were þe nere.
ac will[i]am to þe window · witterli miȝt sene
ȝif meliors wiþ hire maydenes · in meling þere sete.
whan william vnder þat trie tre · hade taken his place, — There watched he from morning till eve.
he set his siȝt sadli · to þat windowe euene,
boute flecchinge or feyntise · from morwe til eue.
but oft cumsed his care · and his colour chaunge[d],
so sore longed him to se · þa semly burde.
swiche a sorwe he suffred · a seue-niȝt fulle,
þat neuer mannes mete ne miȝt · in his bodi sinke, — He ate nothing; but was fed with looking his fill towards her chamber.
but held him finliche i-fed · his fille to loke
on þe mayde meliors chaumber · for wham he s[o] morned.
euer whan it neiȝed niȝt · noyȝed was he sore,
þan wold he wend to his chamber[3] · & gret wo make ;
but no seg þat him serued · miȝt þe soþe wite — None knew why he grieved, or whither he went.
whi him was þanne so wo · ne where he was on dayes ;
non durst for drede · him dernly a-spie,
but lett him worche his wille · as wel as him liked.
ac deliuerly was he diȝt · uch day at morwe, — He went every day to the garden,
& feiþli boute felachipe · fond wold he walke,
& go in-to þe gardyn · his greues for to slake,

[1] MS. *repeats* "wal." [2] See note. [3] MS. "chanber."

looking towards Melior's window,

weytende to þe windowe · & his wo nowene.
& sike ful mani siþe · and sum time quake ; 780
swiche drede & dol · drouȝ to his hert,
lest he ne schold neuer in world · winne þat he ȝerned.

and suffered so that his colour faded.

þurth þe sorwes þat he sufred[1] · soþ forto telle,
al his cler colour · comsed forto fade. 784
Febul wax he & faynt · for-waked a-niȝtes,
ac no wiȝt of þis world · miȝt wite of his care.
but þan tid on a time · as þis tale minges,

[Fol. 16.] One day as he watched,

þat william went til þis gardin · his wo fort[2] slake, 788
& vnder his tri appeltre · turned to sitte,
as weiȝh al for-waked · for wo vpon niȝtes.
and as he a-weited to þe windowe · wiȝtly þer-after,

he fell asleep.

he slod sliȝli a-doun · a-slepe ful harde, 792
as a wo wery[3] weiȝh · for-waked to-fore.
but menge we now of meliors · þat morned þanne

Melior's grief had been as great as his,

as sadli in hire siȝt · or sorer ȝif sche miȝt,
þe loue of loueli william · lay hire so nere. 796

and she asked Alexandrine if she had found the herb.

þanne asked sche þis of alisaundrine · as þe hap tidde,
Riȝt as william woful · so was wox a-slepe,
wher sche hade geto hire gras · þat schold hire greues hele?
"nay, madame, nouȝt ȝut" · seide þe maide þanne, 800
"þouȝh haue i fele times fonded · to finde it ȝif i miȝt,

"Not yet," she said, "but let us go into the garden."

but euer wrouȝt i in wast · þe wors haþ me liked.
ac were it ȝour wille nowe · to worche bi mi rede,
Go we to þe gardyn · to gode may it turne ; 804
For feire floures schal we finde · of foulen song here,
& þurth cumfort may cacche · swiche happ mai falle,
to haue þe better hele · at ȝoure hom-kome."
þarto þis menskful meliors · mekeliche hir graunted,
Forto worche al hire wille · as sche wold deuise. 809

So they went down the steps into the garden,

þanne a-ros sche raddely · & romden riȝt in-fere.
& gan doun bi a grece · in-to þe gardin euene,

[1] MS. "sufreded." See l. 1014. [2] See note.
[3] Or. "werþ."

boute burde or barn · but hem-self tweyne.
for alisaun*d*rine anon · atteled þat time,
& knewe wel bi hire craft · þat sche hade cast bi-fore,
þat þei witter*l*i þanne schold · wiþ will*i*am mete.
& whan þe gaye gerles · were in-to þe gardin come,
Faire floures þei founde · of fele maner hewes,
þat swete[1] were of sauor · & to þe siȝt gode;
& eche busch ful of briddes · þat bliþeliche song,
boþe þe þrusch & þe þrustele · bi xxxti of boþe,
Meleden ful merye · in maner of here kinde.
& alle freliche foules · þat on þat friþ songe,
for merþe of þat may time · þei made moche noyce,
to glade wiþ uch gome · þat here gle herde.
ac meliors for al þat merþe · mornede so stronge,
so harde hacches of loue · here hert hadde þirled,
þat þer nas gle vnder god · þat hire glade miȝt,
but feiþli fo[r] febulnesse · feynt wax sche sone,
þat vnder a semli sikamour · sche sett hire to reste,
& þat burde hire by · þat al hir bale wiste.
þan gan Meliors mu*n*ge · þe meschef þat hir eyled;
þat oþer comsede to carp · of cumfort & ioie,
& eþer mu*n*ged of þe mater · þat þai most louede.
but alisaun*d*rine þer-after · a-non bi a wile,
þederward as will*i*am was · wayted wel ȝerne,
For sche wiste wel y-now · where þat he laye.
& þanne seide sche as swiþe · to þat semly mayde,
"Madame, melior, so dere · be Marie in heuene,
Me þinkeþ ich se a seg · a-slepe here bi-side.
wheþer he be kniȝt or bachiler · wot i neue*r* for soþe,
ac he semes bi semblant · in sekenes ful harde.
þer-for, lady, go we loke · wat seknes him eyles,
& what barn þat he be · þa in bale lenges."
þe menskful mayde meliors · þan mekliche saide,
"a! madame, melior · now mendes ȝoure chere,
For y-wisse, ȝond is will*i*am · þat ȝe so wel loueþ,

where were fair flowers, and blithe birds,

[Fol. 16 *b*.]

that sang merrily for joy of the Maytime.

But nothing could gladden Melior, who sat down to rest under a sycamore.

But Alexandrine espied William, and said,

"Madame, there is some one asleep here,

who looks very ill; let us go and see."

Then said Melior to herself, "Rejoice, Melior, for it is William!"

[1] MS. "sweto."

sum hard hacche has he had · & hider com to pleiȝe
Forto lissen his langour · & lyes here a-slepe,
For þe swete sawour · of þise semly floures !"

Quickly she ran towards him,

Þanne was þat menskful meliors · muchel y-gladed,
& gon þan to þat gome · a god pas al boþe.
& as tit as þei come him to · þe soþe for to telle,
þei sett hem doun softly · þat semly be-fore.

and when she saw his face,

& wanne þe mayde meliors · miȝt se his face,
sche þout þroly in herte · þat leuer hire were
haue welt him at wille · þan of þe world be quene ;

[Fol. 17.]

so fair of alle fetures · þe frek was, hire þouȝt.

would fain have kissed him, but was afraid of spies.

& fayn sche wold þan in feiþ · haue fold him in hire armes,
to haue him clipped & kest · kenely þat tide,
ac sche dred it to done · for oþer derne a-spyes.
alysaundrine þan a-non · attlede here þouȝtes,

Then Alexandrine caused William to dream,

& wiȝtly wiþ here whiles · dede william to mete
þat þat time him þouȝt · þat melior þe hende
and alysaundrine al-one · com him þo tille,
& þe mayde melior · ful mekly him brouȝt

that Melior brought him a rose, which at once cured him.

a ful real rose · and redly it him takes.
& whanne he in hond hit hade · hastely hit semede,
þat he was al sauf & sound · of alle his sor greues.
& for his langor was so lissed · swich likyng he hadde,
& so gretly was gladed · þat he gan a-wake.

He awoke, and in amazement knelt before her, and greeted her.

& whan he seiȝ þat semly · sitte him bi-fore,
He was al a-wondred · and wiȝtly he vp-rises,
& kurteyslyche kneling · þat komli he gretț,
& afterward alysaundrine · as he wel out.
& þe mayde melior · ful mekly þan saide,

"Our Lord give thee joy, dear love," said Melior.

" Mi loueli swete lemman · oure lord ȝif þe ioye !"
& william þan vnderstod · þe word þat sche saide ;
þat sche him called " leue lemman" · it liked so his hert,

He was astonished to hear her say

þat witerly he couþe no word · long þer-after speke,
but stared on here stifly · a-stoneyd for ioye,

þat he cast al his colour · and bi-com pale,
and eft red as rose · in a litel while.
so witerly was þat word · wounde to hert,
þat he ferd as a mased man · an marred neiȝ honde,
so louely loue þat time · lent him an arewe
hetterly þurth his hert · for þat hende mayde
cald him "leue lemman" · he les al his miȝt.

" dear love," and his colour went and came.

Love had shot an arrow through his heart.

Bot alysaundrine wiste wel · what þat him eyled,
& seide to him soberly · þise selue words :—
" swete william, seie me now · what seknes þe greues ?
þi faire hewe is al fade · for þi moche sore ;
& ȝif ich miȝt in ani maner · þe amende, y wold."
þan william wiȝtly · in þis wise answered,
sikende ful sadly · for sor at his hert,
" Mi dere gode damisele · my deþ is al ȝare,
so a botteles bale · me byndeþ so harde,
nas neuer feller feuer · þat euer frek hadde.
for merthe & alle metes · it makes me to leve,
slepe sertes may [i] nouȝt[1] · so sore it me greues.
& al þis mochel meschef · a meting i wite,
þat me com on a niȝt · a-cursed be þat time !
for so hard hacches · haue hold me seþþe,
þa i not in þe world · what is me to rede."
" now swete," seide alisaundrine · " seie me in what wise
þat þat hache þe haldes · & how it þe takes ? "
" I-wisse," seide william · " i wol it nouȝt layne,
sum-time it hentis me wiþ hete · as hot as ani fure,
but quicliche so kene a cold · comes per-after ;
sum time i siȝh & singe · samen to-geder,
& þan so þroli þouȝtes · þurlen myn herte,
þat i ne wot in þe world · where it bi-comse,
For feiþli in my-self · y fele it nouȝt þanne."
þanne alisaundrine a-non · þer-after seide,

Alexandrine asked him what sickness ailed him.

[Fol. 17 b.]

William answered that his was a sorrow without remedy.

It was all owing to a dream.

" Tell me," she answered, " how the pain seizes you."

" It sometimes comes on as hot as fire, and then like a keen chill."

[1] Read " may *i* nouzt."—M.

"How was it all owing to a dream?"

"william, i wold þe pray · þatow me woldest telle
bi what cas al þi care · comsed bi a sweuene?"

"That I will never tell you," he replied.

"nai sertes, sweting," he seide · "þat schal i neuer, 916
For no meschef on molde · þat me may falle!
I haue leuer it layne · & þis langour þole,
þeȝh i for dreȝing of þis duel · deie at þe last;
þer schal [no] wiȝth of þe world · wite whi it comsed!"

"Your sickness is perilous," said Alexandrine.

þanne seide alisandrine · "auntrose is þin euel, 921
ful wonderliche it þe weues · wel i wot þe soþe."
"ȝa i-wisse," seide william · "wonderli me greues,
for my seknes wiþ my siȝtes · sumtime slakes, 924
& mani times doþ me mourne · mor þan to-fore."

Then said Melior to herself, [Fol. 18.]

Melior þat milde mayde · in þe mene tyme þouȝt,
& seide softily to hire-self · þise selue wordes,
"a! gracious god · grettest of us alle, 928

"God help us twain; my sickness seems like his.

tak hede to þin hond-werk · & help now vs tweyne!
For sertes, þis same sekenes · mi-self it holdes
In alle wise as it doþ william · & wors, as ich wene.
& þouh ich se þat is sekenes · sore hit him haldes, 932
for pitously he is a-peyred · þat perles was to siȝt
of fairnesse and of fasoun · þat ani frek schold haue—

If he only knew what I suffer!"

but weilawey! þat he ne wist · what wo y drye,
& haue do lelly for is loue · a wel long while! 936
& but he wiȝtly wite · y-wisse, y am done;
For y dar nouȝt for schame · schewe him mi wille,
but ȝif he wold in ani wise · him-self schewe formest."

Alexandrine perceived all by their looks;

while Meliors in here maner · mened to hire-selue, 940
alysaundrine a-non · attlede alle here þouȝtes,
sche knewe wel bi kuntenaunce · of kastyng of lokes.
þan wiȝtly to william · þise wordes sche sede,
"I see wel he þi semblant · what seknesse þe eyles, 944

and told William she felt sure he was in love.

hele þou it neuer [so] hard[1] · al holliche y knowe,
þat it ben lestes of loue · þat þe so hard helden;
þou waltres al in a weih · & wel y vnderstande
whider þe belaunce bremliest · bouwes al-gate. 948

[1] Read "neuer *so* hard."—M. See the next line.

and seþþe y se it is so · soþli y þe warne,
I wol a litel and litel · laskit in hast."
þan william wel vnderstod · sche wist what him eilede, Then was he sore afraid, and knelt to her,
& knew al is koueyne · for ouȝt he kouþe hide,
he was a-drad to þe deþ · last sche him dere wold.
þan sette he him on knes · & soft seyde hire tille,
"Mercy, menskful mayde · for Marie loue of heuene! and prayed her to help him.
I gif me al in þi grace · my greues to help,
For þou miȝt lengþe mi liif · ȝif þe likes sone."
þan alysaundrine a-non · answered & saide,
"how miȝt i þe help? · what haue i to þi bote?" "How can I help you?" she inquired.
"I-wisse," þan seyde william · "i wol no lenger hele,
My liif, my langor, & my deþ · lenges in þi warde;
but i þe sunner haue socour · of þat swete mayde, Fol. 18 b.] "Unless I have some comfort from you, sweet maid, I shall surely die."
þe comliche creature · þat in þi keping dwelles,
alle the surgens of salerne · ne schul saue mi liue.
þer-for loueliche ladi · in þe lis al min hope,
þou miȝt me spakly [saue][1] oþer spille · ȝif þi-self likes."

Alysaundrine a-non · þanne answered & sayde, "Since you have told me the truth and trust me, I were to blame not to help you.
"now i-wisse, william · witow for soþe,
Seþþe þou sadli hast me said · þe soþe of þi cunsaile,
& tellest me treuly · þou trestes to my help,
ȝif i miȝt in ani maner · mende þi sorwe,
but i were busi þer a-boute · to blame i were.
þer-for certes, be þou sur · soþ it may be no oþer, You shall have all my help."
holliche al min help · þou schalt haue sone."
þan william was gretliche glad · & loueliche hire þonked.
þan alisaundrine a-non · as sche wel couþe,
clepud þat mayde meliors · mekeliche hir tille, Then Alexandrine called Melior to her, saying, "Pity this man, who is near death for thy sake:
& seide, "a mercy, madame · on þis man here,
þat neȝh is driue to þe deþ · al for youre sake!"
"how so for my sake?" · seide melior þanne;
"I wraþed him neuer þat i wot · in word ne in dede."
"no certes, madame, þat is soþ" · saide þat oþer,

[1] Read "spakly *saue* other spille."—M.

who has languished for thy love a long while.

" ac he has langured for ȝour loue · a ful long while ;
& but ȝe graunt him ȝour grace · him greiþli to help,
& late him be ȝour lemman · lelly for eu*er*,
his liif nel nouȝt for langour · last til to-morwe.
þerfor, comeliche creature · for crist þat þe made,
les nouȝt is liif ȝut · for a litel wille.

Take him for thy love."

seþþe he so lelly þe loues · to lemma*n* him þou take."
þan meliors ful mekliche · to þat mayde carped,
and seide ful soburli · smyland a litel,

" I would rather save a man's life than kill him," said Melior.

" nou bi god þat me gaf · þe gost & þe soule,
I kepe ȝut for no creature · manquellere be clepud,
ac leuer me were lelly · a manes liif to saue.
seþþe he for me is so marred · & has misfare long,
ful prestely for þi praire · & for þe pe*ri*le als,

[Fol. 12.]

" To save his life, I will grant him my love."

þat i se him set inne · and to saue his liue,
h[*er*]e i graunt him greþli · on godis holi name,
lelliche mi loue for euer · al mi lif time,
& gif a gift here to god · & to his gode moder,
þat oþer lud, whil i liue · schal i loue neuer!"

Then William thanked God heartily,

whan will*iam* herd þise wordes · i hete þe forsoþe,
he kneled quikli on knes · & oft god þonked,
& seide, " god ! þat madest man · & al middel erþe,
a miȝti miracle for me · hastow wrouȝt noþe."

and he and Melior were pledged to each other.

þan meked he him to meliors · on alle maner wise,
as þe gladdest gom · þat euer god wrouȝt.
& sche sertes bi hire side · þe same him graunted,
to worche wiþ hire al his wille · as he wel liked.

Then they clasped and kissed each other, and told each other of their sufferings.

þan eiþer hent oþer · hastely in armes,
& wiþ kene kosses · kuþþed hem to-gidere,
so þat no mu*r*þe upo*n* mold · no miȝt hem bet haue lyked.
& tit þanne told eche til oþ*er* · here tenes & here sorwe,
þat sadly for eiþers sake · hadden suffred long.

Alexandrine thought she would not be missed,

þanne alisau*n*drine anon · attlede þe soþe,
þat hire maistres & þat ma*n* · no schuld hire nouȝt misse,
þeȝh sche walked a while · wide from here siȝt,

for sche trowed trewly · to talke þe soþe, — and had better withdraw.
were sche out of þe weye · þat william wold fonde
for to pleie in þat place · þe priue loue game,
& to hete here þan[1] to layke · here likyng þat time.
sche goþ a-boute in-to þe gardyn · for to gader floures, — She went away to gather flowers,
& to wayte þat no weiȝh · walked þer-inne, — and to watch that no one came
for drede of descuueryng · of þat was do þere. — there.
william wel wiþ meliors · his wille þan dede,
& layked þere at lyking · al þe long daye,
til þe sunne was neiȝh set · soþli, to reste. — Just before sunset, Alexandrine
þanne alisaundrine at arst · þan antresse hem tille, — returned,
& mekly to meliors · "madame," þan sche seide,
"haue ȝe geten þe gras · þat i ȝou geynliche hiȝt?
I trowe trewli be þis time · ȝour sorwe be passed;
eiþer of ȝou, as y leue · is god leche til oþer, — [Fol. 19 b.]
alle þe surgyens of salerne · so sone ne couþen — and asked them if they both felt
haue ȝour langoures a-legget · i leue for soþe." — they were cured.
þan william wax wiȝtly · wonderli a-schamed,
& he & meliors mercy · mekly hire criede — They prayed her to keep their
to kuuere wel here cunseile · for cas in þis erþe, — counsel, and thanked her
& þroli hire þonked · moni þousand siþes; — often.
"For sche hade brouȝt hem of bale · boþe," þei seide,
"& i-lengþed here lif · mani long ȝere."

Alisaundrine anon · after þat ilke — She warned Melior that it
bad meliors manly · here merþe þan stinte, — was near night,
& seide, "it is so neiȝh niȝt · þat nedes mote ye parte;
I drede me of descuuering · for ȝe haue dwelled long."
"allas! þis mochel meschef" · saide melior þanne,
"þis day is schorter to siȝt · þan it semed euere!" — who lamented the shortness of the day.
& william seide þe same · soþli þat time.
but alisaundrine anon · answerede & seide,
"Make ȝe no mourning · for ȝe may mete eft — She reminded them that they might meet again.
dernli hennes-forþ eche day · whan ȝou dere likes;
for-þi hasteli boþe · heiȝe ȝou a-sunder."

[1] Read "& to-gedere þan" (?) But see note.

þanne seiȝ þei no socour · but sunder þanne þei moste ;
So they kissed, and took leave of each other, and returned happy, wiþ clipping & kessing · þei kauȝt here leue,
& eiþer tok tit is way · to his owne chau*m*ber,
blisful for þei were botned · of here bales strong,
for they were quite cured. seþþen hastely were þei hol · & haden alle here wille.
wiþ alle listes of loue · alle longe ȝeres
priueli vnp*er*ceyued · þei pleyed to-gedere,
þat no seg vnder sunne · souched no gile.
William was beloved both by rich and poor, and especially by the emperor. so wel was will*ia*m bi-loued · wiþ riche & wiþ pore,
so fre to feffe alle frekes · wiþ ful faire ȝiftes,
þat þemp*er*our soþli him-self · sou*er*aynli him loued,
[Fol. 20.] & seþþe alle oþer seges · þat seiȝen him wiþ eiȝen;
Alexandrine kept their counsel well. & algate alisaundrine · at alle poyntes hem serued
so sliȝliche, þat no seg · souched non cuele,
but alle gau*e*n god word · to gomes þat hem plesede.

Now it befell that the Duke of Saxony made war on the emperor of Rome. Hit tidde after bi time · as þe tale mi*n*ges,
þe douȝti duk of saxoyne · drow to þat londe
wiþ ou*er*-gret[1] ost · godmen of armes,
wrongly forto werre · wiþ þemp*er*our þat time.
& wiþ bobaunce & wiþ bost · brent fele tounes,
No stone-walls withstood his assaults. no strengþe him wiþ-stod · of sad stonen walles,
but bet a-doun burwes · & brutned moche peple,
so þat duel was to deme · þe duresse þat he wrouȝt.
whanne þese tyding were told · to þemp*er*our of rome,
The emperor was greatly grieved, he was gretly a-greued[2] · no gome þort him blame,
þat eni weiȝh of þe world · schuld werre on his lond.
and sent messengers to all his lords his sondes þanne he sente · swiþe al a-boute
to alle þe lordes of his land · to lasse & to more,
þat ouȝten him omage · or ani seute elles,
& warned hem werfore · he wiȝtly hem of-sent,
to come to him fully arrayed. & het hem alle hiȝe þider · as harde as þei miȝt,
wel warnished for þe werre · wiþ clene hors & armes.
whanne þemp*er*ours komau*n*dm*e*nt · was kud al a-boute,

[1] MS. "ou*e*r gart gret;" see note. [2] MS. "a-greues."

Mani was þat bold barn · þat busked þider sone,
kinges & kud dukes · & kniȝtes ful gode,
& oþer bold burnes · a-boute sexti þousand,
alle boun to batayle · in ful briȝt armes.
and riȝt in-to rome · alle þe rinkes drowe,
to wite þemperours wille · how he wirche þouȝt.

Kings, dukes, knights, and men came to him, 60,000 in all; and all ready for battle.

Whanne william þat worþi child · wist of þat fare,
was no glader gom · þat euer god made,
he went euen to þemperour · & enys him sayde,
knelyng on his kne · curteysli & faire,
"Godo sir, for goddis loue · grant me a bone;
ȝif me þe ordur of kniȝt · to go to þis dedus,
& i hope to heuene king · mi helþ schal nouȝt fayle,
þat i nel manly wiþ mi miȝt · meynte[ne] ȝour riȝt."
þemperour was gretly glad · & graunted his wille,
& made him kniȝt on the morwe · & mo for his sake.
of proude princes sones · douȝti men toward,
Fulle foure schore · for williames loue,
& ȝaf hem hors & armes · as an hend lord schold,
& made william here wardeyn · as he wel miȝt,
to gye & to gouerne · þe gay yong kniȝtes.
& whanne þempe[r]ours ost · was holli a-sembled,
he told to-fore þe grete · his tene & his harmes,
how þe duk of saxoyne · dede him gret wrong,
brent his nobul burwes · & his burnes quelled,
& komande hem kendely · here cunseile to ȝeue,
In what wise were best · to wreke him þanne.
& alle seide at o sawe · "sire, we ȝou rede,
streeches forþ wiþ ȝour ost · stinteþ no lenger,
& fondes to do þe duk · what duresse ȝe may.
hampres him so harde · to sum cost þat be drawe,
sewes him to sum cite · & a-sege him þere,
til ȝe wiþ fin fors · þe freke haue wonne."

When William heard of it, he was very glad,

[Fol. 20 b.] and prayed the emperor to grant him a boon, viz. to knight him.

The emperor gladly knighted both him and 80 others, making William their warden.

The emperor tells his men what harm the king of Saxony has done,

and asks their advice.

They advise him to pursue the duke to some city, and shut him up there.

Whanne þemperour wist wel · þ[e] wille of his cun-
sayle,

They set out, well furnished with provisions.

he di3t him deliuerly · & dede him on gate
holly wiþ al his herde · þat he hade a-sembled.
& wel þei were warnestured · of vitayles i-now,
plentiuosly for al peple · to passe where þei wold.
& so harde þei hi3ed þan · i hote þe for soþe,
They soon came to where the duke was.
þat al þe clene cumpanye · com to þe place
nei3 þere as þe dou3ti duk · duresse so wrou3t.
to þe duk was it told tit · trewli þe soþe,
how þemperour wiþ ost[1] · þider was come,
to a-wreke him of þe wrong · þat þan was wrou3t þere,
The duke sends to defy
[Fol. 21.]
& swiþe for bobaunce & bost · burnes he sent
enuiously to þemperour · & egged him swiþe
bi a certayne day · bataile to a-bide,
and challenge the emperor.
or elles, he sent him to say · schortely he wold
bruttene alle hise burnes · & brenne his londes.
The emperor tells William of this challenge.
þise tyding were told · to þemperour sone,
& wi3tly whan he þanne wist · william he calle[d],[2]
þat 3ong bold bachiler · & bliue him told
how despitously þe duk · of þat dede him warned,
to be boun be a certayne day · batayle to holde.
sir william ful wisly · þise wordes þanne seide,
William says he hopes they will abate the duke's pride.
" sir, god for his grace · graunt 3ou wel to spede,
to a-bate þe bost · of þat breme duke.
& so hope i wel, sire · we schal atte best."
ful menskfully to þe messangeres · þemperour þan seide,
he wold be boun bleþeli · þe bold batayle to hold,
& þei bliue dude hem forþ · & þe duk tolde.
Both hosts prepare for the battle.
þan boþe partiȝes prestly · a-paraylde hem þat time
of alle tristy a-tir · þat to batayle longed,
& made hem alle merie · in þe mene while,
til þe selue day þat was set · soþly was come,
& boþe partyes here place · pertiliche hade chosen
In a ful fayre feld · feiþly to telle.
þanne busked þei here batayles · on þe best wise,

[1] MS. has a blank space between "ost" and "þider;" see note.
[2] Read "called."—M.

& whanne þe renkes were arayed · redly as þei wold,
bugles & bemes · men gun blowe fast,
& alle maner menstracie · þere was mad þanne,
forto hardien þe hertes · of here heiȝh burnes. 1156
þanne bi-gan þe batayle · breme for þe nones ;
Mani strok in litel stounde · sternely was þer ȝeuen,
& mani a bold burne · sone brouȝt of liue.
but schortly for to telle · þe schap of þis tale, 1160
þe duk hade þe douȝtiere men · to deme þe soþe,
& mani mo þan þemperour · & þei so manly fouȝten,
þat balfully þe ferst batayle · þei brutned to deþe,
& þai ful fast for fere · gunne fle þan þat miȝt ; 1164
but þe almauns seweden sadly · & slowe doun riȝtes.
whan þemperour say þat siȝt · his men so i-quelled,
him was wonderli wo · witow for soþe.
ful pitousli þan preiede he · to þe prince of heuene 1168
forto giif him grace · his gomes to saue,
& seide, " heiȝh king of heuene · for þi holy name,
ne fauore nouȝt so my [fo] [1] · þat falsly me so marres.
for god what [2], i na gult him neuer · to gif him enchesoun 1172
forto wirch me no wrong · ne werre on my londe.
& lord ! he is my lege man · lelly þou knowes,
for holly þe londes þat he has · he holdes of mi-selue,
þer-for þe wronger he wirches · al þe world may know.
for-þi a mynde on me, lord · for þi moder loue, 1177
help me haue þe herre hand · her-affter in my riȝt ! "

The bugles and trumpets are blown.

The battle begins.

The duke's men were most numerous.

[Fol. 21 b.] The Almayns prevail against the Romans.

The emperor prays to God, pleading the justice of his cause,

and that the duke is the wrongdoer.

William þe ȝong kniȝt · was so neiȝh be-side,
þat he herd þe pytous pleint · þat þemperour made,
& siked for sorwe þer-of · sore wiþ-alle. 1181
but quicly clepud he · þe ȝong kniȝtes alle,
& seide, " leue lordinges · lestenes to mi sawe ;
nouȝ go we kiþe oure kniȝthod · for cristes loue of heuene, 1184

William hears him, and calls to his men

that it is time to prove their knighthood.

[1] Read "my *foe* that falsly."—M. [2] *Sic.* Read "wot."

Lo, oure folk ginneþ to falle · for defaute of help.
lettes nouȝt for ȝoure liues · ȝour lord forto socoure,
hasteli wiþ god hert nouȝ · hiȝes ȝou to þe dede, 1187
& ho-so faileþ for feyntyce · wild fur him for-brenne!"

William's fierce onset.

þan wiȝtly boute mo wordes · william ginnes ride,
fresly toward here fos · as frek out of witte;
þere þe pres was perelouste · he priked in formest,
& blessed so wiþ his briȝt bront · a-boute in eche side,
þat what rink so he rauȝt · he ros neuer after. 1193
& soþli forto seie · wiþ-inne a schort while,

He slays six of the greatest with his own hand,

william wiþ his owne hond · so wiȝtliche pleide,
þat he slow six of þe grettes[t] · soþ forto telle, 1196
& þat douȝtiest were of dede · of þe dukes ost.

including the duke's nephew and his steward.

þat on was his neuew · a nobul kniȝt of armes,
þat oþer was his stiward · þat stiȝtled al his meyne.
[Fol. 22.] þe oþer were lordes of þat lond · lelly of þe best. 1200
& whanne þe duk was war · how william him demeyned,
& how balfully he brutned · his burnes to deþe,
& nameliche for his newe · þat nam he most to herte,

The duke is mad with wrath, and points out William to his men.

he wax neiȝ ouȝt of his witte · for wraþ & for anger,
& clepud on his kniȝtes · þat kene were & nobui, 1205
& seide, "lordinges for my loue · no lenger ne stintes,
but chases þat kene kniȝt · þat þis kare vs werches.
Loo, how luþerly þat lud · leyes on oure burnes, 1208
non may is sterne strok · wiþstande þat he hittes."
þus despitusly þe duk · drayed him þanne,

They rush off to attack William,

þat his kniȝtes swiþe swore · what [so] it bi-tidde,
þei wold winne william wiȝtly · oþer quik or dede. 1212
þan ride to-gedere a gret route · of rinkes ful nobul,
& went euen to sir william · & wonderli him bi-sette;
ac he wiþ douȝti dentes · defended him long,

who is at last overpowered and captured.

but, soþliche for to telle · so was he ouer-macched, 1216
þat þei wiþ fyn force · for-barred his strokes,
& woundede him wikkedly · & wonne him of his stede,
& bounden him as bliue · him bale to wirche,
& drowen him toward þe duk · his dom forto here.

but william whiȝes · þat wiȝtly of-seiȝyen,
& demened hem douȝtili · dintes te dele,
þe ȝong kene kniȝtes · so kudden here strengþe,
þat þei wonne hem wiȝtly · weyes ful large,
til þei hadde perced þe pres · pertily to here maister,
& rescuede him rediliche · for[1] rinkes þat him ladden.
þan þei him vnbond bliue · & brouȝt him his stede,
& triliche was he a-tired · in ful tristy armes;
his scheld on his schulder · a scharp swerd in honde.
& whan þis william was ȝare · he waited him a-boute,
leþerly as a lyoun · he lepes in-to þe prese,
prestly þer as þe pres · of peple was þikkest.
þanne lente he swiche leuere · to ledes þat he of-rauȝt,
þat þe lif sone he les · þat lauȝt ani dint,
& euer þan drow he to þe duk · deland swiche paye.
& as sone as he him seiȝ · he sesed a spere,
& dressed him to þe duk · presteli to iuste.
& whan þe duk was war · þat he wold come,
boute feyntice of feuer[2] · he festned his spere,
& grimly wiþ gret cours · eiȝþer gerdeþ oþer.
& william wiþ god wille · so wel þe duk hitt,
þat þurth scheld & scholder · þe scharpe spere grint,
& hetterly boþe hors & man · he hurled to þe. grounde,
þanne liȝtly lep he a-doun · & lauȝt out his brond,
& deliuerliche to þe duk · deuoteliche he seide,
"sire, þou seidest me ȝer-while · þou schuldest me do quelle,
& madest þi men me binde · meschef to þole;
but gretly y þonk god · þat gart me a-chape,
& dede þe wante þi wille · for þou wrong þoutest.
but, sire, in þe same seute · sett artow nouȝ,
& y am prest as þi prisoun · to paye þe my ransum!
ȝeld þe to me ȝeply · or ȝerne þou schalt deie,
For alle þe men vpon mold · ne mow it now lette."

1221 But William's men come to his rescue.

1224

and release and unbind him.

1228

Fierce as a lion, William renews the attack,

1232

[Fol. 22 b.] cutting his way through to the duke.

1236

The duke encounters him fiercely.

1240

William huris him to the ground.

1244

William tells the duke he is thankful for his own escape,

1248

and it is now for *him* to crave mercy.

1252

[1] Read "fro." [2] Read "boute feyntice, on feuter" (?)

Þe duk þan was in drede · & wend to deie sone,
& lelly, þouȝh him loþ þouȝt · no lenger to striue,
The duke yields up his sword, and asks for mercy.
swiþe he ȝald vp his swerd · to saue þanne his liue,
& seide, "man, for þi mensk · haue mercy on me nouþe,
lette me nouȝt lese þe liif ȝut · lord, y þe bi-cheche."
þanne william witly · as a wiȝh hende,
William takes his sword, and takes him to the emperor,
receyued of þat riche duk · realy his swerde,
& euen to þemperour · wiþ him þan he hiȝed.
wanne þemperour seiȝh william come · & wiþ him þe duke,
he was on þe gladdest gome · þat miȝt go on erþe;
who embraces and kisses William for joy.
& william þanne to welkome · he wendes him aȝeynes,
& clipte him kindeli · & kest fele siþes.
Then William delivered the duke to the emperor.
þan william wiȝtly · as he wel couþe,
profered him þat prisoner · prestely at his wille
to do þan wiþ þe duk · what him dere þouȝt.
þemperour þat worþi william · wel oft þan ponked
[Fol. 23.]
of þe grete grace þat god · godliche þere schewede,
& strokes was þer delt na mo · fram þe duk was take.
The duke's men fled away as fast as they could.
For al his folk þan gunne fle · as fast as þei miȝt,
& he þat hadde best hors · þan held him best saued.
but þemperours men manly · made þe chace,
The Romans pursued them, slaying and taking prisoners,
& slowen doun bi eche side · wham þei of-take miȝt,
but ȝif þei manly hem meked · mercy to crie.
& euer william so wiȝtly · went hem a-mong
to þe boldest burnes · as he bi-fore hadde,
þat soþly dar ỳ seie · þurth his socour þanne,
so that very few of them got away.
Riȝt fewe went a-wey · vn-woundet or take.
ac hadde þe day last lenger · lelli to seye,
no wiȝt a-wei hadde schaped · i wot wel þe soþe.
Night fell, and it grew very dark,
but þe niȝt was so neiȝh · þat non miȝt sen oþer
þe furþe del of a furlong · from him þat time.
and some got away in the darkness.
& in þat derk þe dukes [men][1] · wiþ-drow hem manie,
& ho-so hardest miȝt hiȝe · held him nouȝt bi-giled.
þemperour[2] wiþ moche merþe · his men þan meled;

[1] Read "the dukes *men*." —M. [2] MS. "þempour."

& whanne þei samen were a-sembled · soþ for to telle,
þei hadde take þat time · of trie grete lordes 1289
Fulle fiue hundered · of ful nobul prisouns,
wiþ-oute alle þe burnes · þat in batayle deide.
þan was þemperour greteli glad · & ofte god þonked,
& williams werk · þat he so wel hadde spedde. 1293
& holliche þanne wiþ his host · hiȝede to here tentes
wiþ merþe of alle menstracye · & made hem attese,
& turned to rest at time · til erliche a morwe. 1296
& wanne þei were a-rise · þei remewed to cherche,
& herden holly here masse · & afterward sone
þemperour al holliche · his cunseyle dede clepe,
& sone bi here a-sent · at þat selue time, 1300
Riȝt as william wold · þat wisly him radde,
alle þe douȝthi lordes · of þe dukis were take;
he dede fecche hem him bi-fore · & freyned hem swiþe,
ȝif þei wold of him holly · halde alle here londes. 1304
& þei graunted godli · ful glad of þat sawe,
& alle anon riȝtes · þere omage him dede,
& þemperour wel loueliche · deliuered he[m] þenne,
& sente wiþ hem sondes · to saxoyne þat time, 1308
& nomen omage in his name · nouȝt forto layne,
Forto riȝtleche þat reaume real · of riche & of pore.
whanne þat dede was do · dernly at wille,
and alle lele lawes · in þat lond sette, 1312
& alle þe peple held hem payed · pes forto haue;
whanne þemperour it wist · he was wel a-payed,
& loueliche wiþ alle his lordes · to lumbardie fares,
wiþ alle þe merþe vpon molde · þat man miȝt diuise;
but feiþli his felachipe · forþ wiþ him he hadde. 1317
þe douȝty duk of saxoyne · þe duel þat he made,
for his peple was slayn · & to prison take,
& wist þan he hade wrongly · wrouȝt þurȝth his pride;
& swiche duel drow to hert · for his dedus ille, 1321
þat he deide on þe fifte day · to talke þe soþe.
whanne þemperour þat wist · wiȝtly he comanded,

Five hundred had been taken, and many slain.

The Romans retire to their tents.

Next morning, they go to church and hear mass.

The prisoners are brought, and asked if they will submit to the emperor.

[Fol. 23 b.]

They gladly do him homage, and are released.

All being thus settled as regarded Saxony,

the emperor marched to Lombardy.

The duke of Saxony felt such grief for the wrong he had done,

that he died on the fifth day.

He is buried honourably.

to burye him as out to be · swiche a burne nobul,
wiþ alle worchipe & wele; · so was he sone.[1] 1325

The emperor returns to Rome,

þan remued þempe*r*our · toward rome euene,
& wi3tly william wiþ him · þat was wounded sore;
but lelly nobul leches · loked to his woundes, 1328
þat seide he schuld be sauf · & sweteliche heled.

sending messengers before him to his daughter.

messangers ful manly · þempe*r*our þanne sente,
by-fore to his dere dou3ter · to do hire to wite
þat he come wiþ his companie · as[2] crist wold, al saf.
þe messangeres ful manly · to meliors þanne spedde,

The messengers greet Melior, and tell their message.

& gretten hire godli · whan þei þat gode seie, 1334
& mynged here message · to þat mayde hende,
how hir fader in helþe · hom wold come
feiþli wiþ-inne þe fourtene-ni3t · wiþ his frekes bold.
Gret merþe to þe messangeres · meliors þan made, 1338
for þe tidy tidinges · þat ti3tly were seide.

[Fol. 24.] Melior asks if the enemy gave them much trouble,

" nou3, faire frendes, be 3our feiþ · fond 3e ani lette
of segges of þe oþer side · þat sette 3ou a-geynes?"
" o madame!" seide þe messageres · " what mele 3e
nouþe?
seþþe crist deide on þe croyce · mankinde to saue,

and they say, it was a very sharp encounter.

3e ne herde neu*er*, y hope · of so hard a cu*n*ter, 1344
ne of so fele burnes · at on batayle slayne!"
" telles how 3ou tidde" · seide meliors þanne.
" Madame," seide þe messageres · " be marie in heuen,

The duke's numerous host would have prevailed, but for the succour of a certain knight,

þe duk hadde so gret an host · of gode men of armes,
þat soþli al oure side · sone slayn hadde bene, 1349
nadde þe socour of o seg · þat in oure side dwelleþ,
þat haþ lengþed al oure [liues][3] · leue 3e forsoþe,
þurth þe dou3ti dedes · þat he haþ do þere." 1352

i. e. William, the one but newly knighted.

" swete sire, what is he?" · þat seide meliors sone.
" I-wisse," he seide, " it is will*i*am · þat is newe kni3ted,
he may lelly be hold a lord · & ledere of peples,
Forto weld al þe world · to wisse & to rede, 1356

[1] This line and the preceding one are transposed in the MS.
[2] MS. "al." [3] Read "al oure *liues*."—M. Cf. l. 1360.

for þer nis king vnder crist · þat he ou*er*-com nolde.
I-wisse, nade his werk be · we mow nouȝt for-sake,
þi fader and al his folk · so misfaren hadde,
þat alle here liues in a stounde · hadde be lore." 1360
þanne told þei hire tiȝtly · al þe trewe soþe,
at how miche meschef · here men were formest,
& seþþe how wiȝtly will*iam* · went to here foos,
& dede deliuerly nym þe duk · to talke þus formest;
& seþþe þe grettes[t] lordes · he garte here liif tine, 1365
& also þei told trewli · how he was take him-selue,
& reddely wiþ his owne rinkes · rescued after ;[1]
& seþþe what dedes he dede · he tok þe selue duk, 1368
and brouȝt þurth is bolde dedes · þe batayle to hende ;
& seþen how þe duk for duel · deyde in here ward,
& how al saxoyne was set · wiþ wel sadde lawes,
to wirche here faderes wille · þurȝth will*iam* dedes.
& whan þis tale was told · meliors tyt seide, 1373
" leue lordinges, for my loue · lelly me telles,
comes þat will*iam* wiþ my fader · & weldes his hele?"
" ȝe sertes, madame," seide þei · " he sewes ȝour fader ;
but wel weldes he nouȝt his hele · for wonded was he sore, 1377
þat greue*n* him gretly · but god may do bote."
" For mary loue," seide meliors · " mai he be heled?"
" ȝa certes, madame · he is so sounde nowþe, 1380
þat he may redly ride & rome · whan þat him likes."
Meliors to þe messageris · þan made gret ioye,
for þe tyding þat þei told · touchend hire fader.
but i hote þe, in hert · sche hade swiche blisse, 1384
þat neue*r* woman in þis world · miȝt weld more,
for hire louely lemma*n* · hade swiche los wonne,
to bere him best in þat batayle · wiþ so breme dedus.
þanne made þei hem [merie][2] · to make schort tale, 1388

But for him, the battle would have been lost.

But William attacked and took the duke.

He was once taken himself, but his men rescued him.

The duke had died of pure grief.

[Fol. 24 *b*.] She asks if William was coming home with her father.

They said he was coming, sound and well, though he had been wounded.

Melior was very glad to hear of William's doughty deeds.

[1] The MS. has "rescued him after"; but either *wiþ* or *him* must be struck out.

[2] The alliteration would lead us to supply *merie*.—M. See l. 1409.

After a week, the emperor arrives.

soþly al þat seueniȝt ; · & so, atte last,
þemperour & alle peple · to his palays come ;
Receyued was he of romaynes · realy as lord.

Melior goes out to meet him,

þanne meliors ful mekly · wiþ maydenes fele,
ferde out a-ȝens hire fader · & faire him gret,
& hire louely lemman · lelly next after,
& made hem as moche ioye · as miȝt any burde ;

kissing her father, and William afterwards.

Kyndeliche clipping · and kessing hire fader,
& wiþ a curteise cuntenaunce · william next after,
for no seg þat it seye · schuld schoche but godę.

She whispered to William to come to her chamber.

but priueli un-perceyued · sche praide william þanne,
to seche softily to hire chaumber · as sone as he miȝt.
& he bi quinte contenance · to come he granted,
for he ne durst openly · for ouer-trowe of gile ;
but wel sche knew þurth konnyng · at þat cas his wille.

The Romans make great joy, only lament for their friends slain.

to long mater most it be · to myng al þe ioye,
& þe real romayns array · for here lordes sake,
& þe mochel mornyng · þei made for here frendes,
whanne þei wist witterly · whiche in batayle deyde.
but confort for þe conquest · þei cauȝt sone after,
& made hem as mery · as ani men couþe.[1]

[Fol. 25.] William went to Melior when he saw opportunity.

& william went to meliors · whan he seiȝ time,
& layked him at likyng · wiþ þat faire burde
pleyes of paramours · vn-parceyued longe time,
so sliliche, þat no seg · scouched non ille.

Alexandrine kept their counsel well.

but algate alysaundrine · atte wille hem serued,
þat non knew here cunseile · but þei þre one.

One Easter-tide, the emperor summons all his lords and ladies.

But þanne tidde on a time · titly þer-after,
þemperour erded stille in rome · at þe ester tide,
& for þat solempne sesoun[2] · dede somoun alle þe grete,
of lordes & ladies · þat to þat lond partened.
and alle to his comandement · comen ful sone,
& derly at þat day · wiþ deynteyes were þei serued.
as þei were meriest at mete · to menge al þe soþe,

[1] Catchword—"& william."

[2] MS. "sofou."

xxx busy burnes · barounes ful bolde,
comen in manly message · fro þempe*r*our of grece,
& bi kinde of kostant-noble · keper was þanne.
þe messageres riȝt realy · were arayde, for soþe,
al in glimerand gold · greþand[1] to riȝtes,
It were tor for to telle · al here atyr riche.
but eue*r* to þempe*r*our · alle þei ȝede in-fere,
& kurtesliche vpo*n* here knes · þei komsed him grete
Godli fro þempe*r*our of grece · & fro his gode sone.
& þempe*r*our ful semly · seide to hem þanne,
"he þat made man mest · ȝour liues mot saue,
& alle ȝoure clene co*m*panie · crist ȝif hem ioye
for þe menskfulles[t] messageres · þat eue*r* to me come!"

As they feasted, 30 men came from the emperor of Greece,

all richly attired in gold.

The emperor greets them, and asks their message.

On of þe barons bold · bi-gu*n*ne to schewe here nedes,
þat was a gret lord in grece · roachas he hiȝt,
& seide soberly to þempe*r*our · in þis selue wise,
"Leue lord & ludes · lesten to mi sawes!
þe gode empe*r*our of grece · þe grettest of us alle,
whas messageres we be mad · to mu*n*ge ȝou his wille,
sendes you to seie · he has a sone dere,
on þe triest man to-ward · of alle douȝti dedes,
þat any man vpon molde · may of here,
þat schal be empe*r*our after him · of heritage bi kynde.
& he haþ oft herde sayd · of ȝoure semly douȝter,
how fair, how fetis sche is · how freli schapen;
& for þe loos on hire is leide · & loue of ȝour-selue,
he prayeth, lord, vowche-sauf · þat his sone hire wedde.
Grucche nouȝt þer-a-gayn · but godli, i rede,
Graunte þis faire forward · fulfillen in haste.
& ȝif ye so doþ, i dar seie · & soþliche do proue,
sche schal weld at wille · more gold þan ȝe siluer;
& haue mo solempne cites · and semliche casteles,
þan ȝe treuly han smale tounes · o[r] vntydi houses,
& herof, sire, wiȝtly · ȝour wille wold we knowe.

A great lord, named Roachas, replies

that the emperor of Greece has a dear son

[Fol. 25 *b*.] who is to be emperor after him,

who wishes to marry Melior.

She is to have more gold than ye have silver.

[1] We ought probably to read *greithed*.—M.

As the emperor's lords are all there, he can give his answer at once.

þe grete lordes of ȝour land · beþ lenged now here,
ȝe mow wiȝtly now wite · ȝour wille & ȝour rede,
& wiȝtly do vs to wite · what answere ȝou likes."
þemperour calde his cunseil · for to knowe here wille,

He and his lords assent.

& godli boute grucching · alle graunted sone,
& setten a serteyne day · þat solempte to holde ;
& sad seurte was sikered · on boþe sides þanne,

The marriage is to be made at Midsummer.

þat menskful mariage to make · at midesomer after.
sone were þe messagers made · mildli at ese,
while hem liked lende · & lelly, whan þei wente,
Grete ȝiftes were giue · & of gold & of seluer,

The messengers return to Greece, loaded with gifts.

& þei wiȝtly went hom · wiþ ioye & wiþ merþe.
þe answere of here herend · þemperour þei tolde;
Gret murþe was mad · for þat message in rome,

The report of the marriage is spread through Rome.

& þe word went wide · how þe mayde was ȝeue
rifliche þurth-out rome · & eche a rynk was bliþe
þat þe milde meliors · so mariede scholde bene
to þemperours eir of grece · & euerich man wiþ ioye
teld it forþ til oþer · tiȝtli al a-boute.

William heard of it as he was at play,

but þe worþi william · þer-of wist he nouȝt,
For he was atte a bourdes · þer bachilers pleide.
whanne þe tiding[1] was þer told · witow forsoþe,
out of þat faire felachip · ferde he þan sone

[Fol. 26.]

as mekeli as he miȝt · lest eni mysse trowede ;
but whan he was passed þe pres · he prikede as swiþe

and rode home, feeling well-nigh mad.

as he miȝt hiȝe his hors · for hurtyng of spors ;
neiȝh wod of witte · for woo of þat sawe,
for he schold lese his lemman · his liif þan he hated.
wiþ care was he ouer-come · bi þat he com to his inne,

He went to bed and fell sick.

þat he for bale as bliue · to his bed went,
& siked þanne so sore · þe soþe forto telle,
þat uch wiȝh þat it wist · wend he ne schuld keuer.

All who heard of it were much grieved.

& whan hit was wist in rome · þat william was sek,
mochel was he mened · of more & of lasse ;
for a beter bi-loued barn · was neuer born in erþe,

[1] MS. "diting"; cf. l. 1493.

þan he was wiþ ich wiȝt · wil he woned in rome.
þe tiding þan were tiȝtly · to þemperour i-told,
& he þan swoned for sorwe · & swelt neiȝhonde ;
but kniȝtes him vp cauȝt · & comfort him beter.
& whan he þurth comfort · was comen of his care,
he went wiȝtli to william · to wite how he ferde,
& kniȝtes folwed him forþ · fiue oþer sixe.
anon as he com him to · he asked how he ferd.
"sire!" þan seide he softly · "certes, so ille.
þat i leue my lif · last nouȝt til to morwe.
but god, sire, for his grete miȝt graunt ȝou ioye,
for þe worchipe þat ȝe · han wruȝt to me ȝore."
whan þemperour hade herd · holly his wordes,
& seie him so sekly · þat he ded semed,
swiche sorwe sank to his hert · þat miȝt he nouȝt suffre
þer to be, bot he miȝt · his bale haue slaked ;
of him wiȝtly he tok his leue · & went hom a-ȝeine,
weping as he wold wide · for wo & for sorwe,
& deliuerli to his douȝter · his del þan he made,
how william hire worþi nory · was neiȝe atte deþe.
& sche hire fader cumfort · fast as sche miȝt,
but worse was neuer woman · for wo at hire herte.
as fast as hire fader · was faren of þe weie,
sche wept & weiled · as sche wold haue storue,
& swoned ofte siþe · her sche sese miȝt.
but alisandrine anon · þat al hire cunseile wist,
comfort hire as sche couþe · wiþ alle kinde speches,
& bad hire wiȝtly wende · to wite how he ferde.
" & soþliche, madame · so may hit bi-tide,
ȝour comfort mai him keuere · & his sorwe slake."
þan meliors mekly · hire maydenes dede calle,
& many of hire meyne · for drede of missespeche,
& went ful wiȝtly · to will[i]ams inne,
as nouȝt were bot [to] wite · how þat he ferde.
& whan sche drow to his chaumber · sche dede ful sone

The emperor hears William is ill, and swoons for sorrow.

He goes with five or six knights to ask him how he fares.

William thanks him for his kindness.

The emperor sees he is almost dead,

and returns home, and tells Melior.

When her father had left her, she wept and wailed.

[Fol. 26 b.]

Alexandrine comforts her, and advises to go and see William.

Melior, with many of her maidens, goes to William's abode.

here maydenes & oþer meyne · mekeli a-stente,
She and Alexandrine go into his chamber. al but alisaundrine · alone þei tweyne. 1528
þei went in-to willi*a*m · wiþ-oute any more,
She sits by his bed, and prays him to say what ails him. & busked hem euen to his bed · & bi hi*m* gunne sitte,
& seide sone softly · " my swete lemma*n* dere,
allone but alisau*n*drine · am i come to þe 1532
forto wite of þi wo · & what þat þe eiles.
Mi perles p*a*ramo*ur*s [1] · my pleye & my ioye,
spek to me spakli · or i spille sone."

He greets her lovingly, Willi*a*m tiȝtly him turned · & of hire tok hede, 1536
& seide aswiþe · " sweting, wel-come !
Mi derworþe derling · an my dere hert,
Mi blis & mi bale · þat botelesse wol ende !
but comliche creature · for cristes loue of heuene, 1540
and asks why she has forsaken him. for what maner misgelt · hastow me forsake,
þat lelly haue þe loued · & wile i liue þenke ?
feiþli boute feintyse · þou me failest nouþe,
þat hast turned þin entent · forto take a-noþer. 1544
Gret wrong hastou wrouȝt · & wel gret sinne,
to do me swiche duresse · to deye for þi sake.
Yet he thanks her for coming to see him now. but loueliche lemma*n* · oure lord mot þe ȝeld
þat þi worþi wille was · to come to me nouþe ; 1548
for þow hast lengþed my lif · & my langour schortet
[Fol. 27.] þurth þe solas & þe siȝt · of þe, my swete hert ! "
& whan melior hadde herd · holly al his wille,
Melior sighs sadly and weeps, sche siked sadly for sorwe · & wel sore wepte, 1552
& seide, " loueliche lemma*n* · leue þou for soþe,
alle men vpon molde · no schuld my liif saue,
ȝif þou wendest of þis world · þat i ne wende after !
and assures him he has not lost her, for she will not perform her father's will. ne, lemma*n*, lore hastow me nouȝt · leue þow forsoþe,
for þouȝh mi fader folliche · haue forwardes maked, 1557
wenestow þat i wold · his wille now parfourme ?
nay, bi god þat me gaf · þe gost and þe soule,
al þat trauaile he has tynt · what euer tyde after ! 1560

[1] MS. " paramo*ur*rs."

for þere nis man vpon molde · þat euer schal me haue
but ȝe, loueliche lemman · leue me for trewe,
In feiþ þei y schold þer-fore · be fordon as swiþe,
doluen dep quic on erþe · to-drawe or on-honged!" 1564
"ȝe, wist y þat," seide william · "witterly to speke,
of alle harmes were ich hol · hastely riȝt nouþe!"
"ȝis, be marie," seide meliors · "misdrede ȝow neuer;
I wil fulfille alle forwardes · feiþli in dede!" 1568
þan was william ful glad[1] · witow for soþe,
& eiþer kindeli clipped oþer · and kest wel ofte,
& wrout elles here wille · whil hem god liked.
& treuly whan[2] time com · þat þei twynne scholde, 1572
Meliors wiþ hire meyne · mekeliche hom wente;
william a stounde stinte stille · at his owne inne,
of alle his harde haches · heled atte best.
alle þe surgens of salerne · so sone ne coþen, 1576
haue lesed his langour · and his liif saued,
as þe maide meliors · in a mile wei dede.
þe word wide went sone · þat william was heled,
& vche gome was glad · and oft god þonked, 1580
& william on þe morwe · wel him a-tyred
Gayli in cloþes of gold[3] · & oþer gode harneis,
& komes euen to kourt · as kniȝt hol & fere,
heriend heiliche god · þat his liif saued. 1584
& soþli as sone as þemperour · say him wiþ eiȝen,
he hiȝed him hastely · & hent him in his armes,
& clupte him & keste · kyndeliche ful ofte,
& þus þei left in likyng · a god while after. 1588

None shall ever have her but William,
though she were buried alive, drawn, or hanged.
She will never break her pledge.
Then they kissed and comforted each other.
Melior went home, and William was healed.
It is soon known that he is healed, and all men thank God.
[Fol. 27 b.] The emperor is very glad, and embraces him.

But now more to minge · of þe messagers of grece.
as tyt as þei had told · trewli to here lord,
how realy þei were resceyued · in rome þe riche,
& þe gracious graunt · þei gaten of here herande, 1592
þemperour of grece gretly · was gladed in herte.
swiþe sent he sondes · to somoun þat time

The messengers from Greece return, and report how well they were received.

[1] MS. "gald." [2] MS. "wahan." [3] MS. "glod."

The emperor of Greece summons his lords,

alle þe grete of grece · and oþer gaie pepul,
þat no mon vpo*n* mold · mi3t ayme þe noumber;
al þat real aray reken · schold men neuer,
ne purueaunce þat prest was · to pepul a-greiþed.
but soþ atte þe day set · wiþ solempne merþe,
þis gaye genge of grece · to rome gu*n*ne ride,
& riden in real aray · to-ward rome euene.
forto reken al þe arai · in rome þat time,
alle þe men vpo*n* mold · ne mi3t hit deuice,
so wel in alle wise · was hit arayed,
& plente of alle purueau*n*ce · purueyed to ri3ttes.

and they set off to ride to Rome.

When they draw near Rome,

whan þempe*r*our of grece · neiyed nei3h rome,
wiþ alle his bolde burnes · a-boute þre mile,

the Roman emperor comes to meet them.

þempe*r*our of rome redeli · romed him a-3ens,
wiþ þe clennest cu*m*panye · þat euer king ladde.
& whan þe clene cu*m*panyes · comen to-gadere,
þe si3t was ful semly · and louely for to se,

The emperors embrace and greet each other.

whan eiþer of þempe*r*oures · er þei wold stint,
eiþer oþer keste · kindeliche þat time,
& seþþe þe same wiþ þe sone · also he wrou3t;
þe murþe of þat metyng · no man may telle.

All ride to Rome, where they find flowers strewn, and rich hangings,

Into rome al þat route · riden forþ in-fere,
& eche a strete was striked · & strawed wiþ floures,
& realy railled · wiþ wel riche cloþes,
& alle maner menstracie · maked him a-3ens;

[Fol. 28.] and hear minstrels and songs.

and also daunces disgisi · redi di3t were,
& selcouþ songes · to solas here hertes;
so þat soþli to say · þei3h i sete euer,
I schuld nou3t telle þe merþe · þat maked was þere;
forþi to mi*n*ge of þat matere · no more i ne þenk

The Greeks are harboured in tents outside the city,

but alle þe genge of grece · was gayli resseyued,
& herbarwed hastely · ich hete þe for soþe,
In a place, þer were pi3t · pauilounns & tentes,
bi o side of þe cite · for swiþe moche pepul;
for þei þat seie it forsoþe · saiden þe truþe,
þe place of þe pauilons · & of þe price tentes

semede as moche to siȝt · as þe cite of rome.
þemperour & euer*i* man · were esed to riȝttes,
& haden wiȝtly at wille · what þei wolde ȝerne.
but now a while wol i stinte · of þis wlonke mur*þe*,[1]
& munge now of meliors · þat blisful burde,
& of þe worþi will*iam* · þat was here lemman dere,
& telle þe tale lelly · what hem bitidde after.

the tents covering as much ground as did Rome itself.

But I must return to William and Melior.

Whan þese pepul was inned · wel at here hese,
will*iam* wel wiȝtli · wiþ-oute any fere,
Mornyng out mesure · to melior he wendes,
& siked ful sadli · and seide to hire sone,
" a ! worþiliche wiȝt · wel wo is me nouþe !
þurȝth destine my deþ is diȝt · dere, for þi sake !
I may banne þat i was born · to a-bide þis time,
forto lese þe lef · þat al mi liif weldes.
foule þow me fodest · wiþ þi faire wordes,
elles had i deide for duel · many dai seþþe,
& so god for his grace · goue y hadde ! "
Meliors seide mekli · " whi so, mi dere hert ?
forwardes þat i haue fest · ful wel schal i hold,
I hope to þe heiȝh king · þat al heuen weldes.
þer-for stint of þi striif · & stodie we a-noþer,
what wise we mow best · buske of þis lond."
whan he [wist] þese wordes · will*iam* wel liked,
seide, " mi hony, mi hert · al hol þou me makest,
wiþ þi kinde cu*m*fort · of alle mi kares kold."
þan studied þei a gret stou*n*de · stifli to-gadere,
bi what wise þei miȝt best · buske of þat þede,
priueli vnper*c*eyued · for peynes þat hem tidde ;
al in wast þei wrouȝt · here witte wold nouȝt serue.
alisau*n*drine to cu*n*seile · þei clepud sone þanne,
& telden hire trewli · what tent þei were inne,
ȝif þei wist *in* what wise · to wende of þat londe,
& preyed hire *par* charite · and for profites loue,

William goes to Melior, and sighing says,

" Now must I die for thy sake ;

and I would I were dead indeed ! "

Melior assures him she will keep her troth, and they must devise a plan of escape.

[Fol. 28 *b*.]

They strive in vain to think of some way of flight.

They therefore ask Alexandrine her advice.

[1] MS. " mu*r*þe."

to kenne hem sum coyntice · ȝif sche any couþe,
to wisse hem forto wend · a-wey vnperceyued.
She answers, weeping, that she can think of no way at all;
alisaundrine a-non · answered þan and seide,
wepand wonderli fast · for þei wende wold,
"bi þat blisful barn · þat bouȝt us on þe rode,
I kan bi no coyntyse · knowe nouȝ þe best,
how ȝe mowe un-hent · or harmles a-schape.
for be hit witerly wist · þat [ȝe][1] a-went bene,
for the cry would soon be raised, and every pass guarded.
eche a kuntre worþ kept · wiþ kud men i-nouȝe,
eche brug, eche payþe[2] · eche brode weye,
þat noþer clerk nor kniȝt · nor of cuntre cherle
schal passe vnperceyued · & pertiliche of-souȝt.
They would soon be found out if disguised; the only way is this.
& ȝef ȝe were disgised · & diȝt on any wise,
I wot wel witerli · ȝe wold be aspied.
seþþe no noþer nel be · but nedes to wende,
craftier skil kan i non · þan i wol kuþe.
The men in the kitchen are always flaying beasts.
In þe kechene wel i knowe · arn crafti men manye,
þat fast fonden alday · to flen wilde bestes,
hyndes & hertes · wiþ hydes wel fayre,
bukkes and beris · and oþer bestes wilde,
of alle fair venorye · þat falles to metes.
Of all beasts, bears seem the most grisly.
ac þe bremest best · þe beres me semen,
þe gon most grisli · to eche gomes siȝt;
Miȝt we by coyntise · com bi tvo skynnes,
of þe breme beres · & bi-sowe ȝou þer-inne,
[Fol. 29.] None would know them if they were wrapped up in white bears' skins.
þer is no liuand lud · i-liue ȝou knowe schold,
but hold ȝou ouȝt of heie gates · for happes, i rede.
rediliche no better red · be resun i ne knowe,
þan to swiche a bold beste · best to be disgised,
for þei be alle maners · arn man likkest."
They thank her for her counsel, and beg her to get the skins.
þan william ful wiþtli · & his worþi burde
ful þroly hire þonked · many þousand siþe
of hire crafty cunsayl · & kindliche hire bi-souȝt,
wiȝtly wiþ sum wyl · winne hem tvo skinnes
of þo breme bestes · þat beres ben called,

[1] Read "that ze a went bene."—M. [2] Or "paþþe."

pryuely vnperceyued · for peril þat may falle.
& alisaundrine a-non · as an hende mayde,
seide sche wold deliuerly · do þer-to hire miȝt,
Forto saue hem fro sorwe · hir-self forto deye.

She says she will try.

Wiȝtly boute mo wordes · sche went fo[r]þ stille,
& bliue in a bourde · borwed boiȝes cloþes,
& talliche hire a-tyred · tiȝtli þer-inne,
& bogeysliche as a boye · busked to þe kychene,
þer as burnes were busy · bestes to hulde;
& manly sche melled hire · þo men forto help,
til sche say tidi time · hire prey for to take.
sche a-wayted wel · þe white bere skinnes,
þat loueli were & large · to lappen inne hire frendes,
& went wiȝtly a-wei · wel vnparceyued,
& lepeþ þer-wiþ to hire lady · & hire lemman dere,
seide softily, "now seþ · how sone i haue spedde?"
& þei ful glad of þe gere · gretly here þonked,
& preiede here ful presteli · to put hem þer-inne,
so semli þat no seg · miȝt se here cloþes.
& sche melled hire meliors · ferst to greiþe,
& festened hire in þat fel · wiþ ful gode þonges
aboue hire trie a-tir · to talke þe soþe,
þat no man vpon mold · miȝt oþer perceyue
but sche a bere were · to baite at a stake;
so iustislich eche liþ ioyned · bi ihesu of heuen.
whan sche in þat tyr · was tiffed as sche schold,
Meliors in here merþe · to hire maiden seide,
"Leue alisaundrine, for mi loue · how likes þe nowþe?
am i nouȝt a bold best · a bere wel to seme?"
"ȝis, madame," seide þe mayde · "be marie of heuene,
ȝe arn so grisli a gost · a gom on to loke,
þat i nold for al þe god · þat euer god made,
abide ȝou in a brod weie · bi a large mile;
so breme a wilde bere · ȝe bi-seme nowþe."
alisaundrine þanne anon · after þat ilk,

She dresses herself in boy's clothes,

and helps the men in the kitchen.

She makes off with the two skins, and goes to William and Melior.

They beg her to sew them up.

She fastens Melior up in one with good thongs, clothes and all.

[Fo'. 29 b.]
Melior asks her if she does not make a bold bear?

"Yes, madame, you are a grisly ghost enough, and look furious."

Then she laces up William in the other skin;

In þat oþer bere-skyn · be-wrapped will*ia*m þanne,
& laced wel eche leme · wiþ lastend þonges,
craftili a-boue his cloþes · þat comly were & riche.
& whan he was sowed · as he schold bene,

who, when sewn up, asks Melior what she thinks of him?

will*ia*m ful merili · to meliors þan he seide,
"sei me, loueli lemma*n* · how likes þe me nowþe?"
"bi marie, sire," seide meliors · "þe milde quen of heuene,
so breme a bere ȝe be-seme · a burn on to loke,

"I am quite frightened at so hideous a sight."

þat icham a-grise · bi god þat me made,
to se so hidous a siȝt · of youre semli face!"

William proposes that they start at once.

þan seide will*ia*m wiȝtli · "my derworþe herte,
to heiȝ vs hastily henne · ich hope be þe best,
euenly þis euen while · or men to mochel walk."
& ȝhe to worche as he wold · wiȝtli þan graun*te*d.
alisau*n*drine sone · as sche saw hem founding,
wept as sche wold a-wede · for wo & for sorwe,

Alexandrine lets them out by a postern-gate.

but naþeles as bliue · sche brouȝt hem on weie
priuely be þe posterne · of þat perles erber,
þat was to meliors chau*m*ber · choisli a-ioyned.
& alisau*n*drine as sone · as þei schuld de-parte,
swoned fele siþe · & seþþen whan sche miȝt,

She prays that they may be preserved from all peril.

preide ful pituosli · to þe prince of heuene
to loke fro alle langour · þo louely makes,
þat put hem for paramo*ur*s · in pe*r*riles so grete;
& soþli forto say · a-sunder þann þei went.

[Fol. 30.]

alisau*n*drine anon · attelede to hire boure,
& morned neiȝh for mad · for meliors hire ladi.

I must now tell you about the two white bears.

More to telle of hire þis time · trewly i leue,
telle i wil of þe beres · what hem tidde after.

Will*ia*m & þe mayde · þat were white beres,
gon forþ þurȝth þe gardin · a wel god spede,

As they went through the garden on all fours,

Fersly on here foure fet · as fel for swiche bestes.

a Greek, who had come there for amusement,

þan ȝede a grom of grece · in þe gardyn to pleie,
to bi-hold þe estres · & þe herberes so faire,

&, or he wiste, he was war · of þe white beres,
þei went a-wai a wallop · as þei wod semed.
& neiȝ wod of his witt · he wax neiȝ for drede,
& fled as fast homward · as fet miȝt drie,
for he wend witterly · þei wold him haue sewed,
to haue mad of him mete · & murþered him to deþe.
whanne he his felawes founde · of his fare þei wondred,
whi he was in þat wise · wexen so maat,
& he hem told tiȝtly · whiche tvo white beres
hadde gon in þe gardyn · & him agast maked,
for he wende witerli · þei wold him haue slawe,
"but þei seie me nouȝt · soþli i hope,
to me tended þei nouȝt · but tok forþ here wey
wilfulli to sum wildernesse · where as þei bredde."
þanne were his felawes fain · for he was adradde,
& lauȝeden of þat gode layk; · of hem ich leve nouþe,
to telle forþ what tidde · of þe beres after.
nouȝ fro þe gardin · þei gon a god spede
toward a fair forest · fast þer bi-side.
whilum þei went on alle four · as doþ wilde bestes,
& whan þei wery were · þei went vp-riȝttes.
so went þei in þat wildernesse · al þat long niȝt,
til it dawed to day · & sunne to vp-rise,
þei drow hem to a dern den · for drede to be seiȝen,
& hedde hem vnder an holw hok · was an huge denne,
as it fel a faire hap · þei fond þer-on to rest.
Fer it was fro weiȝes · & of wode so þikke,
þat no wiȝt of þe world · wold hem þere seche,
& þei for-waked were weri · wittow for soþe.
& hiȝliche þei heriede god · of þat hap fallen,
þat had hem diȝt swiche a den · dernly on to rest.
þen seide william soberli · to meliors so hende,
"a! my loueliche lemman · our lord now vs help,
he þat was in bedleem born · & bouȝt vs on þe rode,
schilde us fram schenchip · & schame in þis erþe,
& wisse vs in what wise · to winne vs sum mete;

perceived them galloping along.

He fled home in extreme fear.

His fellows asked him what ailed him.

He said he had seen two white bears in the garden,

which, fortunately, did not perceive him.

The two bears went to a fair forest,

going on all night till the sun rose.

In the day time they hid themselves in a den.

[Fol. 30 b.]

They were very weary, and praised God for their good fortune.

Then said William, "God preserve us, and teach us how to get some meat."

For, dere lef, i drede · we schul deie for hunger."
Melior says they can easily live on love, soburli seide meliors · "sire, leues youre wordes,
we schul liue bi oure loue · lelli atte best;
& þurȝth þe grace of god · gete vs sumwat elles, 1808
and bullaces and blackberries, bolaces & blake-beries · þat on breres growen,
so þat for hunger i hope · harm schul we neuer;
and haws, hips, acorns, and hazel-nuts. hawes, hepus, & hakernes · & þe hasel-notes,
& oþer frut to þe fulle · þat in forest growen; 1812
I seie ȝou, sire, bi mi liif · þis liif so me likes."
"nay, i-wisse," seid william · "mi worþliche herte,
better be-houis it to be · or baleful were þi happes;
William says she is not used to such hard fare. For here-to-fore of hardnesse · hadestow neuer, 1816
but were brouȝt forþ in blisse · as swiche a burde ouȝt,
wiþ alle maner gode metes; · & to misse hem nowþe,
It were a botles bale · but beter haue i ment.
I wol wend to sum weie · onwhar here nere, 1820
He had better go and see if he can find any churl or child with meat or drink. & waite ȝif any weiȝh · comes wending alone,
oþer cherl oþer child · fro chepinge or feyre,
þat beris out him a-boute · bred oþer drinke,
& redeli i wol it reue · & come a-ȝein swiþe, 1824
oþer coyntyse know i non · to kepe wiþ our liues."
"Nay," said she, "for the loser will raise the cry, and tell it in Rome. "nay, sire," sche seide · "so schul ȝe nouȝt worche;
For þei þat misseden here mete · wold make gret noyse,
& record it redeli · in rome al a-boute, 1828
so þat we miȝt þurȝth hap · haue harm in þat wise.
[Fol. 31.] Better to live upon fruit." þer-for is fairer we be stille · & bi frut to liue,
þat we finde in wodes · as we wende a-boute."
& boþe þan as bliue · a-sented bi a stounde, 1832
& kindeli eche oþer clipt · and kessed ful oft,
They rested in the den all that day. & darkeden þere in þat den · al þat day longe,
slepten wel swetly · samli to-gadere,
& wrouȝt elles here wille;— · leef we now here, 1836
I must now tell about the werwolf. & a while to þe werwolf · i wol a-ȝen turne,
þat þe tale toucheþ · as telleþ þis soþe.
þe self niȝt þat william · went wiþ his leef dere,
þe werwolf, as god wold · wist alle here happes, 1840

& þe fortune þat wold falle · for here dedes after.
whan þei went in þat wise · wiȝtli he hem folwes,
Ful bliue hem bi-hinde · but þei nouȝt wist.
& whan þe werwolf wist · where þei wold rest,
he herd how hard · for hunger þei hem pleyned,
& goþ him to a gret heiȝ-waye · a wel god spede,
ȝif he miȝt mete any man · mete of to winne.
þan fel þe chaunce þat a cherl · fro cheping-ward com,
& bar bred in a bagge · and fair bouf wel sode.
þe werwolf ful wiȝtli · went to him euene,
wiþ a rude roring · as he him rende wold,
& braid him doun be þe brest · bolstrauȝt to þe erþe.[1]
þe cherl wende ful wel · haue went to deþe,
& harde wiþ herte · to god þanne he prayde,
to a-schape schaþles · fram þat schamful best.
he brak vp fro þat beste · & bi-gan to flene
as hard has he miȝt · his liif for to saue.
his bag wiþ his bilfodur · wiþ þe best he lafte,
glad was, he was gon · wiþ-oute gretter harmes.
þe werwolf was glad · he hade wonne mete
& went wiȝtli þer-wiþ · þer as william rested,
he-fore him & his burde · þe bagge þer he leide,
& busked him bliue a-ȝein · boute more wordes,
For he wist ful wel · of what þei nede hadde.

He knew all their fortunes, and followed them all the way.

Knowing their hunger, he goes to a highway,

where he saw a man with some bread in a bag and some boiled beef.

He rushes on him, roaring, and frightens the man terribly,

who broke away and fled for his life, glad to get off.

The werwolf goes off with the meat, and lays it before William, and runs away.

Willi*a*m þo wondred moche · of þat wilde best, [Fol. 31 b.]
what he brouȝt in þe bag · & wold nouȝt a-bide.
he braide to him þe bagge · & bliue it opened,
& fond þe bred & þe bouf · bliþe was he þanne,
& mekli to meliors · "mi swete hert," he saide,
"loo! whiche a gret grace · god haþ vs schewed!
he wot wel of our werk · & wel is apaiȝed,
þat he sendeþ þus his sond · to socour vs atte nede,
so wonder a wilde best · þat weldes no mynde.
swiche a wonder i-wisse · was i-seie neuer,

William opens the bag, and finds the bread and beef, saying,

"See what grace God has shewn us!

Such a wonder was never seen."

[1] MS. "þe þerþe."

to herien god heiȝli · alden ar we boþe."

I would not that our work were undone," said Melior.

" bi marie," seid meliors · " ȝe mi*n*geþ þe soþe ; 1876
for al þe world i nold · our werk were vndone."
will*i*am wel mekli · þe mete out takes,
seid, " lemma*n*, lef liif · of þat our lord vs sendes,
Make we vs merie · for mete haue we at wille." 1880

They ate it gladly without any salt or sauce.

þei ete at here ese · as þei miȝt þanne,
boute salt oþer sauce · or any semli drynk,
hung*er* hadde hem hold · þei held hem a-paied.

But the werwolf knew what more they wanted.

but white wel, þe werwolf · wist what he*m* failed ; 1884
he went to an heiȝ weie · to whayte su*m* happes.
þan bi-tid þat time · to telle þe soþe,
þat a clerk of þe cuntre · com toward rome

He finds a man with two flagons of wine.

wiþ two flaketes ful · of ful fine wynes, 1888
bouȝt were for a burgeis · of a borwe bi-side.
þe werwolf him awayted · & went to him euene,
bellyng as a bole · þat burnes wold spille.

The man, seeing the werwolf coming, lets them fall and flees away.

whan þe clerk saw him come · for care & for drede,[1]
þe flagetes he let falle · & gan to fle ȝerne. 1893
þe liȝtliere to lepe · his liif for to saue.
þe werwolf of þe clerkes werk · was wonder bliþe,

The werwolf seizes them and [Fol. 32.] takes them to William, and goes off.

& flei to þe flagetes · & swiþe he*m* vp hentes, 1896
& wendes euen to will*i*am · a wel god spede,
& to meliors his make · and mildeliche þanne
þe flagetes hem bi-for · faire dou*n* he settes,
& went wiȝtli a-wei · wiþ-out eni more. 1900

William and Melior are blithe because of the beast's help.

will*i*am & his worþi wenche · þan were bliþe
of þe help þat þei hade · of þis wild best,
& preid þei ful pr*i*ueli · to þe pr*i*nce of heuene,
saue þe best fro sorwe · þat so wel hem helped. 1904
þei made hem þan mirie · on alle man*er* wise,

They ate and drank their fill,

eten at al here ese · & afterward dronken,
& solaced hem samen · til hem slepe lust.
þan eiþer lapped oþer · ful loueli in armes, 1908
& here drede & here doel · deliuerli for-ȝeten,

[1] MS. " dredre." See l. 1909.

& slepten so swetli · in here semly denne,
til it wax so neiȝh niȝt · þat nerre it no miȝt.
þan a-waked þei wiȝtli · & went on here gate,
faire on þer tvo fet · þei ferde vp-on niȝtes,
but whan it drow to þe dai · þei ferde as bestes,
ferd on here foure fet · in fourme of tvo beres ;
and euer þe werwolf · ful wiȝtly hem folwed,
þat william ne wist · hendeli hem bi-hinde ;
but whan þei were loged · where hem best liked,
Mete & al maner þing · þat hem mister neded,
þe werwolf hem wan · & wiȝtli hem brouȝt.
þan þei lade þis liif · a ful long while,
cairende ouer cuntreis · as here cas ferde.
Leue we now þis lesson · & here we a-noþer ;
to hem aȝeyn can i turne · whan it time falles.
I wol minge of a mater · i mennede of bi-fore,
of þe reaute a-raied · in rome for here sake,
& of þe worþi wedding · was bi-fore graunted
bi-twene þe meyde meliors · & þe prince of grece ;
now listenes, lef lordes · þis lessoun þus i ginne.

and then slept till night-time.

By night they went on two feet, but by day on all fours,

the werwolf following,

who procured them all they wanted.

I must now tell of the wedding that was to have been between Melior and the prince of Greece. [Fol. 32 b.]

Manly, on þe morwe · þat mariage schuld bene,
þe real emperours a-risen · & richeli hem greiþed,
wiþ alle worþi wedes · þat wiȝhes were schold.
no man vpon molde · schuld mow deuise
men richlier a-raid · to rekene alle þinges,
þan eche rink was in rome · to richesse þat þei hadde ;
þe grete after here degre · in þe gaiest wise,
& menere men as þei miȝt · to minge þe soþe.
þe sesoun was semly · þe sunne schined faire ;
þemperour of grece · & alle his gomes riche
hiȝed hem to here hors · hastili and sone ;
but for [to] telle þe a-tiryng · of þat child þat time,
þat al þat real route · were araied fore,
he þat wende haue be wedded · to meliors þat time,
It wold lengeþ þis lessoun · a ful long while.

The emperors put on their richest clothes.

All were arrayed in the gayest wise.

The Greek emperor and his men mounted their horses.

The attire of his son would take too long to describe.

but soþli for to seie · so wel[1] was he greiþed,
þat amendid in no maner · ne miȝt it haue bene.
& whan þe gomes of grece · were alle to horse,
The Roman knights numbered 20,000. araied wel redi, of romayns · to rekkene þe numbre,
treuli twenti þousand · a-tired atte best, 1949
alle on stalworþ stedes · stoutliche i-horsed.
alle maner of menstracye · maked was sone,
The minstrelsy and revels begin. & alle merþe þat any man · euer miȝt deuise; 1952
and alle real reueles · rinkes rif bi-gunne,
Ridende þurth rome · to rekene þe soþe,
Riȝt to þe chef cherch · þat chosen is ȝutte,
All go to St Peter's church, where the pope, cardinals, and bishops were ready. & clepud þurth *cri*stendom · þe cherche of seynt petyr.
þe p[ope][2] wiþ many *pr*elates · was purueyd to riȝtes,
wiþ cardenales & bischopus · & abbotes fele, 1958
alle richeli reuested · þat reaute to holde,
[Fol. 33.] wiþ worchep of þat wedding · þat þei wende haue.
þe gryffou*n*s þan gayli · gonne stint atte cherche,
They wait for Melior. þe briȝt burde meliors · to abide þere. 1962
þemp*er*our of rome þanne · was rede ȝare,
& alle þe best baroun*es* · & boldest of his reaume.
The Roman emperor wondered where his daughter was. þemp*er*our wax a-wondred · wite ȝe for soþe, 1965
whi his dou*ȝter* þat day · dwelled so longe,
seþþe þe gomes of grece · were gon to cherche.
He sends a baron to her chamber, þan bad he a baro*u*n · buske to hire chau*m*ber, 1968
to hiȝen hire hastily · to him for to come,
& wiȝtli he wendes · wite ȝe for soþe.
who finds no one there. he fond þere burde no barn · in þat bour þanne,
for no coyntise þat he couþe · to carp him aȝens; 1972
& he liȝtli aȝen lepes · & þe lord so telles.
The emperor, at hearing this, goes himself, þemp*er*our whan he it wist · wod wax he nere,
& went him-self in wraþe · to þat worþies chau*m*ber,
drives at the door like a devil, and shouts out. & driues in at þat dore · as a deuel of helle. 1976
he gan to clepe & crie · & gan to kurse fast;—
"where dwelle ȝe, a deuel wai · ȝe damiseles, so long?"

[1] MS. *repeats* "wel."
[2] This word is *purposely* erased; part of the *p* can be traced.

alisaundrine as sone · as sche him þere herde,
was delfulli a-drad · þe deþ for to suffre,
ac bi a coynt compacement · caste sche sone,
how bold ȝhe miȝt hire bere · hire best to excuse,
þat þemperour ne schuld souche · þa ȝhe at sent were,
þat his douȝter wiþ william · was went away þanne.
boldli wiþ milde mod · ȝhe buskes of hire chaumber,
& kom ketly to þemperour · & kurteisly him gret,
& what þat his wille were · wiȝtly þan asked,
& he seide ful sone · "sertes, ich haue wonder
where my douȝter to-day · dwelles þus longe?
for al þe pepul is parayled · & passed to cherche.
I haue sent hire to seche · seþþe a gret while,
ac no frek mai hire finde · þer-fore i am tened."
alisaundrine a-non · answered þanne & seide,
" to blame, sire, ar þo burnes · þat so bleþeli gabbe;
For my lady lis ȝit a-slape · lelly, as i trowe."
" Go wiȝtly," seide þemperour · " and a-wake hire ȝerne,
bid hire busk of hire bed · & bliue be a-tyrid."
" I dar nouȝt, for soþe " · seide alisaundrine þanne;
" wiþ me sche is wroþ · god wot, for litel gilt."
" whi so?" saide þemperour · " saie me nouȝ bliue!"
" Ful gladli, sire," sche seide · " bi god þat me made,
ȝif ȝe no wold be wroþ · whan ȝe þe soþe wist."
" nay, certes," seide þemperour · " þer-fore seie on sone."
alissaundrine þan anon · after þat ilke,
seide ful soberli · sore a-drad in herte,
" sire, for soþe, i am hold · to saie ȝou þe treuþe;
Mi ladi made me to-niȝt · long wiþ hire to wake
boute burde or barn · bot our selue tweie.
þanne told sche me a tiding · teld was hire to-fore,
of on þat knew þe kostome · of þe cuntre of grece,
þat euerich gome of grece · as of grete lordes,
whan þei wedded a wiif · were ȝhe neuer so nobul,
of emperours or kinges come · & come into grece,
sche chold sone be bi-schet · here-selue al-one,

Alexandrine is terrified, and casts about for an excuse.

She hastens to him, greets him, and asks his will.

He wants to know where his daughter is.

She says she is still asleep. [Fol. 33 *b*.]

"Wake her, then, and tell her to dress."

She says she dares not, and he asks why.

She says, "Melior made me watch all night with her,

and told me she had heard it was a custom in Greece

to shut up a bride in a tower by herself.

In a ful tristy tour · timbred for þe nones,
& liue þer in langour · al hire lif-time,
neuer to weld of worldes merþe · þe worþ of a mite.
þer-fore for soþe · gret sorwe sche made,

Wherefore she declared she would never be married to a Greek.

& swor for þat sake · to suffur alle peynes,
to be honget on heiȝ · or wiþ horse to-drawe,
sche wold neu*er* be wedded · to no wiȝh of grece.
hire were leuer be weded · to a wel simplere,
þere sche miȝt lede hire lif · in liking & murþe.

She also told me another tale that sorely grieved me.

& also, sire, sertaynly · to seie þe treuþe,
sche told me a-noþer tale · þat me tened sarre,
wher-fore i wan hire wraþ · er we departed."

[Fol. 34.]

"warfore?" seide þemp*er*our · "seye me now ȝerne."
"For soþe, sire," quaþ alisau*n*drine · "to saue ȝour mensk,
I wol ȝow telle tiȝtly · what turn sche as wrouȝt.

She said she had given her love to another, who was very bold and fair,

sche clepud me to cu*n*seil · whan sche þis case wist
þat sche schold be wedded · & seide me þanne,
sche hadde leid hire loue · þer hire beter liked,
on on þe boldest barn · þat euer bi-strod stede,
& þe fairest on face · and i freyned is name.
& sche me seide chortly · þe soþe to knowe,

that worthy William who fought so well for you.

It was þat worþi will*i*am · þat wiȝes so louen,
& þat brouȝt ȝou out of bale · wiþ his cler strengþe.
& whan i wist of þis werk · wite ȝe for soþe,
It mislikede me mochel · miȝt no man me blame,
& manly in my maner · missaide hire as i dorst,

I told her I should tell you of it.

& warned hire wiȝtly · wiþ-oute disseyte,
I wold alle hire werk · do ȝou wite sone.
& whan sche þat wist · for wraþ al so ȝern,

She sent me out of her chamber, and I have not seen her since.

sche dede me deliuerly · deuoyde þ*er* hire chau*m*ber,
& het me neuer so hardi be · in hire siȝt to come.
& i busked of hire bour · sche barred hit sone,
& seþþe saw i hire nouȝt · sire, bi my treuþe.

I dare not go to her again."

I ne dar for drede · no more to hire drawe,
þer-for, sire, ȝour-self · softili hire a-wakes,

& fodes hire wiþ faire wordes · for ȝour owne menske,
til þis mariage be mad · & wiþ murþe ended."

Whan þemperour had herd · holly þise wordes,
he wax neiȝh out of wit · for wraþ þat time,
& for dol a-doteþ · & doþ him to hire chaumber,
& busked euene to hire bed · but [1] noþing he no fond,
wiþ-inne hire comly cortynes · but hire cloþes warme.
wiȝtly as a wod man · þe windowe he opened,
& souȝt sadli al a-boute · his semliche douȝter,
but al wrouȝt in wast · for went was þat mayde.
& whanne he miȝt in no manere · meliors þer finde,
he deraied him as a deuel · & dede him out a-ȝeine,
& asked of alisaundrine · anon after þanne,
" þou damisele, deliuerli · do telle me now ȝerne,
whider is mi douȝter went · ȝhe nis nouȝt in bedde."
alisaundrine for þat cas · was sorwful in herte,
& seide, "sire, i seiȝ hire nouȝt · seþ hieȝ midniȝt,
I wene sche went to william · for wraþ of my sawe,
sendeþ swifteli þedir · to scheche hire at is inne.
& ȝif william be nouȝt went · witeþ ȝe forsoþe,
Mi ladi for ani lore · lengeþ in þis cite ȝut.
& ȝif william be went · neuer leue ȝe oþer,
Mi ladi lengeþ him wiþ · for lif or for dede."
þemperour for treie & tene · as a tyraunt ferde,
wax ney wod of his witte · & wroþliche seide,
" a ! has þat vntrewe treytour · traysted me nouþe,
For þe welþe & welfare · i haue him wrouȝt fore,
& fostered fro a fundeling · to þe worþiest of mi lond ?
& for his dedes to-day · i am vndo for euer ;
eche frek for þis fare · false wol me hold,
& þe grewes for gremþe · ginneþ on me werre,
& eche weiȝh schal wite · þat þe wrong is myne.
þer-fore bi grete god · þat gart me be fourmed,
& bitterly wiþ his blod · bouȝt me on þe rode,

The emperor at this was mad with grief,

and went to Melior's bed, but found only the warm bed-clothes.

[Fol. 34 b.]

Finding her nowhere, he asks Alexandrine where she is gone to.

"Sire," she says, "I have not seen her since midnight; perhaps she is with William.

If he is not gone, she is there; but if he is gone, be sure Melior is with him."

"Ah!" said the emperor, "has that traitor deceived me?

The Greeks will make war upon me.

[1] MS. "bud."

alle men vpon molde · ne schuld mak it oþer,
If he is taken, he shall be hanged and drawn in pieces."
ȝif þat traytour mow be take · to-day, er i ete,
he schal be honged heie · & wiþ horse to-drawe!"
þemperour ful kenely · dede kalle kniȝttes fele,
Sixty sergeants are sent to look for William.
and oþer semly seriauns · sixti wel armed,
het hem wiȝtli to wende · to williams inne,
& ȝif þei found out þat freke · for out þat bi-tidde,
[Fol. 35.]
to bring him bliue · bounde fast him to-fore.
þai durste non oþer do · but dede hem on gate,
& souȝte him wiþ sore hertes · so wel þei him louede.
They were glad when they could not find him.
feiȝþli when þei founde him nouȝt · fayn were þei alle,
& turned aȝein to þemperour · & told he was a-weie.
þan brayde he brayn-wod · & alle his bakkes rente,
his berde & his briȝt fax · for bale he to-twiȝt;
The emperor swoons for sorrow and shame.
& swowned sixe siþe · for sorwe & for schame,
þat fals he schold be founde · ful ofte he seide "allas,"
& banned bitterli þe time · þat he was on-liue.
þanne kinges & kud dukes · conforted him beter,
His lords advise him to tell the emperor of Greece the whole truth.
bede him sese of his sorwe · & swiftili wende,
& telle þemperour of grece · treuli þe soþe,
& meke him [in][1] his merci · for his misse-gilt.
& he ketly for al kas · after cunseyl wrouȝte,
& goþ to þemperour of grece · vnglad at his herte,
kneleþ to him karfully · & mercy him krieþ,
He does so, and asks him how he can best avenge himself.
and told him as titly · al þe treuþe sone,
how his douȝter was went · wiþ on þat he fostred,
& preide him par charite · þat he him wold wisse,
In what wise þat he miȝt · best him a-wrek.
& whan þis tiding was told · troweþ þe soþe,
In þat cite was sone · many a sori burne,
All mirth ceases in the city.
for missing of þat mariage · al murþe[2] was seced,
riuedliche þurth rome · & reuþe bi-gunne.
The Greek emperor, seeing how he of Rome was grieved,
þe gode emperour of grece · was a-greued sore,
of þat fortune bi-falle · but for he sei þat oþer
so meken in his mercy · for þat misgilt,

[1] MS. omits *in*. See l. 2118. [2] MS. "murþe."

þe liȝtere he let þer-of · ac lourand he seide ;
"sire, be god þat me gaf · þe gost & þe soule,
wist i now witerli · þis were wrouȝt for gile,
alle þe men vpon mold · no schuld make it oþer,
þat i nold brenne þi borwes · & þi burnes quelle,
& sece neuer til þi-self · were chamly destruyed.
but i wene wiþ þi wille · was neuer wrouȝt þis gile,
þere-fore þe cunseil þat y kan · i schal þe kiþe sone,
do quikliche crie þurth eche cuntre · of þi king-riche,
þat barouns, burgeys, & bonde · & alle oþer burnes,
þat mowe wiȝtly in any wise · walken a-boute,
þat þei wende wiȝtly · as wide as þi reaume,
þurth wodes & wastes · & alle maner weies,
forto seche þat seg · þat he haþ so bitraied ;
& þat mayde him mide · Meliores þi douȝter.
& to make eche man · þe more beter wilned,
bi-hote hoo-so hem findes · to haue so gret mede,
Riche to be & reale · redly al his liue time.
& ho-so hastely nouȝt him hieȝ · þis hest to worche,
do him in hast be honged · & wiþ horse to-drawe.
& loke þat hirde-men wel kepe · þe komune passage,
& eche brugge þer a-boute · þat burnes ouer wende,
& to seche eche cite · and alle smale þropes,
& vnparceyued passe þei nouȝt · ȝif þi puple be treuwe."

2120 says, that had it been done in guile, he would have burnt all his towns ;
but as it is not so, he will give him his counsel.
[Fol. 35 b.]
" Proclaim through all your lands that every man shall seek everywhere,
till they find William and Melior.
Whoever finds them is to be richly rewarded, and whoever is remiss is to be hanged.
Passes and bridges should be guarded."

2124 2129 2132 2136 2141

þe real emperour of rome · þanne redli him thonked
of þat konyng cunseyl · & his kynde wille.
& bliue þan bi eche side · þat bode let he sende ;
as hastyli as men miȝt hiȝe · his hest was wrouȝt,
& sone was sembled swiche an host · to take hem tweie,
þat neuer burn to no bataile · brouȝt swiche a puple.
þei souȝt alle so serliche · þurh cites & smale townes,
In wodes & alle weies · þat was þer a-boute,
þat no seg for no sleiȝþe · no schuld haue schapit.
but ȝit as god ȝaf þe grace · no gom miȝt hem finde,
þere þei leye louely a-slepe · lapped in armes.

2144 The emperor sends th · message everywhere, and all men set out to hunt them.
2150 They sought in every wood and path, but fortunately did not find them.
2153

but whan þis bode was brouȝt · to þempe*r*our[s] boþe,
When it was told that they could not be found, þat no wiȝt in no wise · ne miȝt will*i*am finde,
ne þe maide Meliors · in no maner wise,
þer stod a gome of grece · þat god gif him sorwe !
he þat of þe white beres · so bremli was a-fraied,
the Greek who had seen the bears told his adventure, he seide sone to þempe*r*ours · "sires, wol ȝe here?
[Fol. 36.] I sai a selkouþe siȝt · mi-self ȝifter-neue,
wel wiþ-inne niȝt · as i went in the gardyn ;
tvo þe bremest white beres · þat euer burn on loked,
& semede þe most to siȝt · þat euer ȝut i sawe.
I wende deliuerli for drede · þe deþ to haue suffred,
and how the bears had not noticed him, but went away by the postern-gate. but treuly þe beres · to me tok no hede,
but passeden out priueli · at þe posterne gate,
ac whiderward þei went · wot i no more."
"be god," quaþ þempe*r*our of grece · "þat gart me be fourmed,
The Greek emperor says it will be best to send to the kitchen and see if any skins are missed. I der leye mi lif · hit was þe liþer treytour
went a-wey in þat wise · for he ne wold be knowen.
Lete wite swiþe at þe kichen · we*r*þer þei misse any skinnes.
whan men kome to þe koke · he was be-knowe sone,
Two white bears' skins are missing. þat su*m* burn a-wei had bore · tvo white beres skynnes.
þan was it kenly komanded · a kri to make newe,
þat eche burn schuld bisily · tvo white beres seke,
his trauayle schold nouȝt tyne · þat tittest hem founde.
All set out again, with hounds, to hunt the bears, þan hastely hiȝed eche wiȝt · on hors & on fote,
huntyng wiȝt houndes · alle heie wodes,
til þei neyȝþed so neiȝh · to nymphe þe soþe,
and some came close to their hiding-place. þere will*i*am & his worþi lef · were liand i-fere,
þat busily were thei a bowe schote · out of þe burnes siȝt.
The werwolf determined to save them, but whan þe witthi werwolf · wist hem so nere,
& seiȝe blod-houndes bold · so busili seche,
he þouȝt, wil his lif last · leten he nolde,
forto saue and serue · þo tvo semli beres ;
& prestly þan putte him out · in p*e*ril of deþe,
and to get the hounds away. bi-fore þo herty houndes · hauteyn of cryes,

to winne hem alle a-weiwardes · fro þe white beres.
whan þe houndes hadde feute · of þe hende best,
þei sesed al here sechyng · & sewed him fast,
ouer mountaynes & mires · many myle þennes.
alle men þat mut herde · of þe muri houndes,
seweden after ful swiþe · to se þat mury chase,
& left þe loueli white beres · ligge in here rest,
þat wisten no-þing of þis werk · þat was hem a-boute.
þe puple þanne porsewed forþ · & of here prey þei missed,
as god gaf þe werwolf *grace* · to go a-wei so ȝerne,
þat horse ne hou*n*de for non hast · ne miȝt him of-take.
whan þempe*r*our was warned · i*n* wast þat þei ȝede,
alle gergeis for grame · gonne take here leue,
& cayred to þaire cu*n*tre · carful and tened.
but ward was þe*r* set · wide wher a-boute,
of bold burnes of armes · þe beres forto seche,
þat þe witti werwolf · so wel þanne hem helped,
þat no wiȝt for wile · miȝt wite where þei lenged ;
& hastili whan þei hade nede · halp hem of mete,
& wissed he*m* wel þe weiȝes · to wende a-wei bi niȝt ;
& whan it drouȝ to þe dai · ful dernli he he*m* tauȝt,
bi co*n*tenau*n*ce wel thei kneu · where þei rest schold take.
& busily him-self · wold buske in eche side,
to help he*m* fro harm · ȝif any hap bi-tidde.
þus þat witty werwolf · þe weyes hem kenned ;
lorkinde þurth londes bi niȝt · so lu*m*bardie þei passed,
& come*n* into þe marches · of þe kingdam of poyle.

The hounds followed him · many miles over mountains and mires,

and left the bears lying there.

[Fol. 36 b.]

The chase being all in vain, all the Greeks go home.

Watches are set everywhere.

But the werwolf found them food, and was their guide.

Thus they passed Lombardy, and came to Apulia.

Hit bi-tidde þat time · þei trauailed al a niȝt,
out of forest & friþes · & alle faire wodes ;
no couert miȝt þei kacche · þe cu*n*tre was so playne.
& as it dawed liȝt day · to mene þe soþe,
þai hadde a semli siȝt · of a cite nobul,
enclosed comeliche a-boute · wiþ fyn castel-werk ;

They could find no covert there.

They see a castellated city, named Benevento.

bonuen*t* þat riche borwe · burnes ȝut clepun.
William is afraid they will be seen. whan will*iam* þer-of war was · he wax a-drad sore,
lest eny segges of þat cite · hem of-se schuld,
& mekly seide to meliors · "myn owne swete herte,
our lord, ȝif his liking be · oure liues now saue! 2225
There is nowhere to hide. for i no wot in þis world · where we mowe vs hide.
þe perles prince of heuen · for his pite & his grace,
saue vs for his pite · þat we ne slayn bene!" 2228
"amen, sire," seide meliors · "Marie þat vs graun*t*,[1]
for þat blessed barnes loue · þat in hire bodi rest!"[2]
[Fol. 37.] þanne wiȝtly wiþ-inne a while · as þei waited a-boute,
At last they found a quarry under a hill, þei saie a litel hem bi-side · a semliche quarrere, 2232
vnder an heiȝ hel · al holwe newe diked;
deliuerli þei hieȝed hem þider · for drede out of doute,
and crept into a cave there, and lay down there to sleep. & crepten in-to a caue · whanne þei þeder come,
al wery for-walked · & wold take here reste. 2236
In armés louely eche lauȝt oþer · & leide hem to slepe,
al bonden in þe bere skynnes · bi-fore as þei ȝede.
The werwolf kept watch. & þat witty werwolf · went ay bi-side,
& kouchid him vnder a kragge · to kepe þis tvo beris.
ac þei ne hadde redly rested · but a litel while, 2241
Some workmen came there to dig. þat werkmen forto worche · ne wonne þider*e* sone,
stifly wiþ strong tol · ston stifly to digge,[3]
& as þei come to þe caue · to comse to wirche, 2244
One of them saw the bears, on of hem sone of-sei · þo semliche white beres,
loueli ligand to-gadir · lapped in armes.
but feiþli as fast · to his felawes he seide,
and bid his fellows remember the cry that had been raised about them, "herkenes nowe, hende sires · ȝe han herd ofte, 2248
wich a cri has be cried · þurth cun*t*res fele,
þurth hest of þemper*o*ur · þat haþ rome to kepe,
þat what man vpon molde · miȝt onwar finde,
tvo breme wite beres · þe bane is so maked, 2252
he schold winne his wareson · to weld for eu*e*re,

[1] MS. graut; but the *u* has a *crooked* line over it (the contraction for *ra* or *a*) instead of a *straight* one.
[2] Catchword—"þanne wiȝtly." [3] Read "ston for to digge" (?).

þurth þe grete god of gold · þat him bi ȝiue schold." · and how great was the reward offered for finding them.
"ȝa, forsoþe," seide his felawes · "ful wel þat we knowe;
but wharbi seistow so · so þe god help?"
"þe soþe, felawes, ful sone · ȝe schol it wite,
ȝif ȝe tentifly take kepe · & trewe be to-gadere; He will shew them how to get the reward.
I wol winne our warisun · for i wot where þei are."
"ȝis, certes," seide þei · "so trewe wol we bene,
þat no fote schal we fle · for nouȝt bi-tides."
"ek, sires," seide þat oþer · "so ȝouȝ crist rede,
standes alle a stounde stille · in þis ilk place, They must watch there while he goes to Benevento
I wil busk to boneuent · of þe beris telle,
to þe prouost & oþer puple · & hem preie in hast [Fol. 37 b.]
to come hider & hem cacche · for in caue þei lyen, to tell the provost.
& slepen samen y-fere · y saw hem riȝt nowe."
þenne were his felawes ful fayn · & fast bad him reune, They watch while he runs off.
& þei wold a-bide boldly · þe beres þere to kepe.
þat oþer [went],[1] wiȝtly þenne · to warne þe prouost
lelliche hou he hade seye · in þe harde quarrer,
þe tvo white beris · & bad him-self ȝerne
to come wiþ gret pouwer · & cacche hem in haste.
"wostou wel," seyede þe prouost · "þat þei are þere ȝete?" He tells the provost the bears are found,
"ȝe, certes," seide he · "y saw hem riȝt now boþe; and five of his fellows are watching them.
& fiue of my felawes · ful faste þere hem wayten,
þat þei no wende a-way · wil y hider sterte."

Þe prouost þan prestely · þe pepul dede warne, The provost gathers all the people of the town,
as þei nold lese here lif · here londes & here godes,
þat alle hieȝden hastily · on hors & on fote,
& bi-set sone saddeli · þe quarrer al a-boute,
tiȝtli for to take · þe tvo white beres, to take the two white bears.
þat þemperour comanded crie · in cuntre al a-boute.
sone eche man þat miȝt · ful manliche him armed,
& heȝeden hastely to hors · þo þat hade any, All get ready, on horse and on foot,

[1] Perhaps we should read "That other *went* wiztly."—M.

and frekes on fote · hiȝede hem fast after,
so þat þe cuntre þurth þat cri · was al bi-cast sone,
& quikliche a-boute þe quarrer · were kene men of armes,
2200 men in all. twenty hundered & tvo · trewli in numbre,
to take as bliue þe beres · but god now hem help,
slayn worþ þei slepend · ac selcouþ now heres.
as þo bold beres · so neiȝh here bale slepten,
Just then, Melior had a dream, which she tells to William. Meliors þurth a metyng · was marred neiȝ for fere,
& þurth þat sorwful sweuene · swiþe sche a-waked,
& wiȝtly to william · þese wordes sche sede,
"a ! louely lemman · lestene now my sawe,
I am ney marred & mad · þis morwe for a sweuene.
"I thought that bears, apes, bulls, [Fol. 38.] and badgers beset our cave, led on by a lion. for me þout þat þer com · to þis caue nouþe
wilde beris & apes · bores, boles, and baucynes,
a brem numbre of bestes · þat a lyoun ladde,
þat his kene komandment · kidden wel to wirche,
to haue taken vs tvo · to-gader in þis denne.
The lion's cub was with them; þan was þer a litel lyoun · of þe lederes bi-ȝete,
come wiþ þat companye · þis case to bi-holde.
& riȝt as þe breme bestes · vs boþe schuld haue take,
and our werwolf came and caught up the cub, and ran off with it, our wurþi werwolf · þat euer wel vs helpeþ,
com wiþ a gret kours · & for alle þe kene bestes,
& lauȝt vp þe ȝong lyoun · liȝtly in his mouþe,
& went wiþ him a-wei · whedir as him liked.
and they left off seeking *us*, and went after *him*." & alle þe breme bestes · þat a-boute vs were,
for-lete vs & folwed him forþ · for þe ȝong lyouns sake ;
& certes, sire, of þat sweuen · riȝt so y a-waked,
& am a-drad to þe deþ · for destine þat wol falle."

William says it is but a fancy. "Nay, loueli lef," seide william · "leue al þat sorwe,
forsoþe it is but fanteme · þat ȝe fore-telle ;
we mowe reste vs redili · riȝt sauf here at wille."
ac soþli, as che had seide · riȝt wiþ þat ilke,
But then they hear the sound of many horsemen, þei herd an huge route of horse · þat hel al a-boute,
& herd þat quarrere vmbe-cast · & al þe cuntre wide.

william ful wiȝtly · wayted out at an hole,
& seie breme burnes busi · in ful briȝt armes,
brandissende wiþ gret bost · & of þe beres speke,
In what wise þei wold wirche [1] · wiȝtly hem to take.
þe prouost wiþ al þe puple · presed forþ formast,
& many miȝti man manliche · medled þat time,
& soþliche for to seie · swiche grace god lente,
þat þe prouost sone · a semli ȝong barne,
was brout þider wiþ burnes · þe beres to bi-holde,
for þe selcouþe siȝt to se · how þei schuld be take.
whan william was war · þei were so neiȝh nome,
to meliors wiþ mornyng · mekliche he sayde,
" allas ! my loueliche lemman · þat euer y lif hadde,
to be for al our bale · brouȝt to swiche an hende ! 2333
allas ! lemman, þat our loue · þus luþerly schal departe,
þat we now dulfulli schul deye · ac do now, god, þi grace,
& late me haue al þe harm · heiȝeliche i beseche ; 2336
for i haue wrouȝt al þis wo · & worþi am þer-tille.
for meliors, my dere hert · be marie in heuene,
holly al þis harde · þow hast al for my gelt ;
þer-fore, ȝif godes wille were · i wold haue al þe payne,
to mede ȝe were fro þis quarrere · quitly a-schaped. 2341
& dere hert, deliuerli · do as ich þe rede,
dof bliue þis bere-skyn · & be stille in þi cloþes,
& as sone as þou art seie · þou schalt sone be knowe,
þan worþ þi liif lengeyd [2] · for loue of þi fader ; 2345
so miȝtow be saued · for soþe, neuer elles ;
& þouh ȝ þei murþer me þanne · i no make no strengþe.
but god for his grete grace · gof i hadde now here 2348
horse & alle harneys · þat be-houes to werre,
I wold wend hem tille · wiþ-oute ani stint,
& do what i do miȝt · or ich þe deth soffred ; 2351
summe þat bere hem now brag · schuld blede or euen.

and William sees men-in-arms, and hears them speak of the bears.

The provost's son was in the company.

William laments their hard fate. [Fol. 38 *b*.]

He says *he* ought to have all the harm.

He advises Melior to doff her bearskin, and reveal herself.

No matter if they murder *him* ; yet he wishes he had a horse and armour,

and he would do what he could.

[1] MS. "wirthe."

[2] Or "lengeþd," *miswritten for* lengþed (?). Cf. ll. 1040, 1944.

ac botles is now þis bale · but be hit a goddes wille,
She must take off her bearskin and save herself. & buske þe of þis bere fel · bi-liue, i þe rede,
& wende listly hennes · & late me worþ after; 2355
swiþe saue þi-self · for so is þe best."
Meliors wepande wonder sore · to william þan seide,
"what? leuestow, leue lemman · þat i þe leue wold
for deþ or for duresse · þat men do me miȝt? 2359
Melior vows she will not do so, nay, bi him þat wiþ his blod · bouȝt vs on þe rode,
þe beres fel schal neuer fro my bac · siker be þer-fore.
having no wish to live if he is slain. al þis world to winne · i no wold be aliue,
soþli after i seie ȝou · suffere þe deþe;
wiþ god wille take we þe grace · þat god wol us sende." 2364

The provost advances to take the bears, Whan þat sawe was seid · soþ for to telle,
þe prouost bad bold burnes · þe beres go take,
[Fol. 39.] & þei hastily at his hest · hiȝed inward atte roche.
but godli, as god wold · swiche grace bi-tidde, 2368
but the werwolf attacks them, þe werwolf was war · & wist of here tene,
& be-þout how best wore · þe beres to saue;
& wiȝtly as a wod best · went hem a-ȝens,
Gapand ful grimli · & goþ þanne ful euene 2372
snatches up the provost's son, to þe semli prouost sone · & swiþe him vp-cauȝt
be þe middel in his mouþe · þat muche was & large,
and runs off, roaring loudly. & ran [1] forþ for al þat route · wiþ so rude a noyse,
as he wold þat barn · bliue haue for-frete. 2376
whan þe prouost þat perceyued · to þe puple he cried,
The provost cries out for help. "helpes hastily, hende men · i hote, vp ȝour liues!
ho wol winne his wareson · now wiȝtly him spede
forto saue my sone · or for sorwe i deye!" 2380
ful sone after þat sawe · se þere men miȝt
All begin to chase the werwolf, Many a bold burn · after þat best prike,
& oþer frekes on fote · as fast as þei miȝt,
so holliche to þat hunting · i hote þe forsoþe, 2384
þat noiþer burde ne barn · bi-laft at þe quarrer,

[1] MS. "þan." Both sense and alliteration require "ran."

but went after þe werwolf · & wayned fro*m* þe beres,
hotend out wiþ hornes · & wiþ huge cries, — with horns and loud cries.
& sewed him sadly · wiþ so selkouþ noyse,
þat alle men vpo*n* molde · miȝt be a-wondred.
euer when þe werwolf · was out to-fore — Every time the werwolf was half
þe mou*n*taunce of half a myle · or more ȝif it were, — a mile away,
lest þe segges wold haue sesed · here seute to folwe,
he wold abide wiþ þe barn · þe bliþ*er* hem to make, — he waited for them to come up,
In hope þei schuld of hi*m* · hent þe litel knaue.
but whan þei were ouȝt him neiȝ · nouȝt he nold abide,
but dede him deliu*er*li awey · as he dede bi-fore,
& þus lelly he hem ladde · alle þe longe daie, — and so led them on all day long.
þat neu*er* man vpo*n* molde · miȝt him of-take ;
& schete durst þei nouȝt, for drede · þe child to hurte,
but folwed him so forþ · as fast as þei miȝt.
whanne þe wite beres wist · þat were in þe quarrer, — [Fol. 39 b.] The white bears, finding that all their pursuers had gone away,
þat al þe puple was passed · to pursue þe best,
of þat witti werwolf · to winne þe child,
& sei wel for here sake · he suffred þo peines
to socour he*m* & saue · fra*m* alle sory deþes,
& boþe bliue for þat best · bi-gunne to preie — prayed for the werwolf's safety,
þat god for his grete miȝt · schuld gete him fro harm ;
witterli þei wist wel · þat þei nere bot dede,
nere goddes grete miȝt · & þe gode bestes help.
& whan þei boþe had so bede · þei be-þout after, — and began to think they had better make off.
It were best as bliue · to buske hem of þat caue.
& will*i*am þese wordes wiȝtly · to meliors seide,
" Mi swete wiȝt, soþ to seie · me semeth [1] it þe best,
to buske [2] vs of þe bere felles · to be þe lasse knowe. — William says they had better take off the skins,
for eche wiȝh wol more a-weite · after þe white beres,
þan þei wol after any wiȝt · þat walkeþ i-cloþed,
þerfor wiȝtly in oure owne wedes · wende we hennes." — and go away in their own clothes.
Mekli seide meliors, " sire · be marie in heuen,
to do holli as ȝe han seide · i hope be þe best."
as bliue þe bere schinnes · fro*m* here bodi þei hent, — They rend off the skins, and are

[1] MS. "semeht." [2] MS. "buskes."

glad to see one another once more.

& wiȝtly wrapped hem to-gadere · wittow for soþe,
& bliþe were þei boþe þanne · to bi-hold on oþer ;
for feiþli a fourteniȝt · non hadde seie oþeres face.
þanne clipt þei & kest · for al here cares colde, 2424

William looks out, but can see no one near.

& william ful wiȝtly · waited out of þe caue,
& bi-huld ful busili · a-boute on eche a side,
ȝif eny wiȝt were walkende : but he non seie. 2427
he lauȝt loueli Meliors · & ladde hire bi þe honde ;

They take the skins with them, being loath to part with them

cloþed in here cloþes · out of þe caue þei went,
wiþ hem boþe bere felles · þei bere in here armes,
so loþ hem was þo to lese · or leue hem bi-hinde ;
& deden hem deliuerly · ouer dales and helles, 2432
ferrest fro alle weies · þer any folk walkes.

They were in much dread, but [Fol. 40.] happily met with no one.

dolfulli þei were adrad · dar no mon hem wite,
last þei schuld mete any man · þat miȝt hem be-wrie ;
but þan as god wold · or eny man hem seye, 2436

After going three miles, they find a forest.

þei hade walked in þat wise · wel a þre myle,
& founden þan a fayr forest · floriched ful þik,
& þider wiȝtly þei went · wel vnparceyued.
what of here hard heiȝing · & of þe hote weder, 2440

Melior is so tired, she can go no farther.

Meliors was al mat · sche ne miȝt no furþer,
& prestly in a þicke place · of þat pris wode,
wel out from alle weyes · for-wery þei hem rested,
& þonked god gretliche · þat so godliche hem saued ;

So they rest in the forest, and fall asleep.

& seþþen softli to slepe · samen þei hem leide, 2445
as þei þat were wery · for-waked to-fore.
Nouȝ leue we of hem a while · & speke we a-noþer ;
For of þe witti werwolf · a while wol i telle. 2448

The provost and his men chased the werwolf till sunset.

So long þat ferli folk · folwed him after,
to haue be-nom him þe barn · þat he nam þat time,
huntyng holliche þat day · on hors & on fote,
till þe semli sunne · was setled to reste. 2452
& whan it was so neiȝ niȝt · to neuen þe soþe,

The werwolf thought there was no need to go farther;

þe werwolf wist wel · it was no more nede
to bere þat [barn] no forþer[1] · for þe beres sake.

[1] Read "to bere that *barn*."—M. See l. 2459.

þei hadde folwed him so fer · þat forsoþe he wist,
þat no seg þat hade sewed · no schuld hom winne,
hiȝed þei neuer so hard · of al þa long niȝt.
& þanne as bliue þat barn · þe best a-doun sette,
wiþ-oute eny maner wem · þe worse it to greue,
for non schold in þat barnes bodi · o brusure finde
as of þat bold best · but bold it was & faire.
& as sone as he hade · sette it a-downe,
he went wiȝtly a-weie · wiþ-oute eny more,
deliuerli as he nadde þat day · gon half a myle.
when þe prouost & þe puple · parceyued þat ilk,
þat þe best hade left þe barn · bliþe were þei þanne.
þe prouost bi-fore þe puple · priked þider formest,
& hent it vp in hast · ful hendli in his armes,
and clipt it & kest · oft & many siþes;
bi-huld a-boute on his bodi · ȝif it blenched were;
whan he saw it al sound · so glad was he þanne,
þat na gref vnder god · gayned to his ioye.
al þe puple prestly · þat him porsewed hadde,
gretliche þonked god · of þat grace bi-falle,
& tiȝtli al here tene · was turned in-to ioye,
& as bliue wiþ blisse · þei busked hem homward,
wiþ al þe murþe vpon molde · þat men miȝt diuise.
but eche man al niȝt · inned him where he miȝt,
& whan hit dawed, deliuerli · dede hem homward.
& wiȝtli whan þei hom come · wittow for soþe,
þe prouost ful prestli · al þat puple warned,
to buske bliue to þe quarrer · þe beres to take.
þei went wiþ god wille · but wan þei þider come,
þei founde al awei fare · bi-fore þat þer wore.
þo ne wist þei in þe world · whider hem to seche,
but hiȝed hem homward · fast as þei miȝt,
& token redli here rest · at here owne wille.
þe prouost dede pertli · profer al a-boute,
what man vpon mold · miȝt þe beres take,
he schuld gete of gold · garissoun for euere.

so he put the provost's son down, quite unharmed,

and went off as nimbly as if he had but gone half a mile.

The provost rides up, recovers his son,

[Fol. 40 *b.*]

and looks to see if he is harmed,

and is glad to find him whole.

The people's sorrow is turned into joy.

They rested all night where they could,

and repaired next day to the quarry.

Finding nothing there, they return home.

The provost proclaims a reward for taking the bears;

and many men looked for them, but none found them.

Many man by his miȝt · medled him þer-after,
a-boute bi eche side · þo bestes for to seche.
but as god ȝaf þe grace · no gom miȝt hem finde,
so happiliche þei hem hidde · þei hadde swiche grace.

The werwolf returned to William and his mate.

& forto telle what tidde · of þat tide werwolf,
þat niȝt þat hadde · þe prouost sone for-left,
he wan a-ȝen to william · & to his worþ make,

well charged with wine and meats.

wel i-charged wiþ wyn · & wiþ gode metes,
þat he wan bi þe weie · as he þider went.

He then goes away again, to their great wonder.

& bliue þat he bar · be-fore william hit leide,
& went him wiȝtly · a-wei fro hem sone.
[Fol. 41.]
þerof was william a-wondred · & meliors alse,
why þe best nold abide · þat so wel hem helped,

They feel sure the beast is of man's nature.

& seide eiþer til oþer · "now sertes, for soþe,
þis best has mannes kynde · it may be non oþer.
se what sorwe he suffres · to saue vs tweine!

He never fails them at need.

& namli, when we han nede · neuer he ne fayleþ,
þat he ne bringeþ wher we ben · þat to vs bi-houes.
he þat suffred for our sake · sore wondes fiue,
he our buxum best saue · & hald vs his liue."
"amen, sire," seide meliors · "marie þat graunt!
nade his help hende ben · we hade be ded ȝore."

They eat and drink, and rest a day and a night.

þei made hem þan merye · wiþ mete þat þei hadde,
& eten at here ese · for þei were for-hungred,
& rested þere redeli · al þat longe day,
& al þe niȝt next after · to neuen þe soþe,
for meliors was so wery · þat sche ne walk miȝt.

Early next morning, some colliers come near their hiding-place.

& erliche on þe morwe · er þe sunne gan schine,
choliers þat cayreden col · come þere bi-side,
& oþer wiȝes þat were wont · wode forto fecche,
fast þer william was · & his worþ burde.

The colliers begin to talk, and one says if the white bears were there,

þe kolieres bi-komsed to karpe · kenely i-fere;
on of hem seide sadli · þise selue wordes:
"wold god þe white beres · were here nowþe,

nothing should save them;

alle þe men on mold · ne schuld here liues saue,
for wiȝtly wold ich wende · and warne þe prouost,

& titliche schuld þei be take · & moche tene suffre ;
for breme beres [be][1] þei none · as þei be-semen,
It is þemperours douȝter · þat s[o] digised wendeþ,
wiþ a [comliche] kniȝt[2] · þat kauȝt haþ hire loue.
þer-fore þese cries ben · so kenliche maked,
what man on molde · mow hem first fynde,
he mai gete so moche gold · þat pore worþ he neuer.
wonderli a werwolf · ȝesterday hem saued,
þa pertly þe prouost barn · bar a-way from alle ;
while men hunted after hem · þai han a-wai schaped.
bi him þat me bouȝt · were þei boþe here,
þei schuld wicche wel · ȝif þei a-wei went,
þouȝh þer were werwolfs · wiþ hem foure schore !"
þen was meliors neiȝ mad · al-most for fere,
lest þat foule felþe · schold haue hem founde þere,
& darked stille in hire den · for drede, boute noyse.
wiȝtly a-noþer werkman · þat was þer be-side
gan flite wiþ þat felþe · þat formest hadde spoke,
seide, "do þi deuer · þat þow hast to done.
what were þe þe beter nouȝ · þeiȝh þe beris were here,
to do hem any duresse? · þei misdede þe neuer.
Mani hard hape · han þei a-schapet,
& so i hope þei schal ȝit · for al þi sori wille.
god for his grete miȝt · fram greues hem saue,
& bring hem boþe wiþ blis · þere þei be wold.
do we þat we haue to done · & diȝt we vs henne,
sum seluer for our semes[3] · in þe cite to gete."
þei hadde bliue here burþenes · & bi-gunne to wende,
william ne is swete wiȝt · seie hem na more ;
but holliche had herd · al here huge speche.
þan seide william wiȝtly · þese selue wordes,
"Meliors, my swete hert · now mow we no more
In þise breme bere felles · a-boute here walke,

that they are not really bears, but the emperor's daughter and a knight.

A werwolf had saved them yesterday,

[Fol. 41 b.]

but fourscore werwolves should not save them to-day.

Melior was very frightened, and lay quite still.

Another collier rebuked the first one,

saying that the white bears were nothing to *him*.

"May God preserve them! and, as for us, let us go about our business."

So they returned to the city.

William says the bearskins will be of no more use to them.

[1] Read "beres *be* thei none."—M.

[2] Read "With a *komli* knizt," or something similar.—M. See l. 2637.

[3] See note.

ȝif we wist in what wise · how to worche beter."
Melior says that any one who meets them in their own clothes will know them. " certes, sire, þat is soþ " · seide meliors þan,
" ȝif we walken in þes wedes · i wot wel for soþe,
& al þe cuntre knoweþ · what cas we ben inne,
what man so vs metes · may vs sone knowe.
What is to be done? I ne wot in wat wise · to worche be best."
" nor ich, i-wisse," sede william · " but worþe god wiþ alle."

While þe tvo derlinges · talked to-gadere,
Just then, the werwolf killed a huge hart and a hind, and left them. þe werwolf an huge hert · hade hunted riȝt þider,
& riȝt be-fore hem boþe · brouȝt hit to deþe ;
& hastilyche þan hiȝed · & an hinde brouȝt,
[Fol. 42.] serued it in þe same wise · as þe hert bi-fore,
& went wiȝtly a-wei · wit-oute any more.
William perceived that the werwolf meant them to use the skins, and to leave the bearskins. þan wist william wel · bi þe bestes wille,
þat he þe hert & þe hinde · hade þere slayne,
him & his loueliche lemman · to lappe in þe skinnes,
& bileue þere þe beres felles · þat so busili were a-spied.
& mekli þan to meliors · he munged what he þouȝt,
& seide, " se wich a selcouþ · þis semliche best worcheþ,
They pray that the werwolf may never come to harm. for-þi crist crouned king · kepe him fro sorwe,
& late man neuer haue miȝt · him to misdone."
" þat graunt god," seide meliors · " for his swete miȝt ;
for nere þe help of heuen king · & þe hende best,
oure liues hadde be lore · many a day seþþe."
Said William, " Let us flay these beasts, and array ourselves in the skins." " ȝa, i-wisse," seide william · " my derworþ herte ;
for-þi at oure bestes wille · worche we nouþe.
hastili hulde we · þe hides of þise bestes,
Greiþe we vs in þat gere · to go ferþer hennes."
William flays the hart, and Melior the hind. william hent hastili þe hert · & meliors þe hinde,
& a[s] smartli as þei couþe · þe skinnes of-turned.
eiþer gamliche gan greþe oþer · gailiche þer-inne,
They sew each other up in the skins. þat þe skinnes sat saddeli · sowed to hem boþe,
as hit hade ben · on þe beste þat hit growed.
& better þei semed þan to siȝt · semliche hertes,

þan þei semed be-fore · beres whan þei were,
so iustili on e*þer* of he*m* · were ioyned þe skinnes.

And whan þei were greiþed · gayli in þat gere,
þei seten *in* here solas · til su*m*ne ȝede to rest.
whan it neiȝet niȝt, þei nold · no lenger a-bide,
but went forþ on here weie · for wel list he*m* gone,
& here semli werwolf · sewed fast after,
þat wittily tauȝt he*m* þe weies · whider þei wende scholde,
sechande towarde cisile · þe sotilest weyes.
& namliche on þe morwe · many men hem souȝt
In wodes & wildernesse · wide where a-boute,
& as þei walked in wodes · wiþ ful gode hou*n*des,
þei founde þe beres skinnes · & þe bestes flayne.
þat it was an hert & an hinde · hastili þei knewen,
& wist wel þat þei went · wrapped in þe skinnes,
þei þat bi-fore had be · as tvo white beres,
& wist þat þai in wast · wrouȝt þer to-fore
for al þe hard huntyng · þat þei hadde maked.
& folwe he*m* durst þei no ferre · for a gret werre,
þat was wonderli hard · in þe next londe,
& þo þe seute sesed · after þe swete bestes.
Mu*n*ge mai [i][1] no more · of noma*n* þat hem folwed,
ac of þe hert & þe hinde · herkenes now ferþer.

At night-time they set out again,

the werwolf following,

[Fol. 42 *b*.] who guided them towards Sicily.

Next day some men found the bearskins, and the flayed beasts,

and knew that they were now dressed as a hart and a hind.

But they dared not pursue them, because of a great war that was in the next land.

Þei went fast on here way · þe werwolf he*m* ladde
ouer mures & mu*n*taynes · & many faire pleynes ;
but alwei as þei went · wasted þei it founde.
for burwes & bold tounes · al for-brent were,
but ȝit were þei wiþ walles · warchet a-boute.
& al was will*i*am landes · wittow wel for soþe,
he þat þere was an hert ; · heres þenchesoun,
whi þe wer & þat wo · þo was in þat londe.
ȝe han herd here bi-fore · as ich vnderstonde,

The werwolf led them over country that was all laid waste, the towns being burnt.

It was William's own country.

[1] Read "mai i no more."—M.

For Ebrouns, William's father, was king of Apulia, Sicily, Palermo, and Calabria, and was dead.

of ebroun*s* þe kud king · þat þat kingdom out
of poyle & of cisile · of pallerne & calabre,
& was will*i*ams fader · þat went þere as an hert,
& ded was & doluen · mani a day bi-fore.
& his comeliche quene · as god wold, ȝit liuede,

William's mother was still alive. [Fol. 43.]

þat was will*i*ams moder · & was a menskful lady.
sche had a derworþe douȝter · to deme þe soþe,
on þe fairest on face · and frelokest i-schapen,
þat eu*er*e man vpon molde · miȝt [on] diuise ;[1]

William's sister, younger than himself by three years,

sche was ȝonger þan will*i*am · bi fulle þre ȝeres.
& þe kud king of spayne · hade a comliche sone,
þat was a kud kniȝt · and kene man of armes ;
for him, was þe werwolf · so wickedli for-schaped
þurth malice of his stepmoder · as ȝe mow here after ;
ac breþer were þei boþe · as bi on fader.

had been sought in marriage by the king of Spain's son, the werwolf's half-brother.

þe kud king of spayne · coueyted for his sone
þat worþi mayden · þat was will*i*ams suster ;
ac þe quen for no cas no wold · þat wedding graunt ;
for-þi þe king & his sone · swiche werre a-rered.

On her refusal, the king of Spain had invaded the land,

for þei hadde luþerli here lond · brend and destrued,
brent bold borwes, & burnes · bruttened to deþe,
& of-sette hire so harde · þe soþe for to telle,
þat prestli to hire puple · to palerne sche ferde ;

and besieged the queen in Palermo.

& þe king bi-seget þe cite · selcouþli harde,
& mani a sad sauȝt · his sone þer-to made,
ac douȝti men deliuerli · defended it wiþ-inne ;
but sertenli on boþe sides · was slayn muche puple,
& þat lasted so longe · leue me for soþe,

Its defenders advised the queen to surrender,

þei of þat cite · of þo segges al sad were,
& come ofte to þe quen · & cu*n*seiled hire ȝerne
to acorde wiþ þe king · & grau*n*te his wille,
for þei no leng*er* in no maner · miȝt meyntene þat sege,
for moche folk of here fon · fel algate newe,
& here men flebled[2] fast · & faileden of here mete,
þat þei miȝt in no maner · meyntene þe sege.

[1] See l. 4436. [2] Read "febled" (?)

þanne þat comliche quen · curteyseliche seide,
"lordinges, ȝe ben my lege men · þat gode ben & trewe,
bold burnes of bodies · batailes big to gye ;
but þat ȝe grettli aren a-greued · gaynli i knowe,
for þise tenful trauayles · but titli, i hope,
al it worþ wel amended · for þis ȝe witen alle,
þat i haue sent after socour · to my semly fader,
þat grece haþ godli to gye · as emperour & sire.
& i wot witterli · wiþ-oute eni faile,
þat socur he wol me sende · or elles com him-selue.
It is so fer to þat cuntre · ȝe knowe wel þe soþe,
þat he may nouȝt saile · swiftli as he wold.
for-þi alle my bolde burnes · i beseche & preie,
fo[r] loue þat ȝe owe to þe lord · þat let ȝou be fourmed,
Meyntenes ȝit ȝoure manchip · manli a while,
til god of his grete miȝt · god tyding vs sende."
& bad þo tvo bold barouns · bliue forþ wende
to þe king of spayne · & curtesly him seie,
þat sche preied par charite · in pes to late hire lengþe
fulle a fourteniȝt · for-oute alle greues
of sauȝtes to þe cite · or any sorwe elles.
& but hire fader com · bi þe fourteniȝtes hende,
or sende hire sum socour · bi þe same time,
sche wold wiþ god wille · wiþ-oute more lette
Meke hire in his merci · on þise maner wise,
to giue him boute grucching · al þat gode,
so þat sche miȝt saufli · wiþ hire semli douȝter
wende wiȝtli a-wei · whider hire god liked.
þe messegeres manli · in here weye went,
spacli to þe king of spayne · þis speche þei tolde.
but he swor his oþ · þat he a-sent nold,
for no man vpon molde · but he most haue hire douȝter ;
& þei titly turned aȝen · & told so þe quene.

but she exhorts them to be brave, and hold out,

[Fol. 43 b.]

for she has sent for succour to her father, the emperor of Greece,

who would require some time for the journey.

So she prays them to hold out a little longer.

She asks the king of Spain to grant a truce of 14 days,

and if her father did not come then, she would submit,

on condition that she and her daughter might have free passage anywhere.

The king of Spain refuses.

& whan sche wist witerli · þe wille of þe king,
The queen retires to her chamber, praying to Christ and Mary for help.
as a woful womman · sche went to hir chaumber,
& preyed ful pitousli · to þe prince of heuene,
for marie his moder loue · to mayntene hire & helþ,
þat hire foos for no cas · wiþ fors hire conquerede,
to winne aȝens hire wille · hire worliche douȝter.
[Fol. 44.] " no madame," [1] seide hire douȝter · " marie þat graunt,
for þe blissful barnes loue · þat hire brestes souked ! "
She and her daughter are in great grief.
þus þei dwelled in duel · niȝtes and daies,
boþe þat corteys quen · & hire comliche douȝter.
had þei wist witterli · whiche helþ god hem sente,
al hire gref in-to game · gaynli schold haue turned.
No more of the defenders of the city, and the assaults on it,
now sece we of þe segges · þat þe sege holden,
& of þe selcouþ a-sautes · þat þei samen ȝolde,
& of þe douȝthi defens · of wieȝs þer wiþ-inne.
but hear about the hart and the hind, and the werwolf.
& listenes now a litel · of þe tvo leue bestes,
þat as an hert & an hinde · holden here weye,
as þe witty werwolf · wold hem euer lede.

Of þis hert & þis hinde · hende now listenes.
so long þei caired ouer cuntres · as þat crist wold,
ouer dales & downes · & disgesye weyes,
The werwolf guided them till they came to the city of Reggio,
as þe werwolf hem wissed · þat was here hole frend,
þan þei samen souȝt · to þe riche cite of rise,
þat set is ful semli · vpon þe see bonke.
a gret number of naueye · to þat hauen longet,
where they would have to cross the straits
& þere þe buxum bestes · bi-houed ouer passe.
& so brod was þe see · þat sayle hem bihoued
holliche al a niȝt · & vp happe, wel more.
al day þe bestes darked · in here den stille
They lay hid near the harbour till night,
In a ragged roche · riȝt be þe hauen side,
til it was wiþ-inne niȝt · & alle wiȝes slepten.
þan hiȝed þei hem to þe hauen · hastily & sone,

[1] MS. "made." Read "madame." The word in the text is called by Bryant a provincialism, but without reason.—M. The same error occurs in l. 3184, but it is corrected in l. 3191.

as þe werwolf hem wissed · þat was al here gye,
& stalkeden ful stilly · þer stoden fele schippes. 2728 when they went down to the ships.
þe werwolf waited wiȝtly · which schip was ȝarest,
to fare forþ at þat flod · & fond on sone, The werwolf found a ship ready to sail.
þat was gayly greyt · to go to þe seile,
& feiþliche frauȝt · ful of fine wines. 2732
þe werwolf went þer-to · to wite ho were þere ;
þe segges were a-slepe þan · þat it schuld ȝeme, The men were all asleep.
al but þe mest maister · to munge þe soþe. [Fol. 44 b.]
þei were turned to towne · to pleie þer whiles, 2736
In murþe til þe mone arise · arst miȝt þei nouȝt passe.
& whan þe werwolf wist · þat alle slept fast,
to þe hert & þe hinde · he turned him a-ȝeine, The werwolf led the hart and hind
& bi certeyn signes · sone he hem tauȝt, 2740 to the ship,
& þei folwed him fayre · fayn for þat grace,
& he ful listli hem ledes · to þat loueli schippe,
& tauȝt bi-hinde tunnes · hem to hude þere. and they all hid themselves
þe maistres, whan þe mone a-ros · manli in come, 2744 behind tuns of wine.
& faire at þe fulle flod · þei ferden to sayle,
& hadde wind at wille · to wende whan hem liked. The men came on board, and set sail.
þe werewolf wist wel · þei were neiȝ ouer,
& bi-þout how were best · þe bestes to help, 2748
þat þei miȝt scaþeles · schape of þat schip. When they were nearly over,
whan þe ludes where neiȝ lond · he leped ouer borde, the werwolf leapt overboard.
sadli in al here siȝt · for þei him sew schold—
whil þe hert & þe hinde scaped— · to hunte him a-boute. 2752
sone as þe schipmen · seie him out lepen, The shipmen, seeing him, seized sprits and oars,
hastili hent eche man · a spret or an ore,
& launced luþerly after him · his lif to haue reued.
on so hetterli him hitte · as he lep in þe water, 2756 and one of them hit him so hard that he dived to the bottom,
þat he for dul of þe dent · diued to þe grounde,
& hade neiȝ lost is lif · but, as our lord wold,
for al þat sterne strok · stifli he vp-keuerede,
& swam swiftili awei · þat þei seȝen alle, 2760 yet he swam away to land.
& lauȝt liȝtli þe lond · a litel hem bi-side.

& þei, as folk þat were fayn · to forfare þat best,
The men jumped ashore and followed him. saileden swiþe to londe · & sewed him after.
þe werwolf was wily · & went so soft,
þe schipmen wend wel · at wille him take,
All went after him but a bare-legged boy. & him alle seweden · þat to þe schip lougede,
but a barlegged bold boie · þat to þe barge ȝemed.
whan þe schipmen wiþ þe wolf · were wel passed,
[Fol. 45.] þe hert & þe hinde · þan hoped wel to schape,
The hart and hind come on deck. & busked hem boþe sone · a-boue þe hacches.
The boy sees them, and, in great terror, but whan þe boie of þe barge · þe bestes of-seie,
he was neiȝ wod of his witt · witow, for fere,
& be-þouȝt him þere · þe bestes for to quelle.
hit the hind so that she tumbled top over tail over the hatches. & happili to þe hinde · he hit þanne formest,
& set hire a sad strok · so sore in þe necke,
þat sche top ouer tail · tombled ouer þe hacches.
But the hart caught her up, and carried her ashore over a plank, but þe hert ful hastili · hent hire vp in armes,
& bare hire forþ ouer-bord · on a brod planke,
& nas bold wiþ þe boye · no debate make,
but fayn was a-way to fle · for fere of mo gestes,
fer away fro þe see · or he stynt wold.
and, when out of sight, looked to see if the hind was hurt; & whan he wist þat he was · wel out of siȝt,
he be-hilde ȝif þe hinde · euel hurt were,
& fond sche nas but a-friȝt · for fere of þat dint.
þan saide þe hert to þe hinde · hendly & faire,
saying that, if he had but weapons, the barge-boy should suffer death for it. "a! worþili wiȝt · wonder ar þine happes,
þatow hentest al þe harm · þat i haue deserued!
wold god for his grace · & his grete miȝt,
þat i hade here · þat to werre falles,
þe boye þat þe barge ȝemes · a-beye schold sore;
for þe dint he þe dalt · his deþ were marked."
"Nay," said Melior, "let us rather thank God for our escape. "nay, my worþi make" · seide meliors þanne,
"Greue þe nouȝt, for goddes loue · þat gart þe be fourmed,
þat we so scaþli ar a-schaped · god mowe [we][1] þonk,
& oure worþi werwolf · þat wel him by-tyde!
dere god, for deth · he dreiȝh for vs alle,

[1] Read "mowe *we* thonk."—M. Cf. l. 2559.

late no seg miȝt haue · to sle our gode best ! — May no one harm or slay our werwolf!"
nere his wit & his werk · we were schent boþe."
"sertes, sweting, þat is soþ" · seide william þanne,
"Go we on oure gate · for goddes loue, bliue,
to recuuer sum resset · þere we vs rest miȝt." — William proposes that they should seek a hiding-place to rest in,
ful mekli seide meliors · wiþ-oute any fare, [Fol. 45 b.]
"Go we now on goddes halue ;" · þan went þei god spede, — and Melior assents.
cleppende comely eiþer oþer · to karpe þe soþe.

Whan þe hert & þe hind · were of so harde a-chaped, — The barge-boy was astonished to see them go first on four feet, and then on two.
þe boye þat þe barge ȝemed · of þe bestes hade wonder,
þat on bar of þe barge · so boldeli þat oþer,
wiþ so comely contenaunce · clippend in armes,
& ferden ferst on foure fet · & seþþe vp tweyne.
& wiȝtly after þe werwolf · was wel a-schaped, — The werwolf, having escaped safely, went after the hart and hind.
fram alle þe sory chipmen · þat sewed him to quelle,
but treuli non him take · to tene namore ;
& to þe hert & þe hinde · heȝed him faste.
& whan þe hert & þe hinde · had siȝt of here best,
þei were gretli glad · & oft god þonked ;
þat he sauf was & sou[n]d [1] · fro þe men a-schaped.
þan ferde þei alle forþ i-fere · fayn of here liues.
þe chipmen þat þe worwolf · so sadly hade chased, — The shipmen returned to the barge, and the boy told them his story.
buskeden aȝen to here barge · & þe boye hem tolde
wiche an hert & an hinde · hadde þer-out schaped,
wiȝtli wen þei went · þe wolf for to sewe ;
& how he hitte þe hinde · also he told,
& how þe hert hire hent · & hiȝed ouer-borde, — how the hart caught up the hind, and hied overboard.
& wiþ how coynte cuntenaunce · he cuuerede hire after,
& went wiȝtly a-wey · but whider wist he neuer.
þer-of were þei a-wondred · but wist þei no bote,
whederward forto fare · to finde þe bestes ;
but lefte þei in lisse · now listenes of þes bestes,
þurth wildernesse hou þei went · & wat hem tidde after.

[1] Read "sound."—M.

The hart and hind found all the country laid waste.

Whiderward as þei went · al wast þei it founde,
bolde burwes for-brent · a-boute on eche side,
& euer as þe witty werwolf · wold hem lede,
faire þei him folwed · as here frend holde.
& so longe he hem ladde · as he him-self þouȝt,

The werwolf led them to a rich and fair town, named Palermo, [Fol. 46.]

he brouȝt hem to a borwȝ · þat bold was & riche,
& fairest of alle fason · for eny riche holde,
þat euer man vpon mold · miȝt on loke.
perles was þe paleis · and palerne it hiȝt.

the very place whence the werwolf took away William at first.

þe werwolf wan william · ferst fro þat place,
whan he was in childhod · as þe chaunce be-fore told.
& treuli, riȝt þat time · to telle al þe soþe,

William's mother is in a hard strait, being besieged by the king of Spain.

williams moder in meschef · wiþ moche folk þere lenged;
for þe king of spayne · bi-seged hire harde,
In maner as þe mater · was minged bi-fore.

Near her palace was a park,

a pris place was vnder þe paleys · a park as it were,
þat whilom wiþ wilde bestes · was wel restored;
but þe segges þat held þe sege · had it al destruyt.

where the hart and hind hid themselves.

þe hert & þe hinde þere · þanne hem hed sone,
as þe werwolf hem wissed · þat ay was here gye,
vnder a coynte crag · fast bi þe quenes chaumber,
& al þat day in þat den · þei darked, & þe niȝt;

The werwolf got meat and drink for them.

þe werwolf went wiȝtly · & whan hem mete & drink,
so þat þei mad hem as murie · as þei miȝt þat time.
now of þe buxum bestes · be we a while stille,
& carpe we of þe curteys quen · þat in þe castel lenged.

So hard was sche be-seged · soþ for to telle,
& so harde sautes · to þe cite were ȝeuen,

The battlements of the city were broken by the war-engines, and many men were slain.

þat þe komli kerneles · were to-clatered wiþ engines,
& mani of here miȝthi men · murdred to deþe.
þerfor þe quen was earful · & oft to crist preyed,
to sende hire sum socour · þat sche saued were,
for marie his moder loue · þat is of mercy welle.

It was all because of the queen's daughter.

I[n] swiche lif hade sche liued · a long time to-fore,
& al duel þat sche drey · was for hire douȝter sake.

but seþþe on þe selue niȝt · þe soþe forto telle,
þat þe hert & þe hinde · & here þridde fere
vnder þe castel in a crag · cauȝt here rest,
þe quen was wery for-wept · & went to bedde.
a selcoþe sweuen sone · in hire bed sche mette;
hire þouȝt þat sche & hire [douȝter] · on a dai al-one
weren passed *pr*iueli þe paleys · bi a posterne ȝate
to pleie hem *pr*iueli in þe park · þat to þe paleis longed.
hire þouȝt an hundered M. · were hire a-boute
of lebardes & beres · & alle bestes boute nu*m*ber,
G*r*imli gapande to greue · hire & hire douȝter;
& riȝt as þo breme bestes · he*m* boþe schold haue take,
here þouȝt, a wiȝt werwolf · & to white beres
hieȝeden harde hem to help · in þat ilk nede;
& whanne þo two white beres · were com he*m* nere,
þei semde to hire siȝt · tvo semli hertes;
& eiþ*er* of hem a faire figure · in here for-hed hadde.
þe hug*er* hert in his hed · had, as hire semede,
þe fasou*n* & þe forme · of a fair kniȝt in feld,
& semde hire owne sone · þat sche long hade missed.
þat oþ*er* hert, as hire þouȝt · þe schap hade of a mayde,
fairest of alle fetures · þat sche to-for hadde seie,
& eiþ*er* hert on his hed · hadde, as hire þout,
a gret kroune of gold · ful of gode stones,
þat semli was to siȝt · & schined ful wide.
þan þouȝt hire þe werwolf · & þe maide bi-laft;
& þe huge hert him-self · hastili þat time,
aȝens alle þe bestes · bliue went al-one,
& bar dou*n* bi eche side · ay þe boldest formast;
was non so stef him wiþ-stod · so sternli he wrouȝt.
þe grettest of þe grim bestes · he gat to *pr*ison sone;
a lyon & a lybard · þat lederes were of alle,
hire þouȝt, þat huge hert · hastili hade take,
& putte hem in hire prisoun · to peyne he*m* at hire wille.
þe stoutest & þe sternest · he stiȝtled sone after,

Whilst the hart and hind slept, the queen went to bed,

and dreamt that she and her [Fol. 46 *b.*] daughter were in the park,

when 100,000 leopards and bears attacked them,

but a werwolf and two white bears came to her assistance.

The bears changed into harts as they came nearer.

The larger hart had on his forehead the figure of a knight like her own son.

The other had the shape of a maid.

Crowns were on their heads.

The hart bore down all the beasts,

taking the largest ones prisoners.

þat he ga[r]te[1] þe grettest · to hire prison louȝte ;
The rest of the beasts fled away for fear.
& redli al þo remnant · of þe rude bestes
for fere be-gunne to fle · as fast as þei miȝt,
ouer dales & dounes · for drede of the hert.
sone as þe hende hert · hire hade deliuered,[2]
[Fol. 47.]
& put here fram alle peril · fro þe perilous bestes,
Next she dreamt that she went up to her castle,
here þouȝt, sche went wiȝtli · a-ȝen to þe castel,
& turned vp to þe heiȝest tour · to bi-hold a-boute.
and that her right arm stretched over Rome, and her left lay over Spain.
þan þout hire, þat hire riȝt arm · last ouer rome,
& lelli hire left arm · lai al ouer spayne,
& boþe þo komly kingdomes · komen to hire wille,
forto herken al hire hest · & hire wille worche.
Awaking, she wondered; and went weeping to the chapel.
here-of was sche al a-wondred · & a-waked sone,
& for drede of hire drem · deulfulli quaked,
& wepud wonder sore · & wiȝtli hire cloþed,
& romed þan redli · al redles to hure chapel,
& godly be-souȝt god · to gode turne hire sweuen.

She had a priest named Moses, to whom she told her dream.
Þat comli quen hade a prest · a konyng man of lore,
þat moche couþe of many · & moyses he hiȝt,
to consaile sche him clepud · & þe cas him told,
soþliche al þe sweuen · þat hire a-niȝt mette.
& as tit as sche had told · þe prest tok his bokes,
& sey sone of þat sweuen · hou it schuld turne.
he loked on þat comeli quen · & curtesli seide,
He said, "Mourn not, it betokens succour.
" Madame, mourne ȝe namore · ȝe mow wel seie
þat þe prince of heuen · ȝou haþ prestli in mynde,
& socor sendeþ ȝou sone · bi þis sweuen i knowe.
The beasts that beset you are the men who besiege you.
þe bestes þat bi-sett ȝou so · & ȝour semli douȝter,
& duelfulli to deþe · wold haue ȝou don boþe,
þo ar soþli þo segges · þat hard ȝou bi-sege,
& don hard here miȝt · to destruye ȝou here.
As for the white bears or harts with crowns,
wite ȝe of þe white beres · þat waxen seþþe hertes,
& haue þe fourme in here hed · of tvo faire chi[l]deren,[3]

[1] MS. "gate." See l. 1365. [2] Catchword—" & put hire."
[3] Read "childeren."—M.

& gode crounes of gold · on here hedes graiþed,
þe hert þat ȝou helped · so hastili wiþ strengþe,
þe lyon & þe lebard · to ȝour prisoun ladde,
& alle þe bremest bestes · brouȝt [to][1] ȝour wille,
what þat it tokeneþ · telle wol ich sone.
It is a ful kud kniȝt · schal come ȝou to help,
& þu[r]th[2] his douȝthi dedes · destruye þis werre,
& cacche þe king of spayne · þurth his cler strengþe,
& seþþe after is sone · þat al þe sorwe is fore,
& put hem in ȝour prison · þe proddest of hem alle
schul be buxum at ȝour wille · & blinne al þis fare,
& meke hem to ȝour merci · þat now be misseproude.
& þat ilke kud kniȝt · þat schal þe kome to help,
I not where he schal · ȝou to wiue welde,
but i wot wisli he worþ · king of þis reaume.
also þat werwolf · þat wiþ þe hertes comes,
he is a kud kniȝt · & schal be kud wide,
& þurth him, soþli, i se · þe king schal be deliuered,
& put out of prisoun · & god pes be maked.
his sone & alle oþer · schul be ȝour hole frendes,
& schul restore riuedli · þe reddour þat was maked.
þurth þilke werwolf · ȝe schul wite of ȝoure sone
þat ȝe long haue for-lore · leue me for soþe,
& him winne a-ȝen at wille · wiþ-inne a schort time.
& redli, of ȝour riȝt arm · þat ouer rome streyt,
I se wel þe signifiaunce · þis schal þer-of falle ;
þi sone schal wedde swiche a wif · to weld wiþ al rome,
as kind keper & king · i knowe wel þe soþe.
& lelli, of þi lift arm · þat ouer spaine lay,
þat bi-tokeneþ treuli · as telleþ my bokes,
þat þi douȝti sone · schal þi dere douȝter ȝiuen
þe kinges sone of spayne · when þe a-cord is maked ;
þat sche be ladi of þat lond · þi left arm bi-tokeneþ.

I will tell you all.

A knight shall come to help you, and take prisoner [Fol. 47 *b*.] the king of Spain and his son.

And whether he is to wed you or not, he will be king of this realm.

The werwolf is a knight too, and shall deliver the king of Spain.

Through him you shall hear of your son.

Your son shall govern also all Rome.

and your daughter shall be queen of Spain."

[1] Read "brouȝt *to* ȝour wille."—M.
[2] Read "thurth."—M. See next line.

now haue i said of ȝour sweuen · soþli as wol falle,
& treuly al þis schal be-falle · wiþ-inne a schort terme."

The queen, on hearing this, weeps for joy,

Whan þat loueli ladi · hade listened his wordes, 2968
& herd seie þat sche schold · hire sone a-ȝen winne,
wonderli for ioye · sche wept for þo wordes,
& sorwfuliche sche siȝt · last out schold it lett;
Lest any fals fortune · for-dede him þurth sinne. 2972
[Fol. 48.] and prays the priest to say a mass to make her dream come true.
but buxu*m*li þat briȝt lady · þan busked to hire chapel,
& praied hire prest p*ar* charite · a masse to singe,
of þe trinite in trone, to t*ur*ne · hire sweuen to ioye.
deliuerli he it dede · deuouteliche & faire. 2976
She looks from her chamber towards the park,
& seþþen þat comli ladi · cayres to hire chau*m*ber,
& weued vp a window · þat was toward þe place
þere as þe hert & þe hinde · hadde take here reste.
þere þat semli ladi hire set · out forto loke, 2980
& strek in-to a styf studie · of hire sterne sweuen,
waytend out at window · while sche so þouȝt.
and as she watched, she sees the hart and hind embracing each other joyfully.
& vnder a louely lorel tre · in a grene place,
sche saw þe hert & þe hinde · lye collinge in-fere, 2984
Makende þe most ioye · þat man miȝt deuise,
wiþ alle comli *con*tenau*n*ce · þat þei kiþe miȝt;
haden here priue pleyes · of p*ar*amoures wordes,
She could not hear what they said, but she watched them a long while,
but soþli, of nouȝt þat þei seide · miȝt þe quen here.
but of here selcoþe solas · samen þat þei made, 2989
so gret wonder walt þe quen · of þe worþ bestes
but lenede þer þe long day · to lok out at þe windowe,
to se þe selcouþ signes · of þe semli bestes. 2992
till night came on.
til þe day him wiþ-drow · in-to þe derk niȝt,
þat þe lady no lenger · miȝt loke on þe bestes.
þan tiffed sche hire treuli · & turned in-to halle,
Made a-mo*n*g hire meyne · as mirie as sche couþe. 2996
After supper, her knights bewailed their evil case.
whan þei samen hade souped · & seþþe whasche after,
here[1] kniȝtes & hire cu*n*seile · kome hire vntille,

[1] "Here" would be more uniform if it were written "hire," but this change may be observed in a few other passages—M.

Munged newe her meschef · how neiȝ þei misferde ;
how here walles were broke · wiþ engynes strong,
here bretages al a-boute · for-brent & destroyed,
how the walls and battlements were broken.
þat þei miȝt no more · meintene þe sege.

Þan þat comli quene · ful curtesly saide,
She addresses them, and exhorts them to be firm.
" lordinges, ȝe ar my lege men · þe lasse & þe more,
& sworn eche bi his side · to saue mi riȝt,
& manliche men ben · beter mow non liue.
þer-fore, lordinges, for his loue · þat let vs be fourmed, [Fol. 48 *b*.]
& for ȝour owne worchipe · witeþ me fro schaþe
ȝut from þise wicked men · þat wold me spille.
& but god of his grace · sum god help vs sende,
Unless God sends help soon, she will surrender.
I wol worche al ȝour wille · wiþ-out ani faile,
wheþer i merci schul craue · or meyntene þis werre.
treuli, ȝif me bitide · þis tene to a-schape,
wiþ richesse i wol ȝou reward · forto riche for euer,
She promises them rich rewards.
so þat treuli ȝour trauail · nouȝt schul ȝe tine."
& alle here gomes were glad · of hire gode speche,
& seden at o sent · " wat so tide wold after,
þei wold manli bi here miȝt · meyntene hire wille,
Her knights swear never to yield.
so long as here lif lasted · to ȝelden hem neuer."
þan þat comly quen · ful curtesli hem þonked,
She thanks them, and retires.
& busked hem þat time · bliþe to bedde,
& redly token here rest · til riȝt on þe morwe.
þan þat comli quen · ketli vp rises,
biddande bisili hire bedes · buskes to hire chapel,
Next day, she asks Moses to sing another mass,
& made hire prest moyses · sone a masse to sing,
& prestli þat while preiȝed · to þe king of heuen,
& to his milde moder · þat alle men helpeþ,
þat þei hire socour sende · sone bi time.
whan þe masse was don · sche went to hire chaumber,
and afterwards watches from her chamber-window.
weited at þe windowe · wer sche þe bestes seie,
& seie hem in þe same place · þer as [þei][1] were ere,
& hendli eiþer oþer · þan colled in armes.

[1] Read " þer as *þei* were ere."—M.

The hot sun had cracked the hides of the hart and hind.
and the queen sees their clothes.

þe hote sunne hade so hard · þe hides stiued,
þat here comli cloþing · þat kenered hem þer-vnder
þe quen saw as sche sat · out bi þe sides sene,
& wex a-wondred þer-of · wittow for soþe. 3036

She points out the beasts to the priest.

to cunseil sche clepud hir prest · þe comli quen sone,
& schewed him þe siȝt · of þe semli bestes;
& sone so he hem sey · he seide to þe quene,

[Fol. 49.]
He says her dream is coming true.

"for mary loue, madame · desmaye ȝou no lenger, 3040
for þe mater of þe [metyng][1] · miȝtow here finde,
as i descriued þis ender day · whan þow þi drem toldest.
& ȝe han herd here-bi-fore · how it bi-tidde in rome,

"You know about the emperor of Rome's daughter,

þemperours douȝter was ȝeue · þemperours[2] sone of grece, 3044

who fell in love with a bold knight,

but no man miȝt here make · þat mariage to holde;
for sche hade arst leide hure loue · on a better place,
on on þe kuddest kniȝt · knowen in þis worlde,
best of his bodi, boldest · & braggest in armes; 3048

and how they fled from Rome in two bears' skins.

& boþe þei busked of rome · in tvo beres skinnes,
siþþe þei hent hertes skinnes · but hou, wot i neuer.
but saufly þis may [i][3] seye · & þe soþe proue,

These are they yonder!

þe ȝond is þat semly · and his selue make. 3052
he schal wiȝtli þis werre · winne to an hende,
& bring þe from alle bales · to þi bote in hast,
& deliuer þi londes a-ȝen · in lengþe & in brede.

You must contrive to get them here."

þer-for no more of þis mater · is to munge nouþe, 3056
but bi-þenke how þe best · þo bestes to winne,
þat þe kniȝt & þat komli · were kome to ȝour chaumber."

þan þa komeli quen · kast in hire hert, 3059
sche wold wirche in þis wise · wel to be sewed

The queen thought she too would be sewed in a hind's skin.

In an huge hindes hide · as þe oþer were,
& busk out to þe bestes · & vnder a busk ligge,
til sche wist what þei were · ȝif þei wold speke. 3063

The priest gets a hide for her.

prestli þe prest þan · proueyed hire swiche an hide,

[1] Read "mater of the *metyng*."—M. [2] MS. þemperonurs.
[3] Read "may *i* seye."—M.

& driue*n* forþ þat day to niȝt · þan drouȝ þei to reste.
but þe quen er þe day · was diȝt wel to riȝtes
hendli in þat hinde-skyn · as swiche bestes were,
& bi a priue posterne · passad ouȝt er daie,
& a-bod vnder a busk · þere þe bestes leye,
so priueli, but þe prest · non parceyue miȝt,
but on of hire burwȝ-maydenes · þat sche loued most.
þei stoden stille hire to a-bide · wiþ-inne a posterne ȝate,
& whan þe su*n*ne gan here schewe[1] · & to schine briȝt,
þe hende hert & hinde · bi-gunne to a-wake,
& maden in-fere þe mest murþe · þat man miȝt diuise,
wiþ clipping & kessing · and contenau*n*ce fele,
& talkeden bi-twene · mani tidy wordes.
& will*ia*m þan witerli · þise wordes seide,
"a ! loueli lemma*n* · a long time me þinkiþ,
seþþen þat i saw · þi semli face bare ;
sore me longes it to se · ȝif it miȝt so worþe."
"bi marie," seid meliors · "so dos me as sore,
ȝour briȝt ble to by-hold · but beter is ȝut a-bide.
we wol nouȝt krepe of þese skinnes · lest vs schaþe tidde,
til our buxu*m* best · ȝif vs boþe leue.
for he be tokene whan time is · wol titli vs wisse,
what wise þat we schal · our owne wedes take."
"treuli, sweting, þat is soþ" · seid will*ia*m þanne,
"a gret þrowe me þinkes · er þat time come ;
but wold god þe quen · wist what we were,
& wold hastli me help · of horse & gode armes,
I wold socour hire sone · fra*m* al þis sory werre,
& pult hire out of þis pe*ril* · in pure litel while ;
but of vs wot sche nouȝt · wo is me þer-fore.
nere it, swetyng, for þi sake · of my-self i ne rouȝt ;
for moche meschef hastow had · onli for mi sake."
"Meschef, sire," saide meliors · "nay, mu*n*ge þat no more ;

Arrayed in this, she goes to the park, and the priest and a bower-maiden wait for her.

At sunrise, the hart and hind [Fol. 49 *b.*] awake and embrace.

William says he longs to see Melior's face.

Melior says they must not creep out of the skins till the werwolf gives the hint.

William wishes the queen knew who he was,

and would provide him with a horse and armour.

Melior says she is well contented.

[1] MS. "schewed." Read "schewe."—M.

for leuer me is þis lif to haue · to liue wiþ þe here,
þan to winne al þe world · & want þe of siȝt."
þan clipt þei & keste · & of þat karping left,
The queen hears all their talk.
& bi a busch lay þe quen · bi here-self one,
& herde holli þe wordes · þat þei hade seide.
& meliors in þe mene time · to william mekli saide,
Melior tells a dream—how an eagle had taken her up to the high tower of the palace.
"swetyng, sore i was a-drad · of a sweuen ȝer-while;
Me þouȝt þanne an[1] ern · er euer i was ware,
hade vs vp take · in-to þat heiȝe toure;
wheþer it geyne to gode · or grame, wot i neuer."
[Fol. 50.]
"nay, i-wisse," sede william · "i wot wel þe soþe,
þat it gayneþ but god · for god may vs help."
& as þei laykeden in here laike · þei lokede a-boute,
William and Melior perceive the hind.
& bleynte bi-hinde þe busch · & seiȝen as bliue,
how an huge hinde · held hire þere at rest.
"bi marie," seide meliors · "me þinkiþ þat best slepeþ,
& semeþ nouȝt a-drad of vs · to deme þe soþe."
"no, i-wisse," seide william · "i ne wot whi it schuld;
William says it surely takes them to be what they seem, or it would flee.
It weneþ þat we ben riȝt · swiche as it-silue;
for we be so sotiliche · be-sewed in þise hides.
but wist it wisli · whiche bestes we were,
It wold fle our felaschip · for fere ful sone."
"Nay," said the queen, "I know who ye are."
"nay, bi crist," sede þe quen · "þat al mankinde schaped,
I nel fle ful fer · for fere of ȝouȝ tweyne.
I wot wel what ȝe ar · & whennes ȝe come,
al þe kas wel i knowe · þat ȝe arn komen inne."
William wonders, and Melior is frightened.
william wex a-wondred · whan he þise wordes herd,
& meliors þe meke · wex neiȝh mad for fere.
but william ful hastly · þus to þe hinde sede,
William conjures the hind to say whether it is a good spirit or a foul fiend.
"I coniure þe, þurth crist · þat on croice was peyned,
þatou titli me telle · & tarie nouȝ no lenger,
wheþer þow be a god gost · in goddis name þat spekist,
oiþer any foule fend · fourmed in þise wise,
& ȝif we schul of þe hent · harme oþer gode."

[1] MS. "Me þouȝt erþen ar ern, &c."

Þan þat comli quen · ful curtesli saide,
"I am swiche a best as ȝe ben · bi him þat vs wrouȝt.
harm for me, i hope · schul ȝe haue neuer;
for as gost on goddis name · ich gaynli to ȝou speke,
of swiche kinde ar we kome · bi crist, as ȝe arn.
but oþer breme bestes · by maistrye & strengþe,
han me dulfulli driuen · fro my kinde lese.
þer-for i souȝt hider · socour of þe to haue,
& praie þe *par* charite · & prop*er*liche for reuþe,
deliuer me of duresse · & do me haue my lese,
& lelli þow schalt be lord þer-of · al þi lif time.
& þat menskful maide · þat þere myd þe lies,
schal be mi lef lady · þis lordchip to weld.
for þe real emp*er*our of rome · is redeli hir [1] fader,
forþi wel i wot sche is worþi · to weld wel more,
I knowe al þe couyne · of cuntre how ȝe went,
& ȝe ben welcom to me · bi crist þat me made.
& of sorwe i haue suffred · sone wol i telle.
þe proude king of spayne · wiþ pride me bi-segeþ,
& haþ luþerli al mi lond · wiþ his ludes wasted,
& al þis duresse he me doþ · for my douȝt*er* sake;
asent wold sche nouȝt his sone · to wif hire weld,
þer-for he worcheþ me wo · & wasteþ al my londes,
saue onliche in þis cite · where soiourne wot i neu*er*.
but help hope i in hast · to haue of þe one;
to amende my meschef · i meke me in þi grace,
& pleyn power i þe graun*t* · prestli alse swiþe,
to lede al my lordchip · as þe lef likes;
boute eny maner mene · mayster i þe make;
wiþ-þatow winne al my worchip · as i ere walt."
þan was will*iam* gretli glad · & oft god þonked,
whan he wist it was þe quen · & wiȝtli he sayde,
"Madame, by þat menskful lord · þat vs alle made,
ȝif i þis time miȝt trust · treuli to ȝour sawe,
so þat ȝe wold lelli my lemman · saue & loke,

The queen says she will never harm them,

that, in fact, she implores him to aid her, and he shall be king,

[Fol. 50 b.]

and she will make Melior his queen.

For the king of Spain had wasted her lands,

but she hopes to have William's help against him.

William rejoiced when he knew the queen,

[1] MS. "his," altered to "hir" by a later hand.

whil i busily buske a-boute · 3our bales to bete,
and promises to serve her faithfully. al my help holliche · 3e schul haue at nede ; 3168
feiþli boute feyntise · 3ou faile schal ich neuer,
as long as any lif · me lastes, for soþe."
Gretli was þe quen glad · & godli him þonked,
All three go together to the postern-gate. & loueli him & his lemman · lau3t bi þe handes, 3172
& ferden forþ on here fet · feiþli to-gadere
priueli to þe posterne · & in passed sone.
The bower-woman, who was [Fol. 51.] waiting, was nearly mad with fear, & 3it stod þe maide stille · þe quen to a-bide,
& whan sche saw þo þre bestes · so þroli come, 3176
so hidous in þo hides · as þei hertes were,
sche wex wod of hire wit · wittou, for fere ;
& rapli gan a-way renne · to reken þe soþe.
but þat comli quen · called hire a-3ene, 3180
but the queen reassures her, & carful [sche][1] com · whan sche hire clepe herde.
and asks if she does not know her again. " whi carestow," sede þe quene · " knew þow nou3t þe soþe,
þat i was tiffed in a-tir · when i wend fro þe ? "
" 3is, madame,"[2] sede þe maide · " but, bi marie of heuen,
She says she is frightened of the others. but i a-wede neic3 of wit · for þo werder bestes, 3185
þat folwe 3our felachip · so ferli þei are."
" þei wol do no duresse · bi dere god of heuen ;
for hem i went in þis wise · to win in-to þis place. 3188
The queen tells her to keep it all a secret. but loke now, bi þi lif · þat no lud here-of wite,
how þei hider come · her-after neuer more."
" nay, bi marie, madame " · þe maide þan seide,
" þis dede schal i neuer deschuuer · þe deth forto suffer."

The queen takes them to a chamber in the tower. Þe comli quen þan takeþ · meliors by þe hande, 3193
& bi-fore went william · & after-ward þe quene ;
brou3t hem to a choys chaumber · vnder þe chef toure,
þ[er]e[3] were beddes busked · for eny burn riche. 3196
Two baths are soon made ready & tvo baþes were boun · by a litel while,

[1] Perhaps better thus, " carful *sche* com."—M.
[2] MS. " made ;" see ll. 2701, 3191.
[3] MS. " þe." Read " there."—M.

& a-tired tryli · to trusty trewe lordes.
sone þe quen kauȝt a knif · & komli hire-selue
william & his worþi fere · swiftli vn-laced
out of þe hidous hidus · & in a hirne hem cast.
& whan þei were cloþed · worþli in here wedes,
alle men vpon mold · miȝt sen a fair coupel
þan was bi-twene william · & þis worþi mayde.
þe quen hire clipt & kest · & gret comfort made,
& seþþen bliue dede hem baþe · boþe tvo wel faire,
& greiþed hem gaili · in garnemens riche,
& manli made hem atte hese · wiþ alle metes nobul,
& wiþ þe de[r]worþest [1] deintes · of drinkes þat were;
to munge more nis no ned · nouȝt missed þei þanne.
whan þei merili at mete · hade made hem at ese,
þat comli quen to william · curtesli saide,
"swete sire, ȝe me saye · what signe is þe leuest
to haue schape in þi scheld · to schene armes?"
"bi crist, madame," sede þe kniȝt · "i coueyte nouȝt elles
but þat i haue a god schel[d] · of gold graiþed clene,
& wel & faire wiþ-inne · a werwolf depeynted,
þat be hidous & huge · to haue alle his riȝtes,
of þe couenablest colour · to knowe in þe feld;
oþer armes al my lif · atteli neuer haue."
þe quen þan dede comaunde · to carfti [2] men i-nowe,
þat deuis him were diȝt · er þat day eue,
to wende in-to werre · in world where him liked;
þat was perles a-parrayl · to proue of alle gode.

Also þat comli quen · as þat crist wold,
hade on þe sturnest stede · in hire stabul teiȝed,
þat euer man vpon molde · miȝt of heren,
& doutiest to alle dedes · þat any horse do schuld.
þe king ebrouns it ouȝt · þat was hire lord bi-fore,
& fro þe day þat he deiede · durst no man him neiȝhe,

The queen with a knife unlaces the hides.

William and Melior seem a fair couple.

[Fol. 51 b.]
They bathe, and are richly dressed and go to meat.

The queen asks William what cognisance he will have on his shield.

He replies—"A werwolf on a shield of gold."

The queen has it made for him.

She had in her stable a very spirited horse, that had been her husband's.

[1] Read "derworthest."—M. [2] Read "crafti."—M.

Since Ebrouns' death, no one had dared to mount him.

ne be so bold of his bodi · on his bak to come,
but euer stod teied *in* þe stabul · wiþ stef irn cheynes ;
& queyntliche to his cracche · was corue swiche a weie,
þat me*n* miȝt legge him mete · & wateren atte wille.
þe horse sone hade sauor · of þat hende kniȝt,
[Fol. 52.] & wist, as god wold · it was is kinde lord.

The horse, knowing William, brake all his bands for joy, and neighed wondrously.

as bliue, al his bondes · he to-brak for ioye,
& so gan fare wiþ his fet · & ferliche neiȝede,
þat men wend he hade be wod · & warned þe quene,

And this is told to the queen.

how sternli in þe stabul · þe stede þan ferde,
& had broke alle his bondes · no burn durst him neiȝhe.

William hears about it, and asks what sort of a horse it is.

whan will*iam* herde þise wordes · he saide to þe quene,
" Madame,[1] what stede is þat · þat so sterne is hold?
Is he ouȝt douȝti to dedes · þat men don of armes?"
" ȝa, certes," saide þe quen · " soþ for to telle,
a worþier to þat werk · wot i non in erþe,
ȝif any man vpo*n* mold · miȝt wiþ him dele.

" It was Ebrouns' horse," she says.

he was mi lordes, wil he liuede · þat i so moche louede,
& for his loue sertenli · i do þis stede ȝeme."
" Mademe," sede will*iam* · " ȝif it were ȝour wille,
I wold preie p*ar* charite · & profit þat may falle,

William asks for it.

þat i most haue þat horse · whan i schal haue to done.
I wol to medis my-self · manliche him diȝt,
sette vpo*n* his sadel · & semli him greiþe."

She says he may have whatever he pleases; he thanks her.

" certes," sede þe quen · " i seie þe at onis,
holli of al þat i haue · here i make þe maister,
to do þer-wiþ bi day & niȝt · as þe god þinkes."
þer-of was will*iam* glad · & wiȝtli here þonkes,
þan asked þei þe win · & went to bedde after,
for it was forþ [to] niȝt[2] · faren bi þat time.

Next day, the steward of Spain

Deliu*er*li on þe morwe · er þe day gan dawe,
þe stiward of spayne · þat stern was & bold,
hadde bi-seged þat cite · selcouþeli hard

[1] MS. " Madama." [2] See note.

wiþ þre M. of men · þat þro were to fiȝt.
& þo þe segges of þe cite · sone were ȝare,
as douȝti men of dedes · defence for to make,
ȝerne schetten here ȝates · & ȝemed þe walles.
for of þo wiþ-inne · non wold hem out aunter,
so fele were of here fon · & so fewe wiþ-inne.
þe cry rudli a-ros · þat reuþe it was to hure,
for þei wiþ-inne þe toun · swiche meschef were inne,
þat þei witterli wende · haue be wonne þat daye.
titli was þe tiding · told in þe paleys,
how felli here fomen · gun fiȝt atte walles.
whan william þat wiste · wiȝtli vp he stirte,
as glad as any gome · þat euer god wrouȝt,
þat he miȝt his fille fiȝt · for þat fre quene.
anon he was armed · at alle maner poyntes,
& streiȝt him in-to the stabul · þere þe stede stod,
& moche folk him folwed · þat ferli to bi-hold,
how sternli he & þe [stede][1] · schold stiȝtli to-gadere.
& as sone as þe kniȝt kud · kome to þe stabul,
þat þe stede him of-saw · sone he vp-leped,
& faire wiþ his fore fet · kneled doun to grounde,
& made him þe most ioye · þat [man] miȝt deuise,[2]
& alle frekes þat him folwed · gret ferli hade.
þe stede stod ful stille · þouȝh he sterne were,
while þe kniȝt him sadeled · & clanli him greiþed;
& wan vp wiȝtli him-self · whan he was ȝare,
& schuft his scheld on is schulder · a scharp spere on honde,
& gerd him wiþ a god swerd · for any man in erþe.
þe stede liked wel þe lode · his lord whan he felte,
he wist him wiȝht of dede · & wel coude ride,
& braundised so bremli · þat alle burnes wondred
of þe comli cuntenaunce · of þe kniȝt þat he bare.

attacks the city with 3,000 men.

[Fol. 52 b.]

The defenders dare not make a sally.

William is glad at the news, and dons his armour,

and goes to the stable.

The horse kneels to him on its fore legs, and is quite docile.

The knight saddles him and mounts.

The steed likes his load.

[1] Read "the *stede* schold stiztli."—M.

[2] Read "that *man* miȝt deuise." A common phrase.—M. See ll. 2985, 3075.

[Fol. 53.] All are blithe to behold the knight.

so schene he was to se · in his semli armes,
þat alle burnes were bliþe · to bi-hold him one ;
for so semli a seg · had þei nouȝt ȝore seie.
þat quen & hire douȝter · & meliors þe schene
wayteden out at a windowe · wilfulli in-fere,
how that komeli kniȝt · kunteyned on his stede.

The queen and her daughter praise him, and say it will be a lucky woman who marries him.

þe quen & here douȝter · deuised him so moche,
& preisede him perles · for eny prince in erþe,
& seiden, "wel is þat womman · þat he ẇold haue !
vnder crist, is no kniȝt · þat so kud semeþ !"

Melior is alarmed at this,

Meliors al þis mater · what it ment herde,
& was a-drad to þe deth · þei deseuy here wold,
to winne william here fro · þat þei so wel praysede,
& seide softili to hire-self · þese selue wordes,

thinking she would rather have William than all the world's wealth without him.

"Lord, ȝif þe hade liked · leuer me hade bene
haue woned in wildernesse[1] · wiþ mi lemman swete,
þan woṅye here in al þe welþ · of þe world riche,
to lese mi lemman · þat al mi loue weldes."
swiche mistrowe had meliors · for þei so moche him preised.

William rides through the city,

Now william on his sterne stede · now stifli forþ rides,
so serreli þurth þe cite · al him-self one,
þat eche weiȝh was a-wondred · þat seiȝ wiþ eiȝen,
so coraious a contenaunce · þat kud kniȝt hadde.
william prestili priked · þer þe puple was sembled,

and comes to where the defenders held their council.

& alle þe solempne segges · þat þe cite ȝemed,
bold barounes & kniȝtes · & oþer segges[2] nobul.

They rejoice at his bold bearing.

& whan þei were war of william · wilfulli alle,
þe komynge of þe kuntenaunce · of þe kniȝt nobul
þei bi-helden hertly · & hadden gret ioye,
þa so manli a man · wold mele in here side.

[Fol. 53 b.]

þe nobul blonk þat him bar · a[s][3] bliue þei knewe,

[1] MS. "wirderneſſe." Read "wildernesse."—M.
[2] MS. "segeges." Read "segges."—M.
[3] Read "as bliue."—M.

but witterli what he was · wist non of alle.
willi*a*m streiȝt went hem to · & wiȝtli saide,
" leue lordes, for goddes loue · lestenes my sawe !
it semeth þat ȝe ar segges · selkouþely nobul,
& bold burnes to abide · in batayles harde,
& wel armed ȝe arn · at alle maner poyntes.
whi lete ȝe foulli ȝour fon · for-barre ȝou her-inne,
& do ȝou alle þe duresse · þat þei deuise konne,
& ȝe do no defence · þat despyt to wreke,
but couwardli as caitifs · couren here in meuwe ?
Men, for ȝoure manchipe · na more þat suffreþ,
but wendeþ ouȝt wiȝtli · & wiþ ȝour fon meteþ,
haueþ reward to ȝour riȝt · & redli chul ȝe spede ;
& ȝe wite þei do wrong · þe worse schul þei happe.
ȝif ȝe manli wiþ hem mete · þe maistry worþ oure,
þeiȝh þei be fiue so fele · as we in-fere alle.
& ȝe þat wilne to wynne · worchipe in armes,
folweþ me, for in feiþ · þe ferst wil i bene,
þat smertli schal smite · þe alderfirst dint " :—
& ȝerne opened þe ȝates · & ȝepli out rides.
whan þe bold kniȝtes hade herde · þat burnes wordes,
& sey him so fersli forþ fare · so bi-fore hem alle,
þei wist he was a wiȝt man · & wold nouȝt faile [1]
but þat he schuld hem help · þei hoped for soþe.
& foure hundred fers men · folwed him after,
of koraious kniȝtes · & o*þer* kud kempes,
þat for to liuen or deyen · litel hem rouȝt.
& whan willi*a*m was war · wiche a route sewede,
he was gainli glad · no gom þurt him blame,
& a-bod til þe burnes · a-boute him were come.
þe spaynolnes hem hade a-spiede · & spakli gun ride,
wiþ gret bobau*n*ce & bost · blowand here trompes ;
for þei seiȝ so fewe · out of þe cite come
aȝens hem þre .M. · þei ne tok non hede
to reule hem of non array · but riȝt, for gret pride,

They know the horse, but not the man.
William harangues them,
asking them why they let their foes bar them in.
He exhorts them to make a sally,
and their courage will supply their lack of numbers.
He will go first, and strike the first blow.
He opens the gates, and rides out.
Four hundred bold men follow him.
[Fol. 54.]
The Spaniards attack them,
being 3,000 in number.

[1] MS. "falle." Read "faile."—M.

eche burn bi-fore oþer · on his blonk prikede,
to asayle þe segges · þat fro þe cite come.
William exhorts his men to stand well together, and to yield no inch of ground.
willi*a*m seide to his whiez̄s · wittili for soþe, 3364
" Lordinges & leue frendes · listenes to my sawes !
þez̄h ze be ferd of ȝour fon · fleþ neuer þe sunner ;
þe bolder ouȝt we be · þei ben out of araie.
stonde we stifli to-gader · stifly in defens, 3368
& ne leses no lond · lordinges, god for-bede !
Let each man think of his lady-love !
eche lud þenk on his lemma*n* · & for hire loue so fiȝt,
to winne worchip þer-wiþ · *in* worlde for eue*r*-more.
& in feiþ, þeiȝh eft as fele · of our fomen were, 3372
deliue*r*li þurth ȝour dedes · schul þei deie sone."
They array themselves in good order.
kniȝtes wiþ sire willi*a*m · kauȝt [þanne] [1] god hert,
& realiche were a-raiȝed · in a litel while,
In a ful styf strengþe · to stonde to fiȝt. 3376
The Spanish king's steward leads the attack.
þer kom a kniȝt to-fore · þe companye of spayne,
a stif man & a stern · þat was þe kinges stiward,
& cheueteyn was chose · þat eschel to lede.
& for boldnesse of his bodi · be-fore alle he went, 3380
armed at alle poyntes · on a nobul stede.
William perceives him coming,
willi*a*m was wiȝtly · whar of his come,
& gamli to his gomes · gan for to seie,
" bi crist, ȝond kniȝt · þat komeþ here armed, 3384
dredeþ litel oure dedes · what-eue*r* he do þink.
[Fol. 54 *b.*] and says he will be the first to meet him.
but bi god þat me gaf · þe gost & þe soule,
I wol fonde be þe first · in feld him to mete ;
but our on titly tumbel · trowe me neue*r* after." 3388
spacli boute speche · his spere þanne he heute,
William encounters the steward,
& euen to þat stiward · dede his stede renne,
& manli as miȝti men · eiþer mette oþer,
& spacli þe oþeres spe*re* · in speldes þan wente. 3392
ac willi*a*ms was strong inow · wittow forsoþe,
& he so sternli þe stiward · þat ilk time hitte,
and bears him down to the earth, as dead as a doornail.
þurth þe bold bodi · he bar him to þe erþe,
as ded as dornayl · te deme þe soþe. 3396

[1] See note.

"I-wis," þenne seide will*iam* · "i wot wel to wisse,
þow dost vs neu*er* after · no duresse in armes!"
ac spacly þe spaynoles · speiȝed he was slayne,
þei were [wode][1] of here witt · wittow for soþe,
hastili hent vp his bodi · & to here tentes bere,
þat it were nouȝt i*n* þat fiȝt · wit here horse troden.
& as bliue boldli · þe burnes of spayne,
þouȝt manli make wreche · here lorlde[2] to queme,
for swiche a lorld[2] of lederes · ne liued nouȝt, þei held,
non so douȝti of dedus · þer-for his deth a-wreke[3]
þei þouȝt þroli þat time · what bi-falle after.

The Spaniards, seeing him slain, bear his body to their tents.

They resolve to avenge him.

A ful breme bataile · bi-gan þat ilk time,
whan eiþer sides a-sembled · of þo segges sturne.
Mani a sp*e*re spacli · on peces were to-broke,
& many a schene scheld · scheuered al to peces,
Many helmes to-hewe · þurth here huge strokes.
& redili for to rekene · al þe riȝt soþe,
will*ia*m & his wiȝes · so wonderli fouȝten,
þat þei felden here fon · ful fast to grounde.
non miȝt here strok wiþ-stond · in þat stounde þan,
so wel for will*ia*ms werkes · were þei þan herted.
þe stiward had a newe · but of ȝong age,
on þe manlokest man · þat men schold of heren,
& douȝtiest of dedes · þat men schuld do in armes.
as swiftli as he wist · þat his em was slawe,
he þouȝt duelfulli þa deth · þat day to a-wreke.
armed at alle poyntes · anon he þider went,
& pr*e*sed in a-mang þe pepul · þer it was þikkest,
& sone to hem of þe cite · a-sembled he þanne,
& fauȝt þan so ferscheli · for his emes sake,
he dude to dethe deliu*er*li · fiue gode kniȝtes,

Then began a fierce battle.

Spears are broken, shields shivered, and helms hewn through.

William's men fight well.

[Fol. 55.]

The steward's nephew

resolves to avenge his uncle's death,

and slays five good knights.

[1] Read "were *wode* of here witt."—M.

[2] *Sic* in MS. See l. 3955.

[3] MS. "a wrekes." Read "a-wreke," or "a-wreken," in the infinitive.—M. Cf. l. 3422.

þat bold were in bataile · to a-bide at nede.
William forces his way to him.
whan will*ia*m wist of þat werk · wittow forsoþe,
þer nas man vpo*n* molde · þat him miȝt lette,
þat he ne p*er*ced þe pres · prestili þat time,
til he met wiþ þat man · þat miȝti was hold.
The steward's nephew knows William by the werwolf on his shield.
whan þe stiwardes newe · saw will*ia*m come,
bi þe werwolf in his scheld · wel he him knewe,
þat þe same seg hade slawe · his em þer-to-fore.
& wiȝtli as a wod man · to will*ia*m he priked,
wiþ spe*r*e festened in feuter · him for to spille.
Their spears break, and they fight with swords.
at þe a-coupyng þe kniȝtes [speres][1] · eiþer brak on oþer,
swiftli wiþ here swerdes · swinge þei to-geder,
& delten duelful dentes · deliuerli þat stounde.
& will*ia*m was þe wiȝtere · & wel sarre smot,
& set so hard a strok · sone after on þat oþer,
William's sword grinds through helm and head down to the breast,
þurth helm & hed hastili · to þe brest it grint.
þe swerd swiftili swenged · þurth þe bode euen,
þat tit ouer his hors-tail · he tumbled ded to grounde.
þat ilk stoute kniȝtes stede · & þe stiwardes alse
and he sends his foe's horse and the steward's horse to Melior as a present.
will*ia*m sent sone · to his semli lemman,
wher-of sche was geinli glad · & oft god þonked,
þa he so wel hade wrouȝt · in werre þat day.

[Fol. 55 b.]
Will*ia*m[2] & his burnes · þan in bataile were,
so felly wiþ here fon · fouȝt þat ilke time,
bi a stou*n*de was no*n* so stef · þat hem wiþ-stonde miȝt,
The Spaniards turn to flight.
but were fayn for to fle · eche bi-fore oþer,
wel was him i*n* þe world · þat swifliest miȝt hiȝe,
o*þ*er on hors oþer on fote · for fere[3] of þe deþe.
William and his men pursue them 5 miles, taking many prisoners.
& will*ia*m & his whiȝes · went after sone,
& maden manli þe chas · mo þan fiue mile,

[1] Read "the kniztes *speres*."—M.

[2] The capital W is absent, but its place is marked by a very small w.

[3] MS. "fore." Read "fere."—M.

& grete prisons & gode · goten þei þat time ;
þat meked hem nouȝt to mercy · manli þei slowe,
& whan þei time seie · turned hem hom a-ȝene,
herigeden[1] heili god · þat þei wel had spedde.
but holli williams werkes · þei wittened it alle,
nade his douȝthi dedes be · þei hade be dede alle ;
& louted to [him] as to lord · þe lasse & þe more,
& eche a gom was gladdest · hoo gaynest him miȝt ride.

All are aware that it was all William's doing.

al þe sorwe þei hadde suffred · [so] lang to-fore,
þei sett it soþli at nouȝt · so glad were þei þan,
for þe douȝthi kniȝtes dedus · þat þat day hem helped.
wiþ al þe murthe vpon molde · þo miȝthi men in-fere
passeden to þe paleys · proude of here dedes.

They forgot all their former sufferings.

þe comly quen & here douȝter · com him a-ȝens,
& þe me[n]skful meliors · wiþ maydenes fele,
& welcomed william · as þei wel ouȝte,
wiþ clipping & kessing · & alle kinde dedus.

The queen, her daughter, and Melior meet and welcome them.

þe quen him loueli ladde · riȝt to h[er]e chaumber,
vn-armed him anon · & afterward cloþed
clenliche for eny [kniȝt] · þat vnder crist liuede.

The queen unarms and clothes him.

þan sete þei þre · to solas hem at þe windowe,
euen ouer þe ioly place · þat to þat paleis longed,
þere as þe quen fond william · & his faire make.
& as þei waited a-boute · wil þei of murthe speke,
williams werwolf · was comen þider þanne,
loked vpon þe ladies · & his loueli maister,
& held vp his foure-fet · in fourme to craue mercy,
& louted to hem loueli · and lelly þer-after,
he went wiȝtly a-wei : whider him god liked.

She sits with him and Melior at the window looking out on the park.

The werwolf appears, and [Fol. 56.] holds up his fore feet as in supplication, and goes his way.

þe quen þer-of was a-wondred · & to william seide,
" sire, saw ȝe þis selcouþe · of þis semli best ?
wonder signes he wrouȝt · what mai hit tokene ?"
" ȝis, certes, madame " · seide william þanne,
" i sei þe signes mi-self · & soþli ich hope,

The queen asks what he means.

[1] Perhaps miswritten for " herigende."

William says it is a good sign.

It bi-tokneþ gret god · þat greiþli schal vs falle." 3492
"ȝe, ȝif *crist* wol," q*uod* þe quen · "[þat] [1] on croyce deied;

The queen tells her story—how she had a son named William,

but, sire, whan i se þat best · þat þo signes made,
a sorwe sinkeþ to mi hert · i schal ȝou telle whi.
su*m* time, sire, here-to-fore · a semli sone i hadde, 3496
þat was hote wil*liam* · i-wisse, as ȝe arn.

who, when 4 years old, was playing in the park,

feiþli whan þat faire child · was of foure ȝer eld,
as my lord and i · and oþer ludes many,
pleiȝed vs her in þe park · in place þer i ȝou fond, 3500

when a werwolf caught him up and ran off with him.

for al þe world swiche a wolf · as we here seiȝen,
It semeth riȝt þat selue · bi semblant & bi hewe,
com gapind a gret pace · & cauȝt vp mi sone,
riȝt bi-fore his fader · and oþer frakes manye, 3504
& went awey with him · so wonderli fast.

The king and his men pursued him over mires and mountains, but in vain.

My lord & many a-noþer · manliche him sewed
ouer mires & mu*n*taynes · & oþer wicked weiȝes;
at þe last þei him left · for miȝth þat þei couþe. 3508

The werwolf leapt into the sea, and was seen no more.

forþ with my sone in-to þe see · þat sori best leped,
so þat i herde hider-to · neuer of him more.
& certes, sire, for þat sone · i hade gret sorwe,
whan i þenk on þat sorwe · it þirles my hert." 3512

William remembers how he was found by the cowherd.

Will*iam* was in a wer · þat it were him-selue.
how þe couherd þe king told · it ca*m* hi*m* i*n* minde,
þat he him fond in þe forest · i*n* faire riche cloþes. 3515

but reflects that the queen said her son was drowned.

but sche seide þat hire sone · was i*n* þe see dronked,
& þe wolf also · þat him a-wei bare,
þe þroli þouȝt þat him meued · þe*r*-of þat ilk time

[Fol. 56 *b*.]

He tells her he will stand in her son's stead.

sone he let ou*er*-slide · & seide to þe quene, 3519
þat sche schuld make hire merie · hire meyne to glade,
& he wold i*n* hire sones stede · stand euer at nede.

She thanks him, and gives him full powers.

sche ful godli gan him þonke · & gaf him hol miȝth,
to meyntene al hire god · as maister in his owne.

[1] Read "the quen, *that* on croyce deied."—M.

þan talked þei of oþer tales · til time were to soupe,
& were serued bi ese · as hem-self wold,
& so driuen forth þe day . til þe derke niȝt,
with al þe mirthe vpon mold · þat man miȝth deuise.
þis lessoun let we of hem · & lesten we a-noþer ;
of þe spaynolus wol i speke · how spacli þei fled ;
þilke þat went with þe lif · a-wei fro þat sthoure,
spakli to þe king of spayne · þei sped hem þat time,
& seide to him & his sone · þe cas þat was falle,
which a kniȝt com hem a-ȝenis · conquered alle oþer,
so sterne he was & stoute · & swiche st[r]okes lent ;
was non so stif stelen wede · þat with-stod his wepen ;
& how he in þe stour · þe stoute stiward slow,
and his nobul neuew · a-non riȝt þer-after ;
& bede wiȝtli hem awreke · of þe wicked harme,
or alle men vpon mold · miȝth hem schame speke ;
so fele of here frendes · in þe feld were slayne,
þat it was a sorful siȝt · to se how it ferde.
whan þe king & his conseil · herde of þis cas,
a selcouþ sorwe he made · & his sone als,
þat was a ful kud þniȝt · & kene man *in* armes.
he was wod of his wit · for wraþþe of þat dede,
& praiȝed prestili þis poynt · anon of his fader,
þat he most on þe morwe · with a miȝthi ost
wende to a-wrek hem · of þat wicked dede.
& ȝif he mette with þat kniȝt · þat is so miȝthi hold,
he swor sadli is oþ · as tit to his fader,
þat he fro þe bodi · [wold][1] haue his hed sone,
oþer tit take him a-liue · no ȝain-torn schuld lette.
þer-of þe king was geynli glad · & graunted his wille,
bad him worche whan he wold · & wend whan him liked.
þe kinges sone aswiþe · let sembul miche puple,
& triȝed him to a tidi ost · of þe tideȝist burnes,
þat he miȝth in þe mene time · in any maner gadere.

They sup and make merry till nightfall.

The Spaniards who fled told the king of Spain and his son of William's prowess;

and how he had slain the steward and his nephew, whom the king ought to avenge.

The king's son begs his father that he may lead a host to avenge themselves.

He swears to have William's head, or to take him alive.

[Fol. 57.]

He gets a host together,

[1] Read "fro the bodi *wold* haue."— M.

Manli on þe morwe · he dede his men greiþe
Gaili as gomes miȝt be · in alle gode armes ;
and takes the field on the morrow. faire þan with his folk · to þe feld he went
bi-fore boldli him-self · his batailes to araie.
alle his burnes bliue · in x batailes he sett,
as redili araiȝed · as any rink þort wilne.
He has 3,000 men. & iij. M. þro men · in his eschel were,
& alle bold burnes · in batailes strong & bigge.
þe kinges sone þan seide · to his segges bold,
He asks his lords how he is to know William. " Leue lordinges, for mi loue · lelli me telles,
ȝif i encountre with þis kniȝt · þat þis kare worcheþ,
how schal i him knowe · what konichauns here he bere ? "
A knight says he may know him either by his deeds, or by the werwolf on his shield. " sertes, sere," seide a kniȝt · " so me wel time,
þat kud kniȝt is eth to knowe · by his kene dedes,
& bereth in his blasoun · of a brit hewe
a wel huge werwolf · wonderli depeinted ;
þat man driues a-doun · to dethe, þat [he] hittes."
The king's son says it will soon be seen who is strongest. " sone it schal be sene " · seide þe kinges sone,
" wheþer of vs be wiȝttere · to winne or to lese."

Now wol i a while · of william here telle,
William's men, on the morrow, are well arrayed. in what maner on þe morwe · is men were araid,
deliuerli at þe dai · diȝt þei were alle,
treuli in al atir · þat to werre longed.
He divides them into 6 companies. & william ful wiȝtthli · as he wel couþe,
set alle his segges · as þei schuld bene,
In sexe semli batailes · as þei schuld bene ;[1]
al be-fore in þe frond · he ferde þan him-selue.
His horse's name was Ebrouns' Saundbruel. ebrouns saundbruel · so hiȝt his blonk nobul.
[Fol. 57 b.] & as sone as þe kinges sone · saw him so come,
The prince's men point out William to him. fast he freyned at his folk · what freke þat it were,
& þei seide ful sone · " for soþe, it is þat kniȝt,
þat haþ wrouȝt al þis wo · wel ouȝt we him hate ;

[1] The last half of this line is clearly copied from the line before.

alle he driues to þe deth · þat his dint feles."
þe kinges sone forsoþe · ne seide þo na more, — The prince rides at William,
but gart his [stede][1] goo · and streiȝet to him rides
with his spere on feuter · festened þat time.
whan willi*a*m was war · & wist of his come, — who is told it is the prince who is coming.
his men seiden sone · it was þe kinges sone,
& douȝthi man & deliu*er* · in dedes of armes.
"lat me worþ," quaþ willi*a*m · "þat schal i wite sone — William says he will fight him,—
In feiþ þouȝh he hade fors · of foure swiche oþer,
I wol fond with him fiȝt · þouȝh me tide þe worse."
he dede þen his stef stede · stert a god spede, — and rides to meet him.
to þe kene kinges [sone][2] · þat was a kniȝt nobul.
so kenli þei a-cu*n*tred · at þe coupyng to-gadere,
þat þe kniȝt spere in speldes · alto-schiuered. — The prince's spear breaks,
ac willi*a*ms spere was stef · wittow for soþe, — but William's strikes the prince fairly, hurling horse and man to the ground.
& mette þat oþer man · in þe midde scheld,
þat boþe him & his hors · he hurles to grou*n*de;
& neiȝ hade broke his bak · so his blonk him hirt.
willi*a*m þan wiȝtli · be þe auentayle him hent, — William is going to "swap" off his head,
to haue with his swerd · swapped of his hed;[3]
but þe segges of spayne · souȝt to him[4] ȝerne, — but the Spaniards come to the rescue.
to haue holpen here lord · hastili ȝif þei miȝt;
& willi*a*ms wiȝes wiȝttli · went hem a-ȝens.
þo bi-gan þat batayle · on boþe sides harde, — A general battle ensues, very severe and deadly.
feller saw neu*er* frek · fro*m* adam to þis time;
sone was mani bold barn · brouȝt þer to grou*n*d,
Mani scheldes schiuered · & mani helmes hewen,
& many a stif stede · straiȝed in þere blode.
bold burnes of bodies · þere were on boþe sides,
þat fayn were forto fiȝt · & to fle hated.
but willi*a*m so wonder wel · fauȝt þat ilke time, — [Fol. 58.]

[1] Read "gart his *stede* goo."—M.

[2] Read "the kene kinges *sone* that was."—M.

[3] The MS. apparently has "heued," altered to "heade." See l. 3864.

[4] MS. "him to ȝerne;" and "to" is altered to "so" by a later hand.

William fights boldly, and prevents the rescue of the prince,

þat no man þat he hit · miȝth him with-stonde,
& euer kept þe kinges[1] sone · fram al his kene meyne,
þat non miȝt him winne a-wei · for worse ne for beter.
& were hem lef oþer loþ · william at last 3624

whom he drags out of the *mêlée*,

keuered with þe kinges sone · out of þe kene prese,
& brouȝt him out on his blonk · of þat batayle sterne,

and assigns to some citizens to keep.

& a-signed of citesens · segges i-nowe, 3627
to kepe wel þe kinges sone · til þei come to towne;
& þei were bliþe of þat bode · & bisiliche fondede
fast to ferke him forþward · as þei faire miȝt.

The Spaniards again attempt a rescue, a fresh host coming out of ambush.

whan þe spaynols þat a-spied · spakli þei him folwed,
and deden al þe duresse · þat þei do miȝt. 3632
a fersche ost hem to help · hastili þer come,
þat was a-buschid þer bi-side · in a brent greue.

William keeps up his men's courage,

but whan william was war · & wist of here come,
Manly he demeyned him · to make his men egre, 3636
bad hem alle be bold · & busiliche fiȝt,
for here fon gun feynte · & felde were manye.
þe kinde *con*fort of þe kniȝt · to is folk þat he made,[2]
were als fresch forto fiȝt · as þei were on morwe. 3640

but perceives that the enemies are too numerous;

but william say þer oþer side · so fers & so breme,
þat his men miȝt nouȝt · meyntene here owne,
prestli to hold party · to puple þat hem folwed.

wherefore he orders a retreat to the town.

for-þi he dede hem deliuerli · drawe toward towne, 3644
& kepten wel þe kinges [sone][3] · for cas þat miȝt falle,

His men are successful in bringing the prince with them.

for ouȝt þat here[4] enimys · euer worche miȝt.
þei keuered with clene strengþe · with him to towne,
& þe segges of þe cite · but þo þat slayn were. 3648

Yeomen shut the gates and man the walls.

& ȝepli ȝomen þan dede · þe ȝates schette,
& wiȝttili þan went · þe walles forto fende,
so þat feiþli of here fon · no fors þei ne leten.

[1] MS. "kenges." But see ll. 3591, 3601, 3625.
[2] A line lost (?)
[3] Read "the kinges *sone* for cas."—M. See ll. 3601, 3625.
[4] The MS. *repeats the words* þat here.

William with his wiȝes · is wiþ-in þe cite nobul,
haþ *con*quered wiþ clene strengþe · þe kinges sone of spayne,
& passeþ with him & his puple · to þe paleys euen,
with al mirth vpo*n* molde · þat man miȝt deuise.
þe quen him mett mekli · wiþ maidenes fele,
& meliors & here dere douȝter · to deme þe soþe,
wiþ alle worschip & wele · will*ia*m þei receyued,
wiþ clipping & kesseng · & alle couþe dedes.
& will*ia*m þan wiȝtly · wiþ-oute eny more,
þe kinges sone of spayne · spakli to hire ȝalde,
to putte in hire prisou*n* · & peyne him as hire liked.
& curtesli to þat kniȝt · gan sche knele þanne,
forto þonk him þroli · of þat faire ȝeft;
for he was ma*n* vpo*n* molde · þat sche most hated,
& hade hir do most duresse · for hire douȝter sake.
hastili i*n*-to þe halle · wiþ hem þan sche went,
& ladde will*ia*m as lord · loueli in londe;
& as bliue þe burdes · brouȝt him to hire chau*m*ber,
& vn-armed him anon · & after-ward him cloþed
as komly as any kniȝt · vnder *crist* þort bene.
seþen ȝede to sitte same · to solas & to pleie
at a wid windowe · þat was in þe chau*m*ber,
& gonne mekli to mene · of many gode wordes.
& as þei saddest in here solas · seten þat time,
þe quen hertli gan bi-hold · þe kene ȝonge kniȝt,
& here þouȝt þat time · þat i*n* þe world was neue*r*
a liuande lud · so lelli liche oþer,
as þat komli kniȝt · to þe king ebrou*n*s,
þat was lord whil he liued · & þat lor[d]chipe welte.
& swiche a sorwe to hire sone · sank to herte,
þat wiȝtli gan sche wepe · wonderly sore.
whan will*ia*m saw hire wepe · wroþli he seide,
" for seynt mary loue, madame · whi make ȝe þis sorwe?
ȝe schuld now make ȝow merie · ȝour mene to glade,
þat feynt ar for-fouten · i*n* feld & for-wou*n*ded.

William takes the king of Spain's son to the queen's palace, [Fol. 58 *b.*]

and delivers him over to the queen.

The queen thanks William heartily.

The ladies unarm and clothe him.

As they sit together in a window,

the queen sees how very like

William is to king Ebroums,

and she begins to weep.

William says she ought rather to rejoice,

since her enemies are beaten.

to sum*m*e schuld ȝe ȝif now · ȝiftes ful gode,[1]
[Fol. 59.] & to sum*m*e by-hote · þe bliþer hem to make.
Mater now haue ȝe · moche mirie to bene;
ȝe han now on in hold · þurth him haue ȝe schulle
wel ȝour worchep a-ȝein · as ȝe walt euer."

The queen excuses herself,

"Forsoþe, sire," sede þe quen · "ȝe seyn al þe treuþe;
ȝe make me mater i-now · mirye to bene.
I wot for i so wept · i wrouȝt nouȝt þe best,
but i miȝt nouȝt þer-with · i-wisse, sire, & treuþe,
so þroli a sori þouȝt · þirled min hert,"—

telling him the reason of her sorrow,

& soþli whi it was · þe encheson him seide,
how hire þouȝt he was liche · hire lord þe king þanne,
& hou þe sorwe of hire sone · dede hire so to wepe.
þan sede will*i*am wiȝtli · þese wordes to hire-selue,

William tells her to think no more of it, since both her husband and son are dead,

"Madame, of þat mater · no more now þinkes;
what be ȝe now þe beter · so bitterli to wepe,
seþþe boþe þi sire & þi sone · arn boþe dede?
þeiȝh ȝe driȝen swiche duel · al ȝour lif dawes,

and will never come to life again.

ȝe gete hem neu*er* a-gayn · late god haue þe saules,
& make ȝour-self mirie · ȝour mene forto glade."
þan wax þe quen ful wo · wittow for soþe,
þat will*i*am sede þat hire sone · schuld be dede,

Still the queen's heart tells her he is her son.

for hire hert bar hire eu*er* · þat he hire sone schuld bene,
bi knowing of alle kontenau*n*ce · þat þe king welt.
but of þat mat*er* no more · minged þei þat time,
ac turned in-to oþer tales · þat touched to mirth.
& waitende[2] out at þe window · as þei in tales were,

Looking out, they see the werwolf, who kneels and bows, and goes his way.

þan þei seie þe werwolf · was com hem bi-fore,
Kortesliche kneling · as he in wise couþe,
& louted to þe ladies · & to þe lord alse,
buxu*m*li as any best · bi any resoun schuld,
& seþþen went his wei · whider him god liked.
þe quen wiȝtli to will*i*am · þese wordes sede,

[1] Catchword, "& to sum*m*e by."
[2] MS. "waidende." Read "waitende."—M.

"sire, a selcouþ siȝt it is · of þis semli best ;
Loo, how loueli it a-louted · lowe to vs twiȝes,
It bi-tokenes sum-what treuli · god turne it to gode !"
"ȝa, i-wisse," seide william · "wene ȝe non oþer,
for þat blessed best · neuer boded but gode.
he þat heried helle · fram harm him saue !"
"amen," seiden alle · þat þere with him seten.
þus driue þei forþ þe day · with diuerse mirthe,
& treuli whan it was time · turned to mete,
& serued were of serues · as hem-self liked ;
but speke we of þe spaynols · what hem tidde after.

The queen hopes it is a good omen.

[Fol. 59 b.]

William says it is sure to bode good.

They go to meat.

Sone as þe kinges sone · was to þe cite take,
þat his miȝti men · miȝt no more him help,
þer was a selcouþ sorwe · a-mang þe segges maked,
& karfulli to þe king · þei kayred a-ȝayne,
& told him holli here tene · how his sone was take,
& how here segges were slayn · a selcouþ noumber.
whan þe king wist · as man wod he ferde,
& wroþli to his wiȝes · þat þere were he seide,
"whi suffred ȝe my sone · so sone to be take ?
ȝe schul hastli be honged · & with hors-to-drawe !"
& deraiȝed him for þat dede · as alle deie schulde.
but kniȝtes of his cunseil · com til him sone,
& saide him soburli · so miȝt he nouȝt worche,
for a kniȝt him conquerede · al with clene strengþe,
& hade him out of þe ost · mawgrey hem alle.
"o kniȝt," quaþ þe king · "what kemp is þat ilke,
þat wan so on my sone · is he so douȝti ?"
"ȝe forsoþe," seid on · "sire, with ȝour leue,
þer mai no man vpon mold · aȝens þat man stond.
he driueþ to dethe · who-so his dent cacchеþ,
his douȝti dedes vs doþ · more duresse þan alle oþer ;
he it is þat þe werwolf · weldes in his scheld."
"I mak a vow," quod þe king · "to crist þat al weldes,
er i ete more mete · his miȝt wol i a-saie ;

Great is the sorrow of the Spaniards because their king's son is taken.

The king is very angry, and asks how they dared permit it,

threatening to hang them.

But his lords said it was owing to a certain knight's prowess.

"What? one knight's?" said the king.

"Yes," they reply, "the one with the werwolf on his shield."

The king vows he will prove his mettle ere he eats meat.

& ȝif any egge tol wol entre · in-to his bodi,
[Fol. 60.] I wol do him to þe deth · and more despit ouere ;
"He shall be hanged before the city-gate, and the city shall be burnt."
he schal heiȝe be honged · riȝt bi-fore hire ȝate,
þat alle þe segges of þe cite · schulle him bi-hold,
& seþþen wol i þat cite · setten al on fure,
& do bruten alle þe burnes · þat be now þer-inne ;
schal no gom vnder god · oþer gate it make."
þan komaunded þe king · to do krie as swiþe,
His men are to be ready on the morrow.
þat alle his rinkes schuld be redi · riȝt erli on morwe,
armed at alle poyntes · as þei no wold be spilt,
& hasteli was his hest · þan hendli fulfilled.

Ful manlich on þe morwe · were his men greiþed,
of bold mennis bodiesse · a ful breme ost.
The Spaniards are armed, and come down to the plain.
Gailier greiþed · were neuer gomes seie,
of alle maner armure · þat to werre longed.
þan passed þe spaynols · in-to a faire plaine,
þer as þe breme bataile · was on þe day bi-fore.
They find there 500 bodies of their comrades.
þere þan founde þei fele · of here frendes slayne,
Mo þan fiue hundred · of nobul frekes holde.
þe king þan for þat kas · was karful in hert,
& moche sorwe was sone · for þat siȝt maked.
The bodies are borne away to the tents, to be buried later.
but þan bad þe king bliue · þe bodies take
of alle þe gomes of gode · & greiþli hem bere
til þe tentis, til þei miȝt haue · tom hem to berie ;
& deliuerli in dede · was don al his hest.
The king sets his men in three battalions,
þe king þan treuli · in þre batayles sturne
faire dede sette his folk · fast as he miȝt,
In as real aray · as rink schold deuise.
of 2000 men each.
þer were in eche bataile · of burnes tvo þousand,
armed at alle pointes · and auenantli horsed,
In eche eschel stifli set · þer þei stonde schold.
now of william & his wiȝes · a-non wol i telle.

William and his men issue out of the city,
William & his wiȝes · were armed wel sone,
as semli to siȝt · as any segges þurte,

& softli Iced out of þe cite · whan þei seie time.
willi*a*m went al bi-fore · as wis man & nobul, [Fol. 60 *b*.]
& ordeyned anon his ost · in þre grete p*ar*ties, ordering his men in three companies, of 700 each.
& sett of[1] bolde burnes · i*n* eche bataile seuene hundred,
of clene kniȝtes armed · & oþer kete burnes,
& spak spakli þese wordes · þe spaynols whan he seie :—
" Lo, lordinges," sede willi*a*m · " wich a loueli siȝt He addresses them, saying,
here bi-fore vs of our fon · of ferche men & bold ! " See what a lovely sight of our foes is here!
þer is holli al here ost · now beth of hertes gode,
& we schul wel þis day · þis werre bring to ende We shall end the war to-day.
onliche ȝourh[2] godes grace · & ȝour gode dede.
þouȝh *þer* be mani mo þan ȝe · dismaie ȝe nouȝt *þer*fore,
God wol vs ay rescue · & with þe riȝt stonde ; God will defend the right.
Go we to hem on godes name · with a god wille.
& i mow come bi þe king · bi cr*i*st, as ich hope,
he schal sone *þer*-after · to his sone wende, I will imprison the king with his son.
to soiorne in þe cite · þat he haþ seged ȝore.
þer-for, frendes & felawes · for him þat ȝou bouȝt,
doþ ȝour dede to-day · as douȝti men schulle, Do doughty deeds to-day."
& gret worchipe schul ȝe winne · whil þis world lasteþ."
In þis wise willi*a*m · his wiȝes þan cu*m*forted,
þat þei hent swiche herte · as hardi men schuld.
þan aswiþe þei sembled · [ei*þer* ost][3] to-gader,
& alle maner menstracie · maked was sone Tabours and trumps are sounded.
of tabours & trumpes · no*n* miȝt þe nu*m*ber telle.
& ei*þer* ost as swiþe · fast ascried oþer,
& a-sembleden swiþe sternli · ei*þer* ost to-gader, The hosts encounter.
Gretand oþ*er* gr*i*mli · with scharpe grou*n*de speres.
Mani a bold burn · was sone brouȝt of dawe,
& many a stef stede · stiked þere to dethe, Numberless men and horses are slain.
no man vpo*n* mold · miȝt ayme þe nu*m*ber
of wiȝes þat in a while · were slayn on boþe side.
but willi*a*m as a wod ma*n* · was eue*r* here & þere, William is here and there.
& leide on swiche liuere · leue me forsoþe,

[1] MS. " ob."
[2] *Sic.* Read " þurh ;" see note.
[3] See l. 3815.

þat his daies were don · þat of him hent a dent.
[Fol. 61.] At first, William's men give way. þe king of spaine & his kniȝtes · so kenli hem bere,
& so fresli gon fiȝte · þat at þe first a-saute,
þat fele of willi*a*ms frekes · gon to fle ȝerne.
He rallies them, and they fight better than ever. whan willi*a*m was war · wiȝtli he hem a-schriȝed,
& cu*m*fort hem craftli · with his kinde speche,
þat þei tit aȝen turned · to telle þe soþe,
& bere he*m* wel beter · þen þei bi-fore hade.

The king asks, "Where is he that bears the wolf on his shield? þe king of spayne gan crie · keneli & schille,
"war be he þat þe wolf · weldes in his scheld,
þat haþ murþered mi men · & swiche harm wrouȝt?
Miȝt i now haue hap · him ones to sene,
I will hunt him as a hound hunts a werwolf. I wold him hunte as hard · as eu*er* houñde i*n* erthe
honted eny werwolf · but wel he his ware
þat i so many hondes · haue on him vn-coupled,
þat he for alle his douȝti dedes · dar him nouȝt schewe.
Whoever brings him to me shall be my chief steward." but what man vpo*n* molde · so may him me bring,
I schal riuedli him rewarde · to be riche for eu*er*,
& mak him my chef stiward · to stiȝtli alle my godes."
The son of the constable of Spain, þan was þ*er* a kud kniȝt · þe cu*n*stables sone of spayne,
come wel þre daies bi-fore · þe king for to help.
an .c. kene kniȝttes · in cu*m*panie he brouȝt,
& him-self a bold burn · þe best of hem alle,
named Meliadus, & meliadus of miȝti men · þe kniȝt was called.
whan he þe kinges cry · clenli hadde herde,
bursts into the thick of the fight, as bliue with his burnes · he braide in-to p*re*se,
& demened him douȝtili · with dentes ful[1] rude.
slaying six lords, and wounding a seventh. he slow of þe citeȝens · in a schort while,
six grete lordes · and þe seuenþe nere.
William encounters him. whan willi*a*m was war · of his douȝti dedes,
deliu*er*ly as a douȝti man · he drow to him euen,
Grimli eiþ*er* oþer gret · whan þei gonne mete,
Their spears fly into splinters, and they swing their swords. so spakli here speres · al on speldes went.
& swiftli seþþe with swerdes · swonge þei to-gider,

[1] Over *ful* (?) erased, *full* is written in a later hand.

þat many were a-meruailed · of here douȝti dedes.
& þis miȝti meliadus · in þat meling while [Fol. 61 b.]
a sturne strok set willi*a*m · on his stelen helm, Meliadus wounds William in the head.
& wounded him wickedli · wittow forsoþe. 3860
whan þis bold willi*a*m · saw his blod so breme, William, seeing his own blood,
liȝt as a lyou*n* · he leide on al a-boute, fights like a lion,
& marked þat meliadus · with mayn swiche a dint,
þat þurth þe helm & þe hed · hastili to þe gurdel 3864 and cleaves Meliadus through helm and head to the girdle.
his brond his bodi to-cleued · for alle his briȝt armes ;
& he tit ou*er* his hors tayl · tombled ded to þerþe.
þer-of willi*a*ms wiȝes · were wonderli gladde,
& as sori in þe oþer side · þe segges were of spaine, The Spaniards are disheartened,
for *in* þat meliadus miȝt · was here most hope, 3869
to haue *con*quered willi*a*m · wiþ clene strengþe of armes.
but whan þei seie him ded · sone gun þei turne, and turn to flight,
and to flen as fast · as þei faire miȝt. 3872
but willi*a*m & his wiȝes · so wrouȝten þat time, very hotly pursued.
no rink þei miȝt of-reche · recuuered neu*er* after,
ne no man vp*on* mold · miȝt ayme þe nu*m*ber
of þe freliche folk · þat in þe feld lay slayn. 3876

Whan þis tale was told · to þe king of spayne, The king, hearing that Meliadus is slain,
how þe miȝti meliadus · for alle me*n* was slawe,
& bi-held how his burnes · bi-gonne to flene,
& how willi*a*m & his wiȝes · wiȝtli he*m* folwed, 3880
& duelfulli driue*n* dou*n* · to dethe þat þei of-toke,
also swiþe for sorwe · he swonede for fere. swoons for fear,
& whan he wiȝtli a-wok · wodli he ferde,[1]
al to-tare his a-tir · þat he to-tere miȝt, 3884 and, recovering, tears his attire,
& seide after anon · "alas! what to rede!
I se al mi folk fle · for [þat] frekes dedes ;
was neu*er* ma*n* vp*on* mold · þat swiche miȝt walt ;
It is su*m* deuel degised · þat doþ al þis harm." 3888 thinking William must be a devil.
bi þat saw he willi*a*m · winne him ful nere,
& slouȝ dou*n* in his siȝt · his segges al a-boute, Seeing William come, he flees.

[1] MS. "forde." Read "ferde."—M.

& saw it geyned no griþ · to go him no nere;
[Fol. 62.] as bliue with his baner · he gan awei fiene. 3892
whan will*iam* was war · howe he a-wei went,
William pursues him, and bids him yield. prestili de-parted he þat pres · & pr*i*ked him after,
& ful titli him of-tok · & stoutli him aschried,
bad him ȝepli him ȝeld · or ȝerne he schul deie. 3896
whan þe [king][1] saw him com · he sede to his kniȝtes,
The king rallies his men, and makes a stand. "defende we vs douȝtili · or we deiȝen sone;
þer goþ no*n* oþer griþ · it geineþ nouȝt to fiene.
& more mensk it is · manliche to deie, 3900
þan for to fle couwar[d]li[2] · for ouȝt þat mai falle."
"certes, sire, þat [is][3] soþ" · seide his men alle,
"*þer*-fore now in-dede · do we what we mowe."
þan turned þei titli aȝen · & trustili gon fiȝt, 3904
a[s][4] fersli as þei nade · fouȝt nouȝt bi-fore.
William and his men soon slay 100 of them, and take 10 score of the "tidiest." but will*iam* & his wiȝes · were so breme,
& so sturnli in þat stour · stered hem þat time,
þat þei hade in a while · a hundred i-slayne, 3908
& taken of þe tidiest · mo þan ten schore.
The king, seeing all is hopeless, again flees. þe king saw his segges · were slawe him bi-fore,
& no*n* miȝt þe werwolf · *con*quere in no wise,
& whas duelfulli a-drad · lest he deie schuld, 3912
& gan to fle fr*a*m þe ost · as hard as he miȝt;
& hise men þat miȝt · manli gon to flene.
William catches him up, and again bids him yield. but will*iam* perceyued · what pas þe king went,
& hastili hiȝed after · & him of-toke, 3916
& keneli to him kried · "sire king, ȝeld þe swiþe,
oþer þi deth is i-diȝt · deliuerli riȝt here.
He must make amends. Meke to make a-mendis · for al þi mis-gilt
þatow hast reised in þis reaume · & riȝt long meyntened,
& al wrongli wrouȝt · as wot al þis reaume." 3921

[1] Read "whan the *king* saw him com."—M.
[2] The spelling *couwardli* occurs in l. 3336.
[3] Read "that *is* soth."—M.
[4] MS. "a." Read "*as* fersli."—M.

Þo he seie no better · bote nede he most him ȝeld,
or al swiþe be slayn · þan sone he a-liȝt,
& wiȝtli to william · his wepun vp to-ȝelde,
& forto wirche his wille · & wilned his mercy.
& william, as kinde kniȝt · as kortesie it wold,
Godli graunted him griþ · & grucched no more,
but seide he schuld him meke · in merci to þe quene,
& profer him to prison · prestli at hire wille.
& gaf him to alle hire grace · & with-sede no worde.
as tit as þe king was take · to telle þe soþe,
eche a seg of his side · sone gan with-drawe,
& faynest was eche a freke · þat fastest miȝt hiȝe;
& þus was þat ferli fiȝt · finched þat time.
william went to þe cite · with his wiȝes bolde,
& þe king of spayne · in companye he ladde,
with alle þe murþe vpon mold · þat men miȝt of here;
& passeden to þe paleise · prestili alle same[n].
þe quen with hire companie · com him a-ȝens,
& resseyued as reali · as swiche rinkes ouȝt,
& þe king ȝepli dede · ȝelde him to hire prison,
to wirche with him as sche wold · at hire oune wille;
& treuli astit after him · tvo hundered & seuen,
þe realest rinkes of þe reaume · dede riȝt þat ilke.
þe quene to william · wiȝtli wold haue kneled,
bliþe sche was þat bataile · was brouȝt to a nende,
& þonked william þer-for · mani a þousan siþe,
but william hent [hire][1] vp · & harde hire blamed,
& sede, "madame, ȝe misdon · bi marie in heuen,
þat arn an emperours [douȝter][2] · & a quen ȝour-selue,
to swiche a simpul sowdiour · as icham, forto knele;
ȝe don a gret deshonour · wiþ þat to ȝou-selue."
"nai, sire," sede þe quen · "so me crist help!
I sette ȝou for no soudiour · but for souerayn lord,
to lede al þis lorldschip · as ȝou likes euer;

The king yields his weapon,

[Fol. 62 b.]

and William says he must submit to the queen.

The king being taken, the Spaniards retire in haste.

William brings the king to the queen's palace.

The queen receives him.

The king and 207 of his knights submit themselves.

The queen would have kneeled to thank William,

but he catches her up, saying an emperor's daughter must not kneel to a simple soldier.

She says he is not a soldier, but sovereign lord,

[1] Read "hent *hire* vp."—M.
[2] Read "emperours *douzter* and a quen."—M.

& blessed be þat burde · þat bar þe in þis erþe. 3956
since, but for him, she would have been bare of all bliss. for nade þe grace of god be · & þi gode dedes,
of blisse i hade be al bare · bi þis ilk time.
þer i balfulli here-bi-fore · was brout al bi-neþe,
[Fol. 63.] þou hast me brouȝt of bale · & bet al myn harmes ;
þer-for in al wise ȝour worschipe· is wel þe more." 3961

Now to touche of þis tale · what tidde after.
All go to hall. alle þe lordes a-non · vn-armed hem sone,
& with þe worþi quen · went in-to halle, 3964
Melior and the princess lead the king of Spain between them. & þe menskful meliors · & þe quenes douȝt*er*.
curtesli þe king of spayne · bi-twene hem þei ladde,
& here meke maydenes · merili þat time
ladden þe oþer lordes · loueli hem bi-twene, 3968
& alle samen semeli · þei seten in þe halle.
The queen sets the king on one side of her, and William on the other. þe quen set þe king · curtesli bi here side,
& wil*l*i*a*m on þat oþer half · & with him his suster,
& þe menskful meliors · þat made moche ioie 3972
for þe loueli loos · þat here lemman wanne ;
The lords and burgesses, and the peers of Spain, all sit down together. & alle þe lordes of þat lond · in þe halle that were,
& þe best burgeys · & oþer burnes fele,
& þe pers of spayne · þat were to prison take. 3976
þe king bi-souȝt þe quene · ȝif it were hire wille,
The king asks to see his son. þat he most se his sone · to solace him þe more,
& sche ful godli g*ra*nted · & gart him do fecche.
& soþli, as sone as he com · þe king seide him tille, 3980
He tells his son they are in the wrong, " lo ! sone ! wich sorwe · we haue vs selue wrouȝt,
þurh oure hautene hertes · a gret harm we gete,
to willne swiche willenyng · þat wol nouȝt a-sente.
It is a botles bale · bi god þat me fourmed, 3984
and it is of no use to pursue a wayward woman. t[o] willne after a wif · þat is a waywarde euere."
þan seide his sone · " forsoþe, sire, ȝe knowe,
The prince says it is true enough, and they must now take the consequences. þat we haue wrongli wrouȝt · nowe is it wel sene ;
we mot holde[1] to oure harmes · it helpes nouȝt elles,
but giue vs geynli in þe grace · of þis gode lady, 3989

[1] MS. "holdes." Read "holde."—M.

& late hire worche with vs · as hire god likes."
þe king for his sones sawe · sore gan sike, — The king is grieved, and
to þat comli quen · ful curtesli þus seide, 3992 sighs,
"Madame, for mari loue · þe milde quen of heuene,
Graun*t* me of ȝour grace · ȝif ȝou god þink, — [Fol. 63 b.]
ȝif ȝoure konyng cu*n*sayl · a-corde wol þ*er* tille. — and begs the queen to allow
let me make a-mendis · for al my mis-gelt, 3996 him to make amends,
þat i so wrongli haue werred · & wasted ȝour londes.
as moche as any man · mow ordeyne bi riȝt, — promising to
I am redi to restore · & redeli, more-ouer, restore what is right,
al þe worchep þat i weld · i wol of ȝou hold, 4000 and to hold his
al þe londes & ledes · þat long to my reaume ; lands of her,
so dede i neu*er* til þis dai · but of god one.
& but ȝour cu*n*seil, madame · a-corde wol þer-tille,
wisses me at ȝour owne wille · how ȝe wol me binde, — or offering to be
& lelli i wol as ȝou likes · ȝoure lore fulfille ; 4005 bound in any way she liked.
ferþer forþ mai [i][1] nouȝt p*ro*fer · for nouȝt þat bi-tides."

þe quen & here *con*sail · þer-of were a-paiȝed,
þat he so him p*ro*fered · to parfourme hire wille, — The queen and her counsel take it all into consideration.
& gonne to mele of þat mater · how it best miȝt bene.
& as þei were talking · to trete of þat dede,
so hiȝed in-to þe halle · riȝt to þe heiȝe dese,
þat ilk witti werwolf · þat will*iam* hade holpe, 4012 The werwolf enters the hall, goes up to the king of Spain, and kisses his feet;
& boldli, for alle þe burns · as him nouȝt nere,
spacli to þe king of spaine · he spedde him on gate,
& fel doun to his fet · & faire hem he keste,
& worchiped him in his wise · wonderli with-alle. 4016
& seþþe sone after · he saluede þe quene, — next he salutes the queen, and the rest, and goes his way.
& after here, will*iam* · and his worþi make,
þe quenes douȝt*er* afterward · & dede him on gate
out hastili at þe halle dore · as fast as he miȝt, 4020
& went forþ on his wei · whider him god liked.
but sone sauage men · þat seten i*n* þe halle — Savage men who were there caught up weapons,
henten hastili in honde · what þei haue miȝt,

[1] Read "mai *i*."—M.

sum*m*e axes, sum*m*e swerdes · some speres long,
to wende him after · wi3tli to quelle.
but wan will*ia*m þat wist · wodli he ferde,
& swor swiftli his [oþe][1] · bi al þat god wrou3t,
3if any burn were so bold · þat best forto greue,
were he kni3t oþer clerk · knaue oþer kempe,
he wold deliue*r*li him-self · do him to þe dethe,
þat no man vpo*n* mold · schuld oþer amendes 3elde.
þ*er* nas hastili in þat halle · non so hardi burn,
þat durst folwe þat best · o fote for drede,
so þei were of will*ia*m · wonderli a-dredde.
but whi þe werwolf so wrou3t · wondred þei alle,
& whi more with[2] þe king · þan with any oþer.
& þe king more wondred · þan any whi3t elles,
& strek in-to a studie · stifliche þer-fore,
what it bi-tokeneþ þat þe best · bowed so him tille,
& wrou3t to him more worchipe · þan to any wi3t elles.
In þat mene while þan · in his minde it com,
& þou3t on a semli sone · þat su*m* time he hadde,
& how him treuli hadde be told · to-fore a long time,
þat his wif with wichecraft · to a wolf him schaped.
but sche of þat sclaunder · excused hire al-gate,
& seide þe child was in þe see · sunkun ful 3ore.
þe king i*n* þat carful þou3t · was cu*m*bred ful long.
but will*ia*m wi3tli · as þe wolf was schaped,
he dede kni3tes to comau*n*de · to do crie in þe cite,
þat no burn nere so bold · as he nold be honged,
to waite þe werwolf · no maner schaþe,
but late him late & erli · where him liked wende;
þat hest was wel hold · non so hardi was elles.

Karþe we [now][3] how þe king · was kast in gret þou3t;
he dared as doted man · for þe bestes dedes,
& was so styf in a studie · þat no*n* him stint mi3t.

but William swears that if any one dares hurt the werwolf, [Fol. 64.]

he will kill him with his own hands.

Yet all wondered what it meant, especially the king.

The king remembers about the son he once had,

who had been drowned, according to his second wife's account.

William proclaims that no one is to hurt the werwolf.

The king is in great thought and study.

[1] Read "his *othe* bi al."—M.

[2] MS. "wiht."

[3] Perhaps it should be, "Karpe we *now* how the king."—M.

whan william was war · he went to him sone,
seide, "king, i þe *con*iure · in *cr*istes holi name,
& bi alle þe kud customes · to kinghod þat longes,
þattow telle me tit · treuli þat soþe,
ȝif þou knowest bi what cas · in any-skines [1] wise,
whi þis buxu*m* best · bowed to þe more
þan to alle þe wiȝes · þat were in þe halle?
It mai be in no maner · me þinkes, bi þouȝtes,
þattow wost in su*m* wise · what it bi-tokeneþ.
þerfor tel me tit · treuli whatow þoutes,
oþer i make a vow · to þe miȝti king of heuen,
þou passest nouȝt of *pr*ison · puniched at þe hardest.
þan siked þe king sore · & seide þese wordes,
"sire, for drede of duresse · nor of deth in erþe,
nel i wonde in no wise · what i þouȝt to seie.
sire, su*m* time here-bi-for · in my ȝong age,
I wedded with al wele · a worschipful lady,
þat burde was of beuaute · briȝtest in erþe,
& greter of alle godnesse · þan any gome mai telle.
þe kinges douȝter of nauerne · was þat gode burde,
& in þat seson gete we · samen to-gedere,
on þe fairest freke · þat euer seg on loked.
but mi wif, as god wold · & as we schul alle,
deied at þe deliueraun*ce* · of mi dere sone.
& i fostered þat child · faire to þre winter,
with alle clene keping · as it ouȝt to bene.
bi þat time was þat barn · ful breme of his age,
& semliest on to se · þat men schuld finde;
alphou*n*s his gode godfaderes · dede him þan calle
at kyrke for his kinde name · to kiþe þe soþe.
þan bitid þat time · i toke a-noþer wif,
a ful loueli lady · lettered at þe best,
corteys & couenabul · & lettered at þe best,[2]
& come*n* was of gret kin · & koynt hire-selue.
þurth grace gat i on hire · as god almiȝti wold,

William conjures him to tell him

[Fol. 64 *b*.] why the beast bowed to him in particular?

"Tell me, or thou shalt never come out of prison."

The king sighs, and tells his story.

"I once wedded a fair and good lady,

daughter of the king of Navarre.

We had a very fair son; but my wife died.

I fostered it till it was three years old.

His name was Alphonse.

I married again to a lady who was lovely, and who could read well.

[1] See note.

[2] This half line is repeated from above.

Our son was the prince who is here now.

a sone as ȝe mow se · be-for ȝou selue here,
wich ȝe han put in prison · & punished at ȝour wille.
þis child was ceput[1] clenli · as it wel ouȝt,
& it wax fetis & fair · & ful mochel loued.

[Fol. 65.] My wife feared that the elder son would succeed me as heir,

but þan my wif wickedli · on þise wise þouȝt,
þat myn elder son · min eritage schul haue,
& kepe þe kingdom after me · as kinde skil it wold;
& striued stifli with hire-self · as stepmoderes wol alle,

and considered how to get rid of him.

bi what wise sche miȝt best · þat bold barn spille,
to do so þat here sone · after mi dessece,
Miȝte reioische þat reaume · as riȝt eir bi kinde.
& as me haþ be told · of trewe men of my reaume,

She changed him by enchantments into a werwolf,

with charmes & enchantmens · sche chaunded[2] my sone
In-to a wilde werwolf; · & wel now ich it leue,
þat þis buxum best · be þat ilk selue
þat my wif with hire wiles · euer dede me leue,
(whan i hire touched swiche tales · as me told were),
þat it was fanteme & fals · & for hate saide;

but she swore to me that he had been drowned.

& swor grimli gret oþes · bi al þat god wrouȝt,
þat mi semli sone · was in þe see sonken,
as he passed out to pleie · priueli him one.

I believed her, but I now think this werwolf is my son.

I leued hire þan lelly · & lett it ouer-pase,
but now witerli i wot · þis werwolf is my sone,
þa secheþ after socour · it semeþ bi hise dedus.

This is truly what I mused about."

sire, soþli to seie · þis was my grete þout,
for þe werwolf werkes · so me wel time,
& ȝif i wrong seie any word · wo worþ me euer."

William says it seems to be the truth,

William[3] þan ful wittili · þese wordes saide,
"sire, it may riȝt wel be þus · be marie in heuene!
þat þe best secheþ socour · it semeþ att best.

for the werwolf has a man's mind.

for wel i wot witerli · & wel i haue it founde,
þat he has mannes munde · more þan we boþe.

[1] *Sic*; another spelling of "kepud."
[2] Read "chaunged" (?) Cf. l. 4506.
[3] The MS. has a large M instead of W.

for many [a day][1] hade i be ded · & to dust roted,
nadde it be goddes grace · & help of þat best;
he haþ me socoured & serued · in ful gret nede.
for-þi in feiþ, for al þe world · him nold i faile,
þat i schal loue him lelli · as my lege broþer;
&, sire, bliþe ouȝt ȝe [be][2] · bi him þat vs wrouȝt!
þat he þus happili is here · þat haþ so lang be missed.
& ȝif he miȝt in maner · be maked man aȝeine,
of al þe welþe of þe world · wilned i no more.
& sertenli, as it semeþ · to seie þe truþe,
ȝif þi wif of wicchecraft · be witti as þou seidest,
þat sche him wrouȝt a werwolf · riȝt wel i hope,
sche can with hire connyng · & hire queynt charmes,
Make him to man a-ȝen · it may be non oþer.
& þerfore, sire, bi crist · þat on croyce vs bouȝt,
þou ne passest neuer of prison · ne non of [þi][3] puple,
with-oute deliueraunce · of þat derworþe best;
for made a-ȝen to man · mot he nede bene.
sende wittili to þi wif · & warne hire fore,
þat sche tit come þe to · for þat may falle after,
þat sche ne lette for no lud · þat liueþ in erþe.
& ȝif sche nickes wiþ nay · & nel nouȝt com sone,
sende hire saddli to sai · þat sone with min ost,
I wol þat reaume ouer-ride · & rediliche destrue,
& fecche hire with fin forse · for ouȝt þat bi-tides.
for til sche with hire craft · þe werwolf haue holpe,
alle þe men vpon molde · ne [mai] make ȝou deliuered."[4]

"He has often helped me.

You ought to be blithe to find him again.
[Fol. 65 b.]

If your wife is so witty in witchcraft,

she can make him a man again.

Wherefore, you shall never be released till he is made a man.

Send and tell her to come here.

If she will not, say I will fetch her forcibly."

"Bi crist," sede þe king · "þat on croyce was peyned,
þat þe quen be of-sent · sauf wol i fouche.
ȝif sche miȝt in any maner · make a-ȝen mi sone
to be a man as he was arst · wel were me þanne.
but serteynli i not · wham i sende miȝt,
to make þe massager · myn erande wel to spede,

"She shall be sent for.

But I have no one to send but some of my lords,

[1] Read "many *a day* hade i be ded."—M.
[2] Read "ouzt ze *be* bi him."—M.
[3] Read "of *thi* puple."—M.
[4] *mai* seems required.

but ȝe wold suffer · sum*m*e of þise lordes,
þat ben lederes of my lond · & lele men holde.
if you will give them leave." ȝif ȝou likes, ȝiue hem leue · & hete he*m* þider wende,
I hope þei schul hastlier · þan any oþer spede." 4160
"I grant it; bid them bring the queen." " þat i wol," seide will*i*am · " ches wich þe likes,
& hote he*m* hiȝe hastili · harde as þei mowe,
& bring þe quen · for cas þat mai falle."
[Fol. 66.] ful spacli þe king of spayne · to spede þo nedes, 4164
The king chooses 50 lords, as fast ches him fifty · of ful grete lordes,
þat tidi men were told · & trewest of his reaume,
giving them a letter and a message, saying, & tid bi-tok he*m* þe letteres · þat told al here erand,
& het he*m* munge bi mouþe · more, & þei couþe, 4168
whan þei come to þe quen · of þe cas bi-falle—
" & seiþ hire þus sadli · sires, i ȝou praye,
for what cas sche mot com · or bi *crist* of heuene,
sche get neuer gladnesse · of me, ne of mi sone. 4172
"Tell her my son is found, & seie hire soþli · þis selue encheson,
for hire mi sone is founde · þat sche for ȝore saide
was sonk i*n* þe see · so dede sche me to leue;
in the shape of a werwolf. but as a wilde werwolf · he walkeþ here a-boute; 4176
& how he souȝt after socour · ȝe saw wel alle.
þe*r*-fore treuli as it tid · telle here to þe hende,
Bid her bring charms to disenchant him." & bidde hire bliue with hire bring · þat mai be is bote,
to make him man aȝen · miȝti as he was ere, 4180
oþer al þat lond worþ lore · & our liues alse,
þer goþ non aȝen-turn · ȝe mow hire treuli seie."
þe menskful messangeres · mekeli þan seide, 4183
" we wol worche ȝour wille · as wel as we kunne."

Next day the messengers set out Manli on þe morwe · þe messageres were ȝare,
greiþed of alle gere · gaily atte þe best,
of horse & harneys · & what þei hade nede,
& went forþ on here way · wiȝtli & fast; 4188
Eue*r* þe geynest gatis · to goo to þe soþe,
and went to Spain. Eue*r* spacli þei hem spedde · til spayne þat þei come,
& come to a cite · þere soiourned þe quene.

tid was hire told · tiding of here come,
& sche gamsum & glad · goþ hem a-ȝens,
with loueliche ladies · þat longed to hire chaumbur,
& oþer menskful maidenes · mo þan foure schore.
& mekli whan þei were met · þe messageres þei greten
with cliping & kessing · kindeli to-gadere.
but sone þat comli quen · wel curtesli asked,
" how fares mi lord þe king · for cristes loue in heuen,
& mi semli sone · seþþe þei out went?
han þei wonne at here wille · þat þei went fore?
what dos mi lord wiþ þat lady · & here loueli douȝter?
wol sche ȝit my sone hire wedde · & to wif haue?"
" Madame," saide þe messanger · most worþi of alle,
" oþer-wise þan ȝe wene · is al þe werk turned,
It helpes nouȝt for to hele · nouȝ herkenes mi sawe.
siþþe þe king of heuen · on croys for vs deide,
worse fel it neuer to wiȝes · þan it haþ a while.
for alle þe real rinkes · of þis reaume be slayne,
& doluen depe vnder mold · mani day seþþe.
þe stoute stiward of þis lond · & his strong neuew,
& þe cunstabul sone · þat kud kniȝt was proued,
& out of number nobul men · to nempne þe soþe.
Mi lord þe king was þer cauȝt · in a kene stoure,
& ȝour sone also · and are prisons boþe,
& we alle, madame · & many mo of oþer
of þe lordes of þis lond · þat ȝut a-liue bene,
& neuer-more for no man · mowe be deliuered,
ne pult out [of][1] prison · but purli þourh ȝour help.
& þeiȝh we hade þe quen · þurth queintyse & strengþe
brouȝt ferst at swiche bale · with so breme a-sawtes,
wasted hire londes · & wonne hire townes,
& pult al pertly to our wille · but palerne alone;
sertes, þei were a-seged · so þat atte laste
Many times in þis maner · mercy sche craued,
þat sche most wende a-wai · with hire douȝter one,

She comes out to meet them,

[Fol. 66 b.]
and asks after her lord and her son.

Is he to wed the princess?

"Madame, affairs are quite changed.

Our best men are slain and buried —the steward and his nephew,

the constable's son, and numberless noblemen.

The king, the prince, and all we lords, are prisoners.

We conquered all the queen's lands except Palermo.

The queen asked to have leave to depart where she pleased.

[1] Read "out *of* prison."—M.

boute daunger or duresse · or any despit elles,
& late mi lord haue þat lond · at liking for euer ; 4228
The king refused. ac my lord in no wise · wold þer-to graunte,
& þat haþ vs hard harmed · for hastili þer-after
þer kom a kniȝt hire to help · þe kuddest of þe worlde,
[Fol. 67.] & most miȝthi in armes · þat euer man of herde. 4232
Then came a mighty knight to help her, who conquered the king and the prince. he slow of oure segges · soþli alle þe best,
& conquered with clene miȝt · þe king & his sone,
& lelly many oþer lordes · þat ȝit a-liue are.
& whan þei were in prison · pult at hire wille, 4236
Next, a werwolf came and saluted the king, and seemed to crave help. þer wan in a werwolf · a wonderli huge ;
with a komli kuntenaunce · to þe king he went,
& fel doun to his fete · & faire he hem kessede,
& wrouȝt him gret worchip · & wiȝes þat it seiȝen 4240
saiden, it semed wel · as it socour souȝt ;
but þanne as bliue þat best · busked on his weie.
The knight asked the king what it meant, & þan þat kud kniȝt · þat vs conquered alle
coniured mi lord þe king · bi al þat crist wrouȝt, 4244
þat he tyt schold him telle · treuli al þe soþe,
ȝif he wist in any wise · wat þat best were ;
who said, it must be Alphonse his son. & he soþli þus sayde · schortly to telle,
þat it was alphiouns his sone · anon riȝt he wist, 4248
þat þou with þi wicchecraft · a werwolf him hadest maked.
We are sent to say that we shall never be released wherfore, menskful madame · bi marie in heuen,
we be made massegeres · to munge ȝou þis nedes,
þat neiþer þi lord nor þi sone · nor non of vs alle 4252
worþ neuer deliuerred of daunger · þat we dwellen inne,
till you have disenchanted the werwolf. til þou com to þat kiþ · & with ȝour queynt werkes
haue heled þe werwolf · wel at alle riȝtes,
& maked to man aȝe · in maner as he ouȝt. 4256
If you refuse, & ȝif þou grutche a-ny grot · þus greiþli to worche,
alle þe men vpon molde · ne mowe it nouȝt lette,
þat þat ilke kud kniȝt · þat kepuþ vs alle,
that mighty knight will come nel com to þis kuntre · with a clene strengþe, 4260

& balfulli do þe brenne · in bitter fire, and burn you,
& ouer-ride þis reaume · & redili it destrye;
&, whe*þer* þou wolt or non · winne[1] þe with strengþe, and will put us all to death."
& seþen duelfulli to dethe · do vs alle after;
& *þer*for do vs wite wiȝtli · houȝ þou wirche þenkest."
as bliue as þis bold quen · þat braun*d*en was hote, [Fol. 67 *b*.]
hade herd al holli · how þat hit ferde, At this news queen Braunden swoons.
sche swelt for sorwe · & swoned rit þere,
& afterward wept · wonder was it none.
& to þe menskful messageres · mekli þenne sede,
"now, sires, seþþe it is so · what so bi-tyde, She consents to go with them.
I wol wende ȝou with · & wel ȝou deliuere,
þurth help of þe heuene king · hastili & sone."
þanne gart sche to greiþe · gaili alle þinges, She gets everything ready.
þat hem bi-houed on hond · to haue bi þe weye,
& a real rouȝte · to ride bi hire side,
of lordes & ladies · of al hire lond þe best.
& soþli for soþe[2] · no seg vnder heuene
ne seiȝe neuer no route · araiȝed more beter, No one ever saw better arrayed company.
ne gaylier greiþed · to go to þe soþe,
of hors & of harneys · & alle oþer gere.
þe quen hade hire with · al þat bi-houed,
to warysche with þe werwolf · wel atte best.

Gaili were þei greiþed · wel at te best,
with here menskful meyne · sche meued on gate,
& hiȝed on here iurnes · fast as þei miȝt,
til þei come to palerne · to proue þe soþe. They come to Palermo, where William meets them,
will*iam* & hise wiȝes · were warned[3] of here come;
with a real route · he rod hire a-ȝens,
& worþili hire he wolcomed · wen he hire mette,
& hire clene co*m*panye · curtesli & faire;
& p*re*steli to þe paleys · with gret pres hem ladde.
þe curtes quen of þat lond · com hem a-ȝens,

[1] MS. "wenne." Read "winne."—M. See l. 3622.
[2] MS. "seþe." [3] MS. "warnes." Read "warned."—M.

as also do the queen, the king, and the prince.

þe king of spayne with his sone · & oþer kniȝtes gode,
þat were put in prison · presteli þurth here dedes.
boþe murrþe & mournyng · at þat metyng was ;
whan þe quen of spayne · saw hire lord in hold,
& hire semli sone · & seþe alle þe oþer
of grete lordes of hire lond · it liked hire ille.
[Fol. 68.] þe comly quen of þat lond · william owne moder,
with welþe & gret worchip · welkomed hem alle,
& william curtesli cauȝt · þe quen of hire palfray,
& his menskful moder · ful mekli hire kessed,
& hire lord & hire sone · swetly þer-after.
hire lord þe king of hire kome · was comforted michel,
& hire sone als · & seþen alle oþer
of þe lordes of þat lond · þat þere leie in hold,
for þei hopeden in hast · to haue help þer-after.
william & his menskful moder · mekli & faire
ful loueli þe quen of spayne · led hem bi-twene,
& hendeli in-to halle · þanne hire þei brouȝt,
& derli on þe heiȝe des · þei a-doun seten.
þe king of spayne & his wif · seten to-gader,
& here sone hem bi-side · samen to talke,
to make hem in þe mene while · as murye as þei couþe.
þe quen of palerne & hire douȝter · þat damysele hende,
& þe menskful meliors · were macched to-gadere,
to haue same here solas · & seie what hem liked.
seþen al þat huge halle · was hastili fulfulled
al a-boute bi eche side · with barounes & kniȝtes,
þe real rinkes of þe reaume · riȝt on þat o side.
soþli þe segges of spayne · were set on þat oþer,
so þat perles paleis · with peple was fulfulled.
þann were spacli spices · spended al a-boute,
fulsumli at þe ful · to eche freke þer-inne,
& þe wines þer-with · wich hem best liked.

The queen of Spain is grieved to see them prisoners.

William helps Braunden to alight.

All are glad to see her.

She is led to hall, and seated at the daïs.

She and the king and prince sit together,

and the queen of Palermo, the princess, and Melior.

The hall is filled with barons and knights, and the Spanish lords.

There were spices and wines.

The werwolf had been kept in William's chamber.

And as þei mad hem so mirie · to minge þe soþe,
þe werwolf þat ȝe witen of · was in williams
chaumber,

& hade be þere in blis · bi niȝtes and daies.
seþen þe messangeres meuede · after þe quene,
þat was his sterne stepmoder · til þat stounde þanne.
but wel wist þe wolf · whanne sche was come,
& hastili in-to halle · he hiȝed him þat time,
to do [hire] to þe deþe · deliuerli ȝif he miȝt,
so wroþ [1] he was hire with · wite ȝe him neuer.
as bliue as þe best · was broken in-to halle,
a pase bi-fore al þe puple · he passeþ him euene,
& drow him toward þe des · but doutusli after
he stared on his stepmoder · stifli a while,
whan he saw [hire] with his sire · sitte in murþe.
ful wroþ þan þat werwolf · wax of þat siȝt,
& bremly his bristeles · he gan þo a-reise,
& grisiliche gapande · with a grym noyse,
he queite toward þe quene · to quelle hire as bliue.
& assone as þe quene · saw him so come,
sche wax neiȝ of hire witt · witow forsoþe,
& carfulli to þe king · criande, sche saide,
"a! leue lordes, mi lif · lengþes ȝut a while!
socoures me nouþe · or ful sone i deiȝe,
for þis ilk breme best · bale wol me wirche,
ac i wite him no wrong · witeþ wel alle.
I haue serued þe deþ · ȝif ȝou dere þinkes,
lengþeþ now my lif · for loue of heuene king,
& meke me in ȝour mercy · i may do nouȝt elles."
þe king of spayne stifli · stert vp sone,
& his sone al-so · to saue þe quene.
william ful wiȝtli · þe werwolf þan hent
anon in his armes · aboute þe necke,
& sayde to him soberli · "mi swete dere best,
trust to me as treuli · as to þin owne broþer,
or as feiþli as falles · þe fader to þe sone,
& meke þe of þi malencoli · for marring of þi-selue.
I sent after hire for þi sake · soþli, þou trowe,

Knowing the queen was come, [Fol. 68 b.] he hoped to kill her,

and advances to the daïs, staring at her.

Raising his bristles and roaring, he rushes at her.

In great fear, she cries out for help,

confessing she has deserved death, but begging for her life.

William catches the werwolf by the neck, and says,

"Trust me, dear beast,

I sent for her for thy sake.

[1] MS. "worþ." Read "wroth."—M. See ll. 3221, 4341

to help þe of þi hele · hastili, ȝif sche miȝt. 4364
& sche has brouȝt now þi bote · bi *crist*, as i hope,
Unless she disenchants you, she shall be burnt, & but sche haue, be riȝt siker · be god þat vs wrouȝt,
to cold coles sche schal be brent · ȝit or come eue ;
[Fol. 69.] & þe aschis of hire body · with þe wind weue, 4368
and the Spaniards shall be kept in prison for ever; & þi sire & his sone · & alle is segges noble
schul be put in prison · & peyned for euere,
dulfulli here lif daies · til deth haue hem take.
for-þi lete me allone · mi lef swete freinde, 4372
wherefore do her no harm." anoie þe na more · ne nede schalt þou haue,
ne to hire do no duresse · as þou me derli louest."

The werwolf is glad, and kisses William's feet. Þe werwolf was ful glad · of will*iam*s speche,
þat bi-het him in hast · to haue help after, 4376
& faire doun to his fete · fel hem to kisse,
& as he coude, be contenaun*ce* · ful kindeli graun*t*ed,
In alle wise to worche [1] · as will*iam* wold seie,
& made no more debat · in no maner wice. 4380
Queen Braunden is glad, as sone as þe quen · saw how it ferde,
þat þe werwolf wold · worche hire no schaþe,
sche was gretli glad · & oft god þonkes,
& p*er*tili bi-fore alle þe puple · passed him tille, 4384
and kneels before the werwolf, saying, & bliue bi-fore þe best · on boþe knes hire sette,
& mekli in þis maner · mercy sche craued.
"Sweet Alphonse, the people shall soon see thy seemly face. "swete alphou*n*s," sche seide · "mi semli lorde,
I haue brouȝt here þi bote · to bring þe of sorwe ; 4388
sone schal þe puple se · þi semli face,
In manhede & in minde · as it out to bene.
I have sinned against you, I haue þe gretli a-gelt · to god ich am a-knowe,
for redili þe to reue · þi riȝt eritage ; 4392
þat þis man *min* owne sone · miȝt it haue hadde
feiþli after þi fader · ich forschop þe þanne
In þise wise to a werwolf · and wend þe to spille ;
but God wills not that you should be lost. but god wold nouȝt · þat þou were lorne. 4396
for-þi of mi mis-gelt · mercy ich craue,

[1] MS. "worthe."

lene me lif, ȝif þe likes · alphou*ns*, i þe praye, Spare my life, and I will never harm you more."
& at þi bidding wol i be · buxu*m* eu*er*-more,
& lelli as my lord · al my lif þe serue,
& neu*er* agult þe wil i liue · in game ne on ernest;
& giue me now in þi grace · and godli þe bi-seche, [Fol. 69 *b*.]
for his loue þat mad man · for-giue me þis gelt."
& þan wiȝtli to will*ia*m · weping sche seide, She further begs William to intercede for her,
"a! kurtes kniȝt · for *cri*stes loue of heuene,
bidde þis buxu*m* best · be merciabul nouþe,
for he wol worche at þi wille · i wot wel forsoþe,
More þan for alle me*n* · þat on mold liuen;
& ȝou, alle hende lordes · helpeþ me to praye and begs the other lords to do the same.
to þis kurtes kniȝt · to graunt my bone.
to þis bestes mercy · i bowe me at alle,
to worche with me is wille · as him-self likes."

Of þe quenes p*ro*fer · þe puple hadde reuþe,
for sche fel to-fore þe best · flat to þe grou*n*de;
þer was weping & wo · wonderli riue. There was much weeping and woe.
but so kenli þe king · & þe kniȝtes alle
bi-souȝt will*ia*m for þe quen · soþli so ȝerne,
þat he godli al his gref · for-gaf at þe last, William forgives her if she will heal the beast.
so þat sche hastili hiȝed · to help þat best;
& bleþeli boute grutching · þat grau*n*ted sche sone.
þan stint sche no lenger · but bout stryf went She at once goes with the werwolf into a private chamber,
Into a choys chau*m*ber · þe clerli was peinted,
þat non went hire with · but þe werwolf al-one.
þan rauȝt sche forþ a ring · a riche & a nobul, draws forth a magic ring, with a stone in it that was proof against all witchcraft.
þe ston þat þer*on* was stiȝt · was of so stif ver*tu*,
þat neu*er* man vpo*n* mold · miȝt it him on haue,
ne schuld he with wicchecraft · be wicched neu*er*-more,
ne p*er*[i]sche[1] with no poysoun · ne purliche enuenemed;
ne wrongli schuld he wiue · þat it in wold hadde.
þat riche ring ful redily · with a red silk þrede She binds it with a red silk thread

[1] MS. "p*er*sche." Read "perische."—M.

round the wolf's neck.
þe quen bond als bliue · a-boute þe wolwes necke.
She takes a book out of a casket, and reads in it a long time, till he becomes a man again.
seþe feiþli of a forcer · a fair bok sche rauȝt,
& radde þer-on redli · riȝt a long while,
so þat sche made him to man · in þat mene while,
as fair as fetys · and als freli schapen,
[Fol. 70.]
as any man vpo*n* mold · miȝt on deuise.
William only was fairer.
was no*n* fairre in world · but will*iam* allone,
for he of fairnesse was flour · of frekes þat liue.
The werwolf is very glad,
whan þe werwolf wist · þat he was man bi-come,
fair of alle fasou*n* · as him fel to bene,
he was gretli glad · no gum þurt him blame,
ful wel him liked þe lessun · þat þe lady radde.
but is ashamed of being naked.
soþli þat he was so naked · sore he was a-schamed,
whan þe quen þat of-sey · sone sche seide him tille,
She tells him he need not be so, for they are alone.
"a! alphou*n*s, leue lord · lat be alle þo þouȝtes,
i se wel þou art a-schamed · & so were it no nede;
ne buþ here in þis bour · but our selue tweyne.
& on þe, sire, se i no siȝt · but as it schuld bene,
ne þe faileþ no þing · þat falleþ a man to haue.
He must now go to the bath.
fare now forþ to þi baþ · þat faire is keuered,
for it is geinli greiþed · in a god asise."
Alphonse goes to the bath, finding it "tidily warm."
& alphou*n*s anon þanne · after hire sawe,
buskes in to þe baþ · boute more noyse,
& fond it treuli a-tired · & tidili warme.
The queen serves him.
þe quen him *com*forted · & curtesli him serued
as mekkeli as sche miȝt · in alle man*er* wise;
for no burn nas hem bi · but he*m*-self tweyne.

She asks him who shall give him his clothes?
Þan þe curtes quen · ful cunyngli saide,
"swete sire, saie me now · so ȝou *crist* help,
what gom wol ȝe þat ȝou giue · ȝour garnemen*s* nouþe?
ȝe ne tok neu*er* as i trowe · of kniȝthod þe hordere.
for-þi þow telle me of whom · ȝe take it þenk,
for wel ȝe wite [what] whiȝ · worþiest is here."
He says he will take his attire and the order of
"Madame," þan seide alphou*n*s · "be marie in heuen,
I wol take myn a-tir · & þat trie ordere

of þe worþiest wei3 · þat weldes now liue."
"hoo is þat," seide þe quen · "is it 3our fader?"
"Nay, bi god," quath alphu*n*s · "þat gart me be fourmed,
It is þat ilk kud kni3t · þat 3e alle knowe,
þat deliuered þe of þe deth · þis day of mi-selue.
a worþier wie3h in þis world · woneþ no*n* nouþe,
king ne kni3t as of kin · ne of kud dedes.
Mi tir of him wol ich take · and þat trie order,
& loue him as mi lege lord · al mi lif time."
þe quen after will*ia*m · went in-to halle,
& tok him sli3li bi þe sleue · & saide in his ere,
"sire, 3if þi wille were · þe werwolf þe bi-seche þ,
þat tow tit com him to · to tire him in his wedes;
he ne wol þat non oþer · þat worchipe him 3eue."
"is þat soþ," saide will*ia*m · "mi swete lady hende?
cleymeþ he after cloþes · for cristes loue in heuen?
deceyue me nou3t with þi dedes · but seie me þe soþe."
"3is, bi cr*i*st," quaþ þe quen · "cloþes he askes;
he is as hol, heri3ed be god · as he was eu*er* 3ite,
& manliche in alle maneres · as to man falles;
hi3es him hastili him to · & help he were grei þed;
for i wot þat þis folk · fayn wold him sene.
but he wol þat no wi3t · to chau*m*ber with þe come,
but meliors þi menskful make · & þe quenes dou3t*er*,
Dame florence þe faire · for whom was þis werre.
hem boþe he biddeþ bring · & no wi3t elles."
þan will*ia*m ful wi3tli · as man ful of ioye,
clipte þe quen & kest · & oft crist þonkes,
þat his felawe was hol · þat hade him holp oft.
as bliue was him brou3t · al þat bi-houed
of alle comli cloþing · þat a kni3t schuld haue;
no man vpo*n* mold · mi3t richer deuise.
þan will*ia*m wi3tli · with meliors & his suster,
& þe comli quene · spacli forþ þei went
in-to þe chois chau*m*ber · þer chau*n*ged was þe best

knighthood from the worthiest man alive,

viz. William, who shall be his liege lord.
[Fol. 70 b.]

The queen tells William the werwolf wishes him to clothe him.

"Is it true," he says, "that he asks for clothes?"

"Yes," says she, "he is as whole as ever.

He will have no one but you and Melior and the princess Florence."

William kisses the queen for making his fellow whole.

William, Melior, &c., go to the chamber,

and see a bath and a bed, with a man in it whom they knew not.

out of þe werwolfs wise · to a worþi kniȝt.
þan bi-held þei þe baþ · & a bed bi-side,
& in þat bed als bliue · þat burn þei seien,
[Fol. 71.]
þat non so semli to here siȝt · saw þei neuer ere ;
but of þat *com*panie, be *crist* · þer ne knew him none.

Yet they greet him, and Alphonse answers,

naþeles *william* wiȝtli · worþili him grette,
& þo menskful maidenes · mekli þer-after,
& þan alphou*n*s a-non · answered & saide,
"*crist* krouned king · sire kniȝt, mot ȝou saue,

"Sir knight, you give me a poor welcome."

& þi faire felachipe · þat folweþ þe after.
sire kniȝt, i am in þi kiþ · & come*n* to þi owne,
& þow makes me now · but þis mene sembla*nt*.
to put þe of *per*il · i haue ney *per*isched oft,
& many a scharp schour · for þi sake þoled,
to litel þow me knowest · or kinhed me kiþes."

"True," said William, "but I conjure you to say who you are."

"sertes, sire, þat is soþ" · seide *william* þanne,
"I ne wot in þis world · what þat ȝe are ;
but i *con*iure ȝou, be *crist* · þat on croyce was peyned,
þat ȝe seie me swiþe soþ · ho-so ȝe bene."

"I am the werwolf, who have saved you from many perils."

"I am he, þe werwolf" · sede alphou*n*s þanne,
"þat haue suffred for þi sake · many sori peynes,
& pult þe out of *per*iles · *per* þou *per*isched[1] schuldest,
nade goddes grete miȝt be · & mi gode help."

"certes, sire, þat is soþ" · sede *william* þanne,

William embraces him with great joy.

& lepes liȝtli him to · & lacchis him in armes ;
with clipping & kesseng · þei kidden gret ioye.
alle þe men vpon mold · ne miȝt half telle
þe mirþ þat was maked · in þe mene while.
& ȝif *william* was glad · wittow forsoþe,
Meliors was moche more · ȝif it so miȝt bene ;
& florence of þat fare · þanne gret ferli hadde.

Florence greets him, and he instantly falls in love with her.

& sone as sche him saw · loueli sche him grett,
& he godli a-gayn · gret þat gode mayde,
& for þe beaute þat sche bar · as bliue his hert
turned to hire treuli · to loue for eu*er*-more.

[1] Read "perische" (?)

whan þei in þat gladnesse · a gret while hade sete,
alphou*n*s asked a-non · a-tir for to haue,
to fare out as fast · with his fader to speke,
& with lordesse of þat lond · þat him long hade missed.
& will*iam* wi3tli · with-oute any more,
Grei þed him as gaili · as any gom þurt bene,
of alle trie a-tir · þat to kni3t longed,
so þat non mi3t a-mend[1] · a mite wor þ, i wene.
& whan þei were at wille · as þei wold be grei þed,
eche on hent o þer bi þe hand · hendli & faire,
& hastili in-to þe hei3e halle · hi3eden in-fere.
whan þe p*er*les puple · p*er*ceyueden hem[2] come,
Many a lord ful loueli · lep hem a3ens,
as þo þat were geinli glad · on þat gom to loke.
Gret m*urr*þe at þat metyng · was mad, be 3ou sure.
þe king of spayne forso þe · knew his sone sone,
& gret him ferst as a glad man · & oft god þonkes,
þat he so faire hade founde · his formest sone.
se þen þe lordes of londe · loueli him gretten,
& his bold bro þer · be-fore alle o þer;
saue þe king him-self · semliest he him gret,
& most ioye for þat metyng · made þat time.
no tong mi3t telle · treuli þe so þe,
þe ioye þat was wrou3t · with lasse & with more.
þe comli quen of palerne · oft crist þonked,
þat hade hire sent of his sond · so moche ioye to haue,
& hade setteled hire sorwe · so sone, þat was huge.
sone þe semli segges · were sette in halle;
þe real rinkes bi reson · at þe hei3e dese,
& alle o þer afterward · on þe side be*n*ches,
& sete so in solas · sadli ful þe halle,
eche dingneli at his degre · to deme þe so þe.
whan þe noyse was slaked · of þe semli burnes,
þe king of spayne spak · to alphou*n*s his sone,

Then Alphonse asks for his clothes, to go and see his father. [Fol. 71 *b*.]

William attires him as a knight.

They go together to the hall.

The king of Spain soon knew his son.

The werwolf is greeted by his brother.

The queen of Palerno thanks Christ.

All in the hall take their proper places.

The king of Spain addresses his son,

[1] MS. "a-mand." Read "amend."—M.
[2] MS. "whan." Read "hem."—M.

& sede, "semli sone · sore has me longed
to se þi freli face · þat i for-lore hadde.
[Fol. 72.] for þis comli quen · þurth 3one kni3tes dedes,
haþ vs alle in hold · to harm at hire wille.
saying it had been foretold that their deliverance would be wrought by him only. but swete sone · saide it haþ ben oft,
þat our deliueraun*c*e · was don on þe one ;
þurth þe schuld we help haue · or neu*er*-more elles.
þer-fore, heuen king · heried mot 3e bene,
þat haþ þe lend lif · vs alle to deliuere."
Alphonse inquires what caused the war. "swete sire," seide alphou*n*s · "so 3ou crist help,
wharfore was al þis fare · formest bi-gunne ?"
"bi crist, sone," quaþ þe king · "to carpe þe soþe,
The king says, "I desired to have this damsel for thy brother's wife. alle þe werre & þis wo · is our wronge dedes.
i desired þis damisele · þat digne is & nobul,
to haue hire to þi bro*þer* · þat here bi þe sitteþ ;
Her mother would not grant it, and I wasted their lands. ac hire moder in no maner · hire nold me grau*n*te.
for-þi wi3tli with werre · i wasted alle hire londes,
& brou3t hire at swiche bale · þat sche mercy craued,
in þis maner þat sche · most mekli & faire,
do hire a-wei with hire dou3*ter* · boute more harme ;
sche wilned nou3t elles · but þat nold i graunt.
But this bold knight made us prisoners." but þan com þis kene kni3t · & þurth his clene strengþe,
boldli in batayle · he bar doun vs alle,
& pult vs in prison · to payne at his grace ;
þus sped we vs out of spayne · to spire after winny*n*g."

Alphonse answers, Alphou*n*s þan a-non · answered & saide,
"faire fader, bi mi feiþ · folili 3e wrou3ten,
"You did wrong, and can only blame yourself. to wilne after wedlok · þat wold nou3t a-sente.
þat mowe 3e wite bi 3our werkes · how wroþli[1] 3e spedde ;
to wicke was 3our *con*seil · & 3our wille after ;
But I hope all can be made to end well." 3if 3e[2] haue wonne þe worse · wite it 3our-selue.
but i hope to heuen king · 3if 3e wol here mi wordes,

[1] Read "wrongli."—M.
[2] MS. "he." Read "ze."—M.

al þis bale schal be brouȝt · to bote at þe last."
to þe quen of palerne · alphouns þus saide,
" a ! menskful madame · mekes alle ȝour peple,
þat non spend no speche · til i speke haue."
þan was silens mad · to seie al þe soþe.
" ladis & oþer lordes · lesteneþ now my sawe !
þis ȝe witeþ wel alle · with-oute any fabul,
þat þis lond hade be lore · at þe last ende,
ȝif þise werres hade lasted · any while here.
but god ȝou sent swiche grace · of his grete miȝt,
þat þis kud kniȝt · with his clene strengþe
haþ i-bet al ȝoure bale · & brouȝt to ȝour wille
alle ȝour fon þat with fors · defoyled ȝou long.
ȝit wot non wiseli · wennes he come,
ne what weiȝ he is · but wite schal ȝe sone.
ȝif þat burn wel him bar · i blame him but litel ;
for mater i-now haþ eche man · to mene þe soþe,
his moder þat is in meschef · to meyntene & help ;
& schal come him bi kinde · ȝif he crist loue."
" what bi-tokeneþ þis tale · telleþ, i be-seche,
whi seie ȝe so ? " · seide þe quene þanne.
" sertes, madame," seid alphouns · " soþli me leue.
þis comli kniȝt is þi sone · bi crist þat me wrouȝt ;
þou bar him of þi bodi · king ebrouns was his fader.
al þis lordchip of þis lond · is lelli his owne.
& i am þe werwolf · wite ȝe for soþe,
þat bi-fore his fader · ful ȝore i ȝou bi-reft,
& passed with him mi weie · prestli fro ȝou alle.
þe king & hise kniȝtes · with kries ful huge,
þei sewed riȝt to þe see · to sle me ȝif þei miȝt.
but bliue boute bot · þe brode water i passed,
boute hurt oþer harm · heriȝed be goddes grace,
þat so sauf sent me ouer · wiþ þi sone sounde.
& gode ladi, ȝif þe like · loue me neuer þe worse,
þat i þe barn away bar · to blame had i be elle[s],
for i wist ful wel · wat wo him was toward

Alphonse cravès silence while he speaks further.

[Fol. 72 b.]

"Ladies and lords, this land had been lost if the war had lasted.

But this knight hath remedied all your grief,

and yet no one knows who he is.

He did quite right to help HIS MOTHER."

"What means this ?" said the queen.

"This knight, madame, is THY SON, and king Ebrouns was his father.

I am the werwolf who took him away from you all.

Then the king and his knights pursued me as far as to the sea [Straits of Messina],

which I crossed over in safety.

Had I not taken him away, he would soon have been dead. [Fol. 73.]

ne had i so do, he hade be ded · many a day passed.
þe king ebrouns broþer · be-þouȝt þis oft,
if[1] þis ilk bold kniȝt · had be brouȝt out of liue,
he schold have entred as eyr · þis eritage to hold,
after þe kinges day · bi dessent of blode.
& sone as a schrewe schuld · þe schrewedest he þouȝt;

For Ebrouns' brother bribed the ladies who had William in their care,

he coynted him queyntli · with þo tvo ladies,
þat hade þat time þi sone · to kepe in warde,
& meded hem so moche · wiþ alle maner þinges,
& bi-het hem wel more · þan i ȝou telle kan,
Gret lordchip of londes · & liking at wille,
so þat þei him bi-hiȝt · bi a schort terme,

to poison the king and prince both.

þat þei priueli wold enpoysoun · þe king & his sone,
to haue do krouned him king · to kepe þat reaume.

When I knew it, I was grieved, and for pity stole him away.

but whan i knew al here cast · of here wic wille,
I ne miȝt it suffer · for sorwe & for reuþe,
þat here wicked wille · in þise wise ended.
& þerfor i him tok · now haue i told þe soþe,

I have ever helped him at need, and have brought him hither,

& haue him holp herto · wanne he hade nede,
as moche as i miȝt · in eny maner wise:
& hider i brouȝt him, be ȝou siker · ȝour bales for to amende.

and now yield him to thee again."

haue him now bi þe hand · i ȝeld him here to þe."

When the queen heard this, her joy was unbounded.

Whan[2] þe comli quen · þat carping hade herde,
& saw þat was hire sone · soþli i-proued,
þer nys man vpon mold · miȝt telle þe ioye
þat was mad hem bi-twene · in þe mene wh[i]le,
betwene þe dame & þe douȝter · & hire dere sone,
with clipping & kesseng · & oþer kinde dede.

Melior perhaps was the gladdest of all, that her lover was king of all that land.

& ȝif any miȝt be most · meliors was gladdest,
þat hire loueliche lemman · was lord of þat reaume,
bi kinde as kinges sone · & god kniȝt him-selue.

[1] MS. "of." Perhaps we should substitute *if*.—M.

[2] MS. "Mhan." The rubricator has here and elsewhere made a mistake, and inserted a capital M for a W.—M.

swiche murthe as was mad · at þat metyng þanne,
& þat of al þat puple · þat in þe paleys were,
tonge miȝt non telle · þe tenþe [1] del, for soþe.
& anon, after þat · alphouns þanne hem tolde, 4672 [Fol. 73 b.] Alphonse recounts all the details—
alle þe happes þat he hadde · al holly to þe hende,
from þat time þat he tok · þe child fro his frendes.
how þe fader him folwed · fayn him to quelle; how he bore William over the water;
& how he bar forþ þe barn · ouer þe brode water; 4676
& seþen how he souȝt forþ · bi selcouþ weiȝes, how he carried him by strange ways to the forest near Rome;
bering ouer þat barn · be niȝtes and daie,
til he com bi a forest · seuen mile fro rome;
& how þe cou-herde com him to · & kept þe child after, how the cowherd found him, and then the emperor;
4680
& seþen how þemperour · souȝt out to hunte,
& fond him in þe forest · & faire hade him home,
& tok him to kepe · to his douȝter dere;
& how þe meke mayde & he · melled of loue, 4684 how he and the emperor's daughter loved each other;
& hadde here liking in loue · a long time ofte;
& how þe kinges sone of grece · kom hire to wedde,
& on þe morwe þat þe mariage · schold haue be maked, how the lovers fled, clad in two white bears' skins;
how þei went a-wai · in wite beres skinnes; 4688
" þer-after, sire, i þe saued · forsoþe as þow knowest,
whanne alle þe puple prestili · pursewed after,
to haue do þe to deþe · & þi dere make.
& at boneuent i þe brouȝt · fram þe breme quarrer, how they escaped at Benevento;
whan al þe cuntre was umbe-cast · with clene men of armes, 4693
to haue þe take þer tit · & to dethe hampred;
I tok here souerayne sone · so saued i þe þere."
seþen he told hou he dede · here hides þan chaunge, how they exchanged their hides for harts' skins;
& dede hem haue hertes skinnes · to hiden in hem boþe. 4697
" seþen at a wide water · i wan ȝou ouer boþe,
a tokene ȝit of þat time · telle i mai þi burde.

[1] MS. "tonþe." See l. 4715.

and how the barge-boy hit Melior with an oar.

a boye hire ȝaf a buffet · with a breme ore,
so þat hire lif lelli · neiȝ hade sche lore."
alle here happes holli · alphouns telleþ þere,
& what he hade suffred · to sauen here liues.

William was very glad at finding he was king Ebrouns' son.

[Fol. 74.]

Whan william hade herd · holli his wordes,
he was gretli glad · no gom þurt him wite,
þat al þe puple in þe place · a-pertli knewen
þat he was kindeli · king ebrouns sone.

He embraces and kisses Alphonse, saying,

þan lauȝt he alphouns anon · loueli in armes,
& clipped him & kessed · & kindeli sayde,
"a ! faire frend alphouns · ioye þe bi-tide,

"May God requite thee!

& god for his grete miȝt · þi godnesse þe ȝelde,
& þi tenful trauayles · þow hast for me suffred,
& for my loueli lemman · lord it þe quite !

For I know not how to requite thee the tenth part.

for i ne wot in þis world · what wise i miȝt
quite þe [þe] tenþedel · in al mi lif time.
but þer nis god vnder god · þat i may gete euer,

All I can do shall be done soon, to make all thine.

þat it [ne] schal redeli be þin · at þin owne wille ;[1]
ne no dede þat i may do · þat ne schal be do sone,
& loue lelli what þou louest · al mi lif dawes,

Thy loves and hates shall be mine.

& hate heiȝeli in hert · þat þou hate þenkest,
so þat my hert holli · schal hold him at þi wille.
& þerto heiȝeliche am i hold · for holli i knowe

All that thou hast said is wholly true."

þat alle þe sawes be soþ · þat þou saidest ere ;
sadde sorwes for mi sake · suffred astow manye."
"sertes, sire, þat is soþ" · seide alphouns þanne,

"You can easily requite me," said Alphonse.

"Me þinkeþ ȝe miȝt be hold · to quite me mi mede ;
& so i desire þat þou [do][2] · ȝif ȝou dere þinkes.
"ȝa ! wold god," seide william · "þat i wist nouþe

"In what way?" answered William.

In what maner þat i miȝt · mest with þe plece,
or þat i walt worldes god · þat þou woldest ȝerne."
"ȝis, sire," seide alphouns · "so me crist help,

[1] Here follow two lines (out of place) which occur again below. See ll. 4722, 4723, and the note.

[2] Or insert "wole," as Sir F. Madden suggests.

þer nis god vnder god · þat i gretli willne,
as o þing þat þou woldest · wilfulli me graun*t*."
"3is, i-wisse," seide will*ia*m · "wilne what þe likes,
þei3 þou in hast woldest haue · holli al mi reaume;
I wold nowt wilne a mite worþ · but meliors allone."
alphou*n*s a-non · answered þanne & seide,
"I kepe nou3t of þi kingdom · be crist þat me bou3t,
ne of þi loueli lemman · lelly but in gode.
I ne wilne no-þing but þi suster · to be samen wedded,
to weld here as my wif · al my lif tyme."
"3a, worþi god," seide will*ia*m · "wel were me þanne,
3if i wist þat þow woldest · here to wiue haue.
it were a wonderful werk · 3if þou woldest euere
Meke þe in eny man*er* · to be maried so lowe."
"3is beter, sire," seide alphou*n*s · "i preie þe of nou3t elles,
for al þe sorwe þat i haue suffred · for þi sake eu*er*.
but grau*n*te me boute grucching · to haue þat gaie maide."
"bi god, sire," seide will*ia*m · "þat gart me be fourmed,
þou schalt [haue][1] hire at þin hest · & with hire al my reaume,
oþer half witt*er*li · with-out any lette."
"nay, crist forbede," seide alphou*n*s[2] · "for his holi blode,
þat i were so wicked · to wilne ou3t of þi gode;
I ne bidde nou3t a bene worþ · but þat burde one."
þan will*ia*m as a glad man · godli him þonked,
& seide, "sertes, nowe [we][3] schul be · samen holde frendes,
lelli breþeren in lawe · our lord be it þonked;
for al þe welþe of þe world · at wille nou3 vs falleþ."
þan al þe puple in þe paleys · prestli, fo[r] ioye,
Maden al þe mur*þe* · þat men mi3t deuise.

"There is no benefit I so long for as *one* thing."

"I will grant you half my kingdom —anything but Melior."
[Fol. 74 *b*.]

"All I ask for is thy sister to wife."

"That were well indeed, if thou canst marry so low."

"Yes indeed; I ask for no reward but that."

"Thou shalt have her, with half of, or *all* my kingdom."

"Nay, I ask but that lady only."

"Now," said William, "we shall be brothers-in-law."

Then all the people rejoiced greatly,

[1] Read "schalt *haue* hire."—M. [2] MS. "alphuo*n*s."
[3] Read "nowe *we* schul."

& þe comli quen · ful oft crist þonked,
þat hade so wiȝtli of hire wo · so wel hire *com*forted.
tid were þe tidinges told · wide where a-boute
and the tidings of it were soon spread everywhere. of þat ferli þat was fallen þere · fast þan *þer*-after,
Gret puple drow to palern · to p*r*oue þe soþe,
to loke on þe lordes · in liking at wille.

As soon as it was known that the two ladies would have betrayed William, Now forto mu*n*ge forþer · as þe mater falles.
whan þise [tidinges][1] were told · to lasse & to more,
þat þo tvo trattes þat will*i*am · wold haue traysted,
þo ladyes þat had him to loke · & leren in ȝouþe,
þei wisten witt*er*ly þa*n*ne · with-oute any lette,
[Fol. 75.] they were afraid they would be burnt, drawn, or hanged. þat þei schuld be do to deþe · deulfulli in hast,
brent in briȝt fur · to-drawe, or an-honged,
as þilk þat [were][2] worþi · for þere wicked dedes—
So Gloriande and Acelone put on sackcloth, Gloriau*n*s & achillones · þo tvo ladies hiȝten—
bliue þei hem bi-þout · what bote miȝt hem help,
seþe here treson was kud · & knowe al a-boute.
hastili þei hent hem on · heiȝresse ful rowe
next here bare bodi · & bare fot þei went,
& faire bi-fore will*i*am · þei felle on knes boþe,
and put themselves in William's grace. & goue hem in his grace · for þat grete gilt,
& knoulecheden al þe cas · how þei cast hadde,
to haue sotiliche sleyn · him-self & his fader,
bi hest of þe kinges broþer · þat bale to haue wrouȝt.
"We beg for our lives, "lete vs, sire, haue þe lif · wil our lord wold.
we meke vs in ȝoure merci · at alle man*er* poyntes,
to sle vs or to saue · whe*þer* ȝou god likes.
þat we ar worþi to þe deth · wel we be a-knowe,
but wold ȝe grau*n*t vs ȝour grace · for goddes loue of heue*n*,
and hope to be allowed to do penance, to put vs to su*m* place · penau*n*ce to wirche,
& late vs haue þe lif · whil our lord wold,

[1] This word is surely wanted; cf. l. 4763.
[2] Read "that *was* worthi," or "*were* worthi."—M.

þat we mi3t a-mende · sum of our mis-gilt,
& for 3our fad[er]e [1] & for 3ou · fei3þli to preie. and to pray for you and your father."
3if 3e worche so · worchipe mi3t 3e gete,
&, dere lord, of þe deth · may no god dede falle,
bot a litel wicked wille · þer-with wold be slaked."
al þe barnage as bliue · baden for hem 3erne,
þat þei most in alle maner · þat trespas amende.
& william þan wi3tli · here wille haþ graunted, William grants them their lives,
so þat þei wrou3t in þat wise · & wold be gode after.
sone were þe ladies · to an hermitage brou3t,
& liueden þere in god lif · wil our lord wold, and they live in a hermitage
In penaunce & in prayeres · priueli & loude,
til þei went of þis world · whan god wold hem fecche. till the time of their death.
now lete i here of þe ladies · & lesteneþ a-noþer,
what bi-tidde of þis tale · as þis store telleþ. [Fol. 75 b.]

William þan with-oute more · wi3tli þer-after,
made him menskful messageres · to mene þe soþe, William sends messengers to the emperor of Rome,
þe grettest lordes of þat land · þat lellest were hold,
& konyngest of kurtesie · & kowden fairest speke.
to þemperour of rome · redeli he hem sent,
& with loueli letteres · lelli him bi-sou3t. beseeching him to come to Palermo to his daughter's marriage,
3if þat is wille were · with-oute any lette,
to be þere with his best burnes · bi a certayne time,
to mensk þe mariage · of meliors his dou3ter.
and 3if alisaundrine · were þanne aliue, and asking that Alexandrine might come too.
þat sche most with him come · curtesli he prayde.
þan were þe messangeres · in alle maner wise
so trieliche a-tired · to telle þe soþe,
of hors & of harneys · & [what] [2] hem most neded,
þat no wi3h of þis world · þurt wilne beter; The messengers go to Rome;
& went forþ on here way · wi3tly and fast,
til þei redli hade rau3t · to grete rome euene.
whan þe bold barounes · be-fore þemperour come,

[1] Read "fadere."—M. [2] See line 4187.

and greet the emperor from Alphonse king of Spain

ful godli þei him gret · gladli, as þei ouȝt,
ferst in alphou*n*s half · þat king was of spayne,
for þempour & he · hadde be felawes ȝore,

and William king of Apulia,

seþen in worþi will*i*ams · þat king was of poyle,
& sou*e*rayn of cisile · as schold a king bene.

and in Melior's name,

& seþen in meliors name · þat was hise mery dou*ȝ*t*er*.
& in þe kinges half of poyle · praiede him fayre,

to come to Palermo to his daughter's marriage.

to be at palerne with his puple · p*r*esteli & sone,
bi a certeyn day · þat set was sone after,
to menske þe mariage · of meliors his dou*ȝ*t*er*,
for to wiue he wold here take · þat welt þat reaume.
wha*n*ne þe messagers hade mu*n*ged · of meliors þe schene,

The emperor asks where his daughter is.

Gretteliche was he gladed · & gan for to seie,
"lordinges, for ȝour leute · lelli me telles,
ȝif ȝe wite in any wise · were be þat burde?"

[Fol. 76.] "In Palermo, sire. Here is her letter."

"Marie, sire," sede þe messageres · "ȝe mowe vs wel trowe,
þe milde mayde meliors · in palerne now dwelles;
Loo here hire owne letteres · to leue it þe beter."

The king bids a clerk read the letter,

þe king komau*n*ded a clerk · keneli & swiþe
to loke on þo letteres · and lelli hem rede,
þat he miȝt wiȝtli wite · what þat þei mened.

and the clerk undid it and read as the messengers had said.

þe clerk þa*n*ne deliuerli · vndede þo letteres,
& fond as þe messageres · hade mu*n*ged be-fore,
how þe king of poyle · prestli hade ordeyned,
at swich a certayn day · his semliche dou*ȝ*t*er* wedde.

Then the emperor knew it was all true,

þa*n*ne wist þempe*r*our wel · þat þei were treuwe,
& made þe messagers · þe mu*r*rþe þat he couþe,
realiere nere neue*r* rinkes · resseiued in place.

and summons his lords to go with him to the wedding.

Manli made þempe*r*our · his messageres out-wende,
alle þe lordes of þat lond · lelli to somou*n*ne
to be redili a-raied · in here richest wise,
to wend with him wiȝtli · to þe wedding nobul.
& wan þei herden his hest · þei hieȝeden fast,

& certes on þe selue day · þat hem was a-signed,
so riche a route in rome · was rialiche a-sembled,
þat neuer seg vnder sunne · ne saw swiche a-noþer,
so triȝliche a-tired · of al þat to hem longed ;
& went wiȝtli here [way] [1] · wen þei were ȝare,
& alisaundrine with hem · as i arst munged.
& wending as þei were · in here way þat time,
of þe menskful messageres · þemperour þanne asked,
bi what cas his douȝter · was fare to þat londe,
& how kendeli sche was knowe · þat king wold hire wedde.
& þei titli him told · al þe trewe soþe,
of alle fortune þat was falle · fram comsing to þende,
In alle maner as i munged · in mater here bi-fore.
& whanne þemperour hade herd · how [þat] hit ferde,
he was gretteli gladed · and oft crist ponked
of þe fortune bi-falle · of so faire an hende,
& munged þanne al þe mater · to his meyne sone,
as þo menskful messagers · hade munged be-fore.
þe murþe þat þanne was maked · miȝt no tonge telle,
þat tit was mad for þo tiding · whan þei told were.
& so þan held þei here way · harde & faste,
til þei to palerne prestili · with al þat pres come.

So they all assembled on the appointed day ;

and went their way, and Alexandrine with them.

On the way, the emperor hears the whole story ;

and he was very glad, and told it again to the company.

[Fol. 76 *b*.]

With much joy, they travel on to Palermo.

William [2] þanne ful wiȝtli · with a faire puple of crouned kinges · & kniȝtes many hundred,
went a-ȝen þemperour · with wel glade chere.
a gay greting was þer gret · wan þei to-gedir met.
william & þemperour · went alder-formest,
& alphouns next after · & auenauntli him grette,
with alle þe murþe vpon mold · þat men miȝt deuise.
þe king of spayne spacli · spedde him next after,
for þemperour & he bi-fore · felawes hadde bene,

Then William with a great company goes to meet the emperor,

and greets him.

The king of Spain also welcomes the emperor gladly.

[1] Read "here *way* wen they were zare."—M. See ll. 4864, 4878.

[2] The capital W is mis-written M. See l. 4923.

& kindli kessed eiþer oþer · whan þei kome to-gadere.
þe murþe þat was mad · at þat metyng þanne,
ne may no tong telle · treuli þe soþe.

On nearing the palace,

seþen went þei alle samen · swetli to-gadere
to þe perles paleys · and prestili þat time,

the queen and Melior and Florence

with a clene cumpanye þe quen · com hem a-3ens,
þat lady was of þat lond · & ledde in here hondes
þe menskful mayde meliors · & here oune dou3ter ;
& hem seweþ a selcouþe route · of semli ladies ;

and the queen of Spain come to welcome him.

þe quen of spayne spacli · þan spedde fast after.
a mery meting was þer mett · whan þei nei3ed same,
with clipping & kessing · and contenaunce hende.

Great was the emperor's joy at seeing his daughter.

but soþli whan þemperour sey · his semli dou3ter,
a glader gome vnder god · mi3t non gon on erþe.
þe melodie þat þei made · no man mi3t telle,
ne neuer nere gestes vnder god · gladliere receyued.
noþing wanted þei at wille · þat þei wold haue,
þat þei nere semli serued · & sette at here ri3ttes.

No need to tell of their merry fare.

Munge now nel i namore · of here merie fare,
[Fol. 77.] for beter to be þan it was · mi3t no burn þenke.

The joyous meeting of Alexandrine and Melior.

as sone as alisaundrine · hade si3t of hire ladi,
no tunge mi3t telle · treuli half þe ioye
þat þei made at þat metyng · whan þei mette same.

Melior tells her friend all her story.

& meliors ful mekli · brou3t hire to hire chaumber,
& told here whan sche sei time · treuli al þe soþe,
al þe sorwe þat sche hade suffred · seþe sche hire seie ;
now of þis mater · no more nel ich munge ;
& alle murþe was hem mad · among atte fulle.

William and Melior tell the emperor all their adventures.

william & his worþi make · whan þei sei time,
told þemperour treuli · þat hem tidde hadde,[1]
of meschef & of murthe · & ho hem most helped,
& how þei brou3t were of bale · to here bote þere.
& alle þenne of þat auenturre · hadde gret ioye,
& þonked god of his grace · þat so godli hem spedde.

[1] After "hadde" occurs a line made up from this line and the next, and not finished, viz. "of mechef & of murþe þat hem tidde h."

Whanne[1] time was, to þe mete · þei turned sone,
& serued [were][2] selcouþli · riȝt as hem wolde,
of alle dere deintes · of metes and of drynkes;
and as þei muriest at þe mete · þat time seten,
þer come menskful messageres · þat men were nobul,
fro þemperour of grece · gret wel þe quene,
þat ladi was of þat lond · & he hire dere fader,
& from hire broþer partendo · þat was hire pert broþer.
& whan þise messageres · hade here greting made,
þan þe soueraynest seg · saide of hem alle,
"Madame, makes ȝou merie · for marie loue in heuen,
for ȝour feiȝful fader · naþ ȝou nouȝt for-ȝete.
ac he haþ sent ȝou to socoure · so grissiliche an host,
þat þer nis man vpon mold · þat may ȝou with-stond,
þat þei nelle bring in bale · at ȝour bidding sone.
þei kome sailing in þe see · here souerayn is ȝour broþer;
partenedon þe perles · al þat puple ledes,
& se him schal ȝour-self · hastli, boute faile,
er þis þridde day be don · doute ȝou non oþer.
& whan þat comli quen · þo tidinges herde,
a gladdere womman in world[3] · was þer non a-liue,
to þe menskful messagere · made[4] gret ioye,
& worþili hem welcomed · ȝe mow wite þe soþe.
þe comli quen & þe king · cunseiled þan to-gedere,
þat þe bridhale schuld a-bide · til hire broþer come,
to mensk more þat mariage · ȝif þei miȝt þanne.
þan on þe þridde day ariued · hire broþer þere,
with a clene cumpanye · to carp þe soþe,
þe grettest lordes of þat lond · þat liued þat time;
but his ost þat tide he left · in þe see stille.
whan þe quen wist of his come · curtesli & sone,

All go to meat, and are served with all dear dainties.

Some messengers enter, from the emperor of Greece and the queen's brother Partenedon.

The chief of them says, "Madame,

your father hath sent an army to help you.

Partenedon your brother is their leader."

[Fol. 77 b.]

Then the queen was very glad, and welcomed the messengers.

It was agreed to put off the bridal till her brother came.

On the third day he arrived, with a great company.

[1] The large capital letter is mis-written M, as at l. 4880.
[2] See l. 5064.
[3] MS. "wolrd."
[4] The sense would be clearer if the pronoun "sche" were supplied, but it is often omitted in similar cases throughout this poem.—M.

The queen goes forth with the rest to greet him.

Gladli with grete lordes · sche goþ him aȝens,
þe kud emperour of rome · & þe king of spayne,
& his comli quen · & alle þe kniȝtes gode.
þe worþi william was þe first · þat welcomed him faire,
& alphouns after him · & after þe kinges.

She receives him right royally.

þe quen of palern presteli · þan presed to hire broþer,
& receyued him as reali · as any rink þurt bene;
þe king of spayne & þe quen · curtesli him gret,
& þemperour of rome · with riȝt gret ioyé.
þer was a solempne siȝt · whan þei samen mette,

It was a solemn sight to see them "clip" and kiss.

with clipping & kissing · to keþþe hem to-gadere.
þe lady ful loueli · þan lad forþ hire broþer
presteli to palerne · to þe paleys riche.

None can tell the mirth that was made.

More murþe vpon mold · miȝt no man deuise,
þan was mad to þo men · to munge þe soþe;
Ne wanted hem no-þing · þat þei wold haue,
plenteuosli in eche place · þe puple was serued.

The queen tells her brother how William was her son,

& as þei sete in solas · sone þe quen told
buxumli to hire broþer · what bi-tidde þere;
how william was hire son · & with his douȝti dedes
hade conquered þe king of spayne · & ended þat werre;

[Fol. 78.] and how the werwolf was restored to man's shape;

& in what wise þe werwolf · was brouȝt to his state;
& holli alle þe happes · as ȝe han herd be-fore;
how þei went away boþe · in white beres skinnes.

and of the weddings to be on the morrow.

þan told sche how alphouns · schuld his nece wedde,
& william worþi meliors · with welþe on þe morwe.[1]

He was very vexed at this, for he had wooed Melior in Rome.

þan þemperoures sone of grece · was a-greued sore,
whanne he wist on þe morwe · þe mariage schuld bene,
for he wend hire haue wedded · whilom in rome.

He would have liked to win Melior by force.

& þeiȝh he wist william · his nobul newe þanne,
hade he had his ost · he wold [haue] a-saide þere
to haue with stoteye & strengþe · stoutli hire wonne.

But as he saw it could not be, he

but sei he soþli · so miȝt it nouȝt bene,
ac suffer he most · þouh it him sore rewed,

[1] These two lines, 4978 and 4979, follow line 4987 in the MS.; but are evidently out of place there, and must be inserted here.

& semblant made he sobur · so as it him paide,
but i hote þe in hert · it liked him wel ille.
þann william and his moder · & meliors als,
& alphouns anon riȝt · of alisaundrine toched,
to marie here menskfulli · a-mong hem riȝt þanne.
& so þei touched hem be-twene · to tele þe soþe,
þat braundnis alphouns broþer · schuld be hire make,
þe kinges sone of spayne · þat comsed alle þe werre.
& he at his fader hest · hit þanne graunted,
& at þe bidding of his broþer · & williams hest.
þan driue þei forþ þe day · in dedut & in murþe,
& haden holli at wille · what hem haue nedede,
& seþþe to bedde uche burn · busked him þat time.
but on þe morwe manli · to mene þe soþe,
Men miȝt haue seie of segges · many on greiȝed,[1]
In þe worþiest wise · þat seien were euere,
seþþe he þat vs bouȝt · in bemleem was bore.
alle þe clerkes vnder god · couþe nouȝt descriue
a-redili to þe riȝtes · þe realte of þat day,
þat was in þat cite · for þat solempne fest,
& of alle men þat manerli · miȝt ouȝt gete
of any god gaili · to greiþe hem midde.
to munge of menstracie · it miȝt nouȝt be aymed,
so many maner minstracie · at þat mariage were,
þat whan þei made here menstracie · eche man wende,
þat heuen hastili & erþe · schuld hurtel to-gader,
so desgeli it denede · þat al þerþe quakede.
þe stretis were alle strewed · & stoutli be-honged,
with gode cloþes of gold · of alle gay hewes ;
& burgeys with here burdes · in here best wise,
weyteden out at windowes · eche weie a-boute,
to prie on þe puple · þat priked in þe stretes,
& to loke on here lord · þat lelli þan schold
be krowned king on þat day · to kepe al þat reaume.

appeared to be pleased, though grieved at heart.

William and the rest wished to find a husband for Alexandrine,

and thought that Braundnis, prince of Spain, would suit her.

Braundnis agrees to this.

They pass the day merrily till bedtime.

Next day, all were seen in their finest attire.

Not all the clerks could describe the royalty of that day,

[Fol. 78 b.]

nor tell of the minstrelsy at the marriage.

The minstrelsy dinned so that the earth quaked.

The streets were strewn with cloth of gold.

[1] "greiþed" (?)

But when the time came for the brides to go to church, their attire was past description.

But trewþe now for to telle · whan time come of daye,
þat þe blisful brides · schold buske to cherche,
of here a-tir for to telle · to badde is my witte,
for alle þe men vpo*n* mold · ne miȝt it descriue
a-redili to þe riȝtes · so riche it were alle.

There were kings and queens and lords, with horses and "harness."

boþe kinges & quenes · & oþer kud lordes,
*per*teli in alle a-paraile · pursewend þurth-oute,
of hors & harneys · & þat hem haue neded,
so þat non miȝt be amended · a mite worþ, for soþe;
as eche gom in his degre · godliche ouȝt.
for-þi no more of þat mater · nel ich mi*n*ge noþe,
but touche forþ of þe tale · as telleþ þe gest.

The emperor of Rome led Florence, William's sister.

whan þe burnes were boun · to buske to chirche,
þempe*r*our of rome · will*i*ams suster ladde,
þilke þat alphou*n*s · schold to wiue weld.

The king of Spain led Melior.

& þe kud king of spayne · curtesli & faire,
ladde meliors menskfulli · a-mong alle þe puple.

Partenedon led Alexandrine.

þe quenes broþ*er* of palerne · partenedon þe bold
alisau*n*drine at þat time · auenau*n*tli ladde.
al with blisse on here blonkes · þei busked to chirche,
with alle þe m*ur*þe vpo*n* mold · þat man miȝt of þenk.[1]

[Fol. 79.] The clergy met them in procession, and gave William the cross to kiss.

þe clergie com hem[2] a-ȝens · riȝt gailiche a-tyred,
ful pertliche on p*r*ocession · prestli as þei ouȝt,
& komen to here king · & dede him þe croyce kesse.
þan with worchip & wele · went to þe cherche,

The patriarchs and prelates were soon apparelled,

þe patriarkes & oþer p*r*elates · prestli were reuested,
to make þe mariage · menskfulli as it ouȝt.
& after þe lawe of þe lond · lelliche to telle,

and the couples were wedded.

þei were þer wedded · worchipfulli and fayre.
& lelli, for alisau*n*drines lord · ne hade non londes,

Towns, countries, and castles are given to Alexandrine's husband.

þer were tit ȝif hem to · treuli fele townes,
comli castelles and couþ · and cuntres wide,
to liue wiþ worchip & wele · i*n* world al here liue.

No clerk could describe the mirth.

no clerk vnder crist · ne kowþe nouȝt descriue
þe murthe for þat mariage · þat was maked þanne,

[1] Catchword—"þe clergie." [2] MS. "him." Read "hem."—M.

þe richesse ne þe riaulte · to rekene þe soþe,
ne þe solempne seruise · þat seyn was þat time.
but whan þe seruise was seid · as it schold bene, — The service ended,
þat fel to a mariage · be-maked at cherche,
þat puple prestli aȝen · to þe paleys wente
wiþ al þe murþe of menstracye · þat man miȝt on þenk.
& treuli whan time was · þei turned to mete, — they returned to the palace, and went to meat.
& serued were as selcouþli · as hem-self wolde
desiren of eny deyntes · of metes & drinkes.
It were toor forto telle · treuli al þe soþe, — It were hard to tell all about the rich feast.
& to reherce þe aray ariȝt · of þat riche feste,
for-þi i leue þis liȝtli · ac leueþ þis for treuþe,
þer miȝt no mon it amende · a mite worþ, i leue.
whan bordes were born a-doun · & burnes hade waschen, — When they had washed after meat, the minstrels received gifts—steeds, robes, gold, and jewels.
Men miȝt haue seie to menstrales · moche god ȝif,
sterne stedes & stef · & ful stoute robes,
Gret garisun of gold · & greiþli gode iuweles.
þe fest of þat mariage · a moneþ fulle lasted, — The feast lasted a month.
& eche day was gret god · giue al a-boute,
to more & to lasse · þat at þe mariage were.
þan lauȝt þe lordes here leue · at þe monþes ende; — [Fol. 79 b.]
partenedon parted first · of palerne þe quenes broþer; — Partenedon was the first to go home;
for he hade ferrest to fare · formest he went.
& william wiþ his wiȝes · went him wiþ on gate,
& semli wiþ alle solas · to þe see him brouȝt,
& his menskful moder · meliors, & his suster.
prestili þe quen of palerne · þan preied hire broþer, — and the queen told him to thank her father.
to grete hire feiþful fader · fele times & ofte,
"& þonk him kindli of þe help · þat he to me sent,
& telle him treuli · as it bi-tidde here."
þan lauȝt þei eche leue at oþer · lelli to telle;
partenedon passed to schepe · & his puple after, — Then Partenedon sailed away to Greece.
& went wiȝtli to saile · þe wind was at þe best,
& saileden wiþ game & gle · to grece til þei come.
þan told he tyt to his fader · treuli þe soþe,

He told his father all the events, how his sister was helped by her son, and Melior married to his nephew.

of fortune þat was falle · fr*a*m comsing to þende.
how his semli suster · was holpen þurth hire sone,
& how þat maide meliors · was wedded þat time,
to his owne neweu · þouȝh it him nouȝt liked.
& whan þemp*er*our hade herde · [holly][1] þo wordes,

The emperor wondered, but was glad his nephew was so peerless,

he was a-wondred gretli · as he wel miȝt,
but glad he was þat his neweu · so nobul was wox,
& p*r*eised so perles · al o*þer* þat he passeþ,
of alle kniȝtes vnder [heuene][2] · þat knowe were þanne.

and that his daughter had been so well aided.

& þat his douȝt*er* of here duresse · was so deliuered,
Gretli he þonked god · of his grete miȝt;
& liued þan in lisse · al his lif after.
but go we now fr*o*m þe gregoyse · & ginne of ano*þer*,
& of þe puple in palerne · how þei passed, telle.

Next, the emperor of Rome went homewards,

Þe real emp*er*our of rome · remewed next aft*er*
redili towardes rome · with al his route nobul.
will*ia*m & his moder · meliors[3] & his suster,

and William and the rest escorted him for five miles.

þe king of spayne & his sones · & here semli puple,
we*n*t wiþ him on gate · wel an fiue myle,
to conueye him curtesli · as kindnesse it wold,
wiþ al þe m*ur*þ vpo*n* mold · þat men miȝt on þenk.
[Fol. 80.]
& as þei went bi þe weie · wittow for soþe,

The emperor advises his daughter, saying,

ful mekli to meliors · þemp*er*our þus saide,
" now, dere douȝt*er*, i þe preie · do bi mi rede.
lok þou bere þe buxu*m*li · & be god & hende,

" Be courteous to all, meek to thy servants, and leal to thy lord.

konnyng & kurtes · to komwne & to grete;
be meke & mercyabul · to men þat þe serue,
and be lel to þi lord · and to þis ladi after,
þat is his menskful moder · & moche þow hire loue.
& alle þe lordes of þis lond · loue wel after,
& loke, douȝt*er*, bi þi lif · as þow me louest dere,
þat neu*er* þe pore porayle · be piled for þi sake,

[1] See l. 246.
[2] Read "vnder *god*," or "vnder *heuene*."—M.
[3] MS. repeats "meliors."

ne taxed to taliage · but tentyfli þow help, 5124 Never let the poor be robbed on thine account,
þat al þis lond be lad · in lawe as it ou3t ;
þan wol al þe pore puple · *prei*e for þe 3erne, and the poor will pray for thee.
to liue long in god liif · & þi lord alse.
stifli loke þow st[r]iue · fo[r] state of holi cherche, 5128 Strive to maintain the church.
to meyntene it manli · on alle man*er* wise.
Gif gretli of þi god · for goddes loue of heuen ;
be m*er*ciabul to alle men · þat in mechef arn ; Be pitiful to all in trouble.
so schaltow gete god los · & gretli be menskked, 5132
as han al þin aunceteres · or þow were bi-geten.
do þus, mi dere dou3t*er* · & drede þow þe neu*er*, Do thus, and thou shalt win the bliss of heaven."
þat þow ne schalt haue heuen blisse · after þis liue."
ful mekli seide meliors · wiþ meling of teres, 5136
"i hope, sire, to heuen king · 3our hest so wirche, Melior, weeping, says she hopes none will ever blame her.
þat no barn þat is born · schal blame mi dedes."
ful tyt after þo tales · þei token here leue,
clipping & kesseng · kurtesli eche oþer. 5140
but þe mournyng þat meliors · made þat time, It were hard to tell how Melior mourned at her father's departure.
for hire fader schold fare · from hire so sone,
treuli it were ful tor · to telle þe soþe.
ac þemp*er*our ful hendeli · held hire in is armes, 5144
& com*f*orted here kindeli · and þe quen preiede But he comforted [Fol. 80 *b*.] her, asking the queen to be kind to her, and to chasten her when she does wrong.
to be meke & merciabule · to meliors his dou3t*er*,
"& cheresche here & chaste · 3if þat chau*n*ce falles,
þat sche wold miswerche · wrongli any time." 5148
"3is, bi crist, sire," quaþ þe quen · "kare nou3t þer- The queen promises, saying she will doubtless always do right.
fore.
i loue hire as miin owne lif · leue þou for soþe,
wel i wot sche wol worche · al-way þe gode. 5151
for-þi here wille schal be wrou3t · what sche wol 3erne
þat sche ne schal want in no wise · what þe hert likes."
þemp*er*our hire þroli þonked · many þousand siþe,
& after þat, anon ri3t · to alisau*n*drine he seide, 5155 The emperor tells Alexandrine that God has not forgotten her.
"God has þe nou3t for-gete · my gode hende mayde;
for worchipfulli artou wedded · to welde a kinges sone.
ful busili i þe bidde · þat burn euer honoure,

& wirche him al þe worchip · in world þatou maye ;
þanne schal eche lud þe loue · & for þi lif preie." 5160

"Your command shall be kept," she replied.

"ȝour hest, sire, schal be holde" · sede alisaundrine þanne,
"so þat ȝe ne schul here · of me nouȝt but gode,
I hope, þurth goddes grace · but gomes on me lye."

Then the emperor took his leave, and went to Rome.

þemperour þan tiȝtli · tok leue of hem alle, 5164
& wendes forþ on his way · wiȝtli to rome,
& liuede þere in liking · a long time after.

We now speak of the Spaniards.

now reste we of romaynes · & reken we ferre,
& speke we of þe spaynols · wil we haue space, 5168
hou þei sped hem to spayne · spacli þer-after.

William and his mother and Melior return to the palace at Palermo.

Whan þe king of palerne · & his perles moder,
& þe meke meliors · his menskful quene,
were come a-ȝe to here court · to carpe þe soþe, 5172
þei passed in-to palerne · to þe paleis riche,
with al þe murþe vpon mold · þat man miȝt of þink.
but on þe morwe manli · to mene þe soþe,

The king of Spain and Braundine and his sons propose to take leave.

þe king of spayne spacli · spac to take leue, 5176
for him & alle his felawchipe · to fare þat time,
boþe him-self & braundine · þat was his bold quene,
[Fol. 81.] & his semli sones boþe · alphouns & his broþer,
& here worþi wiues · þat were alle at onis. 5180

The king of Spain thanks king William.

king william þe king · of spayne þonkes
of al þe faire fordede · þat he hade for hem wrouȝt,[1]
þurh þe grete grace · þat god hade him sent ; 5183
for caire wold þei to here cuntre · & crist him bi-teche.

William is very sorry to lose Alphonse, and says,

whan þe king was war · þei wold nedes wen[d],[2]
Gret sorwe for alphouns sake · sank to his herte,
for he schuld his felawchipe · for-go at þat time. 5187
but whan þat he nedes[3] most · he nam him bi hond,
& seide, siking sore · "now alphouns, swete broþer,

[1] MS. "worouȝt."
[2] MS. "wen nedes." Read "nedes wend."—M.
[3] MS. "nedest."

seþþe þou cairest in-to þi cuntre · to kepe þi reaume,
I bidde þe as buxu*m*li · as broþer schal a-noþer,
ȝif it bi-tide eni time · þat þow tene haue,
with werre or oþer wrong · with eny wiȝt in erþe,
or with þe sori sarazins · schuldest haue to done,
sende to me þi sond · swiþe vpo*n* hast,
& i schal hastili me hiȝe · bi him þat me bouȝt,
to venge þe verali · for ouȝt þat bi-tideþ."
"þe selue, sire, seie i be þe" · seide alphou*n*s þanne,
"sone to come to þi sond · schal þer no*n* me lette."
eiþer þonked oþer · many þousand [1] siþes,
& lauȝt seþe here leue · þouȝh hem loþ were.

"If, Alphonse, thou art ever in trouble, or art assailed by the Saracens,

send a message to me, and I will come and help thee."

"I say the same by thee," said Alphonse;

"nothing shall prevent me from coming to thee."

þanne mekli will*ia*ms moder · & meliors he kissed,
bi-kenned hem to *cri*st · on croyce þat was peyned,
& mekli þe quen þan · to hire douȝter meled,
& kenned hire curtesli · to kepe wel hire mensk,
bad hire be buxu*m* · & wel hire burn loue,
& haue pite on þe pore · & p*re*stli hem help,
& gretliche herie god · & do alle gode dedes.
& sche, sore siking · seide þat sche wold,
sche hoped, þurth goddes grace · & hastli þ*er*-after,
clipping & kessing · to crist þei hem bi-tauȝt.
& spacli þe spaynols · sped hem to schipe;
whan þei were arayde · eche ring,[2] as þei wold,
swiþe þei setten vp sayles · & souȝten on gate
with al maner mu*r*þe · þat man miȝt of þink,
for wind & gode wederes · hade þei at wille;
& spedden hem spacli · til spayne þat þei come.
þan alle þe lordes of þat lond · & oþer lasse & more,
þat were ouȝt worþi · of alle þat wide reaume,
hiȝeden hem to þe hauene · hendeli hem aȝens,
& welcomed him worþili · as þei wel ouȝt;
& of alphou*n*s come · alle were glade.

Then Alphonse kissed William's mother and Melior, and the queen gave Florence good advice.

She, sighing sorely, promised to follow it.

The Spaniards embark, and [Fol. 81 *b*.] sailed away with a fair wind.

The Spanish lords come out to meet them at the haven.

[1] MS. "þousans."
[2] "rink" (?) See l. 5353.

All went on to the palace.
& so al þat puple to þe palays · passede sone,
with al maner m*ur*þe · þat men make couþe.

The king of Spain crowned Alphonse as king, as he himself was very old.
þe king of spayne spacli · to speke þe soþe,
krouned alphou*n*s to king · to kepe þat reaume,
for him-self was febul · & fallen *in* elde,
to liue þ*er*-after in lisse · wil our lord wold.
þus was alphou*n*s þere king · after þat time,
& held a-redili to ri3t · þe riche & þe pore,
so þat eche burn him blessed · bi ni3tes & daie[s].

I now return to William.
of him a-while wol i stint · & of will*ia*m speke,
þe kud king of poyle · þat i of karped ere.

William and his people return to the palace at Palermo.
Spacli as þe spaynols · sped hem to sayle,
will*ia*m with his folk · went wi3tli a3ayne
to paleys of palerne ; · his puple him sewed,
with alle m*ur*þe of menstracie · þat me*n* mi3t on þenk.
þan will*ia*m wi3tli · as a wis king schold,
pes amo*n*g þe puple · he put to þe reaume,

He abolished old bad laws, and kept the good ones, making new ones also.
a-leide alle lu*þer* lawes · þat long hadde ben vsed,
& gart holde þe gode · and gaf mo newe,
þat p*r*ofitabul to þe puple · were p*r*oued & hold ;
so þat neue*r* cristen king · kau3t more loue
þan will*ia*m dede in a wile · wite 3e for soþe.

If he was beloved, Melior was more so.
& 3if he geynli was god · to alle gode werkes,
& wel bi-loued in his lond · with lasse & wiþ more,

[Fol. 82.]
3it was meliors as moche · his menskful quene,
or more 3if sche mi3t · in any maner wise ;
so p*r*estli sche wold plese · þe pore & þe riche.
þan bi-tid it in þat time · to telle þe soþe,

The emperor of Rome died and was buried.
þe riche emp*er*our of rome · ended his daies,
deide, & was be-dolue · as dere god wold.
& alle þe lordes of þat lond · lelli at o sent,

The Roman lords send to William and Melior to come and live in Rome
sent will*ia*m to seie · so as was bi-falle ;
& to meliors his quene · bi messageres nobul,
as to here lege lord · lelli bi ri3t,
þurth meling of þe mariage · of meliors þe schene.

hendli al in hast · þei preiȝed him þider hiȝe.
to vnder-fonge in fee · al þat faire reaume,
& erden in þat empire · as emperour & maister.
whan þe worþi william · wist al þat fare,
& treuli hade vnderston[1] · þe tidinges to þende,
to þe menskful messageres · he made glad chere,
& welcomed worþili · witow for soþe.
naþeles meliors & he · made moche sorwe
for þemperour was forþ-fare · faire to crist.
sone þei cauȝt cumfort · for þis þei knewe boþe,
þat deþ wold come to alle · þat crist hade fourmed,
to emperours & erles · to eche þat lif hadde.
& god þan of his grace · godliche þei þonked,
& seide þei wold his sondes · suffer, & his wille.
but william ful wiȝtli · with-oute any more,
sent as swiþe hise sondes · soþli in-to spayne,
bi messageres milde · þa moche god coupe,
& bid alphouns his broþer · schuld bliue come,
& bring wiþ him his [wif · þat][2] was his worþi suster.
alisaundrine & hire lord · alphouns he bad hem preie,
þat he dede hem com wiþ him · for cas þat miȝt falle,
& his feiþful fader · ȝif he a-liue were.
(ac he was ded & doluen · as dere god wold,
& alphouns held in his hond · holli al þat reaume,
as kinde king krowned · þurth cunseil of his peres).
& whan þe menskful messangers · here message wisten,
& hade letteres of here lord · to lelen here sawes,
þei went wiȝtli in here way · with-oute any more,
& sped hem in-to spayne · spacli in a while,
& to þe kud king alphouns · kiþed here arnd.

as emperor and empress.

He and Melior make the messengers good cheer,

but are sorry to hear of the emperor's death.

William sends messengers to Spain to Alphonse,

asking him to come with Florence and Alexandrine and her lord and the old king.

(But the old king was dead and buried.)

[Fol. 82 *b*.]

The messenger soon arrived in Spain.

Whan[3] alphouns witerli · wist of here wille,
þat þe riche emperour of rome · was redeli god bitauȝt,

When Alphonse knew his brother-in-law was to be emperor of Rome.

[1] See the note.

[2] Read "his *wif that* was."—M.

[3] The capital W is mis-written M.

he was very glad,
þat his buxum broþer · schuld be lord þere-after,
he was gretli glad · and oft god þonked,
& marie his moder · þat him swiche grace sente ;
and summoned his lords to get ready.
& swiþe lett of-sende · alle his segges nobul,
after alle þe lordes of þat lond · þe lasse & þe more,
& oþer perles puple · him prestili to serue.
whan þei gaili were greiþ · as hem god þouȝt,
þei passeden toward palern · as fast as þei miȝt,
Alphonse and Melior, Braundinis and Alexandrine come to Palermo.
alphouns & his worþi wif · williams sister,
& braundinis his bold broþer · & alisaundrine his wif,
wiþ hundredes of kene kniȝtes · i knew nouȝt þe names.
& redili whan þei were come · þer þei ariue schuld,
william wiþ his wiȝes · went hem aȝens.
The great joy of William and Alphonse at their meeting.
but no man vpon mold · miȝt telle þe ioye
þat þe bold breþeren · bi-tweyne [hem] [1] made,
william & alphouns · whan þei mette samen,
& wiþ his semli sister · seþþen sone þer-after,
& wiþ his oþer broþer · braundinis þe bolde,
& after wiþ alysaundrine · & alle oþer seþþe ;
All go to Palermo and make merry for a week.
þat prestili with al þat puple · to palerne þei went,
& made hem þer as merie · as man miȝt deuise,
wiþ alle derworþe deinteyes · of drynkes & metes.
& þus þat perles puple · in palerne hem rested
sadli al a seuen niȝt · hem-seluen to ese.
& bi þat eche burn · on his best wise
[Fol. 83.] When all were ready, William set out for Rome,
was purueyed prestli · of al þat hem neded,
& william þat worþi king · was þan wiȝtli ȝare,
wiþ al his real route · remewed toward rome,
þan made he his moder · be menskfully greiþed,
providing rich apparel for Melior and his sister and mother.
Mid him & meliors his quen · in murþe to wende,
& wiþ his semli sister · to solas here hertes.
þan wiþ al his real route · he rides on gate,
Redili to-wardes rome þo · riȝtes gates,
with al maner murþe · þat men miȝt on þenk.
& as þei caired ouer cuntre · & come neiȝ rome,

[1] Read "bi tweyne *hem* made."—M.

þer com him a-ʒens · of kinges & oþer grete
þe fairest ferde of folk · þat euer bi-fore was seie ;
no man vpon molde · miʒt ayme þe noumber.
& worchipfulli þei welcomed · william here lorde,
& al his [1] freli felawchip · freli þei gret,
& receyued hem as realy · as any rinkes miʒt ;
Riden riʒt in-to rome · with reaulte and murþe.
ac no tonge ne may þe atir · of þe cite telle,
so richeli was al araied · in rome for his come.
þe prelates on procession · prestili out comen,
& alle þe belles in burw · busili were runge,
for ioye þat here lege lord · his lordchip schuld take.
þan passed al þat puple · to þe paleys euene,
& eche man was esed · euenli at wille,
wanted hem no þing · þat þei haue wold,
for plente to al þe puple · was purueide at þe fulle.
& on þe morw at masse · to munge þe soþe,
william with al his worchip · emperour was maked,
& meliors his comli quen · was crouned emperice.
þer nis no clerk vnder crist · þat couþe half descriue
þe reaulte þat was araied · in rome for þat fest,
Ne þe tiþedel of hire atir · to telle þe riʒt,
for al þe men vpon mold · it amende ne miʒt,
nouʒt þat fel to swiche a fest · forsoþe, half a mite.
for-þi wende i wol a while · wite ʒe for soþe,
to reherce þe aray · of þe real fest,
& telle forþer of þis tale · what tidde after.

On nearing Rome, kings and nobles come forth to meet them.

All ride to Rome, and find the city richly decked out.

The prelates meet them in procession, and the bells are rung.

Next day, at mass, William is crowned emperor, and Melior empress.

Never was a more royal festival.

[Fol. 83 *b*.]

Fulle fiftene daies · þat fest was holden,
wiþ al þe realte of rome · þat euer [2] rink of herde.
no tong miʒt telle · þe twentiþe parte
of þe mede to menstrales · þat mene time was ʒeue,
of robes wiþ riche pane · & oþer richesse grete,
sterne stedes & strong · & oþer stoute ʒiftes,

The feast lasted fifteen days.

The minstrels had presents of rich robes and steeds.

[1] MS. "hes."

[2] MS. "euer i ;" but see l. 4232.

so þat eche man þer-mide · miȝt hold him a-paied.
The feast ended, William sent for the cowherd.
& er þe fest fulli · was fare to þe ende,
will*ia*m þemp*er*our · þat newe was crouned,
as a curteys king · on þe kowherd þouȝt,
þat him hade fostered · to-fore, seuen ȝere;
& sent sone after him · & his semli wiue.
He asks the cowherd if he knows him.
& whan þe kowherde kom · þe king to him saide,
"sire kowherde, knowestow me ouȝt · so þe crist help?"
þe kowherd kneled sone · & karped þese wordes,
"Yes, by your leave, you were as my son for seven years."
"ȝa! lord, wiþ ȝour leue · ful litel i ȝou knewe.
I fostered ȝou on mi flet · for soþe, as me þinkeþ,
& seide ȝe were my sone · seuen ȝer and more.
þe riche emp*er*our of rome · þat regned here þat time,
wan ȝou fro me a-wei · wo was me þer-fore.
Praised be God, who hath preserved you from poverty."
but heriȝed be þe hiȝe king · ȝou þus haþ holpe,
& pult ȝou to þis pliȝt · fram pouert eu*er*-more!"
will*ia*m þe worþi emp*er*our · ful wiȝtli þus saide,
"True, you fostered me, and shall lose nothing by it."
"bi crist, sire, þou hast seid · al þe soþe euene;
þou me fostredes ful faire · as fel for þin astate,
& bi our lord, as i leue · þat schaltou lese neu*er*!"
anon þan het he in hast · do him forto come
William sends for his steward, and gives the cowherd a fair castle
his stiward wiþ-oute stint · to stiȝtli alle his londes,
& bi-fore kud kniȝtes · and oþer kene lordes,
he ȝaf to þe kowherde · a kastel ful nobul,
þe fairest vpo*n* fold · þat euer freke seie,
[Fol. 84.]
& best set to þe siȝt · him-selue to kepe;
and a "tidy" earldom,
and al þat touched þer · to a tidi erldome,
to þe kowherd & his wif · þe king ȝaf þat time,
as freli as eni freke · for euer couþe deuise.
and bade the castle-stewards see that men were obedient to the cowherd's command.
& hastili het eche a baili · þat hade it to kepe,
to do eche burn be buxu*m* · bi niȝtes & daie[s],[1]
to þe cowherdes comau*n*deme*n*t · as to here kinde lord,
as þei louede here liues · neu*er* to lette his wille;

[1] MS. "daie;" but "daies" is better; see l. 5490.

& sent his stiward as swiþe · to sese him þer-inne.
& hastili was his wille wrouȝt · witow for soþe.
þus was þe kowherd out of kare · kindeli holpen,
he & his wilsum wif · wel to liuen for euer.
of þe kinde couherde · now nel i telle no more,
but lete him in his blisse · & his burde alse,
& touche we ferre · as þis tale forþeres.

Thus were the cowherd and his wife saved from the hardship of poverty.

Whan þis faire fest was finischid · at þe .xv daies end,
eche a lord ful loueli · his leue gan take
of emperour & emperice · & oft hem þonked
of þe worchip & wele · þat þei hem wrouȝt hadde.
þemperour to þe grete god · ful godli hem bi-tauȝt;
but omage arst of hem alle · hendeli he tok,
Mekli as þe maner is · his men to bi-come,
to com keneli to his kry · as to here kinde lord.
& he ful godly hem þonked · & to god bi-tauȝt,
& þan went þei here way · whider þaim god liked,
eche lord to his owne lond · & lenged þer in blisse.
& king alphouns a-non · after alle were went,
& his worchipful wif · be-fore william comen,
& braundyns his broþer · and alisaundrine his burde;
at emperour & emperice · euereche on at ones
loueli lauȝten here leue · to here lond to wend.
sone þan, soþli to seie · þer was sorwe riue,
whan þat william was war · þat þei wend wold,
Moche mournyng þei made · & meliors alse;
but seþþe it miȝt be no beter · suffer hem be-houed.
william bi þe hond · hent alphouns his broþer,
& neiȝ wepande for wo · wiȝtli þus saide,
" broþer, ȝif it be · bi god þat vs wrouȝt,
I wold it were þi wille · wiþ vs forto lenge,
hit forþinkes me sore · þat we schul de-parte;
but seþe it nel be non oþer · nouȝt for to striue,
I bi-kenne ȝou to krist · þat on croyce was peyned,

The festival ended, each lord went to his own home;

but William first took homage of them all.

Alphonse and Braundinis and their wives took their leave to go home.

William and Melior were much grieved at their departure.
[Fol. 84 b.]

William takes Alphonse by the hand, saying,

"I would thou couldst stay here,

and I pray thee, if any one wars against thee,

&, broþer, i þe bidde bi al · þat euer þow louedest,
ȝif destine falle of ani dede · þat þou to done haue,
þat eny wiȝt wiþ werre · wirche aȝens þi paie,

send to me and I will come to thee."

swiþe send me to say · & sone i come to þe, 5428
þat no liuend lud · schal me lette neuere,
wil me lasteþ þe lif · for loue ne for awe;
til þow be wel wroke · wol i neuer stinte."

"The same say I by thee," replied Alphonse.

"ȝa, blessed be þow, bold broþer" · seide alphouns[1] þan, 5432
þe same sey i be þe · so me wel time!"
feiþfullere frenchipe · saw neuer frek in erþe,
þat more plenerli hem profered · to plese eche oþer,
& to help oþer in hast · ho-so hade nede. 5436

The emperor William's mother tells Florence to love and obey her lord,

þemperours moder william · and meliors alse,
seide to hire douȝter · þe semli quen of spayne,
"loueli douȝter, leue lif · loue þi lord euere,
& be euer busili aboute him · buxumli to serue, 5440
& lede him euer wiþ þi lore · his lond to kepe;
so schaltow lelli be loued · wiþ lasse & wiþ more."

and she promises on her knees to do so.

& sche kneling on here knes · curtesli saide,
sche hoped to heuen king · whil here lif lasted, 5444
to wirche as þei here wissed · with-oute any lette.

They give Alexandrine the same advice, which she says she will follow.

& to alisaundrine a-non · riȝt þei sayde
sadli, in same wise · sche schold hire lord loue;
& sche sore sikande · seide þat sche wold. 5448
& whan þei samen had seide · what hem-self liked,

At last they have to take leave, to the great sorrow of all.

& time was atte laste · atwinne forto de-parte,
[Fol. 85.] þer was siking & sorwe · on boþe sides sadde,
weping & wringinge · for wo at here hertes, 5452
& clippinge and kessing · þei cauȝt eche oþer,
bi-kenned hem to crist · þat on croyce was peyned,
& soute seþe on-sunder · þouȝht hem sore greued.

The king of Spain mounted his horse, and went home with his company.

þe king of spayne spacli · spedde him þan to horse,
& went forþ in is way · wiþ-oute any more; 5457
& al his faire felawchip · folwed him after,

[1] The MS. has "william," an obvious blunder; see l. 5198.

& sped hem þanne spacli · to spayne þat þei come.
þer were þei reali resceyued · as god riȝt it wold,
with alle maner murþe · þat man miȝt on þenke;
& þere þei lenged in lisse · al hire liue after,
& ledden wel þat lond · to gode lawes euere,
so þat eche burn hem blessed · þat euer þei bore were.
of hem of spayne to speke · my speche now i lete,
but lete hem liue in lisse · at oure lordes wille,
of þe riche emperour of rome · redeliche to telle.

They were royally received on their return.

Of the king of Spain I say no more.

Whanne þe king of spayne · spedli was faren,
william with him tok · al his worþi meyne,
& his menskful moder · & here maydenes alle,
& rides þurth þempire of rome · richeli & faire,
to alle solempne cites · & semliche holdes,
to knowe þe kuntres · as a king ouȝt;
lauȝt omage of eche lud · þat longed to þe reaume.
& whan þat dede was don · deliuerli & sone,
Gode lawes þurth his lond · lelly he sette,
& held hem so harde · i hete þe for soþe,
þat robboures ne reuowres · miȝt route none,
þat þei nere hastili hange · or with hors to-drawe.
flatereres & fals men · fram him sone he chased,
Lieres ne losengeres · loued he neuer none,
but tok to him tidely · trewe cunsayl euere,
þat al þe puple for him preide · þe pore & þe riche;
so wisli he wrouȝt · to sauen his reaume.
& ȝif he meke were of maneres · meliors his quene,
was al swiche on hire side · to telle þe tre[w]þe,
so gracious to goddes men · & alle gode werkes,
so pitevows to þe pore · hem prestili to help,
þat eche man hade ioye · to here of here speke,
& busily for hire bede · bi nyȝtes and daies.
& also williams moder · þat menskful quene,
so god was & gracious · to eche gomes paye,
so witty & willeful · to wirche alle gode dedes,

After this William made a progress through his empire,

to know all his countries as a king ought.

He established good laws, so that robbers might soon be hanged or drawn asunder.

Flatterers he chased from him, and loved no liars.

Rich and poor prayed for him.

[Fol. 85 b.]

Melior was so gracious to God's men and to good works,

that all prayed for her.

William's mother was so gracious that all blessed her.

þat eche burn hire blessed · busili euer-more,
& heiȝli preiede to heuen king · to hold here liues.
Then she remembered her dream, that her right arm lay over Rome, and her left over Spain.
þan com here in mynde · at þat mene while,
þat here sweuen was soþ · þat sum time hire mette,
þat here riȝt arm redeli · ouer rome a-teyned,
& lelli here lift arm · laye ouer spayne.
þan wist sche wiȝtli · what it be-tokened,
William was her right arm, and Florence her left arm.
here sone þat regned in rome · here riȝt arme ment ;
þat here der-worþ douȝter · was drawe to spayne,
here lif time to be þere ladi · here left arm schewed.
She thanks God for all her bliss.
God þanked sche godli · of al his grete miȝt,
& his menskful moder · þe milde quen of heuen,
þat out of bale hade hire brouȝt · to blisse so faire.

William and Melior had two sons.
Þus william & his worþi quen · winteres fele,
liueden in liking & lisse · as our lord wolde,
& haden tvo sones samen · ful semliche childeren,
þat seþþen þurth goddes grace · were grete lordes after.
One was emperor of Rome after his father, the other was king of Calabria and Apulia.
þat on was emperour of rome · & regned after his fader,
þat oþer was a kud king · of calabre & poyle ;
& miȝti men & menskful · were þei in here time,
& feiþful as here fader · to fre & to þewe.
So came William to be emperor of Rome after all his hardships.
þus þis worþi william · was emperour of rome,
þat hadde many hard happe · hade þere-bi-fore,
& be in gret baret · and bale sum time ;
of alle bales was he brouȝt · blessed be goddes miȝt !
And so shall all they that seek good prosper.
[Fol. 86.]
& so schal euerich seg · þat secheþ to þe gode,
& giues him in goddes grace · & godliche ay wircheþ.

Thus hath William ended all his work, following the French as well as he could.
In þise wise haþ william · al his werke ended,
as fully as þe frensche · fully wold aske,
& as his witte him wold serue · þouȝh it were febul.
but þouȝh þe metur be nouȝt mad · at eche mannes paye,
The metre is the best he could make.
wite him nouȝt þat it wrouȝt · he wold haue do beter,

ȝif is witte in eny weiȝes · wold him haue serued.
but, faire frendes, for goddes loue · & for ȝour owne mensk, — Fair friends,
ȝe þat liken in loue · swiche þinges to here, 5528 — pray for the good lord who caused this to be done, Humphrey de Bohun, earl of Hereford.
preiȝes[1] for þat gode lord · þat gart þis do make,
þe hende erl of hereford · humfray de boune ;—
þe gode king edwardes douȝter · was his dere moder ;—
he let make þis mater · in þis maner speche, 5532 — He had it done for those who know no French.
for hem þat knowe no frensche · ne neuer vndersto[n].[2]
biddiþ þat blisful burn · þat bouȝt vs on þe rode,
& to his moder marie · of mercy þat is welle,
" ȝif þe lord god lif · wil he in erþe lenges, 5536 — God grant him a good life, and happiness without end after death.
& whan he wendes of þis world · welþe with-oute ende,
to lenge in þat liking ioye · þat lesteþ euer-more."
& god gif alle god grace · þat gladli so biddes, — God give grace to all, and a place in Paradise. Amen.
& pertli in paradis · a place for to haue. Amen. 5540

[1] MS. " preiȝed."
[2] Read " vnderstonde."—M. See note to l. 5262.

þe Gestes of þe worþie King and Emperour, Alisaunder of Macedoine.

Yee þat lengen in londe · Lordes, and ooþer,
Beurnes, or bachelers · þat boldely thinken
Whe þer in werre, or in wo · wightly to dwell,
For to lachen hem loose · in hur lifetime,
Or dere thinken to doo · deedes of armes,
To be proued for *pris* · & prest of hemselue,[1]
Tend yee tytely to mee · & take goode heede.
I shall sigge forsothe · ensaumples ynow
Of one, þe boldest beurn · & best of his deeds,
That euer steede bestrode · or sterne was holden!
Now shall I carp of a King · kid in his time,
þat had londes, & leedes[2] · & lordships feole;[3]
Amyntas þe mightie · was þe man hoten:
Maister of Macedoine · þe marches hee aught,
Bothe feeldes, & frithes · faire all aboute;
Trie towres, & tounes · terme of his life,
And kept þe croune · as a King sholde.
þen this cumlich King · & keene in his time,
Had wedde a wife · as hym well thought,
And long ladden hur life · in lond togeder.
Twoo seemlich sonnes · soone they hadden;
þe alder[4] hight Alisaunder · as I right tell;
And sir Philip forsoothe · his frobroder hight.[5]

[Fol. 1 b.]
Ye lords and others, who seek to acquire praise,
attend all to me.
I shall tell of the best man that ever bestrode steed.
Amyntas was a mighty king of Macedonia.
He wedded a wife, by whom he had two sons;
Alexander the elder son, and Philip.

[1] MS. hymselue, with *e* written above the *y*.
[2] MS. "leethes," with *d* written above the *th*.
[3] MS. "fell," with *feole* written above it.
[4] MS. alder, *with* e *over* a. See note.
[5] Here follows the catchword, "Cas fel, dat dis K."

[Fol. 2.] Case fell, þat this Kyng · as Christe wolde þanne,
Amyntas fell sick and died. Was with siknes of-sought · & soone þer-after,
Hee was graythed to grace · & to God went.
Alexander the eldest son was crowned king, His alder-aldust[1] sonne · þat Alisaunder hight,
Þo was crouned King · to keepe þe reigne.
Well hee ladde þe londe · while hee lyfe hadde,
but soon died. But his term was tint · or it tyme were.
And all þe cause of þis case · I con soone tell;
How hee was doolefully ded · & doone of his life.
His mother Eurydice caused his death. Ðat made his moder þe Queene · þat moste was adouted;
Eurydice hue hight · unkinde of her deedes.
She lusted after her own children. Hue loued so lecherie · & lustes of synne,
þat her chylder hue chase · unchastly to haue.
Alexander refused, and she killed him. For Alisaunder, hur sonne · assent so ne wolde
To fulfill so foule · her fleshlych sinnes,
Hue let kyll þis Kyng · with care at his hert,
In þe formest yere · that hee first reigned.
Thus he departed this life. And ðus lafte hee his life · our Lorde haue his soule!
For a feller in fight · found men seelde,
While him lasted his life · londes to yeeme.[2]
[Fol. 2 b.] Now let wee þis lued · lengen in bliss,
And sithe myng wee more · of þis mery tale.

Many years before this, Philip was fostered and brought up Fel[e] wintres tofore · in his faders life,
Than was Philip þe free · to fosteryng take,
In courte [of an] unkouthe kith · with a King ryche,
That was chuse[3] of þe childe · & choicelich hym kept.
Hee that fostred, & founde · Philip in youthe,
by Epaminondas, king of Thebes. King of Tebes that time · truly was holden,
Epaminondas hee hyght · full hardy to meete.
This king cherished the child well. So hee cherished þe childe · cheefe ouer all,
þat hee was woxen full weele · & wyght of his deede,

[1] An *e* is written above the first *a* in this word.
[2] Catchword—Now let wee dis lued, &c.
[3] A *y* is written above the *u*.

Forto abyde any beurn · in battle, or eles.[1]
When his broder with bale · brought was of life,
Ryght was, þat þis renk · reigned hym after — Philip was now the rightful heir to the crown.
To bee crouned a King · in his right riche,
As maister of Macedoine · amonges þe greate,
For to leade þe lond · as hym leefe thought,
Men to holden of hym · þat hed was of all,
Philip fared him forthe · in a fayre wyse, — He therefore went to Macedonia.
To receiuen his right · & reigne on his londes;
But when þe Lordes of þe lond · lelich wysten
Of hur neew cummen King · þat his kith asketh,
With greate werre þat wonne · þei werned hym soone, — His lords withstood him.
That by force of hur fight · ðei[2] firked hym ðennes,[3]
That hee ne must in his marche · with his menne dwell,
Ne beleue in his lond; · þat liked hym yll.
Whan Philip felt tho folk · so ferse of hur deedes, — [Fol. 3.] Philip returned to Thebes.
Ayen to Tebes hee turned · teenid full sore.
To þe Kyng of this case · hee carped soone,
How hee was kept at his coome · with a keene route,
That hee was faine with his folke · to flee from his owne.
Epaminondas þe King · was carefull in hert, — Epaminondas was wroth,
Till hee were wroken of þe wrong · þat þei wrought hadden.
Hee graythed hym a greate oste · grym to beholde,
And cheued forthe, with þe[4] childe · what chaunse so betide.
So with Philip þe free · hee fared on in haste, — and joined Philip to punish the lords.
To clayme his Kingdome · & catchen þe shrews,
That beraften hym his ryght · with rufull deedes.
Than, shortly to showe · þei sharplich went,
And foughten for Philip · his fone to dustroye, — The Thebans fought for Philip, and discomfited his foes.
Tooke towres, & towne[s] · tamid[5] Knightes,

[1] MS. "oreles."
[2] MS. "dei."
[3] MS. "dennes," *with* thence *above it.*
[4] MS. Dou, as if for "ðou;" but "þe" is written above it.
[5] MS. "tamed," with an *e* over the *a.*

Felled þe falsse folke · ferked[1] hem hard,
With skathe were þei skoumfyt[2] · skape þei ne my*gh*t;
Who-so weldes a wrong · þe worsse hym[3] betides,
For hee,[3] þ*a*t reigneth in ryght · reskueth troth. '88

The lords fled to Athens.

For fere of sir Philip · fledde they all,
And turned tit to a towne · þ*a*t Attanus hyght,
A stiþ stede, & a strong · & straite for to winne,
And kept keenely þ*a*t cost · fro þe Kyng than, 92
That hee ne my*gh*t w*i*th þo menne · medle no while.

The king of Thebes attacked it,

The King of Tebs for teene · targed no leng*er*,
But sought to þe Citie · & a-saute made.

[Fol. 3 b.]

They beseeged it so · on sides aboute, 96

and took it.

That they tooke þe towne · & traytour*es* sleew.
Thus faire Philip, þe free · his fomen awaited,
And thus sought hee his lond · w*i*th lo*ð*elike[4] dynt*es*.

Then was Philip crowned king, 400 years after Rome was built. [B.C. 359; A.U.C. 395.]

Than þ*is* cumly Knight · was crouned soone, 100
Of Macedoine made Kyng · maugre them all.
Fore hundred yere holly · as I here tell,
Sin þe Citie of Roome · sett was in erth,
Philip in his freedam · faire gan dwell, 104
So too reigne on his ry*gh*t · as rink in his owne.

Philip is made king.

Now is hee crouned King · & keeppes his reigne,
And swiþe hardie is hee · happes too fonde.
Now fares *Philip* þe free · too fonden his myght, 108

He defeats the Assyrians [Illyrians].

And attles to þe Assyriens · aunter*es* too seeche;
And nere blynd þe beurn · of battle stern,
Till hee had fenked þe folke · too fare at his wyll,
And wonne þe won · w*i*th werre full keene, 112
Folke to fare w*i*th hy*m* · as hee faine wolde,

They acknowledge him as lord.

To chese*n*[5] hy*m* for cheefe Lorde · & chaunge hy*m* neuer.
Philip full ferslich · in his fyght spedde,
And prooued in his powre · as Prince full noble. 116

Whan hee had so them · hollich ifenked,

[1] MS. seems to have "ferkerd;" see l. 67.
[2] MS. skoumkyt.
[3] See the note on these two words.
[4] MS. lodelike.
[5] MS. chose*n*, *with* e *above* o.

Hee sought too a Citie · full seemely too knowe,
Larissea hy*gh*t, þ*at* helde · full hardie men in,
One þe klenist coste · þ*at* any King aught.
Philip fetches hym folke · & foundes full soone
Too bidden þem battle · & brodes in haste,
For to lache hym as Lorde · þe lond for to haue,
Or deraine it *with* dinte*s* · & deedes of armes.
Ferse were þo folke · & foughten in haste,
Or þei lesen þeir lond · their life for too spill.
Longe lasted þ*at* strife · but lelli too knowe,
By fin force of his fight · P*hilip* it winnes.
Now hath P*hilip* in fy*gh*t · freely wonne
The Citie of Assyriens · w*ith* selkouthe dinte*s*;
And lordship of Larisse · laught too h*is* will;
And intoo Greece hee gose · w*ith* a grim peeple.
Than hee turnes too a towne · Tessalonie it hyght;
And assailes it soone · þe Citie to haue.
Too [sese][2] onely þe towne · or any oþ*er* goodes,
Hee ne nyed it nought · but needely too haue
All þo mightfull menne · þ*at* in þe marche*s* dwelt,
Too bryng at his baner · for bolde þei were,
And a-losed in lond · for leeflich Knighte*s*.
For þ*is* enchesoun hee chused · too chasen hem þ*er*e,
Till þei were at his wyll · as hee wolde ax.
But or hee tooke so their toune · teene gan spring;
Many a dulfull dint · deled þei there.
But all þei were unware · wisly too knowe
Of þ*at* sorowfull asaute · þ*at* they so had;
For hadde þei knowe þe kast · of þe Kyng stern,
They had kept well his cu*mm*e · w*ith* carefull dinte*s*.
þei see no succour · in no syde aboute,
That was come to hur koste · þe king for to lett;
And Philip w*ith* h*is* fresh folke · so fast þem assailes,
That þei gradden hur grip · his grace to haue,
Him to taken þeir toune · & trulich to serue,

He next attacks Larissa.

[Fol. 4.]

The people are fierce, and fight long.

He takes Larissa.

He attacks Thessalonica.

He did not care to rule over the town, but to make the men in it *his*.

It is a hard fight.

[Fol. 4 *b*.]

No one comes to help them.

They capitulate.

[1] MS. holde, *with* e *above* o. [2] See the note.

For to wend at his wyll · whereso hym liked,
And redy to his retainaunce · ry*ght* as hee wolde.

Philip now takes Athens,

Now is Philip full grym · in fyght for to meete,
And many mightfull menne · may *with* hym leade.
Atten*es*, þe trie toune · hee tooke too his wyll,
The folke too fare *with* hym · when hee fonde time.

and the city of Assyria [Illyria].

þe Citie of Assyrie · is sett too his paye,
And all þe beurn*es* in þe borowe · boune too h*is* heste.

So Larissa is his,

The Lordship of Larisse · is lauht too himselue,
Men too cu*mm*e too his crie · & kiþen þeir might.

and Thessalonica.

Tessalonie þe trewe holde · is turned too hym alse,
With all þe weies in þe won · his werre too keepe.
Now is þ*at* peeple full prest · & preeued of strength
For too wirchen his will · & wend at his neede.

Philip is doughty and dreadful.

Philip, for his ferse folke · in fele[1] oþer landes,
Doughtye men douten · for dreedfull hee seeme*s*.
By euery koste, þ*at* hee com · kid was his might,
For when hee medled him moste · þe maistrie hee had.

I next speak of Erubel, King of Molossis.

To profre þ*is* process · prestly too here,
I karp of a kid king · Erubel Arisba was hote;
The Marques of Molosor[2] · menskliche hee aught,
For hee was King of þe kiþ · & knight wel a-losed.

He had a sister,

Hee had a suster in sight · seemely to sonde,
The moste lufsum of life · þ*at* euere lud wyst;

[Fol. 5.] named Olympias.

Olympias þe onorable · ouer all hue hyght.
Rose red was hur rode · full riall of schape:
With large forhed & long · loueliche tresses,

She had golden hair, great gray eyes,

Glisiande as goldwire · growen on length;
Bryght browse ibent · blisfull of chere;
Grete yien, & graie · gracious lippes;
Bothe cheeke*s*, & chinne · choice too beholde;

[1] MS. fale.

[2] MS. Molosor, *with* a's *over the two first* o's; *so in l.* 204. Marques *should perhaps be* marches.

Mouth meete þertoo · moste for too praise.
Hur nose namelich faire · hur necke full scheene;
Schuft shulders aright · well ischaped armes;
Hondes hendely wrought · helplich, sweete;
Faire fyngers unfolde · fetise nailes;
Sides seemely sett · seemlich long.
Hupes had hue faire · & hih was hue þan;
Hur þies all þorou-oute · þristliche ischape,
With likand legges · louely too seene;
And þe fairest feete · þat euer freke kende,
With ton[1] tidily wrought · & tender of hur skinne.
Liliwhite was hur liche · to likne þe beurde;
Where is þer lengged in lond · a Lady so sweete?
Der sprong neuer spicerie · so speciall in erþe,
Ne triacle in his taste · so trie is too knowe,
As that Ladie, with loue · too lachen in armes!

a meet mouth,
well-shaped arms,
fair fingers,
seemly sides,
fair hips,
and the fairest feet.
No spicery or treacle could be sweeter.

Wherfore I carp of þis case · knowe yee may.
Philip þe free king · that ferse was of myght,
For þe beurde so bright was · of blee scheene,
He had his liking ilaide · þat Ladie too wedde.
Too Molosor with his menne · hee meeued in haste,
Craued soone at þe Kyng · þat comelich beurde,
For too welde too his wife · as hee will hadde.
Þe king was full curtais · & ceflich hym grauntes,
For had hee werned[2] þat wyght · wo had hee suffred,
For þat freelich fode · Philip, wolde eles
Haue geten [hire] with grim stroke · of grounden tooles.
þat time thought þe Kyng · to targe no lenger;
But bring þat blisfull · to þe bern soone.
To kyng *Philip* hee comme · as curteis of deede,
And laft hym þe Ladie · to lache at his wyll.
For hee thought on this thing · þroliche[3] in hert,

Philip desires to wed her,
and craves her of her brother.
[Fol. 5 b.]
He dares not refuse Philip.
He brings the lady to Philip.
He thought that,

[1] MS. toze, *with* ton *above*.
[2] Over this word is the gloss—si prohibuisset.
[3] MS. þroliche, *with* c *over the* o.

were Philip his ally,

ȝif hee had too his help · in his hie neede
Of Macedoine þe King · a mighty man holden,
To alie him too þat Lorde · & his loue winne,

none would dare offend him.

Þer shoulde no bydyng bern · so bolde bee in erth,
Too teene hym untruly · term of his reigne ;
Ne to greeue þe gome · for grembe of his help,
The while Philip þe free · hym frendship kid.

But he made a mistake.

Hee was bitraide in his trust · for truly þer-after,

For, after Philip had made her his queen,

When Sir Philip was fare · with þe faire beurde,
And wedded þat wight · with worship & ioye,
To bee Ladie of his land · & his leeue make,
Men to queme hur as Queene · & quiklich hur serue,
Bothe beurdes & bern[es] · boune[1] too hur wyll,

he invades Molossis.

To Molosor with maine · his menne gan hee bryng.
Y-armed at all pointes · þei auntred hem ðider ;
Mani a lud of þe lond · raid hi to grounde,
And many a seemeli segge · sorowe they wrought.
Þei laft for þo þe lond · Lordshipes tooke,

His men seize the cities.

Seseden[2] þe cities · and seemelich tounes,
Keuered hem casteles · þe Kyng too distrie ;
For his susteres sake · cease they nolde,
That hee with werre ne wan · þe won þat hee aught,

[Fol. 6.]

And þe Kyng of his kiþ · with care þei pinte.
And Philip unfaithfully · þe faire coste had,

Eruba

Erubel goes into exile, and continues in sorrow till his death.

Arisba in exile · euer was after,
And neuer comme too his kiþ · but caught was in teene.
With doole dried hee so · his dayes in sorowe,
To hee gaf[3] up his goste · with God for too dwell.

Philip seeks to be feared in all lands.

Of þat carefull kyng · carp I no farre,
But leaue hym in languor · & lysten too more,
How Philip chases as cheefe · chaunces too fonde,[4]
Too bee adouted as deth · in diuers londes.

[1] MS. *seems to have* boane.
[2] MS. ffeseden, *the* eu *being above the line.*
[3] MS. gaue, *with* f *above* ue. [4] MS. fynde, *with* o *over the* y

When he had so hem [hampred · he] hendely fetched
His make too Macedoine · *with* mirthes ynow.
He laught leue at h*is* wife · & laft hur still
For too liue in hur londe · in liking of hert,
That no gome under God · greeuen hur my*ght*.
Ph*ilip* h*is* faire folke · ferselich araies,
Too Greece he gra[i]þes hym now · w*ith* a grete will.
Hee co*mme* too Methone (Comothonham) · full cumlich a place,
Of any borowe best buylt · & bolde menne þere,[1]
One þe hugest holde · & hard for too wynne,
That was in Greece o þe grounde · *grai*þed too stond.
Hee brou*ght* h*is* menne to þe borowe[2] · & bliue it asailes,
With prese of his power · hee profers þem fyght.
Many a cumly Knight · & o*þ*er kid peeple
On euery side was sett · asaute too make.
þough[3] Ph*ilip* fared w*ith* folke · ferefull in fyght,
Litle gained his greefe · for grim thei were,
To warden þeir walles · w*ith* weies ynow.
þat citie wer sure men · sett for too keepe,
With mich riall araie · redy too fight,
With atling of areblast[4] · & archers ryfe.
Well fe*þ*ered flon · floungen aboute,
Grim arowes & graie · w*ith* grounden hede*s*
Wer enforced to flie · her fone for to greeue.
So bolde were in þe borowe · w*ith* balefull strokes,
þat of Philipe*s* folke · fele they slew,
And many mightfull men · maymed hee þere,
þat þe prent of þ*at* prese · passed neuer.
And P*hilip* þe ferse King · foule was maimed ;
A schaft w*ith* a scharp hed · shet[5] oute his yie,
That neuer si*þ*þen forso*þ*e · sawe he therin.
þe grem*þ*e of þo grim folke · glod to his hert,

He takes leave of his wife.

He comes to Methone.

He attacks Methone with his army.

He finds them ready to fight.

[Fol. 6 b.] They vex him with arblasts and arrows.

They slay many of his men.

A shaft shoots out his own eye.

[1] MS. þere, *with* d (*for* ð) *over the* þ. *See the note on* bolde.
[2] MS. *has another* o *above the first* o.
[3] MS. Though, *with* þ *over the* Th.
[4] MS. areblast, *with* i *over it, between the* a *and* r.
[5] MS. shet, *with* o *over the* e.

For his eger enemies · his yie to lese.

He makes a vow to be avenged.

Hee made a uery uow · auenged too beene
Of þat teenefull tach · þat hee tooke þere,
And swore swiftlich his othe · aswage hee ne sholde,
[Fol. 7.] With all þe maine þat hee might · too merken[1] hem care,
For to take þe toune · þough hee teene had,
All þe segges in sight · sorowe too kiþe.

[Fol. 7 b.] Philip enforceth hym now · his folke for to gie ;

He renews the attack fiercely.

Hee rydes thorough-oute þe ronk[2] · araies him neew.
Many mightfull menne · made hee stryue,
With archers & oþer folke · auntred hym nere.
Þei lete flie to þe flocke · ferefull sondes,[3]
Gainus[4] grounden aryght · gonne they dryue,

His men throw stones at the walls from engines, and crack the battlements.

Stones stirred they þo · & stightlich layde
On hur engines full gist[5] · to ungome þe walles.
Þei craked þe cournales · with carefull dyntes,
Þat spedly to-sprong · & spradde beside.
Þe Kyng with his keene ost · coflich fightes,
And kiþes all þat hee can · þe kiþ for to haue ;
Þei [sesen][6] on þe citie · soothe for too tell,

They beat down the walls.

Hur borowe bet so doune · with balefull strokes,
And hemself in þe saute · sorowfully wounded ;
And many a lifeles lud · layed to þe grounde,
Þat þei ne stirred of þe stede · strife for to make.

The citizens surrender.

Hur ȝates ȝeede þei too · & youlden hem soone,
To Philip farde þei forthe · as fenked[7] wightes,
Profred hym þe pris holde · & preies[8] in haste
To deeme what hee doo will · for hur deede yll.

Thus was the city won.

Ðus[9] was þe citie of-sett · & siþþen so wonne ;
But many a balefull beurn · bought it full dere,

[1] Cf. marked *in* l. 932.
[2] MS. rank, *with* o *over the* a.
[3] MS. soundes *or* sonndes.
[4] MS. Gamus.
[5] MS. iust, *with* gist *above it ; and* gist *is marked.*
[6] See note.
[7] *Over* fenked *is the gloss*, uanquisshed.
[8] MS. praies, *with* e *over the* a.
[9] MS. Dus, *with* þ *over the* D.

Komothonham
Or kid Methone · too þe Kyng fell.
In Greece, many a grete toune · grim was of strength, — In Greece were many great towns.
And þe menne of þat marche · misproude were; 312
Thei were so ding of þeir deede · ded[a]in [1] þat they had, — They would let no one govern them.
þat any gome under God · gouern hem sholde.
But as they sayden hemself · and assent made,
þei nere encline to no King · hur kiþ for too gye. 316
They wrought by þeir owne will · & wolde nought — They did as they liked best.
eles,
To seche þem a Souereine[2] · þe Citie to ȝeme.
Farre þen þeir owne folke · fare they nolde,
What lud liked hem best · þe Lordship hee gat,[3] 320 — They elected what chief they pleased.
And on chees for cheefe · & chaunged lome.
All swich cities · þat seemelich were,
Philip fenkes in fyght · & fayled lyte, — Philip conquers them all.
That all Greece hee ne gatt · with his grim werk. 324
In what maner & how · men may i lere, — [Fol. 8.]
þat hee withlich [4] whanne [5] · þe worship of Greece,
To bee holden of hym · holly þe raigne,
For to gye þe gomes · as hym goode thought. 328

Now tell wee of Tebes · that tristy [6] was holde, — I now speak of Thebes.
There as Philip þe free · to fostring dwelt,
How þe ludes of the land · a-losed for gode,
Wer enforced to fight · with hur fone hard. 332
þer turned a-ȝe Tebes · twoo trie places, — The Thebans are attacked by the Lacedæmonians and Phocians.
þe sikerest cities · that any seg wist;
þe Lordship of Lacedemonie · loþed hem than,
And of Phocos þe folke · fast hem assailes. 336 — The war between them is very stern.
þe werre wox [7] in þat won · wonderly stern,

[1] MS. dedin, *with* disdeine *over it.* Cf. l. 584.
[2] MS. Souereine, *with* a *over* ei.
[3] MS. hi þat, *with* ee *over* i, *and* g *over the* þ.
[4] MS. wightly, *with the older spelling* withlich *over it.*
[5] MS. wanne, *with* wh *over the* w. See "Werwolf," l. 2852.
[6] MS. trusty, *with* i *over the* u.
[7] MS. wax, *with* o *over the* a.

And eiþer on hur enemies · egerly wrought.
On a season isett · assembled they boþe,
With all þe maine þat they might · metten ifere;
Araide rinkes aright · reulich smiten,
They fight on foot and on horseback. On foote & on faire horsse · fought þei samme.
Priken[1] on a plaine feelde · preeued Knightes,
Bolde were bore doune · on bothe twoo halues.
The Thebans are vexed at their enemies' fierceness, but are not afraid of them. Of Tebes þe trie folke · wer teened in hert,
For hur ferefull fone · so ferslich spedde,
With wrayth of a woode will · wonde[2] þei nolde,
To riden into the route · rappes to deale.
Steedes stirred of þe stede · strane men under,
And oother folke on hur feete · folowed them after.
The Lacedemonieins · lowe laide were,
And of Phocus folke · feld they also.
The Thebans get the upper hand, and put their foes to a heavy ransom, The Tebenieins teenfully · tooke this oþer,
And to a riche raunson · þe rinkes they putt,
That amounted [to] more · then they might paye,
Or dereine with right · with rede of þemself,
To profer hem as prisoneres · till they payde had,
which they must pay or die. To let loþely þat goode · or hur life tine.
þe companie was carefull · & kest[3] in hur hert,
þat þei þat raunson with right · arere ne might,
Not raising the sum, the Phocians resume the war. þei wer so sorowfull hemself · that summe to rere,
þat þei ne spared þat space · to spenen[4] hur liues.
A proude Knight of þe prese · hur Prince þei made,
Philomelus is chosen their chief. Philomelo[5] þe fell man · was þe freke hote,
þe folke of Phocus too araie · & þe fight ȝeme,
With ludes of Lacedemonie · to leggen on hard;
[Fol. 8 b.] For they kende þe case · & kneew eche one,
They know they must pay or die. But thei prestly payde · that precious summe,
þei sholde leesen hur life · þei þem lothe thought.

[1] *An* e *over the* i. [2] MS. wonde, *with* e *over the* o.
[3] MS. kast, *with* e *over the* a; *also the* e *is marked.*
[4] MS. spend, *with* nen (*marked*) *over the* d.
[5] MS. Philomela, *with* o *over the* a; *see* l. 421.

And ȝif þei ferde [1] to fight · their fone for to nye,
With skathe to bee skoumfit · & askape neuer,
þei wisten all full well · wisly to knowe,
That more dreede þen deth · drie þei ne might;
As goode thought hem go · till they grounde sought,
To meete with hur fomen · & manlich deie,[2]
As bee cowardly killd · for cateles want.
Forthe turned thei tid · hur teene to uenge,
All to lachen or leese · or hur lyfe tine.
Full stoutely with stiff will · þei stirred on hur gate,
To teene þe Tebenieins · þei turned to fight.
þei dradden litle hur deth · & doughtily wrought,
þei putt þem in perril · & prikeden aboute,
þei rought lite of hur life · & laiden on hard;
For fere, ne fantasie · faile they nolde.
þei were so hardie too harm · happes to fonde,
þat þei þat stint at hur stroke · stirred no more;
So þei felden hur fone · by force of her dintes.
For greefe of hur grim stroke · grunt full many,
þat hem rued þe res · þat þei ne rest had,
Whan þei þe bikering abide · with bostefull deedes.
þus Phosus [3] with fyght · felden this oþer;
þei tooken hur tresour · & teened hem sore.
þei of Tebes with teene · turnede fro thanne
Ruefull & redeles · biraft of hur goodes.
In sorowe bene they of-sett · to siken in hert,
ȝif þei ne haue none help · hem [4] to auenge.

Wherefore they prefer to fight.

Better fall than be killed as cowards.

They attack the Thebans recklessly.

They fell their foes by sheer force.

Thus the Phocians win the battle.

The Thebans are rueful, and seek revenge.

For ðis [5] feye folk ðer [5] · so fouli was harmed,
Till þei were wreken of þat wo · wolde þei nought blinne;
To seeche more socour · assented they all.
þe mightie King of Macedoyne · moste was adouted
Of any wight in þe worlde · þei wist þe soothe.

They resolve to seek succour.

[1] MS. farde, *with* e *over the* a.
[2] MS. dye, *with* deie (*marked*) *above it*.
[3] MS. Φosus.
[4] MS. þem.
[5] MS. dis, der; *and so is written* fo.

[Fol. 11.] They go to fetch Philip, and proffer him their allegiance.

To fetch Philip, þe folke · farde in an haste,
And comen ryght to þe kith · þere þe King dwelt,
Besoughten hym of socour · hur Soueraine to bene,
To be Lorde of hur land · þeir lawes to keepe,
Þei to holden of hym · þe hye & the lowe,
With *þat* hee wolde *with* hem · wend in an haste,
Hur enemies egerly · in ernest to meete.

Philip sets out for Thebes, ready to attack the Phocians.

Philip grauntes & gose · graithes his peple,
Til þei to Tebes wer turnd · targe þei nolde.
With his ferefull folke · to Phocus hee rides,
And is wilfull in werk · to wirchen hem care.

The Phocians send for help to Athens.

Folke of Phocus to fere · or the fight comme,
Weren ware of hur werk · & went for help.
Þei armed þe Atteniens · & aunter hem þider,
Strained in stel ger[1] · on steedes of might,

The Lacedæmonians also join them.

With grim graiþed gomes · of Lacedemonie,
All redie araied · to ryden hem till.
Hem lacked a leader · þe ludes to araie,
Hur Prince in þe forme prese · was prened to þe erth,

Philomelus had been slain.

Philomelo þe faire Knight · in þe fight died.
When þei proffred hem prest · & þe þris wonne,
For þei myssed *þat* man · they made hem a neew.

Enomanus [Onomarchus] is chosen leader.

Enoman*us*, an eger Kny*ght* · in erth to fight,
Þei made master of hem · þe menne for too leade,
And busken to battaile · as bostfull in armes,
With a leflich lust · lachte togeder.

He is duke of Phocis.

Of Phocus þe fell Duke · in þe fight rydes;
Enoman*us* þe bolde beurn · þe battle araies,
Hee was chosen for cheefe · in chasing of werre,
Too bee þeir dereworthe Duke · for doughtie hee thou*ght*.

Both sides are ready for battle.

Now beene þe parties prest · to proffren hur dintes,
With baners brode displaide · busken to meete,

[Fol. 11 *b*.] Gurden in goode speede · grislich farde,

[1] MS. stelger.

Bothe blonke*s* & beurn[*es*] · baren to grounde.
Þer was feld many frekes · Þ*a*t on Þe feelde lay,
Euery segge for hymself · bisetten hur might,
Þat many a wounded wy*gh*t · walowed Þere.
But Phi*lip* wi*th* hi*s* wight men · Þe werre gan ȝeme,[1]
Þat by strength of her strife · Þei st*r*aught to foote
All so many as hi*s* menne · mighten areche.
Þus hi*s* peple on Þe plain · all Þe pris[2] wonne,
Þat none stirred of Þe stede · Þere Þei stroke sett.
Þe lude*s* of Lacedemonie · loÞed in hert,
Þat euer Þei stinten in strife · to sterue in Þe place.
Of Phocus Þe ferse men · forthoughten he*m* all,
Þat euer Þei farde to fight · wi*th* Philip Þe keene.
Þus Þis cumlich Kyng · Þ*a*t ilche kith wynnes;
Lorde of Lacedemoine · was Þe lud Þanne,
And Phocus by fin strokes · freelich hee walte,
And hathe all Greece at hi*s* graunte · for hi*s* grete yie.

Many are felled, and wounded wights wallow on the field.

Philip and his men overcome all they can reach.

Both Lacedæmonians and Phocians repent their rashness.

Thus Philip is lord of Lacedæmonia and Phocis.

Now cease wee Þe sawe · of Þis seg sterne,
And of a Kyng wel i-kid · karp wee now,
Þat entred in Ægypt · euer on hi*s* liue,
To leng in Þat Lordeship · & Þe lond aught.
Of what kinne hee co*mm*e · can I nought fynde
In no buke[3] Þ*a*t i bed[4] · when I beganne here
Þe Latine to Þis language · lelliche turne.
Nectanabus Þe noble man · his name was hote,
Þe nede of Nigremauncie · hee nas nought to lern.
In art of Astronomie · able hee was holde,
And cheefe of enchauntment · chaunces to tell.
Hee was [kene] on his craft · & cunnyng of deede,
Egipt by eritage · entred hee neuer;
Hee wanne it by witchcraft · for y-wis hee was knowe.[5]

We now speak of a king of Egypt.

I find nothing about his kindred in any book.

His name was Nectanabus, and he was skilled in necromancy and astronomy.

He did not gain Egypt by inheritance, but by witchcraft.

[1] MS. ȝenn *or* ȝeme; see l. 365.
[2] MS. pris, *with* ce *over the* s.
[3] MS. booke, *with* u *above the* oo.
[4] MS. bed, *with* had *above it.*
[5] See the note.

A prince of Persia comes to Nectanabus, and says,

A proude Prince & a pris · fro Perss [1] was fare,
þat helde of þis hye King · hollich his londes.
To noble Nectanabus · nam he his gate,
And tolde this tydyng · to þe Kyng soone,
[Fol. 12.] How hym was care to cumme · by costes aboute.
"þe Kyng of Perce with prese · of peple full huge
"The king of Persia is going to attack you."
Graithes hym grim folke · & greue ȝou thenketh.[2]
But yee cast at his comme · to keepen hym hence,
Yee shall lose your lond · & your life alsô."

Nectanabus does nothing in defence,

For no care of þis case · þe King in his lond
Kleped[3] no Knighthod · ne no kid peeple,
Hee ne araide no route · þe raigne too keepe,

but secretly fills an earthen pot full of rain-water.

But passed priuily · in place full derne.
A prest erþen pott · hee proferes him till;
Of rain-water ryght full · þe rink gon it dress;
A bright braseyn ȝerd · brode on his hond.

By his craft he sees ships coming, full of armed knights.

And by þe conning of craft · þat hee kid hadde,
Hee sawe saile on þe sea · seemelich Knightes,
Bothe schippes & schoute[s] · with schawes of myght,
Well i-armed, iwis · werre too holde,
þe egerest of Egipt · in ernest too meete.

The prince says, "Sir, I told you the truth.

Whan hee had þat happe · hollich awaited,
þe Prince to þe pris Kyng · prestly saide,
"Sir, I tolde you trouth · trist [4] yee no nooþer,
Yee beene greefly bigo · but grace you falle.

Artaxerxes is coming with nine nations,

Artasarses þe Kyng · & armed Knightes,
Oute of Perce beth prest · passing hider,
With nine grete nations · too nye þee here.

Persians, Parthians, Medians, Syrians,

Perce is þe principall · & Perthe þat ooþer,
Of Medie full mich folke · murder þee think;
Of Syria [a] siker oste · sechen too fight;

[1] MS. Perss, *with* ss *marked, and* ce *above it.*
[2] MS. you thinketh, *with* ȝ *above the* y, *and* e *above the* i.
[3] MS. Kliped, *with* e *above the* i.
[4] MS. trist, *with* u *above the* i.

With menne of Mesopotame · too mark þe teene ; — Mesopotamians,
Of Augmi & Arabes · armed Princes ; — Augmi, Arabians,
Þer beene of Bosorij · beurnes ynow ; — Bosorii, and the
Of Arofagi all men · that armes now welde. — Agriophagi.
Yee bene enforced to fight · with þus fell beurnes,
And ooþer weies of þe weste · werre too make ;
Þis ilk tydyng of teene · trowe yee mowe,[1] — Trust these
And but yee bett beene araide · bale you springeth." — tidings, and beware!"

Nectanabus anonne right · nyed hym tyll, — Nectanabus
And gleming gainelich · too þe gome saide — — replies,
"Keepe well thyne owne koste · þat þei no komme — [Fol. 12 b.]
ðare,[2] — "Take care of
Þat is take too þee · truly too ȝeme. — your own lands.
Þou kiþes no Knighthod · too karp as a Prince, — You do not speak
But as a gome wer agast · þou grendes thy speeche. — like a prince.
Þei ðei[3] turn such teene · this time hider, — Though they try
With all þe might of hur maine · mee too distroie, — to destroy me,
Þe uertue of il uictorie · of unwele peeple, — victory is not on
Is noght stabled in strength · of no stiff prese. — the side of strength.
Thorou graunte of þe greate God · if him goode thinkes, — By God's help,
In fight or in fell turn · ðer[4] as flight is of dintes,
In battail or bolde stede · bigly too wirch,
As mich may a meane man · as a more stern, — a mean man may
For þou seeste well thiself · (saide þe king þan), — do as much as a sterner one.
A Lioun in a launde · may lightlych driue — A lion can drive a
Of hertes an holle herde · as happes ilome[5] ; — whole herd of harts.
For no strength, ne strife · no stifnes of members, — Strength is from
But as gracious Godde · grauntes too beene." — God only."

Anon as Nectanabus · had namned þese wordes, — Nectanabus goes
Hee passed in his Paleis · too a priuie sell, — to a secret cell.
Hee tooke prestly a pott · too preeue yet more.

[1] MS. may, *with* owe *above* ay. [2] MS. dare, *with* þ *above* d.
[3] MS. der, *for* ðer ; *but we must read* ðei.
[4] MS. der, *with* þ *above the* d. [5] *Before and above* i *is* wh.

He makes ships of wax, and puts rain-water in a pot.

Hee wraught shipps of wax · & rain-water hentes ;
Hee puttes it in þe pott · & a palme braunche
Hee helde hard in his hond · & his art kipes ;[1]
With all þe wyle of his werk · þe waie gon enchaunte,

By his sorcery, he sees the god of Barbary floating in the sea,

By segging of sorsery · þat hee sei[2] þere
Fleete in þe floode · farre fro þe lond,
Of Barbre þe bryght God · brem too beholde;

and the god of Egypt sailing there too.

þe gaye God of Egipt · glisiande bright,
So sailed in þe sea · in that same tyme.
Hee bihelde how þe God · þat heried was in Barbre
Gouerned hur goodes · by grace of his myght.

He sees the god of Barbary will not let the people help him.

þe seg sei[2] well himself · þat socour him fayles,
For no grace hur grete God · graunt ne[3] might ;
Of hem hoped hee help · too haue at his neede,
But hee kneew by that kast · þei kouth noght help.

He shaves off hair and beard, doffs his armour, and dons white sendal.

þe beurn for a barbour · bliue let send,
His berd, heire, & his hedde · hett hee too schaue.
Hee cast of his Knightweede · & clopes hym neew,
With white sendal in syght · seemely too knowe,

[Fol. 13.]

Of gold swith gret won · graithes hee þanne ;[4]

His gold and instruments of astronomy he packs up,

All that Astronomie · aught too long,
With ginnes of Gemetrie · too ioinen his werkes,
Hee let trusse full tid · & takes nomore,
But fares with few folke · farre fro þe londe.

and passes into Ethiopia, and lives there.

Hee passes as a Prophet · priuely þanne
Fro Egipt till Ethiope · & eft on his gate.
þere hee lenged in þat land · as a lud straunge
Men kneew hym for no king · kunnyng hee seemes.

When his men cannot find him, they pray to their god Seraphin. [Serapis.]

Whan his menskfull menne · might nought fynde
Hur ked King in Egipt · carefull þei were.
To hur God Seraphin · þe gomes gon all
Koure doune on hur knees · [&] karpen þese wordes.

[1] MS. kipes, *with* ee *above the* i. *A* p *is often (in copies) written by mistake instead of* þ.

[2] MS. sei, *with* aw *above* ei.

[3] *An* o *is written above the* e.

[4] MS. danne.

"Seemely Seraphin" · saide they thanne,
"Tell us sum tydyng · of our true Prince,
Noble Nectanabus · that now is awaye!"
Hur God grathliche spake · & too þe gomes saide,
"Kares[1] nought for your Kyng · þis kith hath hee lete,
For peril of þe proude Kyng · from Perce þat wendes;
Hee shall hye hym againe · & help you faire,
And schend þem schamelich · þat sholde you greue."
Of þis swift answer · þei wer swith glad,
And graueden a greate ston · a God as it were,
I-corue after a Kyng · full craftie of werk.
þe frekes in that faire ston · at his feete soone
Let write euery worde · wisly too knowe,
That Seraphin þat Soueraine · saide hem till,
In mynde that more folke · myght it arede.

"Seraphin, tell us news of Nectanabus!"
The god replies, "He has gone away for fear of the Persians.
He will come again."
They were glad, and carved a god of stone,
at whose feet they wrote every word that Seraphin had said.

Now nolde Nectanabus · no while dwell,
Too þe Courte of þe Kyng · till hee comme were,
Too looke on Olympias · þe onorable Queene,
þat was alosed in lond · of diueres raignes,
For one þe brightest of blee · þat bore was in erth.
Whan þe seg had seene · that seemely Ladie,
Too greete that gracious · hee gose in a haste,
Hee cummes too þat comely · & coflich saide:
"Haile! quemfull Queene · quaintly shape!
Moste of all Macedoine · menskfull Ladie!"
Hee was dedaine on his deede · "Madame" too segge
Too any Ladie in lond · for lordlich hee karpes.
þe Queene quitt hym his speche · & quikly saide,
"Maister, welcome, ywis · will[e] yee sitte?"
þe Ladie laches þis lude · & ledes in hand;
By hur side þat seg · too sitten hue makes.
þat worthlych too þis wight · wilsfully saide:
"Fro what kith bee yee comme · kennes mee now;
Ert þou aught of Egipt · in ernest too tell?"

Soon after, Nectanabus goes to Philip's court to see Olympias.
He greets her, saying,
[Fol. 13 *b*.]
"Hail! gracious *Lady!*" For he would not say "Madame."
The queen says, "Master, welcome!
whence do you come? From Egypt?"

[1] MS. Kare, *with* s *above the* e.

"Queen, you please me. I am glad when I hear of Egypt.

"Quene," saide hee quikly · "þou quemest my hert;
A full speciall speeche · spoken yee haue.
Where euer menne saye 'Egipt' · myne eres ar prest,
For þat wortlich[1] worde · waketh my bliss.

The men of Egypt understand dreams, and the language of birds.

It is a Knightly kith · & kid men inne,
Of any wight*es* in wonne · wysest i-holde.
Þei bene rink*es* aright · in reching of sweuen*es*,
Too preeue mich priuie thyng · & pypyng of bird*es*.
Þe ludene[2] of þat language · lelli þei knowe,
And bothe of burd*es* & bern[*es*] · þe burth too tell.

I am an Egyptian prophet."

I am a lude of þat lond · lered therin,
Too preche as a Prophet · preeued of witt."
When hee þese tales her till · had tolde soone,
Þe face of þat faire thyng · fast hee beholdes.

"Tell me what thrilled thy thought at seeing me?"

"Lude," saide þe Lady · "let mee iknowe
What thing thurlude thy thou*ght* · þo þou mee bihelde?'
"Forsoothe," saide that seg · "seemely Queene,

"A bright god hath sent me to save thee from sorrow."

I segge, God sent mee · too saue thee now,
For too waste thy wo · w*ith* wille þat I owe.
Thorou bone[3] of a bright God · busked I hider,
Too defend fro doole þee · dereworth Queene."

[Fol. 14.]

Whan hee w*ith* speede had spoke · his speche to þe end,

He fetches a brass tablet set in ivory, and decked with gold and silver.

A brem brasen borde · bring*es* hee soone,
Imped in iuory · too incle þe truthe,
With goode siluer & golde · gailich atired.
In this blisfull borde · beholde men myght

Three circles were set in it. In the first were the twelve signs of the Zodiac.

Three circles isett · seemelich rounde.
Þe first cirkle in himself · seemely was holde,
Þe twelue signes in sight · sett þerin.
If any wight in this wonne · wilnes þem knowe,
Kairus to þe Kalender · & kenne yee may.

In the second was

Sithen in þe seconde circle · soothely too lere,

[1] MS. worclich. Cf. l. 1024. [2] MS. lude ne.
[3] MS. bone, *with a second* o *above the* o.

Was craftely conteined · þe course of þe sonne ; — the course of the sun.
And þe mark of þe moone · made in þe third, — In the third, that of the moon.
Þat bliss was for a beurn · *þat* borde too biholde.
Þan fette*s* hee a forcer · freelich ischape, — Then he fetched an ivory box,
Þat wraught was of iuory · wonderly faire ;
Seuin sterre*s* *þat* stounde · stoutlich imaked, — with seven shining stars in it,
Hee showes forthe scheenely · shynand bright.
Þe bern couth þerby · boldely tell, — by which he knew a man's birth-hour.
When a gome were igett · by grace of his witt.
Foure stones in fath [1] · forthe gon hee bryng, — He chose four stones, belonging to planets.
Þat lay longyng · too the louelich sterres ;
Many thinge*s* of man · myght hee showe,
By studie [2] of þe stones · in what state hee were.
" Maiſter," quath þe Queene · " quainte of thy werke*s*, — " Master," said she, " when was my dear lord born ? "
If þee liketh *þat* I leeue · thy lufsum deedes,
Tell mee tidly þe time · & term of þe ȝeres,
In what daie my dere Lorde · *þat* douhti is holde,
Was iborne of þe burd · *þat* hee best loued ? "
Þe King by his kunnyng · caste*s* it soone ;
By ginnes of Gemetrie · hee ioifully telle*s*
Bothe þe date, & þe daie · & þe dere tyme, — He told her the date and the day.
Þat Philip was forth brou*ght* · of his faire mooder.
Whan this rink had arad · & redely showed, — [Fol. 14 *b*.]
All þe burth of þe bern · by his art one,
" Ladie," saide hee, " louelyche · liketh þee au*ght* ele*s*, — He asks if she would know aught else ?
Þat I shoolde þee showe · in a short time ? "
" Maiſter," saide *þat* menskfull · " mee likes too knowe,
What Philip my free lorde · *þat* fairest of londe, — She asks what Philip will do to her ;
Wil wirch by mee ? · for weies mee tolde,
Hee wyll forsake mee soone · & seeche hym a neew, — for she has heard he will forsake her.
Whan hee is cu*mme* too *þis* kith · too kithe mee sorowe."——

For yee ne haue no*ght* i-herd · holly þe wrath, — (As you have not heard Philip's cause for wrath, I tell you *now*.
By what cause þe Kyng · coueted in hert

[1] *Sic.* Read " feiþ." [2] MS. studie, *with* i *above the* u.

Too loþe this Ladie · mee list you tell.
As Philip farde to fight · in a ferce place,
Once Philip went to the temple of Ammon, and said,
Hee turned too a te*m*ple · atired too-right*es*, 660
His grete God Amon · grates too ȝelde ;
Hee kneeles coflich adoune · & kries hym till,
"What will happen to Olympias?"
And saide, "Seemely God · send mee too knowe,
Of onorable Olympias · þ*at* I on think, 664
What shall hur happe to haue · þ*at* hende is of deede?"
His God gaue an ansuer · & too þe gome saide,
"She will have a child, the greatest man on earth.
"Hur chaunce is too haue a childe · þ*at* cheefe shall in erth
Of any lud*es* þ*at* liue · in Lordship wex. 668
He will not be thine."
þe bern shall not bee ðine[1] · bolde þo þou seeme,
But geten of a-nooþer gome · in þ*at* gaye burde."
Therefore was Philip wrathful against her.)
þen was þe King carefull · & kest[2] for wrath
For too bring þ*at* beurde · in baile for euer. 672
Menne tolde this tydyng · too þe true Queene,
þerfore hur lyked þ*at* lud · his lore too knowe.——

"Now," saide Nectanabus · anon too þe Lady, 675
Nectanabus answers, "It is uncertain.
"þe sawe þ*at* þou haste saide · uncertain is founde ;
But ðei[3] þou ne hap no*ght* yet · too haue þ*at* sorowe,
þ*at* fere shall bifall þee · w*ith*in few yeres.[4]
[Fol. 15.] Whan Philip in his foule will · hathe þee for-lete,
When Philip has forsaken you, he will have to take you back again."
Maugre his malice · or his menne sterne, 680
Him tides to take þee aȝain · trowe þou no nooder."
"Maister," q*uod* þe Queene · "queme yee me might,
"Who will be so bold as to make him do so?"
Of this unkouth case · too karp þe soothe.
When Philip þe ferefull · forsake mee thynk*es*, 684
Who durst bee so bolde · þ*at* bides in erth,
Too make hym, maugre his menne · mee for too take?"
þus saide þe seg · "Such one I knowe ;
"A god shall
A God þ*at* is gracious · & grete of his myght 688

[1] MS. þine; *but above the* þ *is a* ð *without the cross stroke.*
[2] *Over the* e *in* kest *is* a.
[3] MS. dei, *with* though *above it as a gloss.*
[4] Catchword—Whan Phelip.

Shall busk too thy borde bed · by þee too ligge, — come to thy bed,
And fro this harmfull happe · help þee faire." — and thus shalt thou have help."
Þe Ladie full louely · of þe lud askes,
"Which dereworthe dright · desires mee too haue?" — "What god will that be?"
Þis King carpes anon · & cofly saide,
"Hee is noght yonge of his yeres · þat yernes þee take, — "He is neither old nor young.
Noþer olde of his age · but onely too showe,
In a meane maner · mightfull hee seemes.
Hee hath hye on his hed · hornes of syluer, — On his head are silver horns.
With golde gailye begonne · glisiing bright,
With here on his hedde · & his berd also.
Hee wyll nye [þee] too-night · & neede þee bihooues — He will be nigh thee to-night."
Bee full prest too his paie · & profer þee faire."
"Ȝif I may trowe thy tale · trulich," hue saide, — "If it comes true,
"I shall hilich [þee] herie · with hert and wyll, — I shall not praise thee as a prophet,
Noght praise þee as a Prophet · þat passeth in londe,
But as a gracious Godde · greate I þee thynk, — but greet thee as a god."
And bileeue on thy lore · all my lifetime."

Þan nolde Nectanabus · no lenger abide, — Nectanabus goes alone to gather
But gothe too a greene grounde · þere grases wer sett; — worts,
Farre fro þe Paleis · hee fares all alone,
And laches in a launde · full louely wortes.
Hee grindes hem grathly · & gripes in honde,
Hee wringes oute þe wet wus · and went on his gate. — [Fol. 15 b.]
Hee passed intoo þe Paleis · in a preeuy wyse. — and wrings out of them the wet
When it dreew too þe derk · & þe daie slaked, — ooze.
Þe burd busked too bedde · & brought was on slepe, — At dusk, Olympias goes to bed.
Þis King with his conning · kithes his werkes,
With wiles of witchcraft · & wicked deedes,
Þat by fauour of þe fende · & his foule craftes
Hee grathes hym as a God · & gothe too þe burde; — Nectanabus arrays himself as a god.
As hue slumbred on slepe · slilich hee wendes,
And lyeth by þat Ladie · þat louely was holde.
When hee his will had wraught · hee wendes in haste, — and goes to her, and soon returns.
And straihte oute of þe stede · with a stiff wyll.

She awakes in wonder.

Þan þe burde in her bed · braide of hur slepe,
And whan shee wakyng was · shee wondred in hert.

She had dreamt of Ammon, with silver horns and face like a burning coal.

Hue mett on þe midnight · of mirth full riue,[1]
Þat grete God Amon · gan þiþer wend,
And had seemelich isett · siluern hornes,
And bright blased his blee · as a brend glede.
Þen was Amon ywis · of worship a-losed,
And igrett for a God · gretest in lond.

Ammon was a god shaped like a sheep.

Hee was ishape as a sheepe · shinand bright,
I-painted full prisely · & precious stones
Wer sticked on *þat* stock · stoute too beholde.

All the land worshipped him.

All þe lud*es* of *þe* lond · Lordes & el*es*
Set hym for soueraine · þeir sokour too beene,
And saide þ*er*e sacrifice · in selkouth times.

Olympias had dreamt that he drew near her, and said,

Þanne or-trowed Olympias · þe onorable Queene,
Þat hee neihed *þat* night · nye too her syde,
And fonded hur fleshlych · or hee fare wolde.
Whan hee in his lykyng · *þat* Ladie lauht had,
Hur seemed in *þat* same stede · *þat* hee saide aft*er*,

"Now is he conceived that shall keep thee from care."

"Worldly wooman · well may þee lyke,
For thy keep*er* of care · is conceiued now."

[Fol. 16.]

A morowe on þe mirie daie · *þis* menskfull Queene

She sends next day for Nectanabus.

Arises up redely · and a rink send*es*
Anon too Nectanabus · & needely hym praies,
Þat he cofly com*m*e · too carpen her tyll.
Þan laft *þis* lud · no*gh*t long ther-after,
But cam*m*e too *þat* louely · too kenne of her lore.

She tells him her dream, and says,

Þe Queene tolde hym till · þe tales too *þe* ende,
Of her dereworth dreme · *þat* draihte hur in slepe,
And hue saide too *þat* seg · "Soothe o*þ*er el*es*

"I know not the truth of it, for I was asleep."

Ȝif it were, I ne wott · for wislich I slept,
Whan I *þat* sweuen so sweete · swiftly mette."

He answers, "It is quite true.

"Nay," saide Nectanabus · "ne trowe þou no noo*þ*er,
Þis ilk sawe was soothe · & certain iproued.

[1] MS. riue, *with* f *above* ue.

For ȝif þou lene mee leue · too leng biside,
for too stand in a stede · of a straite place,
Too waite at a windowe · & warn þee after,
I shoolde trie þe truthe · & tell þee soone,
Whether i faithfull or falss · founde thy sawe.
For I warne þee well · *with* worship & ioye,
Hee wyll þee nye too-nyght · in a neew fourme.
In dreme as a dragoun · dreche hee þee thenk*es*,
And sithen showe hym hee shall · a shawe as it were,
Mich liche[1] too mee · by mark of my face."
"Sir," saide þ*at* seemelich · "þi sawes bee mirye,
þou shalt stond in a stede · still biside ;
ȝif it bee certain & soothe · þiself shall i chese,
Too faþer þe free · that I forth bryng."
þe burd bad hastely · by hur boure side,
þ*at* swich[2] a place[3] were prest · too prooue þe truthe.[4]

Give me leave to be near thee ;

I will tell thee if it is true or false.

To-night thou wilt see him in a new form.

He will be a dragon, and afterwards a man, much like myself."

"Sir, thou shalt be near. If it be true, thou shalt be supposed the father."

Whan þe leme & þe light · of þe leefe sonne
Was idrawne adowne · & dym were cloudes,
þe Ladie lay on hur bed · & lysted too slepe,
And this wonderfull weie · waites his place ;
Hee stoode still on þe stede · & stirred no foote.
And sleyly, when þe first slepe · slaked on wight*es*,[5]
Hee chases by enchauntement · þe chamber within,
And *with* a dragon*es* drem · dreew too þe bedde.
þan hee meeues too hur mouthe · & makes his lidene,
And kisses þ*at* cumly · & kith*es* his wyll ;
And sithen hee seemed a seg · hymself as it were,
And spake too her speedily · these speciall wordes ;
"On þee is getten a gome · þe grimmest in erth,
þ*at* all weies in þe worlde · worship shall."
þus quaintely þ*is* Queene · was quemed *with* gyle,

[Fol. 21.]

At night, the lady fell asleep.

Nectanabus takes the form of a dragon,

comes to Olympias,

and tells her she shall have a mighty son.

[1] MS. liche, *with* ke *above* che.
[2] MS. swich, *with* u *above the* wi.
[3] MS. place, *with* is *over* ce ; *perhaps the older copy had* plais.
[4] Catchword—Whan ðe leme of ðe liht of ðe leue sonne.
[5] MS. night*es*, *with* w *above* n.

And wend gamene *with* a God · gracious of might,
Whan a libbing lud · lay in hur armes.
At daybreak he returns. Þis rink, or þe sonne rist · romes a morowe,
And passes in þe Paleis · prestlich hym one.
And far forthe on þe daye · whan þe faire burde
The lady arises and is attired. Had long þere layne · & had lyst too ryse,
Dereworth damsele*s* · drowen [1] them þiþer;
Too serue *þat* seemely · þei setten hur hond*es*.
Whan hue was redie araid · & riall on sight,
She sends for Nectanabus, Hue send*es* soone for þe segge · & saide þese wordes,
"Menskfull maister · makeles of witt,
Tell mee now truly · & targe [2] no lenger,
and asks what Philip will do to her. What kid King Philip · *þat* keene is of hert,
Deeme*s* *with* mee too doo · mee dreede*s* it sore?"
Þe lud too this Lady · full louely saide,
"Of Philip haue þou no fere · for faitly too knowe,
He says that Amnon will protect her. Amon þe grete God · by graunte of my boone,
Schall þee wisse fro wo · & wreche of his teene." [3]

[Fol. 21 b.] Þan farde Nectanabus · forthe fro *þat* place,
He gathers herbs, squeezes and dries them. Hee wende*s* too a wildernes · & waites him erbe*s*,
Hee tempres hem tidly · & takes hem after,
And hee draine*s* in a dish · till þei dry were.
He takes a seafowl, and anoints it with the juice of herbs. Þan fetches hee a seafoule · faire of his wynge*s*,
And sawes of sorsery · hee saide therouer;
Of his grounden gras · þe wus can hee take,
Þeron hee brynge*s* þe brid · & bathes his pilu*s*.
By help of þe Hellfeende · hee haunte*s* his werke*s*,
To gille Philip in Greece · whan þe gome slept.
Whan it nied þe night · nedelich & soone,
Philip fared too bed · & fell on a slepe.
Philip, by his enchantment, Þe chaunce of enchauntment · chased his mynde,
Þat hee was draiht *with* dreme · thorou deuil*es* engines.
Þan met *þat* man · on his mirie slepe,

[1] MS. drowen, *with* eew *above* owen. [2] *Above the* ge *is* ie.
[3] Catchword—"Danne ferd Nect."

þat hee sawe on his sight · his seemely make,
How þat louelich lif · laide was a bedde,
And a gracious God · gripte hur in armes.
Hee lay by þat Lady · his liking hee wrought;
And whan his deede [1] so deerne · doone was in haste,
Amiddes hur membre · too maken it close,
Hee sawe hym sowen [2] a seme · by seeming of sweuen,
And with a gaie golde ring · hee gan it asele;
A ston stiked þerein · stoutlich igraue;
þe cast of þe sonne course · was corue þerin;
A litle lion*es* hed · louelich ishape,
With a swith faire swerd · sweetelich imaked,
Was isett on þe sell · þe seme all amidd*es*.
Whan Philip on þe forthe daie · first gan arise,
Hee cliped hym his clerk*es* · full conning of witt,
Full noble Nigremanciens · þan[3] [nyed] hee in has te,
þat kouth such sweuens · swiftly arede.
Hee minges his metyng · among*es* hem all,
And what it might bee too meane · þe menne gan hee ask.
His enchauntiour cheefe · þat þe chaunce herde,
Too þe cumly Kyng · kid these wordes,
And saide, "Sir, forsoothe · thy seemely make
By a gracious God · shall go with childe.
þe prent þat was i-putt · on hur priuie membre
With þe gaie golde ring · graue too-rightes,
þe leue lion*es* hed · þat laide was amid,
As mich amounteth too meane · as I may tell,
When hur barn is ibore · bolde shall hee wex,
And bee kid for a King · kene of his deedes.
As þe lioun is Lorde · of liuing beastes,
So þe lud*es* in þe lond · alouten him shall.
þe sonne course [4] of þe sell · sinifieth also,
þat hee shall fare as farre · as any freke dwell*es*,

dreams that he sees Olympias with Ammon,

who marked her with a seal.

On the seal was the Zodiac, a lion's head, and a sword.

He asks what the dream signifies.

[Fol. 22.]

His magi say,

that the seal-mark signifies what her son shall be like.

He will be feared like a *lion*.

The *zodiac* means he will conquer all to the far East.

[1] MS. deene, *an obvious error*. See note.
[2] MS. sowen, *with* ew *above* owen. [3] *Over the* þ *is* d, *for* ð.
[4] MS. coures; *see* l. 831.

And right too þe sonne rist[1] · his raigne shall last.
þe swerd sweetlich imade · in sweuen too rede,
Bitokneth full treewly · in times here-after,
þat hee shall grow full grim · & graithlich[2] winne,
The *sword*, that he will be mighty in battle. With stern strokes of swerd · & striuing of dinte*s*,
Bothe bolde*s* & borou[*es*] · & bern[*es*] to h*is* will,
And seemely cities · as soueraine in erth."
Philip says, "Ammon said her son would be her comforter." Philip saide, "Forsoo þe · mee seemed þ*a*t tyme,
That I sawe þe God · go graith too hur bedde.
Whan hee his will had wrou*ght* · 'Woman,' he saide,
'Thy keeper is conceiued · thy comefort too bene,
þat þee & Philip þe free · of fone shall auenge.'"
"Sir," said þe enchauntiour · "soothely too mene,
Whan þe God gan speake · too þe gaie beurde,
How hue conceiued had · þe help of hur teene,
Faire Philip & hur · freely too keepe,
"That means, he will defend you and her from peril." þat is wisly too witte · hee will you defend
Fro paines & peril · þ*a*t perce þee ne shall.
Of this mirie meting · well may þou lyke,
Of swiche[3] happes so hende · herde I nere tell."

[Fol. 22 *b*.] In þe same sesoun · soothely too showe,
Philip farde too fight · as I tofore saide.
The Thebans again attack the Phocians. þat time, þe Tebeniens · hee turned too fight
Aȝain þe ferefull folke · of Phocus[4] þe riche,
With lude*s* of Lacedemoine · lasches too deale.
Aȝain Philip too fare · feele þer[5] come.
Nectanabus becomes a dragon, Nectanabus anon right · w*i*th his nice werke*s*,
Too begile þe gome · graithe*s* hym soone,
Deraide as a dragoun · dreedfull in fight.
Hee wende*s* too þe werre · w*i*th Philip too holde;
In sight,[6] of þe same shape · hee seemed þan,

[1] MS. rist, *with* e *above* i, *making* rest, *which is wrong* (l. 791).
[2] MS. *has a gloss*, greately, *which is wrong*.
[3] MS. swiche, *with* u *above* wi.
[4] MS. *has an* s *above the* c.
[5] *A* d *above the* þ.
[6] *Above* sight *is written* sute.

As whan hee farde tofore · too þe faire Queene.
þan hee farde in *þat* fight · as hee folke sleew,
And brutned in that battle · buern*es* ynow.
For dreede of *þis* dragoun · menne dreew þem þence,
And fell doune in þe feelde · fenked in haste.
þe dreede of *þis* dragoun · *þat* drof[1] men aboute,
So fought for Ph*ilip* · & feld mo Knight*es*
þan all þe men of Macedonie · & more of h*is* peeple.
Whan this Kyng had kill[e]d · *with* carefull strokes
þe Lacedemoniens · *þat* life loren[2] hadde,
And Phocus *with* ferse dynt · freelich ywonne
Thorou drede of þe dragoun · & drift of his Knight*es*,
þe fell folke of Attens · fledden hym soone,
And thought to sauen hemself · fro sorowe of h*is* wrethe.

and fights for Philip.

Philip defeats the Phocians.

Philip after *þis* fight · in a foule time,
Was going too [ride] ouer Greece · as a grete Prince.[3]
þe armed Attenieins · auntred hym till,
þei wern ware of h*is* comme · & h*is* waie stoppes.
þe King kipes[4] his grim · too keueren him gate,
But all his werk was in waste · þei werned his thought*es*.[5]
For hee ne sholde hem shend · & shamelich take
Hur seemely cities · too sorowen hem all,
Enforced were þe entres · *with* egre men fele,
þat hee ne mi*ght* in *þat* marche · no maner wend.
Whan þe seg sawe well · no sokour ne speede,
He was gretely agrise[6] · & greeued in hert,
For hee ne mi*ght* in þo men · h*is* malice kith.
To Tebes & Tessalonie · *þat* truly hym holpe,

Philip's progress is opposed by the Athenians.

[Fol. 23.]

The passes are manned against him.

He goes to Thebes.

[1] MS. droue, *with* f *above* ue.
[2] MS. loren, *with* ne *above* en.
[3] This line is corrupt; see note.
[4] MS. keepes, *with* i *above* ee; *the* p *being obviously miswritten for* þ, *as elsewhere*. Cf. l. 529.
[5] Catchword—"For he ne scholde."
[6] MS. agrise, *with* d *above the* e *to the right*.

Hee went as a woode man · his wrath too auenge.
Whan hee comme too þat coste · þei kepten hym faire,
And gon too hur gates · & grathlich hem opene*s*,
And lete þe rink riden in · w*ith* h*is* route sterne;
And weies hym welcomes · w*ith* worship & ioye.

His treachery. Þei trowed no tresoun · untruly too haue;
But Ph*ilip* þe ferefull · faire thei grette,
And lete hym prik w*ith* his prese · in hur p*ris* holdes.
As soone as þe seg · was þe citie within,
Hee, wrathfull [of] wille · wronglich þare,

He kills the princes and dukes of Thebes. Hee lete catch þe King · & kyllen hym soone,
And his Princes of price · prestlich hee quelde.
Douhtie Dukes w*ith* doole · too deth gon hee bryng,
And oo*þ*er Lordes of lond · liueles hee made.

He burns their towns, Hee brende holdes & borous · & beurne*s* therin,
And all went too wo · þ*at* they with mett.

and harms them as much as he had helped them. As mich as Ph*ilip* tofore · hem frendship wrou*ght*,
Whan hee fought for þem · & Phocus distriede,[1]
As mich maugre & more · hee marked he*m* after,
Too be-traie them untruly · þ*at* trusten hym till.
On weies & women · awrak hee his teene,
And solde the*m* too seruise · in sorowe too liue,
And robbed of riches · all þe riche tounes.

Thus did he out of spite. Þus hee wrou*ght* þ*at* wrong · w*ith* wreche of his anger,
For teene of þe Attenieins · þ*at* turned him too kepe.[2]

[Fol. 23 *b*.] Whan hee þis cursed case · unkyndely wrou*ght*,
Hee ne laft no leng[*er*] · in that lond þan.

He next attacks Cappadocia. [Olynthus ?] For too fonde more fight · his folke gan hee leade,
And fares too a countrie · w*ith* Knight*es* ynow,
Þere a citie was sett · seemely & noble,
Þat Cappadoce was cleped · a full kid place.
Many doughtie of deede · dwelt þerin,
Þat wern fresh too fight · & fell of hur deede*s*.

The men must yield or fight. Philip bede*s* hem biker · & biddes þe*m* yeelde

[1] MS. distroide, *with* ie *above* oi.
[2] Catchword—"Whan he dis kursede cas*e*."

þeir faire citie in faith · or fight þei shall.
þe seges in þe citie · þemself so kept,
þat Philip lafte þere long · & litle hee spedde.
But hee ne stint of his strife · noght a stounde while, At last he takes the town.
Till hee had take þe toune · þat tristy was holde,
And made all þe menne · meeke too his wyll.
Whan hee had wonne þis won · & wrought more teene,
With mirth too Macedoine · hee makes his chace.
Hee priked too his Paleis · with Princes & Dukes, He returns home.
And many a seemely seg · þat sued hym þanne.
Of hym þe Queene was ware · & wendes with ioye, The queen receives him.
And romed right too þe rink · receiued him faire.
Philip kisses his fere · as fell for too doone,
And kneew by hur countenaunce · hue conceiued had.
"Dame," saide þat douhtie · "how haste þou doone now? Philip says she has done amiss
Who hath þee unclene i-kept · sithen I comme fro þee?
þou haste medled amis · methynk, by thy chere.
Natheless I not ȝit · nai, as I trowe,
ȝof þou haue cheuesed þee a chylde · as þi chaunce falles;
For it is [1] geten of a God · thy ilt is þe lasse. Yet no great blame is hers,
Of all þe happe þat þou haste · hollich ifounde,
I had minde on my slepe · by meting of sweuen, for he had learnt in a dream
Aȝaines mee & all men · þat may thee biholde, all about her.
Blameles þou might bee · of thy berem-chaunce.
No wight of thy werk · wite þee might, [Fol. 24.]
Sithen it is sonde of a God · soothelich i-prooued."

It betid in a time · tidly therafter,
þat Philip made of folke · a feaste full ryche. Philip makes a rich feast.
All his Princes of price · praied hee thider,
And ooþer Lordes of lond · ne laft hee none.
Whan hee is fare fro fight · his folke for too feaste,
In Macedoine with his men · this mirth hee made.
As soone as þei were sett · & serued too-rightes,

[1] MS. it it.

Nectanabus appears as a dragon.

Nectanabus by Nigremauncie · neew hym attires,
And in a dragoun*es* drem · hee dreew to þe halle.
Hee co*m*me first too þe King · & too þe kid Queene,
And sithen hee busk*es* aboute · þe bordes echone,
Hee drouned as a dragon · dredefull of noyes,
þat all þe gomes were agrise · of his grim sight.

He goes up to the queen and kisses her.

þan farde hee forthe · too þe faire Queene,
And hee holdes his hed · r*ight* in hur lappe,
And kisses þat cumly · in knoweing of all.
Philip saide too h*is* fere · freely þese wordes,

Philip says it is the dragon who helped him.

"Dame, of this dragoun · I doo þee too knowe,
And euery liuand lud · þ*at* leng*es* herin,
In a brem battail · abrode in þe feelde,
Whan I was greefly bigo[1] · *with* a grim peeple,
Hee co*m*me flie too feelde · & my fone schende,
þat I was holpe by hym · hem too distrie."

The dragon flies away.

Whan þ*is* tale was tolde · & tended of all,
þe dragoun dreew him awaie · *with* drift of his wing*es*.

Another time,

In a somer seasoun · soone therafter,
As Philip satt by hymself · soothe for too tell,
A faire breeding brid · bremlich went,
And in þe lappe of þ*at* lud · louely hee sitt*es*.

a bird lays an egg in Philip's lap.

Or þ*is* freelich foule · farde of þe place,
Hee bredde an ai on his barm · & braid*es* him þan.

[Fol. 24 *b*.]

Philip wondred was · of this werk quainte,
And satte still on þe stede · stirred no foote.
þe ai fell on þe flore · in the frekes sight,
And þe shell to-shett · on þe schire grounde.

An adder comes out of the shell,

Whan it cofli too-clef[2] · þer crep oute an addre,
And busk*es* full boldely · aboute þe shell.
Whan this worme[3] had went · wislich aboute,
Hee wolde haue gliden in againe · graithlich & soone.

[1] MS. bigo, *with* ne *above* o *to the right*.

[2] MS. too clef, *with* eue *above* f.

[3] MS. worme, *with* wrom *above it; no doubt the older* MS. *had* wrom.

But or hee had in his hed · hee hastely deide,[1] 1013 — but dies before it can creep in again.
And dreew nere too his denne · but deide bi-side.
Philip for þis ferlich · fast gan wende
To noble Nigremauncieins · þat hym nyh were, 1016
And asked hem an answer · þis aunter too reede,
For cheef of enchauntment · chosen þei were.
" Sir," saide one enchauntiour · " your seemely make — It means that his son shall be a great conqueror,
Shall bere such a barn · in a brem tyde, 1020
þat by might of his maine · & maistrie of Kinges,
All so wide as þis worlde · shall welden his raigne.[2]
Whan hee aboute hath ibene · abrode in þe londes,
And iwonne at his will · þe wortlych[3] places, 1024
þe kith þat hee comme fro · or hee com till, — but will die before reaching home.
Hee shall bee doluen & ded · as destenie falles.
As þe addre of þe ai · auntred aboute,
And wolde haue shoten in þe schell · or hee schent were, 1028
So shall fare by þe freke · þat ferre may bee knowe.
Whan hee hath reigned a roum · as richest of all,
Or hee may too his marche · with his maine wende,
þere hee was fostred & fed · him falles too dye." 1032

Now will I cease þis sawe · & segge you more
Of hym þat hight Alisaunder · holly þe birth.[4] — The birth of Alexander.

[*A portion of the story being here lost, the omission is supplied from a French prose text of a similar type.*]

[Le terme de l'effantement la royne approchoit, et lui commençoit le ventre moult a douloir. Si fist appeller Nectanebuz et lui dist: "J'ai grant douleur en mon ventre." — The queen calls for Nectanabus. Nectanebuz compta l'eure et lui dist: "Sousleve toy, royne, ung poy de ton siege, car

[1] MS. deide dyed, *and* deide *is marked.*

[2] *Above the* a *is an* e.

[3] MS. wortlych, *with* worthly *above it.* Cf. l. 596.

[4] Here follows the catchword—" Swiche fortune fel," *but the next leaf is blank.* For an account of the piece here inserted to complete the sense, see the note.

ellemens sont orendroit orribles du soleil." Et la royne se leva, et la douleur se passa maintenant. Apres ung poy, lui dist : "Siez toy, royne." Et elle s' asist, et enfanta ung filz. Et quant li enfens chey sur terre, et la terra croulla, et foudra tonnoirie, et signes grans furent veus par tout le monde. La noif meslee avec gresil chey du ciel et ouvry le terre comme des[1] pierres. La nuit targa à venir, et celle fu plus longue des autres. Dont le roy Philippe fu moult esmayez, et dist a la royne : "Femme, j'ay pensay en mon cuer que cest enfant me feust nourris en aucune maniere, pour ce qu'il n'est de moy conceus. Mais pour ce que j'entens qu'il est conceus de Dieu, et pour ce que je voy les elemens changier en sa naissance, vueil-je qu'il soit aussi bien nourris en ma memoire, comme s'il feust miens propres. Et vueil qu'il ait nom Alexandre, aussi comme avait nom mon aultre filz que j'avais de mon aultre femme."

Alexander is born.

Earthquakes and thunder, snow and sleet.

Philip perceives that the child is divine.

Maintenant les dames de leans prindrent l'enffant et le nourirent par grant diligence. Et sachez qu'il ne-ressembloit au pere ne à la mere, mais avoit propre semblance. Car ses cheveux estoient comme crin de lyon, ses yeulx estoient grans et resplendissans, et ne resembloit pas l'un à l'autre. Car l'un estoit noir et l'autre vair. Ses dens estoient trop agües et sa regardence estoit comme du lyon. Et combien que sa sestature feust petite, non pour quant aux signes qui se demonstroient, sembloit il bien que Alixandre devoit estre.

The child is well taken care of.

His hair, eyes, and teeth.

COMMENT ARISTOTE APRENT A ALIXANDRE LES SEPT ARS.

How Aristotle taught him the 7 arts.

Apres, il fu de aage pour mectre à l'escolle. Le roy Philippe lui fist mectre et plusieurs autres enffans gentilzhommes avec lui, lequel enffant les surmontoit tous de toutes choses en lettres et en paroles. Et aussi fait il en ysnelette et en vigueur. Dont il advint,

He surpasses his companions.

[1] MS. deux.

quant il eut xii ans, il fu si aprins des sept ars par Aristote, le meilleur qui oncques feust, que il ne treuvoit homme qui tant en seust comme il faisoit. Quant Alixandre ot xii ans accomplis, on lui bailla escuiers sages et congnoissans, qui avoient este par le pais et par les terres, et avoient use toute leur vie les armes. Et ceux l'aprindrent et enseignerent si bien de toutes choses qui aux armes appartenoient, que il en toutes choses seurmontoit ses compaignons. Quant le roi Philippe congnut la grant vigueur qui estoit en luy, si lui dist: "Filz Alixandre, je ayme moult la ysnellete de ton corps et le soutil engin de ton courage. Mais tristre suis que ta semblance ne resemble à la mienne."[1] Quant ce ouy la royne Olimpias, si se doubta moult, et appella Nectanebuz, et lui dit:]

At the age of twelve,

he is taught to wield arms.

Philip's remark.

Olympias says to Nectanabus,

"Master on molde · what may mee befall? [Fol. 17.]
Of Philip sore am I aferd · for his fell speeche, 1036
For hee sayed too my soonne · in syght of myne yie,
Hee was purlich payed · of his prise werkes,
But hee chaunged his chere · & too þe chylde sayed,
'That þow ne art lyke mee, lude · mee lykes full yll;'
Therfore my mynde & my moode · is marred[2] too care,
For his woorde am I wrought · wofull in hert." 1042
"Queene," quoth Nectanabus · [care þou no more,[3]]
For the sake of thy soonne · [þat schal saue þe at nede."[3]]

"Philip complains that Alexander is not like him."

"Never mind that; your son will help you."

The Lude looked on-loft · late on an eeue, 1045
And on a starre too stare · hee stynt full long,
Hee hoped to haue there · of his hertes desyres;
Too catche sum cunnyng · hee kest up his yie. 1048
When Alisaunder þat sawe · hee sayed full soone,
"Father, wherfore · is þat farly too tell,

One eye, Nectanabus looks on the stars.

[1] MS. moye. [2] MS. maried, *with* r *above* i.
[3] Two half-lines are here lost, and are supplied from conjecture; blank spaces are left for them in the MS.

That thow lookest on-loft · so long at þis tyme?"
"Soonne," sayed þe segge · "in syght I beholde
A brem sterre & a bryght · that mee best lykes." 1053

Alexander asks him to point out his favourite star.

"Leeue [1] fader," quoth þe freke · "fonde I, mee tell,
The sterre þat yee staren on · sticketh it in heuin?"
"Yea, forsoothe, deare soonne" · sayed hee than,
"It is in heuin full hy · beholde who-so myght." 1057
"And may yee, syr," sayed þe chylde · "by sum maner wise,
Schowe mee schortly in shape · þat schynyng sterre?"

He says he must wait till midnight.

"Yea, wooste þou see, my soonne · in certeyn tymes,
The inkest howre of þis nyght · ny by my syde,
Withoute þe citie," he sayed · "in certeyn places, 1062
So, lo! myghtst þou see · þat seemely sterre!"

[Fol. 17 b.]

"That ilk for to see" · hee sayed, "I desyre,
And I shall wend thee with · when þee well lykes.

He asks if he knows his own fate.

But canst þou by any craft · kenne mee now 1066
What death dry þou shalt · by destinie shape?"

"Yes; my son will kill me."

"Yea," soonne, sayed hee þo · "in certein I knowe,
That I shall drye þe death · in dreedefull dedes stoundes,
By encheson of my chylde · such chaunce shall fall;
But whan, wott I not well · ne in what place." 1071

Nectanabus goes down beside a ditch.

Nectanabus in þat nyght · as hym neede thoght,
Passeth forthe priuely · þe Paleis without,[2]
Hee gooth downe by þe dyche · þat deepe was of grounde, 1074
Euyll it is of syght · the walles besyde.
["Sone," sayde Nectanabus · "see 3ond þe sterres,] [3]

He points out the planets.

Joyfull Jupiter · Myrthfull Mercurie, 1077
The leame of his lyght · lykes well my hert!"
So hee stynted þat stounde · & styrred no foote,
Hee pored on þe planetes · pass ere hee woolde. 1080

[1] MS. Leeue, *with* fe *above* ue.

[2] *Here follows a half-line out of place,* "the walles besyde," *the line* "Euyll it is of syght" *being left incomplete.*

[3] A line is here lost.

Hee braides too þe bank · of þe brode water, — Alexander pushes him into the ditch.
By þe shoulderes hym tooke · & shift hym in myddes,
With a wrathfull wyll · þese woordes hee sayed:
"Wretched worldly wyght · why wylst þou knowe
The priuitie of planetes · or precious starres, 1085
Syn þou art erthly thyself? · in an yll tyme
Kaughtst þou in þat craft · cunnyng of happes
Let them þat in heuin bee · knowe hy thynges; 1088 — "Only gods should know heavenly things."
That lore longes too Godde · & too no lud eles,
Thow þat worldly art wraught · thy wytt þou bisett
On euery erthly thyng · & ern þou nomore!"
The segge sayed this sawe · sounk or hee wer, 1092
"Truthe haue I þee tolde · in tymes ypassed"— — "I have always told you the truth."
And with þat sawe þe soule · fro þe seg hee partes.
Alisaunder anonne · ryght armed in hert,
Hee did hym downe too þe dyche · as hee no dreede had; 1096 — Alexander takes him out dead.
Hee sprainde in a sprite · & spradde it aboute,
[And cauȝt vp þe cors · and cayres to þe queene.][1]
"Saye mee, seemely · sunne, what þou bryngst?" — [Fol. 18.]
"Ich haue broght," quoth þe burn · "a ded body here,
That noble Nectanabus · too name was hote." 1101
"Sunne," sayed þat seemelich · "my sorowe is þe more!"
"It is thy foule fowlye · þat this fare wrought, — Alexander reproves Olympias.
Your carefull conscience · yee casten so large,
That yee wern no wyght · but wyrch as yee lyst." 1105
The Queene quoth nought againe · but quickly & soone — She cannot reply.
Too burye þat burn · þe beurd gan heate.
Of this lyueles lud · ne lyst mee tell, 1108
Of hym I cease my sawe · & seche too more.

Ther was a Prince full price · of powre y-holde,
Keeper of Cappadoce · that Kyng Philip aught.
A huge horsse & a hy · hee had that tyme, 1112 — A horse.
The moste seemely in syght · þat euer seg wyst.

[1] A line is here lost, and supplied from conjecture.

There was a horse that fed on men.

Hee bore a hedde as a bole · y-brested to-ryght,
And had hard on his hedde · hornes y-grow,
Menne wern his meate · that hee moste looued ;
for as many as hee myght · murdre hee woolde.

He was kept chained up.

Hee was byglich ybownde · on bothe twoo halues,
Bothe his chaul & his chynne · with chaynes of yren :
Many lockes wer laft · his legges aboute,
That hee nas loose in no lime · ludes to greeue,
To byte, ne to braundise · ne to break no wowes.
for hee so myghty was made · in all maner thynges,
Of such a body as hee bore · þe blonke so sterne,
Was neuer steede in no stede · þat stynt upon erth.

Messengers took him to Philip as a present

Intoo meery Macedoine · þe messengeres þei camme,
From what kith þei camme · cofly they tolde,
Let greete hym with God · & goode wyll,[1]
And their presaunt of price · proffred hym tyll.
Hee had blyss of þat beaste · & blythely hym thankes.

Philip has a cave built for him.

[A caue he comanded · to coynt men inouȝ,][2]
Dupe[3] as a dunioun · dyked in erth,
All about bygge · with barres of yern.

[Fol. 18 b.]

Therfore þe Kyng had cast · too keepe þat steede,
In þat caue craftely · enclosed with gynne.

Traitors were thrown to him to eat.

For if a trayter wer y-take · in tyme therafter,
Or any thriftles theefe · for thynges accused,
They shoolde bee cast in þat caue · too þat kene blonk,
And bee deuoured with doole · as þe doome woolde.
Anon as euer þe nyght · nyied on erth,

Philip dreams, that whoever tames the horse

Philip farde too bedde · & fell on a sleepe.
Of a myghtfull Godde · hee mett þat tyme,
That on his bedsyde satt · & þis sawe tolde—
"Who prickes[4] on a playne feelde · þe perelous beaste,

will be king of Macedon.

Hee shall raigne as a ryng · ryall & noble,

[1] This line occurs in the MS. two lines higher up, clearly out of place.

[2] A line is here again lost, and supplied from conjecture.

[3] MS. Dupe, *with* ee *above* u.

[4] MS. Tho pricked, *which is unintelligible.*

And bee Kyng of thy kith · Knyghtes too leade,
When þou art doone & dedde · & thy daye ende*s*."

When Alisaunder was of age · as I shall tell,
Of full fifteene yere · faren too þe end,
Hee was hardye & hende · happe*s* to fond,
And such wys of h*is* witt · in worldly thynge*s*;
Lered on letrure · was þe lud then,
And of latin þe lore · lellich hee wyst.
In a tyme betyd · as I tell after,
That many menne of Attene*s* · *with* myckle ooþer peeple,
Did þe*m* forthe on a day · by þe dupe[1] caue,
There þe steede in stoode · strayned in bonde*s*.
They sawe lygge in theyr looke · legge*s* & armes,
Fayre hande*s* & feete · freaten too the bonne,
Of menne þ*at* myslych wer · murdred therin,
By iuste*s*[2] unioyfull · iugged too death.
When Alisaunder was ware · of þe wylde b[easte],
That was of body so bolde · bremlych yshaped,
Too hym hee heelde forthe h*is* hand; · þe horse it awaytes.
Hee layed þe neck oute along · & lycked h*is* hande*s*,
And sythe hee foldes his feete · & falle*s* too þe grounde,
And abowed [to] þe burn · on h*is* best wyse.
When Alisaunde*r* so sawe · in h*is* syg*ht* there,
How þe steede was styll · & no stryfe made,
Bale thought þ*at* burn · too bynde þ*at* steede,
That so meeke was of moode · & made no noyes.
Hee unclosed þe caue · unclainte þe barres,
And straihte into þe stede · stroked hym fayre.
Hee raught forthe h*is* right hand · & his rigge frotu*s*,
And coies hym as he kan · *with* his clene handes.
Þan hee loses his locke*s* · h*is* legge*s* unbyndes,

Alexander was now 15.

He knew Latin.

Some Athenians see the horse lying amid men's bones.

[Fol 19.]

The horse licks Alexander's hands.

He enters the cave.

He unfastens the steed's bonds,

[1] MS. Deepe, *with* u *above* ee; *see* l. 1132.
[2] Indistinct and uncertain.

That hee nas fast in no foote · bifore ne bihynde.
Therof þe blonk was blythe · & blainte no furre [1]
But meeke was of maner*es* · wi*th*oute mischaunce.[2]

and it is as meek as a lamb.

Was nere lambe in no land · lower of chere,
No hownde to his hous-lorde [3] · so hende to queme,
þat was leuer to lyke · þe lude þ*at* hym aught,
Þen was þe blonk to þe beurn · þ*at* hym bistint.
Þan wend*es* þis weih · þe caue withoute,
And þe horss w*ith* his hand · hendely bring*es*.

He rides him about.

Soone hee leapes on-loft · & lete hym worthe,[4]
To fare [5] as hym lyst faine · in feelde or in towne.
The steede strauht on his gate · & stired hy*m* und*er*,
And wrought no wod res · but his waye holdes.

Philip is astonished,

When sire Ph*ilip* gan see · þe seg so too ryde,
And his blonk behelde · abated of wrath,
Of þe michel meekenes · marueil hee had,
That þe steede so stern · stynt of his fare.

[Fol. 19 b.]

He sayde, "Sonne Alisaunder · of þ*is* same chaunce

and tells his son his dream.

Iche had mynde in my slepe · by metyng fownde.
A greate glisiande God · grathly mee tolde,
That þou shalt raigne when I rotte [6] · on my ryche lond*es*."
"Faþer," sayde þe freke · "if þou foreknowes
That I shall leade thy land*es* · when thy life end*es*,
Let mee be p*r*oued as Prince · in pres where I wend,
And fende mee finliche well · to fonde my strength."

Of this bounden beaste · blynne [we þe] speche,
Of King Philip þe keene · karp wee now.

Philip goes to Byzantium.

When Ph*ilip* had w*ith* his folke · faren on Greece,
And taken tresure ynough · in townes full riche,
Hee hurd tell of a towne · thriftily walled,

[1] *An* i *above the* u. [2] che *above* unce. [3] unt*es* *above* us.
[4] MS. worche, *with* t *above* c. [5] *An* i *above and between* a *and* r.
[6] MS. rotte, *with* royte *above it, which may have been miswritten for* rotyc *in the older copy.*

A citie sett by peece · *with* full siker wardes,
Byzaunce þe bolde sted · was þe borowe hote ; 1208 BYZANTIUM.
None better hym aboute · þat any beurn wyst.
It was chosen for cheefe · to cheffaren in,
And many merchaunt*es* þer-in · þat much goode aught.
All þe Lordes of þe lond · þat large was founde, 1212
Helde it hur cheefe holde · when happe cam*me* of warre.
Many menne of þe easte · of merchaunt*es* ynow, Many men from the East bought
Wer brought to þe borowe · too biggen & sell. and sold there.
No defaute nas founde · in þat faire place, 1216
On euery syde þe sea · of-souhte [1] the walles.
Pausanias a p*ris* King · none prester ifounde, Pausanias built it.
While hym lasted his lyfe · on his lond riche,
Let build þe borowe · too byde therin, 1220
When hee was ferkid *with* fyght · of his fone grimme.
That bolde borou Byzance · þat buyld was to-riht*us*, [Fol. 20.]
Was called syn in þat coste · Constantinoble [2], It was afterwards called Constan-
Of Roome a riche Emperour · þat reigned sythe, 1224 tinople,
Constantine hee was cleped · a Kny*ght* well alosed, from Constantine,
The sonne of saint Elaine · þe seemelich Ladie, son of Helen.
That weihes [3] worshipen yet · for hur werk hende,
A neew name too þat borowe · hee named þan, 1228
And called it Constantinople · þat knowen is wyde.
For þat stalworthe sted · so strong was founded, Since it was so strong, Philip
Ph*ilip* [4] hoped þat holde · *with* h*is* help to wynne, wanted it
For too keepe in that kith · cumlich & riche 1232
All h*is* tresour ytryed · for, in tresoun or gyle, to keep his treasures in.
That none robbed þe rink · of þ*e*se riche thyng*es*.
Philip *with* h*is* ferefull folke · fast hym arayes,
For too prouen h*is* pride · at þe p*ris* borowe. 1236

[1] MS. of souhte, *with* f *above the* s, *and also* saftie *above the latter part of* souhte.
[2] MS. Constantinople, *with* b *above the* p ; see *Werwolf*, l. 1425.
[3] MS. wight*es*, *with* weihes (*marked*) *above it*.
[4] MS. For Ph. ; *but we must omit this second* For.

Forthe rydes þe Kyng · *with* his route huge,
Philip besieges it. And hath þe citie besett · on sydes aboute;
On floode & on faire lond · his folke gan hee sett,
3if hee my*gh*t derie *with* dint · þ*at* dereworthe place.
This seg biseeged so · þe citie full long,
With all þe maine þ*at* hee myght · made his assautes,
His men could not take it. But all þe lud*es* þ*at* hee ladde · for loue ne for aie,[1]
No my*gh*t apeire þe place · of a peny brede.
For þ*at* freelich freke · as I fore tolde,
The kid Knight Pausanias · þ*at* King was of Spart,
It was too strong for them. That borowe in his best state · let build so strong,
That all þe wight*es* in þe worlde · it wynne ne myght,
But 3if fode lacked · too lud*es* within.

* * * *

[*The next page is blank, and the rest is wanting.*]

*** For an account of the continuation of the story, see the note at the end of the "Notes to Alisaunder," and consult the Preface.

[1] MS. awe, *with* aie *above it.*

NOTES TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE."

P. 1. The first quire of the MS. consisted of 12 folios, or 6 pairs of leaves. Of these the three outer pairs have been slit up the back, which has occasioned the loss of the *first three* leaves, and of the *tenth*, which was once joined on to the *third*. The *eleventh* and *twelfth* are fastened in merely by their edges. The part omitted by the loss of fol. 10 corresponds to 144 lines of the French text, whilst the first three missing leaves correspond only to 186 lines of the same. This is to be accounted for, most probably, by the fact that the English translator did very much as he pleased, in some places following his original closely, in others condensing the story, and in others again giving us descriptions and explanations entirely, as it would appear, of his own invention. See note to l. 3.

P. 2. Of the later French prose version of the story a short spécimen may suffice, as it is obviously inferior to the old version in rime.

The following corresponds to ll. 18—32 on pages 1 and 2 :—

"Et nous signifie lhistoire au premier liure que iadis fut vn Roy de Cecille duc de Calabre & seigneur de la pouille nomme Ebron riche / puissant / craint & redoute sur tous princes de son temps / tellement que roy : Prince : ne autre neust ose sur luy entrependre ne guerroyer. Dequoy aduerty Lempereur de Grece luy donna a femme & espouse sa fille : tant belle sage / gente & plaine de vertus : & deuote enuers dieu que rien plus. Nommee estoit Felixe plaine de toute felicite. Laquelle a cause de son bon bruict & religion augmentoit & accroissoit merueillensement la renommee du roy Ebron son mary tant que toutes gens prenoient plaisir a les voir & acquerir leur beneuolence."—*From the Paris edition, printed by N. Bonfons.*

A considerable portion of the commencement of the story is repeated in the English version near the end—(ll. 4624—4806)—where we find Embrons, Gloriande, and Acelone named Ebrouns, Gloriauns, and Achillones. A perusal of this repetition of the story gives us a very fair idea of the way in which the English translator must have begun his poem. Ebronus died soon after the affair with the Werwolf, and his brother too (I suppose), for he is never again spoken of as alive. Queen Felice lived to a good old age, ending her days in happiness and peace. The Werwolf turns out to be the Prince Alphouns or Alphonse, eldest son of the king of Spain.

P. 4, l. 115. *Far* was the local name of the Strait of Messina, called

Faro di Messina, or *Far de Meschines;* thus we read of "fluvium magnum, qui dicitur Le Far de Meschines" in Benedict of Peterborough (ed. Stubbs, 1867), vol. 2, p. 125; and again, at p. 138 of the same work, we find the following.—"Et est notandum quod in fluvio illo del *Far* de Meschines sunt illa duo pericula maris maxima, scilicet Silla et Caribdis. Quarum una, Silla, est ad introitum del *Far* prope la Baignare, et Altera, scilicet Caribdis, est prope exitum del *Far*." Two formidable perils these, for the Werwolf to encounter on his way; but he seems to have safely avoided them!

P. 6, l. 170. The exact distance of this forest from Rome is afterwards stated to be seven miles. See l. 4679.

L. 1. (*English text*). The first two extant lines of the poem represent the concluding phrase of the extract from the French—*que tot li plaist Ce que la beste de lui fait.* The next line in the French text is, *Uns vachiers qui vaches gardoit*, &c.

3—35. These *thirty-three* lines are represented in the French text by only *seven* short lines, which run thus:—

Uns vachiers qui vaches gardoit,
qui en cele forest manoit,
el bois estoit avoec sa proie,
.i. chien tenoit en sa coroie,
dé pasture la nuit repaire;
li chiens senti lenfant et flaire,
forment abaie, et cil le hue, &c.

Hence it is clear that the excellent lines, 20—31, are *original;* and they shew that our own author was a man of very considerable poetical power. So again, the idea in l. 59—

"appeles and alle þinges · þat childern after wilnen,"—

is entirely his own, and proves that he knew how to add a graceful touch to the poem he copied from.

P. 7, l. 19. *to wawe* was explained by Sir F. Madden as meaning *to the wall;* but I fancy it is but *one* word. See *To-wawe* in the Glossary.

P. 9, ll. 80—93. Having shewn (note to l. 3) how the translator has there written 33 lines where his original had but 7, it seems right to give an extract shewing, on the other hand, that he has here only 14 lines where his original has 26, some of them being very curious.

——"or oies
del leu qui estoit repairies
de la viande quala enquerre
par les vilains et par la terre;
avoec lenfant tant en avoit
que a grant paine laportoit.
et quant lenfant na retrouve,
onques nus hon, de mere ne,
ne vist a beste tel duel faire,
qui li oïst uller et braire,
et les pies ensamble detordre,

et la terre engouler et mordre,
esrachier lerbe et esgrater,
et soi couchier et relever ;
et comme il socit et confont,
et querre aval et querre amont,
et les larmes fondre des ex,
bien peust dire, si grans dex
ne fu par nule beste fais.
lors ert saillis ens el markais,
si met a la terre le nes,
tout si com lenfes ert ales
desi ou le mist li vilains.
le suit li leus de rage plains ;
tant la sui a esperon,
que venus est a la maison."

P. 9, l. 80. The letter *l*, like *r*, is one that sometimes shifts its place in a word. As we find *brid* for *bird*, so we find *wordle* for *worlde;* and *wolnk* may be *intentionally* put for *wlonk*. Cf. *carfti* for *crafti*, l. 3221.

83. *no neiȝ* = *non eiȝ*, i. e. no egg. So *thi narmes* for *thin armes*, thy arms, in l. 666.

84. *grinneþ*. The MS. has *ginneþ*. Sir F. Madden's note is—"A verb is wanting after *ginneth*. We may, probably, supply it by 'so balfully he ginneth *greue*,' or by some similar word." But this rather spoils the rhythm of the line. Mr Morris says—"it seems probable that *ginneþ* = howl, utter, send out, from AS. *ginan*, to open, *yawn*." This is somewhat farfetched. It is simpler to suppose that it is miswritten for *grinneþ*, which is not an inappropriate word, and is familiar to us from the expression in the Psalms—to *grin like a dog*, i. e. to grin with rage and spite. But it is still more to the point to observe that there is, as it were, some authority for the grinning of werwolves, if we compare with the text the following quotation—"þai *grennede* for gladschipe euchan toward oðer, as *wode wulues* þet fainen of hare praie." Morris : Early English Homilies, p. 277 (E. E. T. S. to be published shortly). Cf. also "The Lyon did both gape and *gren*." Bp. Percy's Folio MS. *Carle of Carlile*, 213.

P. 10, l. 121. Between this line and the next, the translator has missed a portion of the original, viz. the lines following :

" de mult de gens estoit loee ;
de son signor avoit .i. fil,
biau damoisel, franc et gentil ;
Brandins ot non, ce dist lescris."

" She was praised by many people. She had by her lord one son, a fine lad, frank and gentle ; he bore the name of Brandins [or Braundins], as says the writing." The name of *Brandins* being so very like *Brande*, the translator may easily have lost his place, and omitted the passage unintentionally. Braundins is mentioned afterwards, as the reader will find.

136. *a noynement* = *an oynement*, i.e. an ointment, unguent. Cf. note to l. 83. See l. 139.

141. "All the form of man so amiss had she shaped (transformed)." — Morris; *note to the line in* "Specimens of Early English."

143, 144. "But truly he never after possessed any other resemblance that belongs to human nature, but (was) a wild werwolf." The construction is involved.

P. 11, ll. 156—160. Here the translator, finding a tendency to repetition in his original, cuts matters short, omitting how the werwolf lived two years in Apulia, and grew fierce and big and strong; and how, hearing of the treachery of King Embrouns' brother, he resolved to steal away William in the manner already described. It is needless to say that ll. 161—169 are wholly interpolated.

P. 12. l. 206. There is something amiss with this line; it hardly makes sense as it stands. In l. 35 the phrase is "to hold to baie;" in l. 46 it is "to hold at a baye." So here, if one may be permitted to change "&" into "at," we have,

to hane bruttenet þat bor · *at* þe abaie seþþen,

i.e. "to have afterwards destroyed the boar, (when held) at bay."

P. 14, l. 251. In the original, William very properly grounds his refusal on the fact that he does not know who the emperor is, or what he wants to do.

"non ferai, sire, et por coi,
car je ne sai que vos voles,
qui vos estes, ne que queres;
ne se voles riens, se bien non,
ja ne me face Dix pardon!"

261. "Read *wend*," and again elsewhere, in l. 5185. This elision of a final *d* in such words as *hond*, *lond*, *sheld*, *held*, &c. is by no means uncommon in ancient poetry, and arises simply from pronunciation."—M. We find *wend* in l. 229.

267—272. Hereabouts the translator condenses his original with great judgment. The "churl's" grumbling, as there given, is not very interesting.

P. 15, ll. 293—295. The French merely says,

"en ceste forest le trouvai,
asses pres dont nous somes ore."—

The man who could turn this prosaic statement into

"how he him fond in þat forest · þere fast bi-side,
clothed in comly cloþing · for any kinges sone,
vnder an holw ok · þurth help of his dogge"—

had certainly both poetic power and a lively imagination. Indeed, the translation is very superior to the original, as far as I have compared the two. It should be observed that, immediately after writing the two lines printed above in italics, the translator boldly omits about 16 lines of the cowherd's rather prosy story.

P. 16, l. 325. Mr Morris explains *fordales* by making it equivalent to

fayre dedes, kind actions. That this is incorrect appears from the fourth line on fol. 81 (l. 5182),

"of al þe *faire fordede* · þat he hade for hem wrouȝt."

The expression "*fair fair deed*" would be unmeaning tautology. See the glossary.

329—343. The translator here follows the original pretty closely, giving, however, rather the sense than the exact words.

P. 17, l. 347. "This is not an error of the scribe, as at first supposed, but formed by the same analogy, as *alizt* for *alighted*, *comfort* for *comforted*, *gerde* for *girded*, &c. It occurs often in the Wycliffite versions of the Bible."—M. The very word *comaund* (= commanded) occurs in ll. 2557 and 2564 of the alliterative Romance on the Destruction of Troy.

P. 17, l. 360—365. Compare the original text—

"Salues moi Huet *le nain*,
et Hugenet et Aubelot,
et Martinet le fil Heugot,
et Akarin et Crestien,
et Thumassin le fil Paien,
et tos mes autres compaignons;" &c.

In l. 362, Sir F. Madden printed *dwery*, but he says, "This word is doubtful in the MS. and may either be read *owery* (as printed by Hartshorne) or *dwerth*. It seems to be intended to represent the F. *dru*, *druc*, B. Bret. *drew*, *drud*, signifying a loved friend or companion. But if the final letter be supposed to take the place of *g*, it may then mean dwarf, from S. *dwerg*."

The excellent suggestion at the end of this notice of the word is now seen to be perfectly right; for *dwerth* (dwarf) is simply the translation of *le nain*, Lat. *nanus*; and just as *dwerþ* is written for *dwerg*, so our author continually writes *þurþ* for *þurȝ* = through.

For *kinnesman* in l. 365, I should propose to read *Thomasin* or *Thomasyn*. It would improve the alliteration, of which there is none in the line as it stands.

P. 18, l. 379. She would have slain herself by *refusing food*, according to the French text.

"jamais sa bouche ne mangast,
se cil ne la reconfortast."

388, 389. These "boars and bears, many horse loads, harts and hinds, and many other beasts" have all grown out of four boars only, like Falstaff's "men in buckram." The French merely says,

de iiij senglers quorent pris.

403. *held* = *eld*, age. Compare

et meisme de tel aage
com Guilliames pooit bien estre.

P. 19, l. 423. The translator here misses a very curious statement, not perhaps understanding the allusion. Nor do I.

de riches dras batus a or,
com sil fust fix roi Alphinor,

qui sire et rois est de hongrie,
qui si est de tos biens plentive ;
ne adonques a icel tans
navoit mie plus de . iiii . ans
et norri puis . vii . ans tos plains.

Here we not only learn, once more, that William was about 11 years old when arriving at the emperor's court (see p. 2, l. 35, and p. 15, l. 296), but we are told that the child was found in rich apparel adorned with beaten gold, *as if he had been son to the king Alphinor, who is lord and king of Hungary*, (and) who is so abundantly possessed of wealth.

429—432. The French text has

" li damoisiax," fait lemperere,
" je cuit, par le baron saint Pere,
quil est de mult tres haute gens ;
car mult par est et biax, et gens," &c.

P. 23, l. 433. The French text continues thus :—

et souspirer et baaillier,
et refroidier et reschaufer,
muer color et tressuer,
et trambler tot en itel guise,
comme se fievre mestoit prise, &c.

P. 24, l. 455. Compare

dont ai je tort qui en blasmoie
mon *cuer*.

460. The French text throws no light on the true reading. The *am* in the MS. is indistinct. Sir F. Madden suggested " nad þei ben, i may boute bale," &c., which I have adopted, with the slight change of *may* into *miȝt*.

470. We should have expected to find *brouner* rather than *broun*.

472. There seems something wrong here. I had proposed to read —" *to* the harde asente," i. e. assent to the infliction. Sir F. Madden considers that the introduction of *to* offends the ear, and proposes, but with diffidence, " the hardere asente," i. e. assent with difficulty. The French does not help one, being much more concise in this passage.

P. 25. After l. 500 we should expect some such line as,

" So heried ouer al · and so heyȝ holden."

P. 28, l. 576. The catchwords are written, as usual, at the bottom of the last page of each quire.

584. The MS. has " he kosin ful nere," instead of " here kosin." This is due to the omission of the small flourish which is used as a contraction for *er*. In the same way we find " þide " instead of " þidere " in l. 47, and elsewhere.

592. For *leliest*, Sir F. Madden has *leuest*. The two words would be exceedingly alike, for the scribe makes his *l*'s so short that they are very little longer than the first stroke of a *u*. But over the second downstroke (which is a *little* shorter than the first) a long fine stroke can be detected,

which is his method of dotting an *i*. *Leuest* means *most dearly*, and *leliest* is *most leally*, so that the sense is much the same.

600. The MS. has l. 601 before 600, but the emendation so obviously assists the sense, that it hardly requires apology.

P. 29, l. 611. For this line and the preceding the MS. has—

"& ofter þan ix. times · hit takeþ me a-daye,
& ten times on þe niȝt · nouȝt ones lesse."

I have taken the considerable liberty of changing the places of *nine* and *ten*, because the alliteration of *both* lines is thereby improved. The *ten* is as well suited to the chief-letter in *takeþ*, as *nine* is to the initials of *niȝt* and *nouȝt*. I do not suppose that any one will quarrel with the alteration of the *sense*. When we consider that these numbers were selected for *no other reason* than to *secure alliteration* it must be right to place them where they best fulfil that object.

625. For "cosynes" read "cosyne."—M. This suggestion is supported by ll. 594 and 602. But there is no harm in retaining *cosynes*, as it is used to denote a female cousin, as in *Lancelot of the Laik*, ll. 1185, 1270, 2287, and 2802.

P. 30, l. 645. I suspect that "answeres" ought to have been "answered." Cf. note to l. 1076.

649. The MS. has merely "after þrowe," which makes the line halt.

P. 31, l. 692. The MS. having here the letters "ihū" it is difficult to write the word otherwise than "ihesu." Otherwise the *h* is a corruption of the Greek H or *e*, so that "iesu" would be a truer form. On the contraction IHC for IHCOYC, out of which I.H.S. has been made (the mark of contraction being at the same time turned into a small cross), see Hone's Ancient Mysteries Described, p. 282.

698. The *c* and *t* being much alike, *Metynt* may be meant for *Metync*, but *Metyng* is better spelling; see l. 706.

P. 32, ll. 712, 713. The construction is—"For there is no lord in any land, enjoying life—no emperor nor renowned king known to be so rich—that he is not of sufficiently low birth to wed that seemly lady."

723. The word *houes* nowhere occurs again in the poem, the usual form being *bihoues*. The alliteration also points out that the initial *bi* is really required.

P. 33, l. 753. "Read, tok him *til* a sete."—M. But I am not sure that this ingenious emendation is altogether required; *tid* may be here, as elsewhere, another spelling of *tit* = soon, quickly.

756. Here "For þat" seems to mean "for *whom*." See l. 769.

771. The MS. seems to have "chanber" in 685 and here; but it is probably a mere slip for "chaūber," the spelling adopted in ll. 755 and 769.

P. 34, l. 788. "This is not so much an error as an abbreviation before an infinitive, which has occurred to me often in other MSS. It should properly be '*for to* slake.' Bryant places this, very unnecessarily, among the list of provincialisms."—M. *Forto* is very common in this MS. See l. 783 just above. Another form is *forte*, which occurs in Piers Plowman, Text A. vii. 277.

793. Sir F. Madden prints "as a wo werþ weiȝh," with a reference to the common phrase "wo worth." The MS. may also be read "wo wery" = wo-weary, weary with wo. The word "worþ" is spelt elsewhere in the MS. with an *o*.

799. *wher*, whether.

804. *Go we* is a form of invitation. Cf. "gowe dyne, gowe" in Piers Plowman; A. *prol.* 105. It occurs again in l. 1184.

P. 35, l. 824. "to glade with uch gome," i. e. to gladden each man with. See note to l. 1825.

843. *þa* is put for *þat* frequently in the present poem. See ll. 765 and 903.

P. 36, l. 862. *whiles*, wiles. So also we find *where* for *were*.

P. 37, l. 883. "So completely was that word wound in to his heart." But this is rather a forced phrase, and it would have been quite as well if the scribe had written—

so witerly was þat wiȝh · wounded to herte,

i. e. so completely was that man wounded to the heart.

909. Repeated, nearly, from l. 433.

P. 38, l. 920. Read "ther *ne* schal wizth."—M. I copy "no wiȝth" from l. 786.

P. 39, l. 964. *salerne*. "The city of *Salerno* was famous from very early times for its university and school of medicine, which was protected and flourished most under the Norman princes."—*English Cyclopædia*. Cf. *Morte Arthure*, ed. Perry, l. 4312.

P. 41, l. 1021. "There is some error here, apparently, in the MS."—M. If *hete* is to stand, it may mean to *bid*, from the A.S. *hátan*, to bid, promise. Then the line means—"and to bid her then to play as she pleased in the meanwhile." *Here* = her. Cf. l. 1716.

1028. For *antresse* we should expect to find "auntères."

P. 42, l. 1069. "*Ouer gart gret ost. Gart* appears here to be an error of the scribe, and should be omitted. *Ouer-gret* is used by Chaucer, Cant. T. 16116."—M.

1075. *tyding* seems to be the plural form. See l. 1134, and note to l. 4877.

1076. Read "a-greued."—M. It is worth noting that *s* is not unfrequently written for *d*. In "Pierce the Ploughmans Crede," l. 6, *patres* is written for *patred*.

P. 43, l. 1093. So, too, *e* is often written for *o*; we should expect to find *onys* in this line, for in alliterative lines the vowels used as rime-letters are generally *different* ones. *O* is written for *e* in l. 818.

P. 44, l. 1127. In a strong light, the word "þider" can be traced as having occupied the apparently blank space. It was probably erased as having been repeated by mistake. Hence, there is no word to be supplied here.

P. 45, l. 1163. "þe ferst batayle" means "the first *battalion* or company." Cf. l. 1152.

P. 46, l. 1199. *fresly* = *fersly*, fiercely. This shifting of the letter *r*

may have been intentional. See "The Romans of Partenay;" ed. Skeat, 1866; preface, p. xvi. Cf. note to l. 80.

1196. "Read 'grettest;' and also in l. 1365. The is similarly elided from 'menskfullest,' in l. 1435."—M.

1211. The word *so* is required for the alliteration, and it improves the sense. *What so* = howsoever, and occurs elsewhere.

P. 47, l. 1222. "For *te* read *to*."—M. But perhaps *te* may stand. See notes to l. 788 and 1093.

1226. In the "Romans of Partenay," *for* is miswritten for *fro* over and over again. See note to l. 1190.

P. 48, l. 1280. The initial *vn-* belongs to *both* words, i. e. *un*wounded or *un*taken.

P. 49, l. 1299. *dede clepe*, caused to be summoned. Cf. *dede fecche* in l. 1303.

1307. We must read *hem*, not *he*. The scribe probably forgot to make the stroke over the *e*.

P. 50, ll. 1323-4. I have ventured to transpose these lines, as they are otherwise devoid of sense. The MS. has—

"wiþ alle worchipe & wele so was he sone
to burye him as out to be swiche a burne nobul;"

but it is clear that "so was he sone" (= so was he soon buried) must end the sentence.

1350. The sense seems to require the insertion of *be* or *ben*—"nadde *be* þe socour of o seg," &c. Cf. l. 1358.

P. 51, l. 1358. *forsake*, deny. Cf. Germ. *versagen*.

P. 52, l. 1401. The second *he* may be miswritten for *hire* or *here*, i. e. her. Read "to come, here granted." Cf. note to l. 584.

1415. *but thei thre one*, except they three only.

P. 53, l. 1425. "And who, by descent, was then keeper of Constantinople." But the relative is omitted, probably by an intentional idiom.

It may be observed here, that it appears by the sequel that the Emperor of Greece was the father of the Queen of Palermo, and William's grandfather. Also, the emperor's son was called Partendo or Partenedon, and was, of course, William's uncle.

1427. The ending *-and* in *grethand* is doubtless a mere mistake, due to the word *glimerand* just before.

P. 54, l. 1478. *Diting* is simply miswritten for *tiding*. Such an inversion of letters is occasionally found; thus, in the Romance of Parthenay, *aduertise* is written for *aduersite* (adversity) more than once.

1490. *mened of*, bemoaned by; so in ll. 1491, 1492, we find *biloued wiþ* meaning *beloved by*.

P. 55, l. 1504. We have had this line before. See l. 246.

1516. *her sche sese miȝt*, ere she might cease.

P. 57, l. 1576. This line has occurred before. See l. 1033.

P. 58, l. 1627. Compare,

"In middes on a mountayne · at midmorwe tyde
Was piht vp a pauilon · a proud for þe nones,

And ten þousend of tentes · I-tilled besydes," &c.
Piers Plowman, Text A. ii. 42.

"Tentes and pauilons streght and pight freshly."
Romans of Partenay, 869.

P. 59, l. 1638. *hese*, ease. Cf. *her*, ere, l. 1516; and *hende*, end, l. 1369.

1640. *Mornyng out mesure*, mourning without measure.

1644. The line would sound better, if *born* and *was* were to change places, as in—

"*Mai banne þat he born was* · to bodi or to soule."
Piers Plowman, A. i. 60.

1654. Both alliteration and sense require some such word as *wist*, which I have inserted.

1662. *tent*, intent, purpose, design. See *Tent* in Halliwell's Dictionary.

1664. *profites loue*. This might seem to mean "for love of the prophet." But this would be quite out of place, and, in fact, the line expresses the same idea as l. 3251 does.

P. 60, l. 1676. The negative prefix in *vnperceyued* affects all the words following it in the same line. Cf. note to l. 1280.

1686. For this story of dressing up in bears' skins, see S. Baring Gould's Book of Werewolves, p. 36. Egillson's explanation of the O.Norse word *berserkr* is, one who wears a *bear's sark*, or a habit made of bear-skin over his armour.

P. 61, l. 1723. This mention of *bear-baiting at a stake* is worth remarking. Cf. Havelok, l. 1840.

P. 62, l. 1742. "You appear so furious a bear for a man to look upon."

P. 63, l. 1777. *whiche*. We should have expected to find *hou* used here.

1793. This is William's *second* experience of a "dern den" under a "holw hok." See ll. 17, 295.

P. 64, l. 1825. *to kepe wiþ our liues*, to preserve our lives with. Compare—

"Oþer catell, oþer cloþ · to coveren wiþ our bones,"

(i. e. or wealth, or cloth to cover our bones with); *Pierce the Ploughmans Crede*, l. 116.

P. 67, l. 1944. *lengeþ* may also be read *lengey*. But the true reading is probably *lengþe*, i. e. lengthen, as in l. 1040. Cf. l. 2345.

P. 68, l. 1957. It is not uncommon in MSS. to find the word *pope* erased or struck out. See *The Romans of Partenay*, p. xviii.

P. 69, l. 1983. For *at sent* Sir F. Madden would read *a-sente*, assented. But I think the MS. reading may stand; *at sent* = at assent, i. e. that she was an assenting party. For *sent* = assent, see Halliwell. See also l. 3017.

P. 71, l. 2073. *treie and tene*. "This expression is very ancient, and may be found in Cædmon."—M. See *Cædmon;* ed. Thorpe, p. 137, l. 15.

P. 73, l. 2127. *do crie*, cause to be proclaimed. So in l. 2145, *let he sende* = he caused to be sent. See l. 2174.

P. 76, l. 2236. *for-walked*, tired out with waking or watching, fatigued for want of sleep.

"It should properly be *for-waked* [as in l. 790], but this variation between *waked* and *walked* is to be met with in other MSS."—M. Compare

> "And sone the knycht he be the brydill nom,
> Saying, "*Awalk! It is no tyme to slep.*"
> *Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 1048.

P. 77, l. 2254. Perhaps *bi* should be *be;* then *þat him bi ȝiue schold* = that should be given him.

P. 82, l. 2432. *helles.* "Read *delles.*"—M. But *helles* may stand, as being the plural of *hel*, a hill; see ll. 2233, 2318.

P. 83, l. 2463. I think the rhythm, alliteration, and sense would all be improved by inserting *softeliche:*

> And as sone as he hade *softeliche* sette it adowne.

2471. Perhaps we should read *blemched*, i. e. blemished.

P. 84, l. 2501. *þat he bar*, that which he bare.

P. 85, l. 2554. *semes.* Printed *serues* in Sir F. Madden's edition, with the note:—"This word is doubtful, and looks in the MS. more like *seines.*" But the word is *semes*, in which the first stroke of the *m* is not quite joined on to the second. There is no stroke above it to show that it is an *i;* nor do I read the word as *selues.* *Semes* means *horse-loads.*

P. 87, l. 2626. Here is a direct allusion to the part of the story which is lost in our English MS. It will be found in the French text, on p. 2.

P. 89, l. 2680. *lengþe.* Or it may be read *lengye*, which would be perhaps better in this place. *Lengye* (the infinitive mood, like *wonye* in l. 3312) is to *dwell, remain; lengþe* is to *lengthen.*

P. 90, l. 2707. *sece.* Printed *seie* in Sir F. Madden's edition; but a close examination of the MS. shews *sece* to be the word. The sense is—"Now *cease* we to talk about the besiegers;" of which "Now *say* we" is the exact contrary.

P. 91, l. 2731. *greyt.* This may be also read *greþt;* the usual form is *greyþed.* Cf. the form *a-greþed* in l. 52.

P. 94, l. 2845. This "park" is the orchard or menagerie already mentioned at p. 3, l. 65.

2864. *drey.* This may also be read *dreþ*, as printed by Sir F. Madden. I have printed *drey*, as coming closer to the form *dreiȝh*, in l. 2796.

P. 95. l. 2870. The sense and alliteration both require the word *douȝter* to be inserted; see l. 2875.

2890. *bilaft*, remained or stayed behind, whilst the hart fought the beasts.

P. 96, l. 2900. Sir F. Madden prints "þat he *gart*," &c.; but the MS. has *gate.* *Gart* or *garte* makes better sense, and is perhaps right. If so, the wrong spelling *gate* was copied from l. 2895.

P. 97, l. 2964. *þe kinges sone*, i. e. *to* the king's son.

P. 98, l. 2998. So also we have *hire þouȝt* in l. 2873, and *here þouȝt* four lines below it.

P. 99, l. 3021. *busked hem*, i. e. *þei* busked hem. This omission of the nominative is frequent, and no doubt intentional.

P. 102, l. 3105. "Probably for *er than an ern.*"—M. *Er than* would mean *ere then*, or *sooner then*, with reference to the *er* following. I almost think the first of the three *er*'s is best omitted. That *ar* is miswritten for *an*, there can be no doubt.

3116. Insert the metrical dot after *ben*. The alliteration follows a rule not unusual in old English, that each half-line is alliterative within itself. Thus :—

It *wéneþ* þat *wé* ben · riȝt *s*wíche as it-*s*clue.

P. 105, l. 3203. Something seems wrong here. If *ne* be inserted, and *fair* changed into *fairre* (= more fair, as in l. 4437) it would be clearer. Perhaps, then, we should read—

alle men vpon mold · ne miȝt sen a fairre coupel, &c.

3220. "Something seems wanting to complete the sense, such as neuer wol i haue.'"—M. That is, we should read—

oþer armes al my lif atteli · neuer wol i haue—

where *atteli* is the infinitive mood. If the line is to stand unaltered, *atteli* must be put for *attele i;* i. e. other arms all my life I design never (to) have. Then the alliteration would fall upon the *vowels*, as thus :—

*o*þer *a*rmes *a*l my lif · *a*tteli neuer haue.

3221. It is difficult to tell whether or not the spelling *carfti* was intentional. *Carfty* appears also in *The Romans of Partenay*, l. 5708 ; and *kerse* is the usual old spelling of *cress*.

P. 106, l. 3260. The word *to* seems to be required, and the line then means, "for it had advanced to night, by that time." To *fare forth* is to proceed, advance, go onward, go forth ; see ll. 2730, 4450. Cf. also l. 3526.

P. 107, l. 3282. For *kniȝt kud*, a better reading would be *kud kniȝt*. The sense is the same both ways.

3290. For *is*, Sir F. Madden prints *his*. Both spellings of the word occur throughout the poem. The MS. has *is* in this place.

P. 108, l. 3315. One of the *now*'s is redundant.

P. 110, l. 3374. "A word seems requisite to eke out the line. Perhaps we might read—'Kniztes with sire William *thanne* kauzt god hert.'" —M. Whilst adopting this suggestion, I have ventured slightly to shift the inserted word. It now occurs to me, however, that the real error is in *kauzt*. This, being *plural*, should be *kauzten* or *kauztè*, and then the flow of the verse would be preserved without any insertion of an extra word at all.

P. 111, l. 3399. Perhaps it should be, "ac spacly *as* þe spaynoles," &c.

3404. *lorlde*. "Read *lorde*, and in the following line *lord*. The same singular mistake (if it be one) occurs in *p.* 142, *l.* 24 [l. 3955 of the present edition] for *lordschip*."—M.

P. 112, l. 3450. "The illuminator has neglected to supply the capital letter here."—M. The little *w* was made, as usual, by the scribe for his guidance. Three times the illuminator has mistaken his instructions, and made a large M instead of a W; see ll. 4660, 4880, 4923.

P. 113, l. 3477. The word omitted is no doubt *kniȝt*, for this word is considered as being alliterative to *crist*; see l. 3671.

P. 114, l. 3509. The werwolf leapt into the sea, and crossed the Straits of Messina to the opposite shore. This part of the story gives us some idea of what the missing part of the English translation was like. See p. 4.

P. 115, l. 3530. The MS. may be read either *sthoure*, or *schoure* (as in Sir F. Madden's edition). *Sthoure* is, I think, the word meant; for see l. 3536. The scribe uses *th* as equivalent to the sound of *t* very frequently; see *miȝthi*, *miȝth* in ll. 3549, 3557 just below, and *wiȝtthli* in l. 3581.

3533. We should perhaps read, "*&* conquered."

P. 117, l. 3597. *lat me worþ*, let me be, let me alone.

So in Piers Plowman, ed. Wright, p. 12.

For-thi I counseille al the commune
To late the cat worthe.

P. 118, l. 3639. There is a sort of gap in the sense which seems to point to the loss of some such line as

Meyntened so his men · þat manly, þei sone.

3646. "The final words of this and the two preceding lines are partly erased, but legible. The later hand has endeavoured to restore them."—M.

P. 119, l. 3665. *for he*, sc. the king of Spain's son. The change of the subject is rather a rapid one.

P. 120, l. 3695. "A verb is here wanting to complete the sense."—M. It is difficult to guess the missing word; perhaps the sense may be bettered by reading,

but I miȝt nouȝt *awei* þer-with · i-wisse, sire, & treuþe.

3705. *þe saules*. Read "there saules."—M. An almost better reading would be "*here* saules," but is not so like what the scribe has given us.

P. 121, l. 3737. *man wod*. Perhaps an error for *wod man*.

P. 122, l. 3778. *tom*, opportunity. Not a very common word. It occurs, however, in *Piers Plowman*, A. ii. 160.

I have no *tom* to telle · þe tayl þat hem folweþ.

P. 123, l. 3789. *Iced*. This, if pronounced *issed*, seems to be equivalent to the Scottish *yschit*, issued, a not uncommon word in Barbour's *Brus*.

3799. The scribe's spelling of *þurh* was clearly influenced by his knowledge that he was about to write the word *ȝour* very soon.

3803. *& I mowe come bi*, if I can get hold of.

P. 124, l. 3825. The word *þat* should be omitted, but it is in the MS.

3835. In *hounde*, there is a (superfluous) stroke over the *n*.

P. 125, l. 3883. *Ferde* is the reading in the parallel line, 3737.

3884. The question has been raised whether in the phrase in Judges ix. 53—"all to-brake his skull"—we ought to join the *to* to the word *all* or to the verb *brake*. It seems certain that, originally, the *to* was a part of the verb, and separate from *all*, and the present line is an excellent evidence of this. It seems equally certain that, in the sixteenth century, the prefix *to* was not very well understood, and the result was that *all-to* was considered as a short way of writing *altogether*. See "The Bible Wordbook," by J. Eastwood and W. Aldis Wright. Those who would consider the *to* as belonging to *al*, and who consider *alto* as properly only *one* word, must go on to explain what is meant by *alfor*, *albi*, and *ala*; for we find in this very poem the prefixes *for-*, *bi-*, and *a-* also preceded by the word *al*. See ll. 790, 793, 661, 872.

P. 127, l. 3925. The first "&" seems redundant.

P. 130, l. 4042. *& þouȝt*, i. e. and *he* thought, an example of the omission of the pronoun, a license in which the author indulges rather freely.

4055. *dared*, became motionless as if stupefied. The word occurs in Chaucer.

P. 131, l. 4061. *any-skines*, written *any skines* in the MS. I have preserved this curious spelling, because I have observed it elsewhere, viz., in one of the Trinity MSS. of Piers Plowman. See the foot-note to *P. Pl.* A. ii. 26, in my edition, and also the foot-note to Passus x. 2. In the latter place, *foure skenis*, *foure skynnes* are various readings for *foure kunne*. In fact, *any skines* is only another way of writing *anys kines*. "Such forms as *alleskynnes* (all kinds of), *noskynnes* (no kind of), are instances of the genitives *alles* (of all), and *nones* (of none)." Morris: *Specimens of Early English*, p. xxiv. I would submit, however, that *alleskynnes*, *noskynnes*, are here wrongly translated; the former means, *of every kind*, the latter, *of no kind*, just as *anyskines* means *of any kind*, and *foure skynnes* means *of four kinds*. The phrase in Piers Plowman, "of foure kunne þinges," means, *of things of four kinds*.

4065. Probably an error for—"þattow *ne* wost." The sense is, "It can't be that you don't know."

P. 132, l. 4104. That *chaunged* is the right reading is rendered probable not only by the recurrence of the word in l. 4500, but by the use of the equivalent word *forschop* in l. 4394.

P. 133, l. 4150. Probably we should read, "ne may zou deliuere."—M. This is a slightly bolder alteration, but a considerable improvement.

P. 137, l. 4278. "*Seþe* in MS. Read 'sothli for sothe.' A pleonasm arising from some blunder of the scribe."—M.

P. 140, l. 4379. "A slight liberty has been taken here, and also [in lines 2323, 3942]. In all three cases the word is written in the MS. 'wirthe' or 'worthe,' but the correction is so obvious, and the difference so small between *c* and *t* [in the MS.], as to warrant the alteration."—M. It may be added that *sc* is almost always written like *st*.

P. 141, l. 4418. *his gref forgaf*, gave away, i. e. laid aside his anger. *Gref* is sometimes anger caused by vexation, as in *Alisaunder*, l. 264.

P. 145, l. 4551. *knew his sone sone*, knew his son soon.

P. 146, l. 4577. "Therefore, O King of heaven, praised should you be, who have lent thee (Alphonse) thy life, to deliver us all." It is rather an awkward sentence; but it is usual, in Early English, to find "haþ" put for "hast" in a sentence thus framed.

P. 147, l. 4632. *boutę bot*, without a boat? The usual meaning of *boute bot* is "without remedy," but this would be unsuitable here, for we have "boute hurt oþer harm" in the next line. The werwolf had to swim across the Straits of Messina, and doubtless found it a hard task, for he took care to secure a boat for the return journey. See l. 2729. In l. 567 we have "boute mast," and in l. 568 "boute anker or ore." More probably, however, *boute bot* = *boute bod*, without delay, as in l. 149.

P. 148, l. 4662. *ioye*. Sir F. Madden prints "foþe," with a note that we should read "ioye." A close inspection of the MS. shews that the first letter is really an *i*, with a blur to the right of it making it look like a long *s*. The letters *y* and þ are made alike, throughout the MS.

4666. *most*, i. e. most glad.

P. 150, l. 4716. *god vnder god*, wealth under God; the author uses *under God* or *under heuene* to signify *throughout the world*. The expression is repeated in l. 4732, and in l. 4730 we find "worldes god" for *worldly wealth*.

4717. Read "it *ne* schal redili."—M. After this line occur the lines,

"& þerto heiȝeli am i holde · for holliche i knowe,
þat alle þi sawes be soþ · þat þou seidest ere."

These lines are out of place here, and occur in their proper places lower down. The repetition of them, however, teaches us somewhat; for it affords a most certain proof of the unsettled state of orthography. We here find the same scribe, in re-writing the same lines, altering *heiȝeli* and *holliche* into *heiȝeliche* and *holli*, so that he considered the endings *-li* and *-liche* as perfectly interchangeable, and it was a mere chance which of the two he adopted. We also find *seidest* altered to *saidest*, shewing the equivalence of the *ei* and *ai* sounds. There is also a difference of reading; for "*þi* sawes" reappears as "*þe* sawes." Lastly, the change of "holde" into "hold" shews the uncertainty attending the use by scribes of the final *e*.

4730. *woldest ȝerne*, wouldst yearn for, wouldst desire to have.

P. 151, l. 4736. *a mite worþ*. Just below, l. 4754, the phrase used is *a bene worþ*. Compare

Schal no deuel at his deþ-day · deren him *worþ a myte*.
Piers Plowman, A. viii. 54.

A straw for alle swevenes signifiaunce!
God help me so, I counte hem *nought a bene*.
Chaucer, Troil. & Cress. bk. v. st. 52.

So we find, in the Knightes Tale—the mountance of *a tare* (l. 712)—nought worth *a myte* (l. 700); in the Milleres Tale—nat *a kers* (l. 568); and in the Pardoneres Tale—the mountance of *a corn of whete* (l. 401).

P. 152, l. 4785. *wil our lord wold*, whilst our Lord would (permit us

to live). This is repeated in l. 4802. In the present line, however, *wil our lord willeþ* would be a better reading.

P. 153, ll. 4797, 4798. "All the nobles immediately prayed for them busily, (on the understanding) that they must by all means amend their trespass," viz., by a life of penitence. Such an ellipsis is not uncommon; in l. 4800, however, the introduction of the word *so* before *that* makes the sense clearer.

P. 154, l. 4827. This line is repeated, slightly varied, at l. 4888.

P. 155, l. 4877. *tiding*. Both this and *tidinges* are plural forms. Cf. l. 1075.

P. 159, l. 5004. *bemleem;* so in MS. Read "beþleem," i. e. Bethlehem.

5013. *hurtel*. "This term is used in Chaucer twice, Cant. T. 2618, 4717 [ed. Tyrwhitt], and in the Wycliffite versions of the Bible is far from uncommon. We find it also inserted in the Prompt. Parv. '*Hurtelyne*, as too thynges togedur, *impingo*, *collido*;' and, at a more recent period, Shakspeare introduces it into his Julius Cæsar, Act ii., sc. 2.

'The noise of battle *hurtled* in the air,
Horses did neigh, and dying men did groan.'

The line in which this word occurs in our Romance is, perhaps, the finest of the whole poem, and not surpassed by the more polished diction of the Dramatist."—M.

I would add that *hurlest* is a reading adopted for *hurtlest* in later editions of Cant. Tales, in l. 4717. But we find in Chaucer the word in another place, "And hertely they *hurtelen* al attones."

Legend of Good Women; Cleopatra, l. 59.

It occurs twice in the "Romans of Partenay;" see the glossary. It is used with great effect by Gray—

Iron sleet of arrowy shower
Hurtles in the darkened air;—

though he obviously copies here from Shakespeare.

5014. *desgeli*. I let this word stand, though I believe it should be *desgesli*, or, better still, *desgisli*, *disgisli*, or *disgisili*, for which latter form see l. 485. It is best explained by a passage from Chaucer's Persones Tale—"precious clothing is coupable for . . . his straungeness and *disgisines*," &c. Hence *disgisili* means *strangely*, *extraordinarily*, *unusually*, *inordinately*, and is equivalent etymologically to *disguisedly;* but it should be noted that the meaning of the Old French *desguiser* is rather to *alter* than to *conceal* the outward appearance of a thing, whence *desguiser* is often used in the sense of to trim, deck out, or adorn. In the present case, the sense is, that "there was so strange and unusual a din, that all the earth quaked." In l. 485, Meliors laments that she would, if she married beneath her, "be extraordinarily disgraced." We must not connect this with the A. S. *digellice*, secretly, for this would contradict the sense in both places. The din (l. 5014) was not *secret*, but very manifest; and in l. 485 Meliors is expressing that it is open and public and unusual disgrace that she is afraid of, and that if she could keep the matter secret, all would be well.

P. 160. l. 5035. I fail to discover any alliteration in this line.

P. 167. l. 5262. *vnderston* is probably the provincial pronunciation of *vnderstonde;* thus, and only thus, can we explain the curious reading *vndersto* in l. 5533 (which is very clearly written), where the scribe has forgotten to make a stroke over the *o* to denote the *n*. Cf. note to l. 261.

P. 168. l. 5300. For *i knew* we should probably read *i know*. The letters *e* and *o* are often miswritten, one for the other.

5322. *þo*. Read "þe."—M. But I do not feel convinced that the alteration is needed. As it stands, we may translate it—"Readily towards Rome then, by the direct way;" taking *riȝtes gates* as an adverbial expression. There is some difficulty about *riȝtes;* see the glossary.

P. 170. l. 5378. "Anon then in haste he bad (men) cause his steward to come to him," &c. *Come* sometimes means *become;* this might suggest the sense, that William made the cowherd his steward, but the latter explanation is disposed of by l. 5391.

P. 172. l. 5437. This curious expression, "the emperor's mother William," meaning "the emperor William's mother," deserves notice. It is the usual old English phrase. Thus, in Chaucer's Squyeres Tale, we find

"Or elles it was the *Grekes hors Sinon*" (C. T. ed. Tyrwhitt; l. 10523).

That is, "or else it was Sinon the Greek's horse." In my opinion, it was very injudicious of later editors to substitute *Grekissch* for *Grekes;* for, with the latter reading, the line can only mean—"or else it was the Greek horse, Sinon," which makes out Sinon to be *the name of the horse!*

P. 174. l. 5516. "That had had many hard haps theretofore, and (had) been once in great trouble and misfortune." The repetition of *hadde* is quite right.

P. 175. l. 5536. *ȝif*, give; like *gif* in l. 5539 below. It is not the conjunction *ȝif* (if) in this instance.

NOTES TO "ALISAUNDER."

[N.B.—In the following notes, by the *Greek* text is meant the text of MS. No. 113 (du supplément) of the Bibliothéque du Roi, a long extract from which is given in "Notices des Manuscrits de la Bibliothéque du Roi," tom. xiii. p. 219, edited by M. Berger de Xivrey. By the *French* text is meant the text of MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 7517, quoted in the same volume. By the *Latin* text (unless otherwise specified) is meant the version contained in "Historia Alexandri magni regis Macedonie de preliis," printed, according to the colophon, in A.D. 1490.]

P. 177, l. 9. *one*, i. e. Alexander; though in l. 11 the poet begins to tell first of all about his grandfather Amyntas.

21. *Twoo sonnes.* Rather *three*, viz. Alexander, Perdiccas, and Philip. Perdiccas, like Alexander, was put to death by the wiles of Eurydice, according to MS. C.C.C. 219.

22. The variations of spelling are due to the fact that the copyist has evidently made alterations of his own in order to make the significations plainer. Thus *alder* (which occurs again in l. 27) is explained by *elder*. It is very fortunate that he has been at the pains to preserve the old spelling. It must be noted that he sometimes places the *old* spelling, sometimes the *modernized* spelling, in the text. Thus, in l. 1132, we find *Dupe* altered to *deepe*, but in l. 1156 he writes *deepe*, with the old spelling *dupe* above it. I have therefore, in all cases, adopted that spelling which seems rightly to belong to the original MS.

P. 178. l. 28. Ll. 4651 and 5226 of the *Werwolf* resemble this one.

30. "Nec multo post alexander, insidiis eurydicis mat*r*is appetit*us* occumbit. Cui amintas, in scelere depr*e*hensæ, propter communes liberos, ignarus eisdem q*u*andoq*ue* existiosam fore, pep*e*rcerat." MS. C.C.C. 219, *fol.* 2. See also *Orosius*, ed. Havercamp, 1738, p. 168.

33. In this line, the cross-stroke to the initial D *is made* in the MS., showing plainly that the letter Ð was used in the original. In other places, the copyist has written the small letter ꝺ *without* the cross-stroke, as in l. 41, and elsewhere, and I have not always noticed this; for the omission of the cross-stroke is very common even in a *thirteenth* century MS.; see Mr Morris's *Genesis and Exodus* (E. E. T. S., 1865). It may be added that the copyist has two ways of making a *d;* one with a long up-stroke, i. e. ꝺ without the cross-stroke, and the other with the up-stroke curled round to the left and brought down again. *Only the former* of

these is used where ð is meant. This is a convenient place for observing that there is a *second copy* (inferior and with several omissions) of the first 43 lines, at a later page of the MS., viz. on fol. 16 *b*. The following variations may be noted:—In l. 2, for *thinken*, the second copy has *thynken*, with an *e* over the *y*. No doubt the original had *thenken* (the right spelling, see *Werwolf*, l. 711), and it was rendered by *thinken* or *thynken*. In l. 3, for *whepер*, another reading is *outher*. In l. 4, for *loose* the second copy has *lose*, which is better; I am convinced that the original could not have had so many *double vowels* as abound in this copy; thus *yee* and *oopер* in l. 1 should rather have been *ye* and *oper*. In l. 38, for *her* the second copy has the more usual spelling *hir*.

44. In the *Werwolf*, we find the same method of concluding a paragraph, and nearly in the same words; see ll. 5396, 5466.

47. "Igitur alexander, inter prima initia regni, bellum ab illiriis, pacta mercede *et* philippo fratre dato obside, redemit. Interiecto quoque tempore, per eundem obsidem cum thebanis gratiam pacis reconciliat. Quæ res philippo maxima incrementa egregiæ indolis dedit. Si quidem thebis triennio obses habitus, prima puericiæ rudimenta in urbe seueritatis antiquæ *et* in domo epaminondæ summi *et* philosophi *et* imperatoris deposuit." MS. C.C.C. 219, *fol.* 2. And see *Orosius*, as above.

P. 180, ll. 87, 88. *hym betides*, *For hee*. The MS. has *hee* betides, for *hym*, with *ee* over *ym* in the latter word. The reading given in the text is the only one that can be grammatically correct.

90. "Primum bellum cum Atheniensibus gessit."—*Orosius*.

102. This date is from *Orosius*. It is right within a few years.

109. *Assyriens*, i. e. Illyrians. "Post hos, bello in illiriis (*sic*) translato, multa milia hostium cædit; urbem nobilissimam larisseam capit." MS. C.C.C. 219, *fol.* 2 *b*. So in *Orosius;* and indeed, the *Assyrians* are out of the question. The reader must expect to find the greatest confusion in the proper names; in one of the French copies, for instance, Artaxerxes is called *Arressessers*. In l. 130, we have *Larissa* called the city of the *Assyrians*.

P. 181, ll. 119, 131. In both places, the *e* in *Larissea* or *Larisse* has a slight tag below it. In Latin MSS., this denotes *æ*, and we thus have another slight indication that our author translated from the Latin. Cf. note to l. 255.

124. Over *deraine* is written, as a gloss, the later spelling *deraigne*. One or two quite unimportant variations of this kind I have omitted to mention.

133. "Inde Thessaliam non magis amore victoriæ, quam ambitione habendorum equitum Thessalorum, quorum robur ut exercitui suo admisceret, invasit."—*Orosius*, as above.

135. The MS. has *see*, with *swee* or *swa* above it, hardly legible. In l. 299, there is a similar difficult word. Considering *both* passages, the word blundered over is probably *sese*, *sesen*. Cf. *Seseden* in l. 234.

P. 182, ll. 155—170. Orosius simply says, "Igitur victis Atheniensibus, subjectisque Thessalis;" and in MS. C.C.C. 219 we merely find, "Quibus

rebus feliciter prouenientibus." That the poet has spun this out into 16 lines seems to me highly probable, and it will therefore be but a vain search to look for an original that may agree with his translation more closely. Just below we have 22 lines, 178—199, which seem to me *evidently* his own, every word of them.

172. *Arisba* or *Erubel*. In his edition of *Orosius*, Havercamp adopts the spelling *Aruba*, the common reading being *Eurucha;* we also find the spellings *Arucha*, *Erybba*, *Arymba*, &c. Compare—"Olimpiadem, neoptolemi regis molossorum filiam, uxorem ducit, conciliante nuptias fratre patrueli auctore uirginis *sarraba* rege molossorum, qui sororem olimpiadis troadam in matrimonio habebat; quæ causa illi exitium (*sic*) malorumque omnium fuit." MS. C.C.C. 219, *fol.* 3.

P. 183, l. 199. Cf. *Werwolf*, l. 671.

P. 184, l. 234. *Sededen* begins with a double long *s*. Wherever I have printed *ss*, it is to denote a character resembling a German *sz*.

240. "(Aruba) privatus in exilio consenuit."—*Orosius*.

P. 185, l. 248. *hampred* is doubtless the word wanted. It occurs in the *Werwolf*, l. 1115, &c.

255. *Comothonham*. Several MSS. of *Orosius* have "Cū mothonam urbem oppugnaret," &c.; where Cū means Cum. Hence the strange word *Comothonham*, repeated in l. 310; and hence, also, a clear proof that the poet translated from a *Latin* original, as he himself asserts in l. 458.

256. The MS. has "holde menne þere," but the alliteration shows that we must read *bolde; holde* belongs to the next line, which see.

264. *greefe*, i. e. vexation, anger; cf. *Werwolf*, 4418.

268. *areblast*. Rather, read *arblast*, which the copyist has turned into *aireblast*, i. e. *air-blast!*

P. 186, l. 284. *merken*. Probably *not* an error for *maken*, as might be thought; for the word occurs again in l. 932. See the Glossary.

291. *flocke*. Possibly an error for *folke;* yet *flocke* makes good sense. *Sondes* or *soundes* is no doubt put for *sondes*, messengers.

292. The MS. reading "Gamus" must be a mistake for Gainus or Ganus; see *Gainus* in the Glossary.

295. *cournales;* see *Werwolf*, l. 2858.

299. The MS. has *seene* or *seeue*, with *i* over the *ee*. The right word is perhaps *sesen*, written *sesene*, and read as *seiene* by the copyist.

302. Here and elsewhere *many a* is written "many ª," with the *a* above the line, as if it did not belong to the phrase; but see *Werwolf*, ll. 3410, 3411. A large portion of the description of this siege of Methone is doubtless of the poet's own invention.

P. 187, l. 329. The outline of the story of these wars is given in *Orosius*.

P. 188, l. 347. *wonde* is no doubt the right word, *wende* being an ignorant gloss upon it, subversive of the sense.

349. MS. has *strane*, or *straue*. Perhaps it means,

"Steeds, stirred from the place, strain under men."

Otherwise, for *strane* read *stronge*, and the sense is,

"Steeds stirred from the place under strong men."

For *men under* = under men, see l. 1188.

362. *spenen* is the right reading, and is put for *spenden*, like *wen* for *wend*, &c.

P. 189, l. 391. The alteration of *Phosus* into *Φosus* is a convincing proof that the copyist took an occasional liberty with the spelling. He could not have had *Φosus* before him in an Old English MS. of the 14th century.

P. 190, l. 416. The copyist has written *stelger*, and marked it as being a word he did not understand. The words may have been run together in the older MS. *Stel ger* is simply "steel gear."

421. Here is another proof that the poet probably followed the Latin of *Orosius*. We find there the phrase—"Philomelo duce"—whence he adopted the form *Philomelo* in l. 364, and did not alter it here. Yet *Orosius* afterwards has—"sequenti prælio inter immensas utriusque populi strages Philomelus occisus est: in cujus locum Phocenses Onomarchum ducem creaverunt."

P. 191, l. 439. *ȝeme*. The MS. has either "ȝenn" or "ȝeme." The latter is right; see l. 365.

445. This line means, "that ever they paused in the strife, (though it had caused them) to die upon the field."

451. *for his grete yie*, in return for his great eye; a curious way of expressing that his vow, mentioned in l. 281, had been fulfilled.

452. Here the more historical part of the story ceases, and the romance properly begins. From this point, also, the poet translates from a different source, as explained in the Preface. Ll. 452—1092 should be compared with the first 722 lines of Mr Stevenson's edition of "The Alliterative Romance of Alexander" (Roxburghe Club, 1849); from MS. Ashmole 44. See also Gower, Conf. Amant. bk. vi.

457. This shews that the poet used more books than one to translate from. His regret that he could not trace the lineage of Nectanabus shews that his probable object in the preceding part of the poem was to trace the lineage of Alexander, and to say something about his father and grandfather.

459. *Nectanabus;* called also *Anectanabus*, *Anec*, or *Natabus*. The story of Nectanabus is utterly rejected by Lambert li Tors. See "Li Romans d'Alixandre," par Lambert li Tors et Alexandre de Bernay; herausgegeben von Heinrich Michelant: Stuttgart, 1846, p. 5.

460. This line occurs, slightly altered, in the *Werwolf*, l. 119.

463. Some such word as *kene* or *kid* must be supplied.

465. *Y-wis* may mean *prudent, knowing* (A.S. *ge-wis*), but as it is elsewhere *always* an adverb in *both* poems, I prefer to think that the sentence is incomplete; and that this line ought to be followed by some such line as—

"For a wel kud clerke · and koynt in his liue."

P. 192, l. 473. *But*, except.

475—483. The Latin is—"non movit militiam, neque preparavit exercitum, sed intravit cubiculum palatii sui; et deprendens conchaṁ

eream plenam aqua pluuiali, tenensque in manu virgam ereαm, hic per magicos incantationes intelligebat in ipsa concha classes nauium super eum potentissime venientes."

493. *nine grete nations.* The number nine may have been selected merely for the alliteration. The names of these nations vary greatly in the different copies. The "Augmi" or "Augni" (for our MS. may be read either way, on account of the *m* or *n* being here represented by a horizontal line) may perhaps be the Ἀζανοὶ of the Greek, or the "Argiri" of the Latin text. By the "Bosorii" the translator would probably mean the men of Bussorah or Bassorah; yet this city was not founded till A.D. 636. It represents the Βόσποροι of the Greek text, and possibly answers to the "Rospharіens" of the French text (MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 7517). The "Agiofagi"—("Agiophii" in the Latin text)—are the "Agriophagi" mentioned in the Latin MS. No. 8518 of the Bibl. du Roi:

> "Another folk woneth in the west half,
> That eteth never kow no kalf,
> Bote of panteris and lyouns,
> And that they nymeth as venesons.
> Othir flesch, no othir fysch,
> No othir bred, heo no haveth, y-wis.
> Feorne men, and othir therby,
> Clepeth heom *Agofagy*."
>
> *Weber's Metrical Romances*, v. i. p. 261.

P. 193, l. 515. The Christian sentiment in this line and in l. 523, of ascribing strength to God only, is the poet's own.

I here add, by way of illustration, the speech of Nectanabus as given in the various texts.

Σὺ μὲν, καλῶς καὶ ἐπιεικῶς ἦν ἐπιστεύθης φρουρὰν φυλάττων, καὶ μὴ ταῦτα λέγε. Δειλῶς γὰρ καὶ οὐ στρατιωτικῶς ἐφθέγξω. Οὐ γὰρ ἐν ὄχλῳ ἡ δύναμις, ἀλλ' ἐν προθυμίᾳ ὁ πόλεμος. Καὶ γὰρ εἷς λέων πολλὰς ἐλάφους ἐχειρώσατο. Καὶ εἷς λύκος πολλὰς ἀγέλας ποιμνίων ἐσκύλευσεν. Ὥστε οὖν σὺ πορευθεὶς ἅμα τοῖς ἐν ὑποταγῇ σοι στρατιώταις τὴν ἰδίαν παράταξιν φύλαττε· λόγῳ γὰρ ἑνὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἀναρίθμητον πλῆθος πελάγει ἐπικαλύψω.—*MS. Bibl. du Roi*, No. 113 (suppl.); quoted in Notices des Manuscrits de la Bibliothéque du Roi; tom. xiii. p. 223.

"Custodiam quam tibi condidi bene obserua; sed non tamen sicut princeps militie egisti, sed sicut homo timidus. Uirtus enim non hec valet in multitudine populi, sed in fortitudine animorum; an nescis quod vnus leo multos ceruos in fugam vertit?"—*Historia Alexandri;* edition of 1490, page 1.

"Va-t-en à la garde que je t'ai commandee, et veille curieusement, et pense de bien garder ta reccomandise. Car tu n'a pas parle comme prince de chevalerie, mais comme homme paoureux. Car il n'affiert pas à gouverneur de peuple qu'il s'espouvente pour grant quantite de gent; car victoire ne gist pas en multitude de gent, mais en vigueur et force de courage. N'as tu pas veu par plusieurs fois que ung [lyon ?] meit à la

fuite grant quantite de serfz [cerfz ?].[1] Aussi se peut poy contretenir la grant multitude contre les vigureux."—*MS. Bibl. du Roi;* quoted in the above vol., p. 287. See also *Alexander*, ed. Stevenson; p. 4, ll. 97—110.

P. 194, l. 532. *Fleete* certainly means *to float* here; yet the Latin has "videbat qualiter egiptii sternebantur impetu classium Barbarorum." Out of this the translator has made this curious passage about the "god of Barbre," the origin of which is to be traced to a misunderstanding of the Greek text, which says, "he sees the gods of the Egyptians steering the enemies' boats, and the armies of the Barbarians being guided by them."

545. *white sendal;* "linea vestimenta."

549. *let trusse*, commanded his men to pack up.

557. *Seraphin;* so spelt in the French text. The Latin has *Serapis.*

P. 195, l. 565. *He shall hye hym againe.* The response of the oracle must be given in the words of the Greek text. It runs thus: ὁ φυγὼν βασιλεὺς ἥξει πάλιν ἐν αἰγύπτῳ, οὐ γηράσκων, ἀλλὰ νεάζων, καὶ τοὺς ἐχθρούς ἡμῶν πέρσας ὑποτάξει. Here the word πέρσας is ambiguous, and may mean "having destroyed" or "the Persians." M. Berger de Xivrey draws special attention to this oracle, which he considers as the basis of the whole romance. It was fulfilled, not by the return of the old man Nectanabus, but by the visit to Egypt of his son, the young man Alexander. It is accordingly alluded to again in the passage where Alexander, seeing the great image (mentioned by our author in l. 568), inquires whom it represents. He is told it represents Nectanabus, upon hearing which he falls down and kisses the feet of it. Cf. *Alexander*, ed. Stevenson, l. 1135; *Weber's Metr. Rom.* vol. i. p. 67.

574. Here begins a new paragraph—"Quomodo Anectanabus ascendit palacium ad Olimpiam reginam;" and in Mr Stevenson's edition is the heading—"Secundus passus Alexandri."

584. "Aue *regina* Macedonie! dedignatus ei dicere *domina*."

P. 196, l. 594. "Uerbum regale dixisti, quando egiptios nominasti."

596. The MS. has *worclich*, a mere error for *wortlich*, which is another spelling of *worthlich;* cf. l. 1024.

601. *iudene of þat language*, the speech (or meaning) of that language.

"Sum understandis in a stounde · the steven (*voice*) of the briddis," &c.
Alexander, ed. Stev. l. 252.

Compare also the passage in Chaucer about Canace understanding the language of birds.

—sche understood wel euery thing
That eny foul may in his *lydne* sayn,
And couthe answer him in his *lydne* again.
The Squyeres Tale, Pars Secunda; ll. 88—90.

613. We should rather read, *Too defend þee fro doole.*

616. *Imped*, set; lit. engrafted. "Tabulam eream *et* eburneam

[1] The editor has a note—"On reconnaît là les idées provenant de la supériorité si marquée de la chevalerie, au moyen âge, sur les serfs et sur les vilains." True, no doubt; but *serfz* probably means *stags* in this passage, nevertheless.

mixtam auro *et* argento." Cf. "His ars-table he tok oute sone;" *Weber, Metr. Rom.*, vol. i. p. 17. It was, I suppose, an astrolabe-planisphere.

620. The contents of the circles are wrongly given. They should be (1.) The 12 intelligences—"duodecim intelligentias"—"les xii. intelligences, c'est assavoir les xii. entendemens;" (2.) the signs of the zodiac, called in MS. Ashmole "a dusan of bestes;" and (3.) the courses of the sun and moon.

P. 197, l. 628. *forcer*, a box; "une boiste d'ivoire." It contained a species of horoscope, in which were the seven planets, to each of which was assigned a particular kind of stone. Thus in l. 634 we should rather read, "*Seuen* stones," but the poet has written *Foure* for the sake of alliteration, regardless of facts. The seven stones are mentioned in the Latin MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 8518. "Jovem quippe viseres aërino lapide nuncupatum. Solem cristallo, Lunam adamante, Martem dici sub lapide hematite, Mercurium smaragdo. Venus autem saphirina erat; Saturnus in ophite. At vero horoscopus lygdinus erat." The Greek text has the same.

656—674. This passage is not in the Greek, Latin, or French texts, and was inserted by the translator from another source (see note to l. 837), to account for Philip's ill-will against Olympias. The interpolation is needless, as a dream is contrived by Nectanabus expressly for Philip's information soon afterwards; see ll. 807—874. The present passage is also omitted in MS. Ashmole 44.

P. 199, l. 694. "Neque iuvenis neque senex, et barbam canis habens ornatam. Unde si placet, esto illi parata," &c. The "silver horns," however, are essential, as being the chief characteristic of the god Ammon.

"With tachid in his for-toppe · *twa tufe hornes.*"
Alexander, ed. Stevenson, l. 319.

698. *glisiing* is another form of *glisiande*, glistening.

700. Supply the word *þee*. *Nye*, to draw nigh, occurs in ll. 739, 817; and *nye þee* in l. 764.

702. "Si hec videro, non vt prophetam nec diuinum, sed vt deum ipsum adorabo."

710-744. This passage is much amplified. It is much shorter in the Ashmole MS., and the Latin merely has—"cuellit herbas, terensque eas *et* succos illarum tulit, *et* fecit incantationes per diabolica figmenta; vt in eadem nocte Olimpia deum Hamon concumbentem secum videret, dicentemque ei post concubitum, mulier, concepisti defensorem tuum."

P. 200, l. 726. *riue*. The MS. has *riue*, with *f* over the *u*, rightly explaining *riue* by the modern word *rife*.

738. *Or-trowed*, lit. over-trowed, and hence, suspected, imagined. Compare *ouer-trowe* in the Glossary.

756. *No nooþer*, none other, nothing else. So also *þi narmes* for *þin armes* (*Werwolf*, l. 666).

P. 201, l. 760. *Too waite at a window*, to watch at a window. A favourite phrase of our author's. See *Werwolf*, ll. 779, 2982, 3030, 3300.

764. The line would run as well again if *þee nye* were altered to *nye*

þee. Compare—"Nam ille deus in figura draconis ad te veniet; *et* exinde humanam formam accipiens; *et* mea similitudine apparebit."

770. "Si veritatem probare valebis, te quasi patrem pueri habebo." But this is sometimes curiously altered, as in the following:

"Then salle I cherische the with chere · as thou *my child* were,
Loute the lovely and love · alle my lyfe days."
Alexander, ed. Stevenson, l. 368.

774, 775. These two fine lines certainly surpass the bald statement—"circa autem primam vigiliam noctis."

779. *slaked on wightes*, fell relaxingly upon men. *Wightes*, not *mightes*, is the right reading. Compare—

"Qwen it was metyn to the merke · that *menn* ware taryst,[1]
And *folke* was on thair firste slepe · and it was furth evyne."
Alexander, ed. Stevenson, l. 374.

781. *a dragones drem*, a dragon's droning. *Drem* or *dream* is sometimes a loud, droning sound. The Latin has—"et *sibilando* contra cubiculum Olimpie cepit transuolare." The French has "ala *sufflant* entour le lit." Cf. ll. 982, 985.

782. *makes his lidene*, i. e. talks softly. Compare *ludene* above, l. 601.

P. 202, l. 802. *Deemes*, i. e. *will* deem. Philip had been from home for some time; she wonders what he will say when he returns.

808. "Euellens herbas, triturauit eas *et* tulit succum illarum, apprehendensque auem marinam, cepit super eam incantare, illam de succo herbarum liniens."

813. Compare—

"And [with?] the wose of the wede · hire wengis anoyntes."
Alexander, ed. Stevenson, l. 413.

817. The phrase *nied þe night* occurs in the *Werwolf*, l. 770.

P. 203, l. 824. The Latin has "deus *Hamon;*" and "Amon" is here mentioned in MS. Ashmole.

826. The word *deede* was miswritten *deene* owing to confusion with *deerne*. Compare—

"þat *deede derne* · do no mon scholde."
Piers Plowman, ed. Skeat, A. x. 199.

In the Latin follows—"quod videret os uulue consuere et annulo aureo consignare *et* in ipso annulo erat lapis vbi erat sculptum caput leonis et currus solis *et* gladius peracutus."

837. *nyed*, approached (a favourite word with our author), is almost certainly the word required here. The following passage is worth notice here.

"Philipe aussi long temps apres ses nopces songea quil seelloit le ventre de sa femme dung grant seel auquel estoit graue lymaige dung lyon; par lequel songe, comme plusieurs eussent expose a phellippe quil

[1] Read "ta ryst," i. e. to rest.

se donnast garde de sa femme, Aristander le deuin affermoit quelle auoit chargie denfant. Car on ne seelle point les choses vuydes; et que elle se deliueroit dung enfant, plain de couraige et ayant nature de lyon. ¶ Deuant ce on auoit veu vng dragon couchant empres olympie qui lors dormit, la quelle chose Refroida tresfort Phelippe enuers elle." MS. Douce 318, chap. iii. The same MS. informs us further that Philip avoided Olympias, because he feared magic or poison; that he sent to Delphos, and was told to sacrifice to the god "Amon," and that he would lose an eye as a punishment for having beheld Amon with her; all which is related by Plutarch. But Eratosthenes says, his mother only told Alexander the secret of his birth on his setting out on his expedition. A similar story is told of the mother of Scipio Africanus. Plutarch explains the dragon story by saying that Olympias belonged to a tribe that religiously cherished serpents of great size. Justin says, Olympias dreamt of having conceived a serpent. "Vincent lystorial" (i. e. Vincent of Beauvais, in his "Speculum Historiale") ascribes the engendrure of Alexander to Neptanabus, but this is flat against Holy Scripture, since in the book of Maccabees [bk. 1. chap. i. v. 1] Alexander is expressly called the "son of Philip." All this, and more, is to be found in the above-mentioned MS., chap. iii.

853. *þe sonne course of þe sell*, the course of the sun upon the seal. MS. Ashmole has "the course one the sonne."

P. 204, l. 855. *sonne rist*, rising of the sun, the far East; "ad orientem, vnde sol egreditur."

860. The MS. has *boldes*, but we must read *holdes*; cf. note to l. 256.

873. *meting*, dream. See the Glossary.

875. Here begins a new paragraph in the Latin, with the heading, "Qualiter Anectanabus in figura draconis antecedebat Philippum in prelio deuincendo *et* hostes."

879. *lasches*, lashes, i. e. heavy strokes. Cf. the phrase "to deal dints;" *Werwolf*, 3440.

883. *Deraide*, acted madly or terribly. It is the past tense, not the past participle, but we ought perhaps to supply *hym* after it.

P. 205, l. 895. Here *loren* is correctly glossed by *lorne*, i. e. lost.

900-953. The whole of this passage is an interpolation from another source, and belongs rather to history than to the romance. The drift of it agrees with the account given by Orosius.

901. The MS. has—"Was going too þe ouer Greece," &c. But the word "þe" must be corrupt, being an article without a substantive, and, moreover, a verb is required. I propose *ride* as very probably being the correct reading, as it is the expression used in l. 5471 of the *Werwolf* in a similar case. If the first two letters of *ride* were erased, *de* might easily be confused with ȝe or þe.

903. The Athenians stopped him by occupying the pass of Thermopylæ. "Athenienses . . . angustias Thermopylarum . . . occupavere." *Orosius*, ed. Havercamp, 1738, p. 171.

904. *to keueren him gate*, to recover (or obtain) for himself a passage.

908. *þe entres;* the entries, i. e. the pass. *Enforced*, strengthened, forcibly occupied.

909. We must read either *þo marches*, or *þat marche;* for the plural form *þo* see l. 912. The MS. has *þat marches*.

911. *agrised* is a gloss upon *agrise*, the form used by our author.

913. Philip, failing to harm his enemies, cruelly attacks his own allies; "paratum in hostes bellum vertit in socios." *Orosius.*

P. 206, l. 923. Besides *of*, we almost require to insert *was*.

"Hee wrathfull *of* wille *was* · wronglich þare."

928. Lines 2621, 2647 in the *Werwolf* resemble this line.

933. The MS. has *traie*, with *be* written before it above the line; perhaps *traie* is the right reading, and *betraie* the gloss upon it.

934. "Conjuges liberosque omnium sub corona vendidit, templa quoque universa subvertit, spoliavitque," &c. *Orosius.*

940. *He ne laft no lenger*, he remained no longer; cf. l. 950.

942. *fares*, goes. This makes sense, but I suspect the right word is *cayres*.

944. "Post hæc in Cappadociam transiit, ibique bellum pari perfidia gessit, captos per dolum finitimos reges interfecit, totamque Cappadociam imperio Macedoniæ subdidit." *Orosius.* The editor (Havercamp) remarks that this is false, and that *Cappadociam* is a mere mistake for *Chalcidicam* or *Chalcidem;* and he is doubtless right, as the siege of Olynthus in Chalcidice must be meant.

P. 207, l. 954. At about this line we drop the history and return to the romance, taking it up from l. 899.

965. "Nevertheless I know (it) not yet, nay, as I trow." *Not* = *ne wot.* This is awkward enough. It represents the Latin—"Peccasti, inquit, *et* non peccasti, quia violentiam a deo passa es."

974. This line occurs in the *Werwolf*, l. 1416; cf. also l. 5250. It should be observed that a new paragraph begins here in the Latin, with the heading, "Quomodo Anectanabus in figura*m* draconis apparuit Philippo i*n* conuiuio, et osculatus est Olim*p*iam."

980. Cf. *Werwolf*, l. 4906.

P. 208, l. 982. See note to l. 781, and cf. l. 985. The Latin has "fortiter sibilabat."

992. *liuand lud*, living man; a favourite phrase of our author's; see l. 790, and *Werwolf*, ll. 1690, 3678, 5429.

994. *greefly bigo*, grievously beset; *bigo* is glossed by *bigone.*

999. Here begins a new paragraph in the Latin, with the heading, "Quomodo auis generavit ouum in gremio philippi, de quo confracto exiuit serpens, qui statim mortuus est."

1004. "He laid an egg in his lap, and then hurries away." *Hee* might stand for *she*, but *him* is always masculine. We should certainly have expected to find the feminine, as in the Latin and in MS. Ashmole 44.

1008. *to-shett*, i. e. "brast all esoundir," as MS. Ashmole has it. Cf. *too-clef* in the next line.

P. 209, l. 1013. *had in his hed*, got his head in. *Deide* is the right spelling, and *dyed* the gloss.

1022. *Raigne* is the old spelling, *reigne* the gloss.

1024. *wortlych* is found as an occasional spelling of *worthlych*; *worthly* is a gloss. Cf. l. 596.

1025. "Ere he come unto the country that he came from."

1026. *doluen and ded*; more correctly, *ded and doluen*, i. e. dead and buried. Cf. *Werwolf*, 5252, 5280.

1030. *roum* may mean *room*, space; and hence, a while.

1031-2. "Ere he may wend with his host to his (own) land where he was fostered and fed—it befalls him to die."

1033. Here begins a new paragraph in the Latin, without a heading, and in MS. Ashmole 44 is the heading "Tercius Passus Alexandri."

1034. A portion of the story is here lost. I might have supplied the omission from MS. Ashmole 44 (see Stevenson's edition, ll. 525—672), but the great length of this passage and the consideration that to supply the omission from another *alliterative* poem might lead to confusion between the two, were reasons against this. Or it might have been supplied from the Latin, beginning at—"Appropinquans autem tempus pariendi" —and ending—"Audiens hec Olimpia terrore perterrita vocauit Anectanabum, et dixit." It seemed to me, however, that a quotation from the French would be more acceptable, and the omission is supplied therefore from MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 7517, as edited in the 13th vol. of "*Notices des Manuscrits*," &c.; pp. 297-299. The following words may require explanation :—

chey, fell ;—*croulla*, shook ;—*noif*, snow (explained by *neige* by the editor of the French text) ;—*targa*, tarried, delayed ;—*me feust*, perhaps we should read *ne feust*, for the Latin has, "cogitaui quod infantulus iste nullatenus nutriatur," and the Ashmole MS. has, "That this frute shall haue na fostring · ne be fed nouthire ;"—*vair* (*Lat.* "glaucus"), gray ; MS. Ashmole has "ȝelow ;"—*sestature*, stature ;—*non pour quant*, nevertheless ; —*ysnellete*, quickness (cf. O.E. *snell*) ; — *doubta moult*, feared greatly.

P. 211, l. 1038. "He was very well pleased with his noble deeds, but (then) he changed his demeanour," &c.

1041. The MS. has *maried*, with *r* over the *i*. Hence, the old word was *marred*, altered to *maried*; for *marred* is a common word with our author. *Marred too care*, vexed unto great anxiety, is a not very intelligible phrase, and therefore liable to alteration. It means much the same as *wofull in hert* in the next line.

1043, 1044. Blank spaces are left in the MS. for the two half-lines. Compare—

> "Be noȝt afriȝt," quoth the freke · "ne afrayd nouthir,
> It sall the noy noȝt a neg · nane of his thoȝtes."
>
> *Alexander*, ed. Stevenson, l. 675.

In which passage, *a neg* is equivalent to *an eg*. There is nothing lost (save a half-line) between ll. 1044 and 1045.

P. 212, l. 1054. *fonde I, mee tell*, I ask (you to) tell me.

1055. Cf. "Quat sterne is at ȝe stody one · quare stekis it in hevyne." *Alex.* l. 683.

1061. *inkest*, blackest. The MS. is rather indistinct; the "*kest*" is plain, but the beginning of the word is represented by a straight horizontal stroke (elsewhere used for *m* or *n*), with a dot over the very commencement of it. *Enke* = *ink* occurs in "*Meidan Maregrete*," ed. Cockayne, stanza 61; and in Wycliffe's version of the Bible. The Latin merely has, "Sequere me hora noctis," &c.

1076-7. Compare the version in MS. Ashmole—

"Alexander, athill sonne · (quoth Anec his syre),
Loo yondir, behald over thi hede · and se my hatter werdis (*dire destinies*),
The evylle sterne of Ercules · how egirly it soroȝes,
And how the mode Marcure · makis sa mekill joy,
Loo ȝondir, the gentill Jubiter · how jolyle he schynes." (ll. 701-705.)

1080-1. *Hee* pored, i.e. Nectanabus. *Hee* braides, i.e. Alexander. Perhaps there are a few lines lost between these two. Compare—

"The domes of my destany · drawis to me swythe,
Thik and thrathly am I thret · and thole mone I sone
The slaȝter of myne awen son · as me was sett ever."
Unethis werped he that worde · the writt me recordis,
Thanne Alexander as sone · was at him behind,
And on the bake with slike a bire · he bare with his handis
That doune he drafe to the depest · of the dike bothom.
Alexander, ll. 706—712.

The Latin has—"Fata mea mihi propinquam mortem a filio meo comminantur. Taliter eo vidente, accessit ad eum propinquius alexander," &c.

P. 213, l. 1092. *sounk or hee wer*, ere he was sunken.

1094. This corresponds with l. 722 of MS. Ashmole 44. Though there is not the slightest hint of any omission in Mr Stevenson's edition, there must be several pages lost in the Ashmole MS. between this line and the next; for the story leaps at once from the dying words of Nectanabus to the duel of Alexander and Nicolas, entirely omitting the rest of the story as told in the Greaves MS. Hence from l. 1094 to the end is the *only existing copy in alliterative verse* of this portion of the story. It does not go quite far enough to supply the whole of the *lacuna* in the Ashmole MS., but it nearly does so, contributing 155 lines towards it.

1094. *hee* in this line is probably put for *hue*, i.e. *she*, the word *soule* being feminine.

1095. *armed*, fortified, bold.

1098. The French has—"et prist maintenant le corps et le porta au palais. Quant la royne le vit, si lui dist, 'Filz Alixandre, que aportes tu?'"

1103—1105. These words belong to *Alexander*. The French has—"En ycelle maniere que tu souffris que il feusse mon pere, à tort, pour ce que tu ne le me deis, l'as tu fait occire à tort."

1107. *heate*, false spelling for *hete*, command.

1110. The initial T of this letter is rather larger than usual, and a new paragraph begins here. At this point I should conjecture that the *Quartus Passus* of the Ashmole MS. may have commenced. In our MS. "A HORSS" is here written in the margin, to intimate that the story of Bucephalus begins here. In the Latin, a new paragraph begins here with the heading—"Qualiter quidam princeps de Capadocia aduxit equum bucifallum ad philippum regem macedonum."

P. 214, l. 1114. *a hedde as a bole*, a head like a bull; an allusion to the etymology of Bucephalus, from βοῦς, an ox, and κεφαλή, a head. The name, however, really means a horse branded with a mark like a bull's head; see Liddell and Scott's Greek Lexicon. I here add the description of Bucephalus as given in the Old High German poem of Alexander, written in the twelfth century by a priest named Lamprecht, as a specimen of that version. For the translation I crave indulgence, as it may not be quite correct. The letter *z* (*italic*) is used instead of a letter in Weismann's edition which resembles a *z* with a slight tag to it.

daz ros daz was wunderlich	The horse was wonderfully
irre unde vil strítich,	wilful and very full-of-strife,
snel unde starc von gescafnisse,	quick and strong of shape,
des sult ir sin gwisse.	(of it should ye be certain).
iz héte unzallíche craft	He had unspeakable strength,
unde ummázlíche macht;	and measureless might;
iz irbeiz di lúte unde irslúch,	he bit people and slew (them),
iz was freislích gnúch.	he was terrible enough.
ime was sín munt,	To him, was his mouth
daz wil ih ú tún kunt,	(that will I make known to you)
alseime esele getán.	just-like an ass's made.
di nasen wáren ime wíte úf getán.	His nostrils were wide opened,
síne óren wáren ime lanc,	his ears were to him long,
daz houbit magir unde slanc.	his head meagre and lank.
síne ougen wáren ime allirvare	his eyes were to him of-all-colours
glích eineme fliegendin are.	like (those of a) flying eagle.
Sín hals was ime lockechte,	His neck was to him covered-with-locks,
ih wéne iz wére lewin geslehte.	I ween he was of a lion's kind.
úf den goffen hátiz rindis hár,	On his shanks had he heifer's hair,
an den síten liebarten mál:	on his sides leopards' spots:
só sarrazín ioh cristin man	like Saracen, so-also Christian man
nie nihein bezzer ros gwan.	never a better horse won.

Alexander, vom Pfaffen Lamprecht, von Dr H. Weismann, 1850, p. 16. See also the description of Bucephalus in Weber's *Met. Rom.*, vol. i. p. 33.

1130. *hym* may refer to the spokesman of the messengers; but *hem* would be a better reading.

1131. The French has—"si dist à ses ministres, Receves ce cheval, et le metes en une grant quage de fer, et illeuc l'encloys," &c. *He comanded bygge*, would mean "he commanded (men) to build."

1144. *Who prickes* is surely the right reading; compare—"celle nuit songa li roys que une voys li disoit, que *cil qui chevaucheroit* se cheval regneroit en son rengne apres sa mort."

P. 215, l. 1158. *in theyr looke*, in their sight.

1159. *freaten*, false spelling for *freten*, eaten.

1161. The MS. may be read as "iustes" or "iuyses," the word being indistinct. The former, however, is certainly meant.

1162. The line ends with the letter *b* followed by a space; *beaste* is the spelling in l. 1130.

1167. *abowed*, like *alouted* (for which see *Werwolf*, 3716, 3721), should perhaps be followed by the word *to*.

P. 216, l. 1186. *lete hym worthe*, let him be, let him do as he liked. See note to *Werwolf*, l. 3597.

1193. The MS. has *stynt*, with *ed* above it to the right. Thus *stynt* is the old reading, *stynted* the gloss.

1201. We learn from the Latin that Philip grants Alexander's request by giving him a royal chariot and a company of knights, and the story of the duel between Alexander and Nicolaus or Nicholas follows shortly after. But our author again digresses from the romance story at this point, and takes up the history of Orosius.

P. 217, l. 1226. The story of the Finding of the Cross by Helen, the mother of Constantine, is well known, and is here alluded to.

1231. This line begins with "*For* Philip," but the *For* is redundant, as it appears in the line above. For "*to* wynne" we should probably read "wynne," as the *to* is inserted above the line by the copyist, who may not have known that infinitives are often used without it.

1233, 1234. "For that, in treason or guile, none should rob the man," &c.

P. 218, l. 1241. The conclusion answers to the passage in Orosius—"Philippus vero, post longam et irritam obsidionem, ut pecuniam quam obsidendo exhauserat, prædando repararet, piraticam adgressus est." *Orosius*, lib. iii., cap. xiii., ed. Havercamp, 1738, p. 174. We may readily imagine that the poet, after a description of Philip's fleet and piratical expeditions, would, on arriving at the passage—"ad Scythiam quoque cum Alexandro filio prædandi intentione pertransiit"—revert to Alexander's exploits at the mention of his name. No doubt also, instead of giving the historical account, he must here have taken up the romance again by relating Alexander's duel with Nicolas; for which see Mr Stevenson's edition and Weber's *Metrical Romances*.

But it may fairly be observed, that the portion of the Romance exhibited in this fragment is, in a certain sense, complete. The whole Romance may be divided into three parts: (1.) the infancy of Alexander; (2.) his acts; (3.) his death. The first of these is contained in the first 1201 lines of the fragment, and lines 1202—1249 do not properly belong to the Romance at all. To add a sketch of the remaining two parts is inexpedient, on account of the great length of the second part. The first part is contained in the first 37 pages of Weber, whilst the whole Romance occupies 327 pages.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

ABBREVIATIONS, &c.

Dan. Danish.—Du. Dutch.—F. French.—G. German.—Lat. Latin.—O.N. Old Norse or Icelandic.—A.S. or S. Anglo-Saxon.—Su.G. Suio-Gothic (Ihre's Glossary).—Prompt. Parv. Promptorium Parvulorum (ed. Way, Camden Soc.).—P. Pl. Piers Plowman.—Ch. Chaucer.—Roq. Roquefort's Glossaire de la Langue Romane.—Wycl. Gloss. Wycliffite English Glossary.—*adj.* adjective, &c.

The following are used in a special sense—*v.* a verb in the infinitive mood; *pr. s.* present tense, 3rd person singular; *pr. pl.* present tense, 3rd person plural; *pt. s.* past tense, 3rd person singular; *pt. pl.* past tense, 3rd person plural. Other persons are denoted by 1 *p.* and 2 *p.* Also *imp.* is used for the imperative mood, and *pp.* for the past or passive participle.

NOTE. Numbers with an *obelus* (†) prefixed, refer to the "Alisaunder."

The numbers refer to the *lines* of the two poems. For an account of the method of reference in the former edition, see note at the end of this index.

A-, throughout the poem, is *generally* disjoined from the word of which it forms a prefix or part, and this is universally the practice in MSS. of ancient English poetry. In most, if not all, words of Saxon origin it represents and is equivalent to the S. *on*, *an*, *of*, or *af*, as *a-boute*, *a-doun*, *a-drad*, *a-ioyned*, *a-liue*, *a-nizt*, *a-slepe*, *a-wey*, *a-wondred*, &c. The same rule holds good in other branches of the Gothic language. See Ihre and Wachter. —M.

A, *int.* ah! 602, 663, 845, 928, &c.

A, 2 *p. s. imp.* have, 978, 1177.

Abaie, 206, Abaye, 46, Baie, 35, } *n.* F. bay. A term borrowed from the F. hunting phrase, *être aux abbois*, to stand at bay. See *abbois* in Cotgrave, and *abash* in Wedgwood.

A-bate, *v.* to abate, 1141.

A-beye, *v.* S. to atone for, 2790. Cf. *abye* in Chaucer.

A-bide, *v.* S. to wait for, await, tarry for, 1131, 1732, 2269, 3072.

Abowed to, bowed down to, † 1167.

A-buschid, *pp.* F. in ambush, 3634.

Ac, 106, &c. Ak, 678, Ek, 715, } *conj.* S. but.

A-chape, 1248, A-schape, 1671, 1855, 3013, } *v.* F. to escape; *pp.* a-chaped, 2805; a-schaped, 2341, 2816; a-schapet, 2549.

Acorde, *v.* F. to agree, 2657. Ch.

A-cord, *n.* F. agreement, 2964. Ch.

A-coupyng, 3438, Coupyng, 3602, } *n.* F. violent

encounter. O. F. *acoper*, heurter, frapper au côtè. Roq.

Acoyed, *pt. s.* enticed, 56. Ch. *See* Coies.

A-cuntred, *pt. pl.* F. encountered, 3602.

A-day, 190, } in a day, in the
A-daye, 610, } day-time.

A-doteþ, *pr. s.* grows silly, 2054. *See* Doted.

A-doun, *adv.* down, 1073, 1244. "See Taylor's Note on Tooke's Diversions of Purley, v. I. p. ix. ed. 8vo."—M.

Adouted, *pp.* F. feared, dreaded, † 33, † 247, † 400.

A-drad, 1980, 2005, }
Adradde, 1783, } *pp.* S. afraid,
A-dredde, 4034, } terrified. A.S. *on-drǽdan.*

A-fraied, *pp.* afraid, 2158.

A-friȝt, *pp.* frightened, 2784. A.S. *frihtan.*

Agast, *pp.* aghast, terrified, 1778.

A-gayn, *adv.* S. again, 395. *See* A-ȝayne.

A-gayn, 233, }
A-geynes, 1341, } *prep.* S. against, towards. *See* A-ȝeynes.

A-gelt. *See* A-gult.

A-greþed, 52, }
A-greiþed, 1598, } *pp.* dressed, prepared, made ready. *See* Greiþe.

A-greued, *pp.* grieved, 641, 2116. [Miswritten *a-greues*, in l. 1076.]

A-grise, *pp.* afraid, terrified, 1743, † 911, † 986. Ch. Cf. A.S. *a-grísan*, to fear.

Agult, *v.* to offend, sin against, 4401; *pp.* a-gelt, 4391. A.S. *a-giltan.*

A-hiȝt, *pt. s.* was called, 586. *See* Hiȝt.

Ai, *n.* S. an egg, † 1004, † 1007.

Aie, *n.* S. awe, fear, † 1243.

A-ioyned, *pp.* F. adjoining, near, 1753.

Ak. *See* Ac.

A-knowe, *pp.* S. Always joined with the verb *ben*, to be, as "*was* aknowe," 421; "ich *am* aknowe," 4391; "we *be* aknowe," 4788. *To be aknowe* = to be aware, to acknowledge, confess. "Beeñ a-knowe wylfully. *Confiteor.* Be a-knowe a-geyne wylle. *Fateor.*" Prompt. Parv. Cf. A.S. *on-cnáwan.*

Al, Alle, *adj.* S. all. "To write correctly *al* should be used for the *sing. nom.* and *alle* for the *pl.* (as the S. *eal* and *ealle*) but the rule is often violated, particularly in MSS. of the 14th and subsequent centuries. This observation might be extended to a large class of adjectives and substantives which have now lost their final syllables."—M. *Alt alle, At al*, in all things, 283, 597. *Al bothe*, both of them, where *al* is an expletive, 851. *Al a niȝt*, all one night, all night, 2215. *And see* Algate, Alway.

Alday, all day, 1682.

Alden, *pp.* holden, 1875. *See* Halde.

Alder, elder, † 22.

Alder-, *gen. pl.* of all. Used only with an adjective in the superl. degree. *Alder-aldust*, eldest of all, † 27. *Alderfirst, Alder-formest*, first of all, 3345, 4884.

Aldes, *pr. s.* holds, 441. *See* Halde.

A-legget, *pp.* F. alleviated, allayed, 1034. See *Allay* in Wedgwood.

A-leide, *pt. s.* S. abolished, put down, 5240.

Algate, Al-gate, in all ways, by all means, always, 649, 948, 1064. Ch.

A-liue, alive, 4235, 5279. [A.S. *on life* (Mat. 27. 63), which are two separate words.]

A-liȝt, *pt. s.* alighted, 399, 3923.

Almauns, Germans, 1165.

A-losed, *pp.* F. praised, renowned, † 139, † 174, † 331, † 577. *See* Loos. Ch.

Alouten, *v.* to bow down to, † 852; *pt. s.* a-louted, bowed down, made obeisance, 3721. A.S. *hlútan.*

Als, 996, 3543, } also. *Alse swiþe,*
Alse, 163, 2503, } as quickly as may be, very quickly, 3158. [A.S. *eall-swá,* whence O. E. *al-so, alse,* and *als,* now contracted into *as,* the words *as* and *also* being etymologically identical.]

Alto-shiuered, broke in pieces, 3603. See note to l. 3884.

Al-way, *adv.* all the while, 345.

Alwes, *n. pl.* S. 371. *Hal alwes* = all hallows, all saints.

Amased, *pp.* distracted, confounded, 686. *See* Mase.

Amendis, *n. pl.* amends, 488, 493, 3919.

A-meruailed, *pp.* F. astonished, 3857.

Amiddes, amidst, † 834. Ch.

Amonges, amongst, † 59. Ch.

An, *put for* And, 445, 884, 1538.

An, *put for* On, *in phrase* wel an fiue myle = nearly five miles, 5110.

And, *conj.* if, 3803, 4168. [In l. 3803 it is written "&."]

Anger, *n.* anxiety, sorrow, 552. A.S. *ange.*

An-honged, *pp.* S. hung up, 4773. Ch.

A-niȝt, 2920, } by night, by nights,
A-niȝtes, 785, } at night. Ch.

Anker, *n.* anchor, 568.

A-non, Anon, *adv.* immediately, 813, 913. *Anon riȝt, Anon riȝttes,* immediately, 273, 235.

Antresse (? Aunteres), *pr.s.* adventures, ventures, 1028. *See* Aunter.

A-paraile, 5028, } apparel.
A-parrayl, 3224, }

Aparaylde hem, apparelled themselves, 1146.

A-paied, 1883, 5358, } *pp.* pleased,
Apaiȝed, 1871, 4007, } contented.
Apayed, 1, 1314, }
See Paide.

Apeire, *v.* F. to impair, injure, † 1244; *pp.* a-peyred, marred, 933. "Appeyryn, or make wors." Prom. Parv. Ch.

Apertly, A-pertli, *adv.* evidently, plainly, 1, 4706. Ch.

Apes, 2299.

Arad, *pp.* divined, explained, † 647. *See* Arede.

Araie, 3367, } *n.* F. array,
Aray, 1597, 1601, } order.

Araie, *v.* F. to array, dispose troops in order, 3561; *pp.* a-raied, 1926, 1942; a-raid, 1934; a-raiȝed, 3375, 3563; arayed, 1153.

Are, *adv.* S. ere, before, 226; *superl.* arst, q. v. *See* Er.

Are-blast, *n.* F. arblast, a kind of crossbow, † 268. From Lat. *arcus* and *balista.*

Areche, *v.* S. to reach, † 441.

Arede, *v.* to divine, expound, † 573; to read, † 838; *pp.* arad, q.v. A.S. *a-rédian.*

A-redili, *adv.* S. readily, easily, 5006, 5026, 5230.

A-reise, *v.* S. to raise, 4342.

Aren, are; 2 *p. pl.* 2665; 3 *p. pl.* 615. *See* Arn *and* Ben.

Arere, *v.* S. to raise, † 360; *pt. pl.* a-rered, 2645. See *Wycl. Gloss.*

Arewe, *n.* S. an arrow, 885.

Arise. *See* A-ros.

Armed, *pp.* fortified, emboldened, courageous, † 1095.

Armure, armour, 3769.

Arn, are; 2 *p. pl.* 106, 3123;

3 *p. pl.* 1694, 5131. *See* Aren *and* Ben.

Arnd, errand, 5287. *See* Erand.

A-ros, *pt. s.* arose, 810, 2744, 3270; arise, 2737; *pp.* arise, 1297. *The form* arise = arose *occurs in both texts of* Laȝamon, l. 25988.

Artou, 5157, } art thou.
Artow, 1250, }

Arst, *superl. adv.* first, before, 2737, 3046, 4154, 4863, 5403; at arst = at first, i. e. for the first time, 1028.

As = has, 2029.

A-saie, *v.* F. to essay, try, 3754; *pp.* a-saide, 637, 4984.

A-saute, Asaute, *n.* F. an assault, † 95, † 145, † 262; *pl.* a-sautes, 2708; a-sawtes, 4221.

A-schamed, *pp.* ashamed, 1035.

A-schape. *See* A-chape.

Aschis, *n. pl.* S. ashes, 4368.

Aschried, *pt. s.* 3895, }
A-schrȝed, *pt. s.* 3827, } cried out to,
Ascried, *pt. pl.* 3814, }
called out to. O. Fr. *escrier.* Cf. *ascry* in Ch.

A-seged, *pp.* F. besieged, 4224.

A-segned, *pp.* F. assigned, 581. Cf. A-signed *in* l. 3627.

Asele, *v.* F. to seal, † 829.

A-sembled, *pp.* F. assembled, 1120, 1288; *pt. s.* a-sembled to, attacked, 3425; *pt. pl.* a-sembled, met in a hostile manner, encountered, 3409; a-sembleden, 3815. Cf. Sembul.

A-sent, *n.* F. assent, 1300.

A-sent, *v.* F. to assent, 482, 2692; *pp.* a-sented, 538.

Asise, *n.* F. site, situation, 4451.

A-slepe, S. asleep, 792, 798, 839. *Spelt* a-slape, 1995.

A-spie, *v.* F. to spy after, watch after, 774; *pp.* a-spied, 2577.

A-spyes, *n. pl.* F. spies, 860.

Assone as, as soon as, 4345.

Astate, *n.* F. state, condition, 5376. O. F. *estat.* Ch.

A-stente, *v.* S. to stop, 1527. *See* Stint.

Astit, *adv.* very soon, 3943. *See* Tit.

A-stoneyd, *pp.* F. astonished, 880.

Astow, hast thou, 4724.

A-strangeled, *pp.* strangled, 150. O. F. *estraindre.*

Aswiþe, as soon as might be, very soon, 3555, 3811. *See* Swiþe.

A-teyned, *pt. s.* F. extended, 5498.

A-tir, *n.* F. attire, dress, 1721, 3183; equipment for battle, 1147; — atyr, 1428.

A-tired, *pp.* F. equipped, 1228. *See* A-tyred.

A-tirynge, *n.* dress, apparel, 1941.

Atling, *n.* preparation, a getting ready, † 268.

Attele, } *v.* to go towards, ap-
Attely, } proach, 205; to conjecture, aim at, judge, 404; 1 *p. pr.* atteli (= attele i), I intend, I design, 3220; 3 *p. pr.* attles, goes towards, † 109; *pt. s.* atteled, guessed, conjectured, 813; attlede, 861, 941, 1015; attelede, went towards, 1760; *pt. pl.* etteleden, went towards, 272. North E. and Sc. *ettle*, O. N. *ætla*, to aim at, intend, design.

Atte, Att, at the; *in the following.* *Att best*, *Atte best*, at the best, 1142, 1575, 4121 (cf. *atte best* in l. 4283 with *at te best* in the line following); *atte cherche*, at the church, 1961; *atte deþe*, 1511; *atte fulle*, 4916; *atte last*, at the last, 1389; *atte roche*, at the rock, 2367; in all which cases the article seems to be comprehended in the second syllable. But in *atte hese*, at ease, 3208, and *atte wille*, 1414, *atte* seems to

be no more than the preposition *at*. And it is certain that *atte*=*at* and no more, in the following: *atte here herte*, at her heart, 539; *atte þe day*, 1599; *atte þe best*, 4186; *att alle*, in all things, wholly, 283. The spelling *atte* being adopted to signify *at te* or *at þe*, it was erroneously used instead of *at* in other cases.

Attese, at ease, 1295.

Atwinne, *adv.* S. in two, asunder, 5450. Ch.

A-tyred hire, *pt. s.* dressed herself, 1706; *pp.* dressed, 1997, 5043.

Auenantli, 3784, Auenauntli, 4885, 5040, *adv.* F. suitably, well, courteously.

Auentayle, *n.* F. The movable front to a helmet, and through which the wearer breathed, 3608. "*Ventaille*, the breathing part of a helmet, the sight of the beaver." Cotgrave.

Auenturre, adventure, 4921.

Aught, *pt. s.* S. possessed, owned, †14, †173, †237, A.S. *ágan*, pt. t. *ic áhte*. *See* Out.

Aught too long, ought to belong, †547.

Aunceteres, *n. pl.* ancestors, 5133.

Aunter, *n.* F. adventure, occurrence, †1017; *pl.* aunteres (adventures), †109.

Aunter, *v.* F. to adventure; aunter hem out=to adventure themselves out, 3268; *pr. s.* antresse, 1028; *pt. s.* auntred, ventured, went about seeking an entrance, †1027; auntred hym, †290; *pt. pl.* auntred hem, †230; auntred hym till, ventured against him, †902.

Auntrose, *adj.* F. adventurous; *hence*, dangerous, 921. "Awnterows, or dowtefulle. *Fortunalis, fortuitus*." Prompt. Parv.

A-vowe, *n.* F. a vow, 532. Ch.

A-wai, 735, A-waie, 578, A-wey, 1280, A-weye, 221, *adv.* S. away.

A-waked, *pt. s.* awoke, 677; *pp.* a-waked, 679; *imp. pl.* a-wakes, 2049.

Awe, *n.* S. *in* "for loue ne for awe," 5430. For this expression, see also † 1243. "The phrase appears at length in *Speculum istius Mundi*, MS. Reg. 17, B. xvii.

Thou shalt not spare for no drede,
Ne for loue to God ne for his awe,
To go out of the right lawe."—M.

A-wede, *v.* to lose the senses, become mad, 45, 1750; 1 *p. pr. s.* a-wede, 3185. A.S. *a-wédan*.

A-weite, *v.* F. to observe sedulously, espy, 2415; *pt. s.* a-wayted, 1711, 1890; a-weited, 791. Cf. Waite.

A-weiwardes, away, 2188.

A-went, *pp.* gone away, 1672.

A-wondred, 872, 2389, A-wondered, 310, 392, *pp.* astonished. A.S. *a-wundrian*.

A-wrek, 2111, A-wreke, 1128, 3422, *v.* S. to avenge; *pt. s.* awrak, wreaked, †934.

Ax, *v.* S. to ask, require, †141. Ch.

Ay, *adv.* S. ever, always, 615, 2239, 2849.

Ayme, *v.* F. to estimate, compute, 1596, 3819, 3875; *pp.* aymed, 5010. O. F. *esmer*.

A-ȝayne, *adv.* S. again, 5235; a-ȝe, 4256, 5172; —a-ȝen, 1837; —a-ȝein, 270; —a-ȝeine, 1508; —aȝeyn, 1921; —aȝen lepes=runs back, returns quickly, 1973.

A-ȝeynes, *prep.* S. against, towards, 1264, 1341; —a-ȝenis, 3533; —a-ȝens, 2371; —aȝene, 12; —a-ȝe, †333.

Aȝen-turn, *n.* retreat, way of

escape, 4182. *See* ȝain-torn; and cf. Ajenturned in *Wycl. Gloss.*

Bacheler, *n.* F. a bachelor, i. e. a novice in arms, 840, 1136; *pl.* bachilers, 1477. See *Bacheler* in Roq.

Baden. *See* Bidde.

Baie. *See* Abaie.

Baili, *a.* F. a steward, 5387. See *Bailleul* in Roq.

Baite, 1723, } *v.* to set on a dog,
Bayte, 11, } to bait (a bear). O. N. *beita.* See *Abet* in Wedgwood.

Bakkes, *n. pl.* 2096, outer clothes (?) A word of doubtful meaning. Sir F. Madden conjectured it to mean "cheeks, from the Teutonic *backe*, Celt. *boch*, which the Romans formed into *bucca*. *Vide* Wachter and Haltaus, in v. and Meusel's *Wurzel-Wörter*, p. 216." Stratmann suggests that it is another form of *bagges*, used for *clothes*. The context favours such a rendering; "rent all his *clothes*" is more likely than "rent all his *cheeks*;" but whether we are to connect the word with *bag* or with *back* is hard to tell, yet it may mean no more than a *covering for the back*, as in Chaucer, Chan. Yem. Prol. l. 328, where another reading for *bak* is *bratt*. Cf.

—dowell it hatte
To breke beggeris bred · & *bakken* hem with *clopis*.
Piers. Pl. ed. Skeat, A. xi. 184.

Indeed, the phrase "oure *bakkes* that moth-eten be," as used in P. Pl. Pass. X. of Text B (p. 195 of Wright's edition), convinces me that this last explanation is right. Curiously enough, as if to remove all doubt, the word *bakkes*, as there used, is, in MS. Laud 581, actually glossed by the Latin *panni*.

Bale, *n.* S. sorrow, misfortune, evil, 107, 134, 460, 741, † 56; harm, i. e. a pity, † 1170; — bal, 1819; *pl.* bales, 476, 1055.

Baleful, *adj.* S. harmful, unfortunate, 1815; — balefull = harmful, † 272.

Balfulli, *adv.* miserably, 3959, 4261; —balfully = harmfully, hurtfully, 84, 1202.

Bane, *n.* S. a ban, proclamation, edict, 2252.

Banne, *v.* S. to ban, to curse, 476, 1644; *pt. s.* banned, 2100.

Baret, *n.* embarrassment, trouble, 486, 5518. Cf. O. F. *barat*, O. N. *baratta*.

Barge, *n.* a ship, 2767, 2807. See Glossary to *Romans of Partenay*.

Barm, *n.* S. the lap, † 1004. Ch.

Barn, Barne, *n.* S. a child, 9, 16, 18, † 1020; a man, 812, 1491; *gen. sing.* barnes, 100, 2230; *pl.* barnes, 187. *See* Burn.

Barnage, *n.* F. baronage, nobles, 4797.

Bataile, *n.* F. a battalion, squadron, 3783; *pl.* batailes, 3561, 3562; batayles, 1152.

Baucynes, *n. pl.* badgers, 2299. "The term occurs in Juliana Berners, spelt *Bausyn*, and in the Prompt. Parv. is 'Bawstone, or bawsone, or a gray' [see Mr Way's note]. It is not uncommon in writers of the 16th or 17th century, and is still retained in Cheshire. See Todd's Johnson, Nares, and Wilbraham. The root is evidently the Celtic *bal* or *baizhl* (see Bullet, in v.), whence the F. *balsan*, Ital. *balzano*, applied to an animal with a white streak or spot in the face or foot. Hence also is derived the Sc. *bawsand*, brindled. *See* Jamieson."—M. Cf. *pie-bald*, and *Bawson* in Wedgwood.

Bayte on, *v.* to set on a dog at anything, 11. *See* Baite.

Be, Bi, *prep.* S. by, *passim*. When

compounded with verbs, the orthography is perpetually interchanged.

Be = been, 4103. *See* Ben.

Beaute, *n.* F. beauty, 4534; — beuaute, 4074.

Bed, Bede. *See* Bidde.

Bedes, *pr. s.* offers, † 947. Cf. † 260. A.S. *beódan.* Ch.

Bedes, *n. pl.* S. prayers, beads, 3024. See *Bead* in Wedgwood.

Be-dolue, *pp.* buried, 5252. *See* Doluen.

Begonne, *pp.* gone about, i. e. surrounded, † 698. Cf. Bi-go. See *Begone* in Wedgwood.

Be-hilde, beheld, 2783.

Behi3t. *See* Bihote.

Be-honged, *pp.* S. hung about, 5015.

Be-houes, 2349, } behoves, is suit-
Be-houis, 1815, } able for.

Be-kenned. *See* Bikenne.

Be-knowe, *pp.* S. aware, 2172.

Belaunce, *n.* F. balance, 948.

Beleue, *v.* S. to remain, † 69. A.S. *be-lífan.*

Bellyng, *part. pres.* bellowing, 1891. "Dame Juliana Berners confines the term to the noise made by a deer, in which sense it occurs in Gawin Douglas, *Virg. Prol.* 94, 26. But in the Prompt. Parv. we have '*Bellyn*, or lowyn as nette (roryn). *Mugio*,' and '*Bellynge*, of rorynge of bestys (bellinge of nete). *Mugitus*.'"—M. See *Bell* in Wedgwood.

Be-maked, *pp.* made, 5060.

Bemes, *n. pl.* S. trumpets, 1154. Ch.

Ben, Bene, *v.* S. to be, 464, 1930; 2 *p. s. pr.* (with a *future* signification), bestow, shalt thou be, 344; 3 *p. s. pr.* beþ, 547; 2 *p. pl. pr.* ben, 3148, benc, 1672; 3 *p. pl. pr.* bene, 4217, ben, 946; buþ, 4447; *imp. pl.* beth, 3797; *pp.* be, 1943, 3957. *See* Bi, Arn, Aren.

Be-nom, *pp.* taken away, 2450. A.S. *be-niman.*

Beraften, *pt. pl.* bereft of, † 81.

Bere, *n.* a violent noise; here applied to the barking of a hound, 43. See Wycliffite Glossary, s. v. bire; La3amon (glossary), s. v. *i*bere; Stratmann, *s. v.* bere. Jamieson refers it to Su-G. *boer*, the wind. Sir F. Madden and Stratmann refer it to A.S. *ge-bære*, which, however, generally means *a gesture.* It may be an imitative word, like *birr, buzz.*

Bere-felles, *n. pl.* S. bear-skins, 2430, 2560. *See* Fel.

Berem-chaunce, *n.* chance of progeny, conception, † 971. *For the spelling, cf.* Berem-tem in *Genesis & Exodus*, ed. Morris, l. 3903.

Bern, *n.* S. a man, † 212, † 219. *See* Barn, Burn.

Be-seme, 2 *p. pl. pr.* seem, appear (to be), 1742; 3 *p. pl. pr.* be-semen, 2529.

Be-sewed. *See* Bi-sowe.

Bestow. *See* Ben.

Bet, *pt. s.* S. he beat, 1073, † 300.

Bet, *adv.* S. better, 172, 344, 1012;—bett, † 504; cf. the phrase *more beter*, 4279.

Bete, *v.* S. to make better, to better, repair, 3167; *pl. s.* bet, 3960. A.S. *bétan.*

Beþ, it shall be, 547. *See* Ben.

Be-þout, Be-þou3t. *See* Bi-þenke.

Beurde. *See* Burde.

Beurne. *See* Burn.

Be-wrapped, *pt. s.* wrapped up, 1735.

Be-wrie, *v.* S. to bewray, 2435.

Bi, Be, *prep.* S. by, *passim.*

Bi, be thou, 322; bi 3iue, be given, 2254. [*As* bi, be (= by) *are often*

interchanged, in both places we should rather read be.]

Bi-cast, *pp.* beset, 2287. *For* all bi-cast *an equivalent phrase is* umbecast. *See* l. 4693.

Bi-cheche, 1 *p. s. pr.* I beseech, 1258.

Bi-com, *pt. s.* became, 881 ; *pp.* bi-come, *in phrase* were bi-come = had gone to, 222 ; it bi-comes = it goes to, 911.

Bidde, 1 *p. pr. s.* I ask or pray for, 4754 ; *pr. s.* biddes, 5539, † 947 ; 1 *p. pt. s.* bed, I asked for, borrowed, † 457 (where the MS. gloss "had" is wrong) ; *pt. s.* bede, 5490 ; *pt. pl.* baden, 4797 ; *imp. pl.* biddiþ, 5534 ; *part. pres.* biddande, 3024 ; *pp.* bede, 2410. A.S. *biddan.*

Bi-falle, *v.* S. to befal, 547 ; *pp.* bi-falle, 2475, 4169.

Bi-forn, *adv.* S. before, 428.

Bi-gat him, procured for himself, 177.

Biggen, *v.* S. to buy, † 1215.

Bi-go, *pp.* S. beset, † 490, † 994. *See* Begonne, and *Bigoo* in Ch.

Bi-gunne, *pt. pl.* began, 2555.

Bi-hest, 600, } *n.* S. promise.
By-hest, 57, }

Bi-het. *See* Bi-hote.

Bi-hilde, *pt. s.* S. looked, beheld, 2783 ; bi-huld, 2426 ; *pp.* bi-hold, 683.

Bi-hote (*spelt* by-hote), *v.* S. to promise, 3688 ; 2 *p. s. imp.* bi-hote, 2135 ; *pt. s.* bi-het, 4376, 4647 ; bihiȝt, 576 ; *pt. pl.* bi-hiȝt, 4649 ; *pp.* be-hiȝt, 606.

Bi-huld. *See* Bi-hilde.

Bi-houes, it behoves, 729 (*cf.* l. 723) ; *pt. s.* bi-houed, 2720.

Bi-kenne, *v.* S. to commit to the charge or protection of another ; 1 *p. s. pr.* bi-kenne, 5434 ; *pt. s.* bi-kenned, 350 ; be-kenned, 371 ; *pt. pl.* bi-kenned, 5454. Cf. Bi-teche, *and* Kenne.

Biker, *n.* fight, battle ; bedes hem biker = offers them battle, † 947. "Bikyr of fytynge. *Pugna.*" Prom. Parv. *See* Way's note.

Bikering, *n.* conflict, attack, † 390.

Bi-komsed, *pt. pl.* commenced, 2523. *See* Comse.

Bileue, *v. transitive*, S. to leave behind, 2577 ; *pt. s.* (*intrans.*) bilaft, stayed behind, remained, 2385 ; *pt. pl.* bi-laft, 2890.

Bilfoder, 81, } *n.* provisions.
Bilfodur, 1858, }
"Perhaps from the S. *bylg*, the belly, and *fodder*, food."—M. Cf. *belly-timber*, food, in Halliwell.

Bi-liue. *See* Bliue.

Bi-reft, 1 *p. s. pt.* bereaved, deprived of, 4628 ; *pp.* biraft, † 394.

Bi-schet, *pp.* S. shut up, immured, 2014. Ch.

Bi-seget, *pt. s.* besieged, 2650 ; bi-seged, 2843.

Bi-seme, 2 *p. pl. pr.* seem, appear (to be), 1733. *See* Be-seme.

Bi-set, *pt. pl.* beset, 2281 ; bi-sett, 2927 ; bi-sette, 1214 ; bi-setten, set forth, employed, † 437.

Bi-side, *adv.* S. 3, 1889.

Bi-sowe, *v.* S. to sew up, 1689 ; *pp.* be-sewed, 3117.

Bi-stint, *pt. s.* made calm, † 1183. "*Styntyn*' or make a thynge to secyn' of his werke or mevynge. *Obsto.* Prom. Parv.

Bi-stode, *pt. s.* S. stood near, approached, 175.

Bi-teche, *v.* S. to commit to the charge of any one, entrust, recommend, 5184 ; *pt. s.* bi-tok, 66, 4167 ; *pt. pl.* bi-tauȝt, 5211 ; *pp.* bi-tauȝt, 5289. A.S. *be-tǽcan.*

Bi-þenke, *v.* S. to think attentively, consider ; 2 *p. s. imp.* bi-þenke, 3057 ; *pt. s.* bi-þout, 2748 ; be-þout,

290, 2370; be-þouȝt him, 2773; bi-þouȝt hire, 630, 650; *pt. pl.* bi-þout hem, 4776; be-þout, 2410.

Bi-tide, *v.* S. to befal, 730; *pt. s.* bitid, 4087; bitide, 7; bi-tidde, 1211; by-tidde, 32.

Bitraide, *pp.* betrayed, † 223.

Bitterly, *adv.* S. painfully, 2083.

Bi-weped, *pp.* covered with tears, 661.

Bi-ȝete, *n.* S. progeny, 2303.

Blake-beries, *n. pl.* S. blackberries, 1809.

Ble, *n.* S. complexion, 3083; — blee, † 202, † 578.

Blenched, *pp.* blemished, hurt, 2471. "Blemschyde, blemysshed. *Obfuscatus.* Blenschyn, blemysshen, *Obfusco.*" Prompt. Parv. *See Blemish* in Wedgwood.

Blessed, *pt. s.* 1192. Sir F. Madden explains it by "wounded, inflicted wounds," from the F. *blesser.* Or it may mean that he *waved* or *brandished* his sword, as in Spenser. F. Q. I. v. 6, and Fairfax's Tasso, ix. 67.

Blesseden, *pt. pl.* blessed, 196.

Bleþeli. *See* Bliþeliche.

Bleynte, *pt. pl.* looked, 3111. [*Lit.* blinked; cf. Du. and G. *blinken.* Sw. *blinka.* Dan. *blinke.*]

Blinne, *v.* S. to pause, cause, leave off, 55, † 398; *pt. s.* blynd, † 110; 2 *p. s. imp.* blinne, 322; 1 *p. pl. imp.* blynne, † 1202.

Blisful, *adj.* S. happy, 1055; blessed, 1669.

Bliþeliche, *adv.* S. merrily, with good will, 819; bleþeli, 1144, 1994; *in the latter place it means* in sport.

Bliue, 1705, † 259, } *adv.* S. quick-
Biliue, 248, } ly;—as bliue, as quickly as might be, 379; as biliue, 351.

Blonk, *n.* a horse, 3326, 3362; *pl.* blonkes, 5041, † 435. "In old Teutonic, *planchaz* means a *white* horse, and the root is to be found in the Su. G. and Franc. *blank*, still preserved in the F. *blanc.* See Ihre and Jamieson."—M.

Blowand, *pres. part.* blowing, 3358.

Bobaunce, *n.* F. pride, boasting, presumption, *always in phr.* "bobaunce and bost," 1071, 1129, 3358. See *Boban* in Roq.

Bod, *n.* S. abiding, dèlay, 149.

Bode, *n.* S. a message, tidings, an order, 2145, 2154, 3767.

Bodiesse, *n. pl.* bodies, 3767. [*Should be spelt* bodies; *but cf.* Antresse, Hayresse.]

Bogeysliche, *adv.* S. in a boasting, boisterous, or bold manner, 1707. "In the Prompt. Parv. is '*Boggyschely*, Tumide,' and in Ray's S. and E. Country Words, '*Bogge*, bold, forward, sawcy.'"—M. See also *Bagge* in Prompt. Parv. and *Bulge* in Wedgwood.

Boiȝes, *gen. sing.* boy's, 1705.

Bolaces, *n. pl.* bullaces, a sort of plum or sloe, 1809. Used by Chaucer, Rom. Rose, 1377. See *Bolleche* in Roq.

Boles, *n. pl.* S. bulls, 2299.

Bolstrauȝt, *pp.* prostrate, stretched on the belly, 1852. From A.S. *bælg*, the belly, and *streccan*, to stretch.

Bonde, *pl. adj.* S. (put for *bonde men*), bondsmen, viliains, as opposed to the orders of barons and burgesses, 2128. Cf. "Barouns and burgeis and bonde men also." *Piers Plowman;* A. *prol.* 96.

Bonden, *pp.* S. bound, 2238; *pt. pl.* bounden, 1219.

Bone, *n.* S. boon, prayer, 1095, 4410; entreaty, † 612.

Bonke, *n.* S. bank, shore, 2718.

Bonure, *adj.* F. courteous, affable, 332. *See* Debonureli.

Bordes, *n. pl.* S. 5070.

Bore, *pp.* S. born, 240; *spelt* borne, 510.

Borwe, *n.* S. borough, town, 1889, 2221; — borowe, † 300; borwȝ, 2835; *pl.* borwes, 2123; borous, † 928. *See* Burw.

Borwȝ, *n.* (*the same word as the above*), a place of shelter, 9. A.S. *beorh*. Cf. the term, "a rabbit's *burrow*."

Borwed, *pt. s.* S. borrowed, 1705.

Bost, *n.* boast, pride, 1141. *And see* Bobaunce.

Bot, *conj.* S. but, unless, except, 497, 2008; *also spelt* but, 627. But ȝif, unless, 472. Cf. Bout.

Bot, *n.* S. a boat (?) 4632. *Or else* boute bot = boute bod, without delay, *as in* l. 149.

Bote, *n.* S. remedy, 627, 741, 959, &c.; do bote = provide a remedy, 1378.

Botles, *adj.* S. without remedy, 134, 1819;—botlesse, 540; botteles, 896; botelesse, 1539.

Botned, *pp.* S. bettered, cured, 1055. Cf. Bete.

Bouf, *n.* F. beef, 1849, 1868.

Boun, *adj.* ready, 1088, 1138, 1144;—boune, † 160, † 228.

Bounden. *See* Bonden.

Bour, *n.* S. bower, chamber, 657, 1971;—boure, 1760, † 772. *See* Burwȝ-maidenes.

Bourde, *n.* F. a jest, 1705. Ch.

Bourdes, *n. sing.* F. a tournament, jousting. See *Behordeis* in Roq. The word is probably (like many other *war* terms) of Teutonic origin.

Boute, *prep.* S. without, 149, 211, 567, 812.

Bouwes, *pr. s.* bows, inclines, 948.

Bowes, *n. pl.* S. boughs, 23.

Boxumly, *adv.* S. courteously, 332. *See* Buxumli.

Brag, *adj. or adv.* bold, boastful, *or* boastfully, 2352; *sup.* braggest, bravest, 3048. Cf. "Hy schulde nouȝt *beren hem so bragg*." P. Pl. Crede, l. 706. See *Braguer* in Cot.

Braides, *pr. s.* moves quickly, hurries, † 1081;—braydes, 149; braides him, departs quickly, † 1004; *pt. s.* braid doun, threw down or beat down; braide, awoke, started up, † 724, 686, *cf.* l. 2096; rushed, 3848; drew quickly, 1867. O. N. *bregða*. Cf. *Abrayde* in Ch.

Braundise, *v.* F. to fling about (as a horse), † 1122; *pt. s.* braundised, 3294; *pres. part.* brandissende, waving (their weapons), 2322.

Brayn-wod, *adj.* S. brain-mad, i. e. mad, furious, 2096. *See* P. Pl. A. x. 61.

Bredde, *pt. pl.* S. went hurriedly, hurried, 1782. "The sense of *breed* is evidently not admissible here. Cf. Braides."—M.

Brede, *n.* S. breadth, 3055; a peny brede, a penny's breadth, † 1244.

Brem, Breme, *adj.* S. (*of very common occurrence, and with many meanings*) notable, bold, strong, fierce, &c.; (*applied to* men) 3641, (bears) 1689, (beasts) 1699, (a child) 18, (a battle) 1157, (a host) 3767, (a duke) 1141, (deeds) 1387, (blood) 3861, (an oar) 4700, (a time) † 1020, (a god) † 533, (a tablet) † 615, &c.; *sup.* bremest, 1686, 2936. Ch.

Bremli, *adv.* S. fiercely, 3294; exceedingly, 2158; — bremely, loudly, 23; — bremly, fiercely, 4342; — bremlich, boldly, † 1001. *Sup.* bremliest, most decisively, 948.

Brenne, *v.* S. to burn, 1133, 2123, 4261; *pt. s.* brent, 1071,

1109; *pp.* brent, 3634, 4367; brend, 2646, † 729.

Breres, *n. pl.* briars, 1809.

Bretages, *n. pl.* F. parapets of a wall, ramparts. O. F. *bretesche* (see Roq.), Low Lat. *brestachia.*

Breþer, *n. pl.* S. brothers, 2641. [The *nom. pl. in* A.S. *is* broðra, broðru, broðor, *or* broður.]

Brid, *n.* S. a bird, † 814; *pl.* briddes, 29, 179, 819.

Bridhale, *n.* S. bridal, 4947.

Brit, bright, 3572.

Brode, *adj.* S. broad, 754, 1674; —brod, 1732.

Brode, *adv.* S. *in phr.* to brode = too wide apart, too far, 11.

Brodes, *pr. s.* publishes abroad, proclaims, † 122.

Brond, 1244, } *n.* S. a brand,
Bront, 1192, } sword.

Broder, *n.* S. brother, † 56. [*Probably miswritten for* broðer; cf. 4938.]

Brout, brought, 3959; brouȝt of liue = brought out of life, killed, 1159.

Brug, 1674, }
Brugge, 2140, } *n.* S. a bridge.

Brusten, *v.* to injure severely, destroy, 154. Cf. Dan. *bröst,* hurt, damage.

Brusure, *n.* F. a bruise, wound, 2461.

Bruten, *n.* S. to destroy, 3760; bruttene, 1133; *pt. s.* brutned, 1073, 1202, † 888; *pt. pl.* bruttened, 2647; *pp.* bruttenet, 206. Swed. *bryta;* Dan. *bryde;* A.S. *brytan, breotan.*

Bugles, *n. pl.* F. 1154.

Burd, *n.* S. a lady, maiden, damsel, † 715;—burde, 683, 765, 812, 830, † 670; beurde, † 202, † 205; *pl.* burdes, 3669, 5017; beurdes, † 228. Burde no barn, neither man nor maid, 1971.

Burgeis, *n.* F. a burgess, 1889; *pl.* burgeys, 2128, 5017.

Burn, *n.* S. a man, 332, 510, 511, 657, &c.;—burne, 444, 477; beurn, † 9, † 110; *pl.* burnes, 617, 1129; beurnes, † 2.

Burþenes, *n. pl.* S. burdens, 2555.

Burw, *n.* S. a town, 5335; *pl.* burwes, 1073, 1109; *the same as* Borwe, q. v.

Burwȝ-maidenes, *n. pl.* S. bower-maidens, attendants, 3071. *See* Bour.

Buschen, *v.* to move about briskly, 173. *See* Buske.

Busily, *adv.* S. industriously, eagerly, carefully, 650, 2181, 2210; —busili, 2577.

Busk, *n.* F. a bush, 3062, 3069; busch, 3101, 3111.

Buske, *v.* to brush about, hurry about, hurry, 2210; busk to *or* buske to, to hurry towards, 1968, 2264; busk of *or* buske of, to hurry from, 1653, 1997; *pr. pl.* busken, † 426, † 433; 1 *p. s. pt.* busked, † 612; *pt. s.* busked, 1085; (prepared), 3196; busked to, 1707, 2055; buskede him *or* busked him (went), 21, 1863; *pt. pl.* busked (prepared), 1152; buskeden (hurried), 2819; busked hem (went quickly), 1530, 2477, 2770. *See* Buschen. Icel. *at buast.* See *Busk* in Wedgwood.

But, *conj.* S. excépt, unless, 476, 627, 937, 972, † 368, &c. But ȝif, unless, 758, 939 1276. *See* Bot.

Buþ, *pr. pl.* are, 4447. *See* Ben.

Buxum, *adj.* S. tractable, obedient, 2943; meek (*applied to* beasts), 2720, 2854, 3085, 4062. A.S. *bocsam.*

Buxumli, 3717, 4972, } *adv.* S.
Buxumly, 2, 510, } meek; boxumly, 332; *comp.* buxumlier, 723.

By, *prep.* S. near; by þat barn = near that child, 220.

Bygge, *v.* S. to build, construct, † 1133. Swed. *bygga;* Dan. *bygge.*

By-hote. *See* Bi-hote.

By-þan, by the time that, 220. Cf. A.S. *be þám þe.*

Cacche, *v.* to catch, take, obtain, get, 806, 2266, 2940;—kacche, 2217; *pr. s.* caccheth, 3750; *pt. s.* cauȝt, 4302; *pt. pl.* cauȝt, 1053, 1495, 2867; kauȝt, 1053, 3374; *pp.* cauȝt, 4214; kauȝt, 2531.

Caire, *v.* S. to return, travel, go, 5184; 2 *p. s. pr.* cairest, 5190; *pr. s.* cayres, 2977; *pt. s.* kayred, 373; *pt. pl.* caired, 2714, 5324; cayred, 2201; kayred, 3734; *imp. pl.* kairus, † 623; *pres. part.* cairende, 1922. A.S. *cérran.*

Calles, *pr. pl.* call, 239; *pt. s.* cald, 887; calde, 1460.

(Can) can, know, acknowledge; *in the past tense,* could, knew, *inf.* kenne, † 623;—1 *p. s. pr.* kan, 321, 635; con, 297; 1 *p. pl. pr.* kunne, 4184; *pr. pl.* konne, 3334; *pt. s.* couþe, 2, 174, 655; kowþe, 5055; kouþe, 952; coude, 4378; couȝde, 120; couȝþe, 118; kende, † 193; *pt. pl.* couþe, 577; kowden, 4810; couþen, 1033; coþen, 1576; kende, † 367; *pp.* couþ, known, famous, 5053.

Care, *n.* S. care, grief, sorrow, regret, 496;—kare, 288, 424, 726, 743.

Carefull, *adj.* S. full of care or anxiety, anxious, sorrowful, † 75, † 244; causing care, woful, † 295; —carful, 2201, 2860, 3181;—karful, 373, 3774.

Carestow, carest thou, art thou sad, 3182. *See* Kares.

Carfti, *adj.* crafty, skilful, 3221. [*It should rather be* crafti, *but this form is sometimes found.* See *Romans of Partenay,* l. 5708.]

Carfulli, *adv.* S. sorrowfully, 4347; —carfuli, 152;—karfulli, 3734.

Carpen, *v.* to speak, tell, talk, † 748; carpe, 4581; carp, 832, † 11; karpe, 2523; 1 *p. s. pr.* carp, † 200, † 244; karp, † 172; *pr. s.* carpes, † 693; karpes, † 585; 1 *p. s. pt.* karped, 5233; carped, 217; *pt. s.* carped, † 72, 990; 1 *p. pl. imp.* carpe, 2855; karpe, 4054. *Phrase*—to karp (karpe, carpp) þe soþe, to tell the truth, 503, 2804, 655, † 683. "Carpyn or talkyn. *Fabulor.*" Prompt. Parv.

Carping, *n.* talking, speech, 4660; —karping, 3100.

Cas, *n.* F. chance, hap, fortune, event, 326, 915, 2919;—case, † 24; bi cas, 595; for cas, 1037. Ch.

Cast, *pt. s.* cast away, i. e. lost, 881;—caste, contrived, 1981. *See* Kest.

Castel-werk, castellated work, 2220.

Castis, *n. pl.* events, 654.

Catel, *n.* F. wealth, possessions; *gen. sing.* cateles, † 376. Ch. See *Catels* in Roq.

Caytif, *n.* F. a wretch, person of low extraction, 710. Ch.

Cayreden, *pt. pl.* carried, 2520.

Ceput. *See* Kepe.

Certes, *adv.* certainly, verily, indeed, 732, 1380, 1500, &c. Ch.

Chambur, *n.* F. chamber, 685. [MS. chanbur.]

Chamly, *adv.* S. shamefully, 2124. Cf. Schamly.

Charge, *n.* F. load, 388.

Chase, chose, † 36. *See* Chese.

Chases, 2 *p. pl. imp.* chase ye, 1207.

Chast, *v.* to chasten, chastise, 729; 2 *p. s. imp.* chaste, 5157. P. Pl.

Chaul, *n.* S. jowl, jaw, † 1119. A.S. *ceole.* Cf. *chol* in P. Pl. Crede, and *chall* in Hartshorne's *Salopia Antiqua.*

Chaunche, *n.* F. chance, 137.

Chaunded, *pt. s.* enchanted (?) [*But we should perhaps read* chaunged.]

Chauntemens, *n. pl.* F. enchantments, 654.

Che, *pron.* she, 462, 641, 2317. Cf. Sche, *and* Hue.

Chef, *adj.* F. chief, 3841;—cheefe, † 1210.

Cheffaren, *v.* to chaffer, bargain, buy and sell, † 1210.

Chepinge, *n.* S. market, 1822;—fro chepinge ward, from towards market, on the return from market, 1844.

Chere, *n.* F. countenance, look, appearance, demeanour, 647, 4882, 5263. Ch.

Cherl, *n.* S. churl, countryman, 54, 60, 62, &c.;—cherle, 1675; *pl.* cherls, 513. Ch.

Cherli, *adv.* F. cheerily, kindly, 62.

Chese, *v.* to choose, † 770; *pt. s.* ches, 4165; chees, † 321; chused, † 140; *imp. s.* ches, 4161; *pp.* chuse of = chosen by, beloved by, † 49. Ch.

Cheued forth, *pt. s.* hastened forth, † 78. Cf. O.F. *eschever*, and see *esquiver* in Cotgrave.

Cheuesed, *pt. s.* obtained, procured, † 966. See *Chevir* and *Chevissance* in Roq. and *Chevis* in Ch. *Mars and Venus*, st. 37.

Cheueteyn, *n.* F. chieftain, 3379.

Child, *n.* S. child, 1822. "It is here used for a person of gentle birth, in opposition to *cherl*."—M. In l. 541 it is used of a person of mean birth, but grown up to manhood.

Chipmen, *n. pl.* S. shipmen, sailors, 2811, 2818.

Choisli, *adv.* F. aptly, 1753;—choicelich, choicely, † 49.

Chold, *pt. s.* should, 2014.

Choliers. *See* Kolieres.

Chortly, *adv.* S. shortly, 2035.

Choys, *adj.* F. choice, fair, 400.

Chul, (ye) shall, 3339.

Chused. *See* Chese.

Chylder, *n. pl.* S. children, † 36. [*The* A.S. *pl. is* cildra, cildru.]

Clatered. *See* To-clatered.

Clene, *adj.* S. fair, noble, 1083, 1124, 1434; *sup.* clennest, 1609.

Clenli, *adv.* S. cleanly, fairly, clearly, 3847;—clenliche, 3477;—clanli, 3288.

Clepe, *v.* S. to call, 1299, 1977, 3181; 2 *p. s. pr.* clepus, 249; *pr. pl.* clepun, 2221; *pt. s.* clepud, 56, 260, 274, 977, 1132; cliped, † 836; kleped, † 476; *pp.* clepud, 1956; cleped, † 944; y-clepud, 121. Ch.

Cleppende. *See* Clipped.

Clere, *adj.* F. fair, fine (colour), 579;—cler (strength), 2037.

Clerli, *adv.* F. finely, 4422.

Cleued, *pt. s.* cleaved, stuck, 734.

Cleymeþ, *pr. s.* calls out, calls, 4481. Lat. *clamare*.

Clipped, *pt. s.* S. embraced, 63, 1570; clipte, 672, 1265; clipt, 3205; clept, 675; clupte, 1587; *pt. pl.* clipt, 1833, 3100; *pres. part.* clippend, 2808; cleppende, 2804; clipping, 1396; *pp.* clipped, 859.

Clipping, *n.* S. embracing, 1053, 3474.

Clouȝtand, *pres. part.* S. mending, clouting, 14. A.S. *clút*, a clout. "The verb is preserved in Belgic *klutsen*, *kluteren*, to cobble or repair."—M. Cf. Du. *klotsen*, to strike on; and see *Clouted* in Ch.

Cofli, *adv.* S. quickly, boldly, † 1009;—cofly, † 693, † 748;—coflich, † 207, † 297, † 581, † 662. A.S. *cóflíce*.

Coies, *pr. s.* soothes, coaxes, † 1175.

Cf. Acoyed. F. *coi*, from Lat. *quietus*.

Col, *n.* coal, 2520; *pl.* coles, 4367.

Colled, *pt. s.* embraced, 3032;—kolled, 69; *pres. part.* collinge, 2984. O.F. *acoler*. See Spenser, F. Q. iii. 2, 34.

Com, *pt. s.* came, 39, 47, 61;—kom, 507; *pl. pl.* come, 151, 3363; *pp.* come, 80, 816;—kome, 504;—komen, 513. Com bi = acquire, 1688.

Comande, Komande, commanded, 347, 1110. See note to l. 347.

Come, *n.* S. arrival, 4192, 4953, 5222;—kome, 807;—coome, † 73; — cumme, † 147.

Comen, *adj.* Lat. common, 6. *See* Komwne.

Comfort, *pt. pl.* comforted, 1495; *pt. s.* cumfort, 1512; *pp.* conforted, 380.

Comly, *adj.* comely, 294;—comliche, 963, 2704;—comelich, † 205; — comeliche, 987; — komli, 873, 2858; — cumlich, † 18; — cumly, 783.

Comliche, *adv.* in a comely manner, 660;—comeliche, 2220;—komly, 51;—komeliche, 423.

Compacement, *n.* F. contrivance, stratagem, 1981.

Compers, *n. pl.* F. companions, 370. Ch.

Comse, *v.* F. to commence, begin, 2244; *pr. s.* komses, 616; *pt. s.* comsed, 37, 194, 288, 579, &c.; comsede, 832; komsed, 1430; cumsed, 424, 764. P. Pl.

Comsing, *n.* F. commencement;—fram comsing to þende, from beginning to end, 4869, 5092.

Con. *See* Can.

Confort, *n.* F. comfort, 1408.

Conforted, *pp.* comforted, 380. *See* Comfort.

Coninge, *n.* F. cunning, skill, 120;—kunning, † 643.

Conseyl, *n.* counsel, advice, 114;—cunsail, 595;—cunsaile, 969;—cunseil, 2126;—cunseyl, 2105;—cunsayle, 1118.

Contenaunce, *n.* F. countenance, demeanour, 1401, 3076, 4900; — countenaunce, † 961; — cuntenaunce, 1397; — kuntenaunce, 942, 3323.

Conyng, *adj.* S. cũnning, skilful, 653;—cunning, † 463;—konyng, 2917; *comp.* cunnyngere, 406; *sup.* konyngest, 4810.

Conyng, *n. pl.* conies, rabbits, 182. [*The sing. is* conyng (*Wycl. Gloss.*), *and we should expect to find* conynges *here, as in* P. Pl. ed. Wright, p. 12. *See* Conynge *in* Halliwell, *who calls it* Anglo-Norman. *It is Teutonic; cf.* Du. *konijn*, G. *kaninchen*.]

Coraious, *adj.* F. courageous, 3318;—koraious, 3352.

Corteys, *adj.* F. courteous, 194, 2704; — curteyse, 405, 601;—curteise, 1397;—kurtes, 4405;—curteys, 231;—curtais, † 207.

Cortynes, *n. pl.* curtains, 2056. Ch.

Corue, *pp.* carved, cut, 3233.

Cosynes, *n.* F. female cousin, 625. *See the note.*

Coude. *See* Can.

Couenabul, *adj.* F. meet, agreeable, suitable, 4089; *sup.* couenablest, 3219. Ch.

Coupyng, *n.* F. violent encounter, 3602. *See* Acoupyng.

Couren, *pr. pl.* F. cower, crouch, 3336; *pt. s.* koured, 47. *See* Koure.

Cournales, *n. pl.* F. battlements, † 295. *See* Kerneles.

Couþe, *adj.* S. kind, affable, 3659.

Couþe, Couȝde, Couȝþe, &c. *See* Can.

Couwardli, *adv.* cowardly, 3336.

Couyne, *n.* F. contrivance, plan, 3147; — koueyne, 952. O. Fr. *convine.* See Roq. and *Covyne* in Ch.

Coynt, *adj.* F. crafty, artful, skilful, 653, 1981; — coynte, 2824; — koynt, 4090; — coynte crag (as we say a *sly corner*), 2850.

Coynted him, *pt. s.* made himself acquainted, 4644.

Coyntise, *n.* F. stratagem, art, 448, 1688, 1972; — coyntice, 1665; — coyntyse, 1670, 1825.

Cracche, *n.* F. manger, 3233. "Cracche, cratche, *stall, crib*, Job vi. 5; Lk. ii. 7, 12, &c." *Wycl. Gloss.*

Craft, *n.* 635; — kraft, 559.

Crafti, *adj.* S. skilful, clever, 1681; *comp.* craftier, 1680. *See* Carfti.

Craftli, *adv.* S. prudently, 3828.

Crep, *pt. s.* crept, † 1009; *pt. pl.* crepten, 2235. *See* Krepe.

Cri, *n.* F. proclamation, 2249; — kri, 2174; — kry, 5405.

Criande, *pres. part.* crying, 4347.

Crie mercy, to beg for mercy, 1276.

Croice, *n.* F. cross, 350, 3127; — croyce, 1343, 3493.

Cristen, *adj.* Christian, 522.

Cumly, Cumme, Cumsed. *See* Comly, Come, Comsed.

Cunstabul, *gen. sing.*, constable's, 4212.

Cunter, *n.* F. an encounter, 1344.

Cuntre, *n.* F. country, 6; — kontrey, 241; — kuntre, 1673; — kontre, 722; *pl.* cuntreis, 1922; kuntres, 5474.

Curtais, Curteise. *See* Corteys.

Curtesliche, *adv.* F. courteously, 233; — curteysly, 274; — curtesli, 347; — curteisle, 353; — kurteyslyche, 873; — kurtesliche, 1430; — kurteisly, 1986; — curteyseliche, 2662; — kortesliche, 1430; &c. *See* Corteys.

Cuuerede. *See* Keuer.

Dalt. *See* Dele.

Damisele, *n.* F. damsel, 401, 562, 589; *pl.* damiseles, 1978.

Dar, 1 *p. pres. s.* I dare, 564, 938; der, 2169; 1 *p. s. pt.* dorst, 2040; *pt. s.* dorst, 305.

Dar, *pr. s. in the phrase* "*dar* no mon hem wite," no one *need* blame them, 2434. "It is equivalent here to *tharf*, from S. *þearfan*, Teut. *darfen*, to need."—M. *See* Thort.

Dared, *pt. s.* looked dazed, stared as if stupefied, gazed fixedly, 4055. *See* Way's note on "Daryn" in Prompt. Parv. Ch.

Darked, *pt. s.* lay hid, lurked, 17, 44, 2543; *pl.* darkeden, 1834; darked, 2851.

Dawe, *n.* S. day, *in phr.* brouȝt of dawe = bereft of life, 3818 (cf. † 56); *pl.* dawes, 77, 3704, 4719; daywes, 570; daies, 5490. [*When the pl. takes the form* dawes (daywes) *it is preceded by* lif.]

Dawe, *v.* S. to dawn, 3261; *pt. s.* it dawed, 1791, 2218, 2480.

Debate, *n.* F. strife, 2779; — debat, 4380.

Debonureli, *adv.* F. courteously, meekly, 730. *Cf.* Bonure.

Ded, dead; *in phr.* "ded as dore-nail," 628, 3396. [In P. Pl. ed. Wright, p. 26, we have "as deed as a dore-tree," where the earlier text has "ded as a dore-nayl." See P. Pl. A. i. 161.]

Dedain, *n.* F. disdain, † 313. O.F. *desdaing.*

Dedaine, *adj.* F. disdainful, † 584.

Dede, *n.* S. deed, 1197; an action, i. e. a battle, 1137, 1187; *pl.* dede, 3807; dedes, 1368; dedus, 1096, 3406, 4115.

Dede, *n.* S. death, 2072; *usually* deth, *as in* 151.

Dede, did. *See* Do.

Dedut, *n.* F. pleasure, 4998.

Deerne. *See* Dern.

Defaute, *n.* F. default, 1185.

Defoyled, *pt. pl.* F. trampled on, depressed, 4614.

Degised. *See* Disgised.

Deie, *v.* to die, 546, † 375;—dei, 696;—deyen, 3353; 1 *p. s. pr.* deiȝe, 4349; deie, 919; 1 *p. pl. pr.* deiȝen, 3898; *pt. s.* deide, 1322, † 1013; deyde, 113; *pt. pl.* deyde, 1407.

Del, *n.* S. part; furþe del = fourth part, 1284. *Cf.* Tenþedel.

Del, *n.* F. dool, sorrow, 349, 1510;—dol, 781, 2054;—doel, 1909;—dool, 88;—doole, † 242, † 613, † 926;—dul, 2757;—duel, 564, 919, 1318, 1321, 1370, 1647, &c.

Delfulli, *adv.* sorrowfully, grievously, 1980;—dolfulli, 2434;—doolefully, † 32;—dulfulli, 2335, 4371;—duelfulli, 578, 3422. *See also* Dulfull.

Dele, *v.* S. to deal, deliver (blows), 1222; *pt. s.* dalt, 2791; *pt. pl.* delten, 3440; *pres. part.* deland, 1235; *pp.* dȣlt, 1271.

Deliuer, *adj.* F. quick, nimble, 3596.

Deliuerly, *adv.* quickly, 349, 776, 1119, 1702;—deliuerli, 1510, 1909;—deliuerliche, 1245. Ch.

Deme, *v.* S. to judge, declare, 151, 1074; *phr.* "to deme þe soþe," 151, 583, 1161, 2633.

Demeyned him, *pt. s.* behaved, 1201, 3636; *pt. pl.* demened hem, 1222.

Denede, *pt. s.* dinned, resounded, 5014.

Dent. *See* Dint.

Departe, *v.* F. (*intr.*) to part asunder, sever, 2334, 5422; 1 *p. pl. pt.* departed, 2026; *pt. s.* (*trans.*) departed, 3894.

Depeinted, *pp.* painted, pourtrayed, 3573;—depeynted, 3217. Ch.

Der. *See* Dar.

Deraied him, *pt. s.* F. acted madly (like a man *disordered* in mind), 2061;—deraiȝed him, 3741;—drayed (*read* derayed?) him, 1210;—deraide [hym?], † 883. O. F. *desroyer, deroyer, dessarroyer.*

Deraine, *v.* F. to make good, to sustain a refusal (*a law term*), † 124;—dereine, † 356. "*Desrener*, to dereine; to justifie, or make good, the deniall of an act, or fact." Cotgrave.

Dere, *v.* S. to harm, injure, 953;—derie, † 1240. Ch.

Dere, *adj.* S. dear, precious, 401; *phr.* "whan ȝou *dere* likes," 1050; "him *dere* þouȝt," 1268; "ȝou *dere* þinkes," 4352, 4727.

Derk, *n.* darkness, 1285, † 714.

Derly, *adv.* S. dearly, sumptuously, 1421;—derli, 4312, 4374.

Derling, *n.* S. a darling, 1538; *pl.* derlinges, 2568.

Dern, *adj.* S. secret, 1792;—derne, † 478;—deerne, † 826; *pl.* derne, † 860. Ch.

Dernly, *adv.* S. secretly, 17, 131, 1311, 1799;—dernli, 1050, 2208.

Derworþ, *adj.* S. precious, dear, 585, 2585;—derworþe, 1745, 2633, 4140, 5311;—dereworth, † 613;—dereworthe, † 431, † 692, † 1240; *sup.* de[r]worþest, 3209. P. Pl.

Des, *n.* F. The *daïs*, or seat of honour, 4312, 4338;—dese, 4011.

Descriue, *v.* F. to describe, 5005, 5025; 1 *p. s. pt.* descriued, 3042.

Deschuuer, *v.* F. to discover, reveal, 3192.

Descuuering, *n.* discovery, 1043; —discuueryng, 1024.

Deseuy, *v.* F. to deceive, 3306.

Desgeli. *See* Disgisili, *and the note on* l. 5014.

Desmaye ȝou, *imp.* be dismayed, 3040.

Desparaged, *pp.* disparaged, 485.

Despit, *n.* F. mischief, injury, 555, 4227;—despyt, 3335.

Despitously, *adv.* mischievously, maliciously, 1137; — despitusly, 1210.

Dessece, *n.* F. decease, 4101.

Destene, *n.* F. destiny, 315.

Destruye, *v.* F. to destroy, 2930; —destrue, 4147;—destrye, 4262; *pp.* destruyt, 2847; destrued, 2646; destruyed, 2124.

Deuel, *n.* S. devil, 1976; *phr.* "a deuel wai," 1978. Ch.

Deuer, *n.* F. duty, 474, 2546;— deuere, 520. Ch.

Deuis, *n.* F. device, 3222.

Deuise, *v.* F. to describe, talk about, tell of, 2985;—diuise, 1316, 2635; deuice, 1603; *pt. pl.* deuised, 3302.

Deuouteliche, *adv.* devoutly, earnestly, 2976;—deuoteliche, 1245.

Deuoyde, *v.* F. to quit, leave, 2044.

Digised. *See* Disgised.

Digne, *adj.* F. worthy, 583, 4583; —ding, † 313. Ch.

Dignely, *adv.* worthily, 520;— dingneli, 4567.

Diked, *pp.* dug out, 2233.

Dint, *n.* a stroke, blow, 1234, 2784, † 343;—dent, 2757, 3750; *pl.* dintes, 1222, † 124, † 130;— dentes, 1215, 3440; — dyntes, † 295.

Disgised, *pp.* disguised, 1677;— degised, 3888;—digised, 2530.

Disgisi, *adj.* F. in disguise, masked, mummerwise, 1620;—disgesye, secret, 2715.

Disgisili, *adv.* strangely, extraordinarily, 485;—desgeli, 5014, *on which line see the* Note.

Diting, *an error for* Tiding, 1478.

Diuise. *See* Deuise.

Diȝt, *v.* S. to dispose, get ready, prepare, 3253; *pt. s.* (*with* him), 1119; *pt. pl.* (*with* hem), 1799; *pp.* diȝt, i. e. dressed, prepared, ready, destined (*with reference to* death), 151, 315, 776, 1620, 1643, 1677, 3222; 1 *p. imp. pl.* "diȝt we vs henne," let us readily go hence, 2553. Ch.

Done, *v.* S. to do, to cause, 320, 860; *also* to fight (metaphorically), 3252; 1 *p. pr. s.* do, 3249; 3 *p. pr. s.* doþ, 925; dos, 4202; 2 *p. pr. pl.* doþ, 1452; 3 *p. pr. pl.* don, 3244; 1 *p. pt. s.* dede, 555; 3 *p. pt. s.* dede, 862, 1025; dude, 3427; *pt. pl.* dede, 2092; dude, 1145; *imp. s.* do, 2127; *imp. pl.* doþ, 3807; *pp.* don, 2928; do, 936, 1024. *Phr.* dude to dethe = did to death, killed, 3427; dude hem forþ = went forth, 1145; dede hem on gate = went on their way, 2092; *cf.* 1119; dede him out, went out, 2061; done (*pp.*) = dead, 937. "When followed by another verb, the latter is always in the infinitive mood (as in the case after all the other auxiliaries) and [often] receives a passive signification."—M. E. g. *dede calle*, caused to be called, 1522; *dede clepe*, 1299; *do crie*, cause to be proclaimed, 2127, 4049; *do kepe*, cause to be kept, 413, *dede fecche*, 1303; *do quelle*, cause to be killed, 1246; *dede translate*, caused to be translated, 167. The exception to this is when the verb following is *neuter*. E.g. *dede astente*, made to stop, 1526; *dede to mete*, caused to dream, 862; *dede renne*, caused to run, 3390; *do vanisch*, 639.

Another exception is when *do* is followed by *him* (used reflexively), as in *do him loþe mi loue*, cause himself to loathe my love, 546. Another *phrase* is *do to wite* (651, 1331, 1459) = to cause to know, which is still in use, and in which *to wite* takes the place of the A.S. *gerund*.

Doel, Dol, Dool. *See* Del.

Dof, *imp. s.* doff thou, do thou off, 2342.

Doluen, *pp.* (*from* delve), buried, 4210; doluen quic, buried alive, 1564; ded and doluen, dead and buried, 2630, 5280, † 1026. Ch.

Dom, *n.* S. judgment, doom, 1220. Ch.

Dornayl, Dorenail. *See* Ded.

Dorst. *See* Dar.

Doted, *pp.* F. foolish, idiotic, 4055. *See* A-doteþ. Ch.

Downes, *n. pl.* S. downs, 2903.

Doun riȝtes. *See* Riȝtes.

Douten, *pr. pl.* fear, are afraid of, † 168. O.F. *douter*. Cf. Adouted.

Douȝter, *gen. sing.* daughter's, 3152.

Doutusli, *adv.* doubtfully, 4338. Cf. *Douteous* in Ch.

Douȝti, *adj.* S. doughty, brave, 1101, 1215, 1352;—douȝthi, 1302, 2709; — douȝty, 1318; *comp.* douȝtiere, 1161; *sup.* douȝtiest, 1197.

Douȝtili, *adv.* bravely, 1222.

Drailit. *See* Dreche.

Drawe. *See* Drouȝ.

Drayed. *See* Deraied.

Dreche, *v.* S. to disturb, molest, † 765; *pt. s.* draihte, † 752; *pp.* draiht, † 820. A.S. *drecean*, pt. t. *dréhte*, pp. *dréht, gedréht*. Ch. *See* Way's note in Prompt. Parv.

Drede, *n.* S. dread, fear, 1909; *miswritten* dredre, 1892.

Dreew. *See* Drouȝ.

Drem, *n.* S. a droning noise, †781, † 982. See note to l. † 781.

Dreme, *n.* S. a dream, 752.

Dressed him, *pt. s.* addressed himself, 1237.

Dreȝing, *n* S. suffering, 919. Cf. Drie.

Drie, *v.* S. to endure, suffer, 1772, † 373;—drye, 459, † 1069;—dry, † 1067; 1 *p. pr. s.* drye, 459; 2 *p. pr. pl.* driȝen, 3704; *pt. s.* dried, † 242; drey, 2864; dreiȝh, 2796. A.S. *dréogan*. Sc. *dree*. Cf. Mœso-Goth. *driugan*.

Drift, *n.* S. driving-power, † 998; chasing, onset, † 897.

Driuen, *pr. pl.* "driuen forþ þat day," drive forth (i. e. pass) the day, 3065; *pt. s.* drof (drove), † 891; *pp.* driue (driven), 979.

Dronked, *pp.* drenched, i. e. drowned, 3516.

Dronken, *pt. pl.* drank, 1906.

Drouned, *pt. s.* droned, made a droning noise, † 985. Cf. Mœso-Goth. *drauȝjus*.

Drouȝ, *pt. s.* drew, drew near, approached, 2208; dreew, † 714; drow, 1068, 1235, 1321, 1526, 1914; drow him, 4338; *pt. pl.* drouȝ, 781, 3065; drowe, 1089; drowen, 1220; drow hem, 1792; drowen them, † 795; was drawe him = had drawn himself, 44.

Duel, Dul. *See* Del.

Dulfull, *adj.* doleful, causing dole, † 143;—duelful, 3440.

Dupe, *adj.* S. deep, †1132, †1156.

Duresse, *n.* F. hardship, constraint, cruelty, 1074, 1114, 1125, 1546, &c. Ch.

Dwelle, *v.* to delay, tarry, 701; *pr. s.* dwelles, 1989; *pt. s.* dwelled, 1966. Dan. *dvæle*. Sw. *dväljas*.

Dwerþ, *n.* S. a dwarf, 362 (*see* Note). A.S. *dweorg*, Dan. and Sw. *dverg*.

Dwined, *pt. s.* pined, dwindled, 578. A.S. *dwinan*. Ch.

Eche, each, 517. "It is usual to find *a* (for *an*, one) used after this word, as *eche a barn*, 188; *eche a ryuk*, 1472; *eche a strete*, 1617; *eche a kuutre*, 1673; *eche a gom*, 3465; [*eche a seg*, 3932;] *eche a baili*, 5387; *eche a lord*, 5399; and when combined with it, is written both in Old English and Scotch, *ilka*."—M.

Eft, *adv.* afterwards, again, 882, 1049, †552;—eft as fele, as many again, 3372.

Egge-tol, *n.* edged tool, sharp instrument, 3755. [*It seems to be a compound noun;* cf. A.S. *ecg-bana*, *ecg-héte*, &c.]

Egged, *pt. s.* S. incited, urged, 1130. A.S. *eggian*. O.N. *eggia*. Dan. *egge*. "*Eggyn*, or entycyn' to doon' wel or yvele." Prompt. Parv.

Egre, *adj.* F. eager, courageous, 3636.

Eiles, *pr. s.* ails, afflicts, 634, 1533;—eyles, 944; *pt. s.* eilede, 951;—eyled, 831, 888.

Eir, *n.* F. heir, 709, 1474, 4102; —eyr, 4641; —eyer, 77; —eyre, 128.

Eiþer ... other, each ... the other, i. e. one another, 1010, 1032, 1613, 2505, 3032, 4889, 5200. Eiþer (each), 1054; *spelt* eþer, 833; *cf.* eiȝþer, 1240; *gen. sing.* eiþers (each other's), 1014.

Eiȝen, *n. pl.* S. eyes, 463, 465, 1063, 1585;—eiȝyen, 228;—eyiȝen, 458.

Ek, but, 715. *See* Ak.

Eke, *adv.* also, 473.

Eld, *adj.* S. old, 3498.

Elde, *n.* S. old age, 5227.

Elles, else, otherwise, 1132, 1571, 2671; —eles, †55, †209. A.S. *elles*.

Em, *n.* S. uncle, 3421, 3435; *gen. sing.* emes, 3426. Ch.

Emperice, *n.* F. empress, 5343, 5400. Ch.

Enchaunmens, *n. pl.* enchantments, 137.

Encheson, *n.* F. occasion, cause, †1070, 3697, 4173;—enchesoun, 1172, †140.

Ender day, by-gone day, day past, 3042. *See* P. Pl. Crede, l. 239, and *hendre* in Jamieson.

Enforced, *pp.* strengthened, forcibly occupied, †908.

Engines, *n. pl.* warlike engines, †294; — engynes, 3000.

Enpoysoun, *v.* F. to poison, 4650.

Ensaumples, *n. pl.* F. examples, †8.

Entecches, *n. pl.* F. spots, stains (metaphorically used), 558.

Entent, *n.* F. intention, 1544.

Entres, *n. pl.* F. entries, passes, †908.

Eny, any, 2223;—eni, 1077.

Enys, *adv.* once, 1093. A.S. *ánes*, gen. of *án*, one. [*But it is a mere expletive in this place.*]

Er, *conj.* S. before, ere, 1612, 2026; — her, 1515; — or, †310, †791. *See* Ere.

Erande, *n.* S. an errand, 4156;—herend, 1469;—herande, 1592;—arnd, 5287. Cf. Mœso-Goth. *airinon*, to go on a message.

Erber, *n.* arbour, 1752.

Erden, *v.* S. to dwell, 5260; *pt. s.* erded, 1417.

Ere, *adv.* S. before, formerly, 160, 3031, 4180, 5233. *Cf.* Are.

Eritage, *n.* F. heritage, 4097, †464.

Erliche, *adv.* S. early, 1296, 2519.

Ern, *n.* S. an eagle, 3105. Ch.

Ern = ȝerne, †1091. *See* ȝerne.

Ert, art thou, †592. Ch.

Eschel, *n.* F. troop, company, battalion, 3379, 3564, 3785. O.F. *eschelle*.

Esed, *pp.* made at ease, accommodated, 1632, 5338.

Estres, *n. pl.* F. retreats, recesses (of a garden), 1768. Applied in Ch. to the inward parts of a house, &c. *See* O.F. *estre* in Roq.

"Like to the *estres* of the grisly place,
That hight the gret tempul of Mars in Trace."—Ch. Kn. Ta. 1113.

Cf. *Rom. of the Rose*, 1448, 3626.

Eten, *pt. pl.* ate, 1906, 2515.

Eth, *adj.* S. easy, 3571. Ch. A.S. *eáð*.

Eþer, either, each, 833. *See* Eiþer.

Etteleden, *pt. pl.* hurried, 272. *See* Attele.

Euele, *n.* S. evil, mischief, 558, 1065.

Euen, *adv.* straight, exactly, hard by, 755, 1093;—euene, 747, 762, 811.

Euenly, *adv.* straightway, 1747.

Euen-while, *n.* even-time, eventide, 1747.

Euerich, every, 622, 1474;—euereche on, every one, 5412.

Facioun. *See* Fasoun.

Fade, *pp.* faded, 891.

Fader, *n.* S. father, 241, &c.; *gen. sing.* fader, 4996.

Faileden, *pt. pl.* failed, 2660.

Fain. *See* Fayn.

Fairre, *comp. adj.* fairer, 4437.

Falle, *v.* S. to befall, happen, 324, 806, 1700; *pr. s.* falles me (happens to me), 439; falles (suits, appertains, belongs), 14, 339, 1685, 2789; *pt. s.* fel (befell), 903; fel for (suited), 1766; him fel (behoved him), 4440.

Fantasie, *n.* F. fancy, apprehension (of evil), †384. Ch.

Fanteme, *n.* F. a phantom, a fancy, 703, 2315, 4109.

Fare, *v.* S. to go, 5079, 5142; *pr. s.* fares, 1315; *pt. s.* ferd *or* ferde, 30, 1479, 2649, (behaved) 884, 2073, (fared, did) 1497, 1499, (befell) 1922; *pt. pl.* ferden, 2745, 2809; ferde, 1913; ferd, 1915; farde, † 305; *pp.* faren, 1514, 5468; fare, 2485, † 224; faren forþ = proceeded, advanced, 3260; *cf.* 2730, 4450.

Fare, *n.* S. journey; *hence*, business, "goings-on," affair (*esp.* a *troublesome* business), 1091, 2079, 2802, 2943, 4580, &c.

Farre, *comp. adv.* farther, † 244.

Farly. *See* Ferli.

Fasoun, *n.* F. fashion, shape, make, 402, 934, 4440;—fason, 2836;—facioun, 500.

Fauȝt, *pt. s.* fought, 3426; *pt. pl.* fouȝten, 3414.

Fax, *n.* S. hair, 2097.

Fayn, *adj.* S. glad, 2817;—fain, 1783; *sup.* faynest, 3933; (*adv.*) fayn (gladly), 858.

Fayre, *adv.* fairly, kindly, 347.

Feele, Feole. *See* Fele.

Feffe, *v.* F. to enfeoff, provide for, give presents to, 1061; *pp.* feffed, 193. Ch.

Feintise, *n.* F. faintness, 436;—feyntyce (cowardice), 1188;—feyntise (flinching), 763; *phrase*, "feiþli boute feintyse," verily, without flinching (or hesitation), 1543, 3169. Ch.

Feiþ, *n.* S. faith, 858;—feiȝþ, 275.

Feiþli, *adv.* in faith, truly, 777, 828, 912, 1317;—feiþely, 201;—feiþliche, 2732;—feiȝþli, 4793;—feiȝþely, 230;—feþli, 132;—feþly, 209;—feiȝliche [? feiȝþliche], 261; —faitly, † 804;—feȝtly, 703.

Feiȝtful, *adj.* faithful, 337; *comp.* feiþfullere, 5434.

Fel. *See* Falle.

Fel, *n.* S. skin, 1720, 2361; *pl.* bere-felles (bear-skins), 2414, 2430, 2560.

Felachipe, *n.* S. fellowship, 777, 1317, 4510; — felachip, 1479.

Felawe, *n.* S. fellow, companion, 275, 339; *pl.* felawes, 186, 193, 360, &c.

Feld, *pr. s.* felt, 1; feld foute = perceived the scent, 33; *pp.* feled, 638.

Feldfares, *n. pl.* fieldfares, 183. Ch.

Fele, *adj.* S. many, 5, 186, 388, 801, &c; —fel, † 46; —feele, † 880: —feole, † 12.

Fell, *adj.* S. fierce, cruel, † 364, † 946. *Comp.* feller (of a *fever*), 897; (of a *sickness*), 609; (of a *battle*), 3614; (of a *man*), † 42. Ch.

Felled, *pt. s.* felled, killed, † 85; *pt. pl.* † 387, 3415; feld, † 352; *pp.* felde, 3638.

Felli, *adv.* fiercely, 3274; —felly, 3451.

Felþe, *n.* S. filth; *hence* (by metaphor) a low fellow, a wretch, 2542, 2545.

Fend, *n.* S. a fiend, 3130.

Fende, *v.* to defend, 3650; fende mee = defend myself, fight, † 1201.

Fenkes, *pr. s.* vanquishes, conquers, † 323; *pp.* fenked, † 111, † 305, † 890; ifenked, † 117. *Probably a modification of* F. *vaincre, as the spelling* venkud *occurs in* The Seuen Sages, 2024. *Cf.* "For haddest thou *fenked* the fon (foes)," &c. *Alexander*, ed. Stevenson, p. 208, l. 339.

Fer, *adv.* far, 2546, 2781; *comp.* ferre, 2613, 5167, 5397; *sup.* ferrest, 2433, 5079.

Ferche. *See* Fers.

Ferd, *pp.* afraid, 3366.

Ferd, *n.* S. a troop, company, 386, 5326. A.S. *fyrd.*

Ferden. *See* Fare.

Fere, *n.* S. a companion, 364, 1639, 2866; (a spouse), † 960. *Cf.* I-fere.

Fere, *adj.* entire, sound, 1583. Cf. Icel. *færr*, Su.-Go. *foer*. Dan. and Sw. *för*.

Fere, † 413. I can only suggest that *to fere* may mean *for fear* (which seems a forced construction), or that we should réad *to-fore*, beforehand. *Cf.* To-fore. Line † 415 also seems to be corrupt, and for þei we might read þen.

Ferefull, *adj.* S. terrible, † 291, † 411.

Ferforþ, *adv.* far away, 209.

Ferke, *v.* to drive, drive onwards by beating, to press hard upon, 3630; *pt. s.* ferked, † 85, † 1221; *pt. pl.* firked, † 67. "*Firk*, to whip, to beat." Halliwell.

Ferli, *adj.* S. terrible, fearful, 2449, 3186, 3934. A.S. *fǽrlíc.*

Ferli, *sb.* a wonder, 3280, 4531; —ferlich, † 1015; —farly, † 1050. *See preceding word.*

Ferliche, *adv.* terribly, wonderfully, 3238.

Fers, *adj.* F. fierce, severe, 436, 3351, 3641; —ferse, † 70, † 276; —ferche, 3796.

Fersche, *adj.* fresh, 3633. A.S. *fersc.* *See* Fresch.

Fersly, *adj.* fiercely, 1766; —fersli, 3348; —ferslich, † 115; —ferselich, † 253; —ferscheli, 3426. *Also spelt* fresly, 1190.

Ferst, *adv.* first, 648; *adj.* 1163.

Fesauns, *n. pl.* pheasants, 183. Ch.

Festened, *pt. s.* fastened, 1720; festned, 1239; *pp.* festened, 447, 3437, 3593; fest, 1650.

Fet, *n. pl.* S. feet, 1766.

Fetis, *adj.* F. well made, lovely, pretty, genteel, 126, 1447, 4095;

— fetys, 225, 4435; fetyse, 393; — fetise, † 188. O. F. *fetis*. Low Latin, *factitius*. Ch.

Fetisliche, *adv.* fairly, neatly, properly, 98.

Fettes, *pr. s.* fetches, † 628.

Fetures, *n. pl.* features, 857, 2886.

Feuer, *n.* F. fever, 897. *In* l. 1239, *for* of feuer (*as in* MS.) *read* on feuter. *See* Feuter.

Feute, *n.* scent, trace, 90, 2189; —foute, 33. "*Fewte.* Vestigium." Prompt. Parv. "*Fewt*, trace of a fox or beast of chase by the odour." —Morris.

Feuter, *n.* F. the rest for the spear, 3437, 3593. From Lat. *fulcrum*. Cf. *fautre* in Roq., and see *Morte Arthure*, l. 1366. Sir F. Madden points out that this is obviously the meaning in *Wallace*, iii. 168 (where Jamieson renders *fewtir* by *rage*, from the Icel. *fudra*, efflagro!)

Feye, *adj.* fated to die, unlucky, † 397. A.S. *fǽge*. Cf. *Morte Arth.* 121, 4253.

Feyntice (1239), Feyntise, Feyntyce. *See* Feintise.

Feyre, *n.* F. a fair, 1822.

Feyrye, *n.* F. race of fairies, 230. "See Keightley's *Fairy Mythology*, vol. i."—M.

Feȝtly, Feþli. *See* Feiþli.

Fifte, fifth, 1322.

Fin, *adj.* fine, great (applied to *force*), 1117, † 128; — fyn, 1217.

Finched, *pp.* finished, 3934.

Findestow = findest thou, 132.

Finliche, *adv.* finely, 768, † 1201.

Firked. *See* Ferke.

Flagetes, *n. pl.* F. flagons, 1893; — flaketes, 1888.

Flebled, *pt. pl.* became feeble, 2660, [*But we should rather read* febled. Cf. *febul* in l. 5227.]

Flecchinge, *n.* F. flinching, turning aside. See *fléchir* in Cotgrave.

Fleete, *v.* S. to float, † 532. Ch.

Flen, *v.* S. to flay, 1682; *pp.* flayne, 2607.

Flen, *v.* S. to flee, to fly, 3872; — flene, 1856, 3879, 3892; *pt. s.* flei, 1896; *imp. pl.* fleþ, 3366.

Flet, *n.* S. floor of a cottage; *hence*, on mi flet = in my cottage, 5368. A.S. *flett*. See *Myrk's Instructions for Parish Priests*, ed. Peacock; l. 273, *note*.

Flite, *v.* S. to chide, debate, 2545.

Flitte, *v.* S. to drive away, banish, 623.

Flon, *n. pl.* S. arrows, † 269.

Floriched, *pp.* flourished, clothed with verdure, 2438.

Floungen, *pt. pl.* flew as if flung, were thrown, † 269.

Fode, *n.* a man, † 209. Cf. Sw. *föda*, to bring forth.

Fodest, 2 *p. pr. s.* thou feedest, i. e. suppliest, 1646; *pt. s.* foded, 57; *imp. pl.* fodes, 2050. Cf. Mœso-Goth. *fodjan*.

Fold, *n.* S. earth, ground, 5382.

Fold, *pp.* folded, 858.

Folili, *adv.* foolishly, 4596; — folliche, 1557.

Folwe, *v.* S. to follow, 189; *pr. s.* folwes, 436; fulwes, 33; *pt. pl.* folwed, 3351, 3631; *imp. pl.* folweþ, 3344.

Fomen, *n. pl.* S. foemen, foes, 3274, 3372, † 98.

Fon, *n. pl.* S. foes, 3269, 3338; — fone, † 271, † 332, † 866.

Fonden, *v.* S. to try, seek, attempt, † 108; — fonde, 1019, 3387, † 246, † 385; fond, 777, 3599; 1 *p. pr. s.* fonde (I seek, ask), † 1054; 3 *p. pr. s.* foundes (goes), † 121; *pr. pl.* fonden (are busy), 1682; *pt. s.* fonded, † 740; *pt. pl.* fondede (busied themselves),

3629; *imp. pl.* fondes, 1114; *pp.* fonded, 623, 801; *pres. part.* founding (going), 1749. A.S. *fandian.*

Fond, *pt. s.* found, 293, 422, 2730, 4847; *pl.* fond him = found for him, 73.

Foos. *See* Fos.

For, *prep.* on account of, 1691; as suited for, 294, 506; in spite of (?), 1226. [*But we should, in the last place, read* fro.]

For, *conj.* in order that, 746, 2751; because, 1319, 1668.

For —, an intensive prefix. A.S. *for* —. Mœso-Goth. *fra* —. G. *ver* —. See below.

For-barre, *v.* to bar up, enclose forcibly, 3333; *pt. pl.* for-barred (parried), 1217.

For-brenne, *v.* S. to burn up, 1188; *pp.* for-brent, 2621, 2831, 3001.

Forcer, *n.* F. a casket, coffer, 4432, † 628. *See* Way's note on *Foorcere* in Prompt. Parv.

For-dede, *pt. s.* killed, destroyed (= should kill), 2972; *pp.* fordon, 1563.

Fordedes, *n. pl.* previous deeds, 325; — fordede, 5182. *See* note to l. 325, and cf. l. 2076.

Fore, *adv.* beforehand, 2076, 4142. *Cf.* To-fore.

Fore, *prep.* for, 2941.

Forfare, *v.* S. to kill, 2762.

For-fouten, *pp.* exhausted with fighting, 3686. *See* Jamieson.

For-frete, *pp.* eaten up, 2376. *See* Fret.

For-gaf, *pt. s.* gave up, 4418.

For-gete, *pp.* forgotten, 5156.

For-go, *v.* to forego, lose, 5187.

For-hungred, *pp.* exhausted with hunger, 2515.

For-left, *pp.* left, 2497.

For-lete, *pt. pl.* left, forsook, 2311; *pp.* for-lete, 679.

For-lore, *pp.* wholly lost, 2955, 4571.

Formest, *adj.* first, foremost, 1191, 5079, † 40; — formast, 2324; *adv.* (at first, first of all), 939, 1362, 2324.

For-oute, *prep.* without, 2681.

Fors, *n.* force, 1117. *See* Fin. *Phrase,* "no fors þei ne leten," they little cared for, 3651. Cf. *I do no fors,* I don't care, in *Chaucer* (Aldine edition), vol. vi. p. 305.

Forschop, 1 *p. pt. s.* I transformed, misshaped, 4394; *pp.* for-schaped, 2639. Ch.

For-sake, *v.* to deny, 1358. A.S. *for-sacan.*

Fort, *put for* Forto, 788. *See* note.

Forþeres, *pr. s.* proceeds, 5397.

Forþ-fare, *pp.* departed, 5266.

Forþi, For-þi, *conj.* S. on that account, therefore, 723, 1051, 1624, &c.

Forþinkes me, *pr. s. impers.* it mislikes me, grieves me, 5422; *pt. pl. refl.* forthoughten hem, repented, † 446. Ch.

Forþward, *adv.* S. forward, 3630.

For-waked, *pp.* exhausted with waking, worn out for want of sleep, 785, 793, 1797;—al for-waked, 790;—al for-walked, 2236. "Chaucer uses it, Cant. Ta. 5016, and Wyntoun, viii. 16. 141."—M.

Forwandreþ, *pr. s.* wanders long, 739. "In Chaucer is the *pp.* forwandred, *Rom. Rose,* 3336."—M. See also P. Pl. A. *prol.* 7.

Forward, *n.* S. a compact, 1451; *pl.* forwardes, 1557, 1568, 1650.

For-wept, *pp.* worn out with weeping, 2868. "In Chaucer's *Dreme,* 1833, and *King's Quair,* ii. 54."—M. Cf. Bi-wept.

For-wery, *adj.* exceeding weary, 2443. "In Chaucer, *Rom. Rose,* 3336."—M. Cf. Dan. *langvarig.*

For-wounded, *pp.* much wounded, 3686. "In Chaucer, *Rom. Rose*, 1830."—M.

For-ȝeten, *pt. pl.* forgot, 1909; *pp.* for-ȝete, 4934. *See* For-gete.

Fos, *n. pl.* foes, 1190; — foos, 2699. *See* Fon.

Fostredes, 2 *p. pt. s.* didst foster, 5376.

Fote, *n.* S. a foot (used as a measure), 4033.

Fouche, *in phrase*, "sauf wol I fouche," I will vouch-safe or guarantee, 4152.

Foule, *adv.* fully, 1646.

Foules, *n. pl.* S. birds, 822; *gen.* foulen, 805.

Foundes, Founding. *See* Fonden.

Fourteniȝt, *n.* S. a fortnight, 2681; — fourteneniȝt, 1337; — forteniȝt, 2423; *gen.* fourteniȝtes, 2683.

Foute. *See* Feute.

Fouȝten. *See* Fauȝt.

Fowlye, *n.* folly, † 1103.

Frakes. *See* Freke.

Fram. *See* Fro.

Frauȝt, *pp.* freighted, 2732.

Frayne, *v.* S. to ask, inquire, 250; 1 *p. pt. s.* freyned, 2034; *pt. s.* freyned, 1303, 3587; *pt. pl.* freyned, 394. "Somner says that in his time this word still prevailed in Lancashire."—M.

Fre, *adj.* S. liberal, generous, noble, 337, 386, 1061, 3277; *used as sb.* 505; *opposed to* þewe, 5514. See Sir F. Madden's *Reply to Mr Singer's Remarks on Havelok*, p. 15.

Fredom, *n.* S. liberal disposition, 189.

Freke, *n.* S. a man, 402, 1117, † 193, &c.; —frek, 264, 897, 934, &c.; *gen.* frekes, 3886; *pl.* frekes, 442, 2286; —frakes, 3504. Applied to a young boy in l. 4078. The A.S. *frec* is chiefly used "in a bad sense, but the root exists in the Su.-G. *fræck*, Isl. *frek*, strenuus, ferox."—M. Cf. Sw. *fräck*, Dan. *fräk*.

Freliche, *adj.* S. noble, genteel, 428, 822, 3876; —freli, 5329; —frely, 124, 366, 500; —freyliche, 360; — freelich, † 209, † 1003, † 1245.

Freli, *adv.* S. nobly, honourably, 5329. *Generally in phr.* "freliche schapen," finely shaped, 126, 225, 393; "freli schapen," 1447; *sup.* "frelokest i-schapen," 2634. "In the Isl. *fráligr* is alacer, celer, strenuus. *Orkneyinga Saga*."—M.

Fresly. *See* Fersly.

Fresch, *adj.* fresh, 3640. *See* Fersche.

Fret, *pt. s.* gnawed, 87; *pp.* freaten (*rather read* freten), † 1159. A.S. *fretan*. G. *fressen*. Cf. Forfrete.

Friþ, *n.* a thicket, wood, forest, 822; *pl.* friþes, 2216, † 15. W. *ffridd*. Cf. O. Fr. *fraitis* in Roq.

Fro, *prep.* from, 13, &c.; — fromme, 425; —fram, 5373.

Frobroder, *n.* younger brother (*apparently contr. from* frombrother), † 23. [*I cannot find the word elsewhere.*]

Frond, *n.* F. front, 3584.

Frotus, *pr. s.* rubs, strokes, † 1174.

Ful, *adv.* very, 983.

Fulfillen, *v.* to fulfil, 1451; *pp.* fulfulled, 4319.

Fulsumli, *adv.* S. plenteously, 4325.

Fulwes. *See* Folwe.

Fundeling, *n.* foundling, 481, 502, 2077.

Fur, *n.* S. fire, 1188, 4773; — fure, 907, 3759.

Furþe del, fourth part, 1284.

Fy, *interj.* fie! 481.

Gabbe, *pr. pl.* S. talk idly, 1994. Ch.

Gadere, *v.* S. to gather, 30; — gader, 1022.

Gaf. *See* Gif.

Gailiche, *adv.* gaily, 2591;—gayli, 1625, 2597;—gayly, 2731.

Gainli. *See* Gaynli.

Gainelich, *adv.* †506. *It is doubtless an error for* gamelich: *the parallel passage in* MS. Ashm. 44 *is*, "A lowde laȝter he loȝe." *See* Gamely.

Gainus, *n. pl.* javelins, † 292. Cf. "*Ganye, Gainye, Genye, Ganyhe*, an arrow, javelin." Jamieson. Cf. Ir. *gain*, an arrow; W. *gaing*, a chisel or wedge. [*In* MS. *miswritten* gam*us*.]

Gamely, *adv.* playfully, joyfully, laughingly, 427;—gamelich, † 506; —gamli, 3383;—gameliche, 2591.

Gamsum, *adj.* S. joyful, 4193.

Gan, Ganne. *See* Gin.

Gan, *pr. pl.* they go, 811.

Gapand, *pres. part.* gaping, 2372; —gapande, 2875; —gapind, 3503.

Garisun, *n.* F. provision, reward, 5073; — garissoun, 2491. Cf. Warissoun.

Garnemens, *n. pl.* garments, 3207, 4460. P. Pl. Crede, 188, *foot-note.*

Gart, *pt. s.* caused, made, 1248, 2082, 2168, &c.;—garte, 1365;— "gart þis do make," caused this to be done, 5529. *See also* 2900.

Gat. *See* Gete.

Gate, *n.* S. road, way; *on gate*, on his way, on their way, 1119, 2092, 4014; *on his gate*, 372; *on here gate*, 1912; *on oure gate*, 2800; *on hur gate*, † 379; *pl.* gatis, gates; *heie gates*, high-roads, 1691; *geynest gatis*, nearest ways, 4189; *oþer-gate*, otherwise, 3761.

Gayne, *v. impers.* to avail, help, profit, 598; *pr. s.* gayneþ, 3109; geineþ, 3899; *pt. s.* geyned, 3891; *pr. s. subj.* geyne, 3107. Dan. *gavne*. Sw. *gagna*.

Gayned, *pt. s.* in "na gref *gayned* to his ioye," no grief accrued to his joy, 2473. Cf. O. F. *gaagner*. A.S. *gynan*.

Gaynest, *adj. sup.* nearest, readiest, 3465;—geynest, 4189. *Cf.* Gayne; and *Gane* in Jamieson.

Gaynli, *adv.* readily, well, thoroughly, 636, 2665, 2706, 3135; —gaynliche, 369;—geinli, 3448;— geinliche, 744;—geynliche, 1030; —geynli, 3553, &c. *Cf.* Gaynest.

Gelt, *n.* S. guilt, 2339, 4403.

Gemetrie, *n.* geometry, † 548, † 644. P. Pl. A. xi. 153.

Genge, *n.* S. gang, assemblage, 1600, 1625.

Gerd him, *pt. s.* girt himself, 3291.

Gerdeþ, *pr. s.* strikes, 1240. See *Girde* in Ch. "But perhaps we should read *greteþ*."—M.

Gere, *n.* S. gear, clothing, 1716, 2588; *stel ger*, steel armour, † 416. Ch.

Gergeis, Greeks, 2200..

Gerles, girls, 816.

Gest, *n.* F. geste, romance, 5033; *pl.* deeds, adventures, 2780. *Cf.* Spenser, F. Q. ii. 2, 16.

Gestes, *n. pl.* S. guests, 4904.

Gete, *n.* S. to get, obtain, 644; 1 *p. pt. s.* gat (begat), 4191; *pt. s.* gat, 2895; 1 *p. pt. pl.* gete, 4077; *pt. pl.* gaten, 1592; *pp.* geten, 1030; gete, 799.

Gie. *See* Gye.

Gif, *v.* S. to give, 5539;—giif, 1169; 1 *p. pr. s.* giue, 531, gif, 536, 1000; *pt. s.* gaf, 395, 992, 1559; *pt. pl.* goue, 4781; *pp.* giue, 5075. *God gif* (God grant), 2157; *God goue*, 1648; *God gof*, 2348. *See also under* ȝeue.

Ginne, 1 *p. pr. s.* begin, 1929; *pr. pl.* ginneþ, 1185, 2080; *pt. s.* gan, 691, 736; *pt. pl.* gonne, 4009; 1 *p. imp. pl.* ginne, 5104. *Also, as an auxiliary verb; pr. s.* ginnes ride (doth ride), 1189; *pt. s.* gan, 71, 647, 831, &c.; *pt. s. subj.* gun, 290; *pt. pl.* gonne, 1961, 2200, † 292; gun, 1154, 3274; gunne, 1164, 1272, 1530, 1600; gon, 3825.

Ginnes. *See* Gynne.

Gist, *adv.* (?) justly (placed), exactly (set), † 294. *The gloss* iust *seems correct.*

Glade, *v.* S. to gladden, 824, 827; *intr.* to rejoice, 351; *pp.* gladed, 600, 870, 1593. Ch.

Gle, *n.* S. melody, 824.

Glede, *n.* S. a burning coal, † 729. Ch.

Gleming, *pres. part.* looking askance, † 506. See *Glime* in Jamieson.

Glimerand, *pres. pt.* shining, 1427.

Glisiande, *pres. pt.* glistening, shining, † 180, † 534, † 1196;—glisiing, † 698.

Glod, *pt. s.* glided, † 279.

Glosed, *pt. s.* spoke coaxingly, persuaded, 60.

Go we, let us go, *used for* let us, 1184. *Cf.* "gowe dyne, gowe." P. Pl. A. *prol.* 105.

God, *n.* S. goods, riches, possessions, 1731, 3523, 5071.

God, Gode, *adj.* S. good, 1765, &c. "*Used substantively*, 504, 1334, 3777. In the first and last instances *parentage* or *birth* is understood, and *lady* in the second."—M.

Godli, *adv.* S. goodly, well, fairly, 1305, 1450, 1461;—godliche, 1270, 2444, 5031;—godly, 169, 2916;—goddeli, 306.

Godelyche, *adj.* S. goodly, fair, 355.

Godmen, *n. pl.* good men, strong men, 1069.

Gof. *See* Gif.

Gome, *n.* S. a man, 670, 824, 851, † 221, † 252, &c.;—gom, 747, 1007, 1092, &c.;—gum, 4441; *gen. sing.* gomes, 346, 1687; *pl.* gomes, 1169, 1939.

Gon, *v.* S. to go, 4902;—gone, 2600; *pr. s.* goþ, 271, 747, &c.; *pr. pl.* gon, 1687; gan, 811; *imp. pl.* goþ, 263.

Gon, Gonne. *See* Ginne.

Gost, *n.* S. spirit, breath of life, 992, 1559, 2120; a phantom, 1730.

Goue. *See* Gif.

Gradden, *pt. pl.* cried out; *gradden hur griþ*, cried out for peace, made a treaty, † 151. P. Pl. A. ii. 59.

Graith, *adv.* straight, at once, † 863. *Cf.* Greiþ.

Graiþed. *See* Greiþe.

Graithlich. *See* Greiþli.

Grame, *n.* S. anger, wrath, 2200. Ch.

Gras, *n.* S. grass, herb, 644, 799, 1030; *pl.* grases, 27.

Grathly. *See* Greiþli.

Greate, *v.* to greet, † 705.

Grece, *n.* S. grass, 636. *See* Gras.

Grece, *n.* F. a flight of steps, stairs, 811. See Way's note in Prompt. Parv.

Gref, *n.* F. grief, 2473; vexation, anger, 4418;—greefe, † 264; *pl.* greues, 778, 868, 956, &c.

Greefly, *adv.* grievously; *greefly bigo*, grievously beset, † 490, † 994.

Gregoyse, *n. pl.* Greeks, 5104.

Greiþ, *adj.* ready, 5296;—greyt, 2731. [*These seem to be adjectives rather than from* Greiþe.]

Greiþe, *v.* to dress, prepare, make ready, array, 1719, 3558, 4274;

pr. s. graiþes, † 254; *pt. s.* greiþed, 3288; graythed, † 77; *pt. pl.* greiþed, 1931, 3207; *pp.* greiþed, 1945, 3766, 3768; graythed, † 26; graiþed, † 258, 2933; greiȝed (? greiþed) 5002; greyt, 2731; greiþ, 5296 (*but see* Greiþ); 1 *p. imp. pl.* greiþe we us, 2588. O. N. *greiða*. [For *greþand*, 1427, read *greþed*.] *Cf.* A-greþed.

Greiþli, *adv.* readily, quickly, 984, 3492, 4257;—greþli, 998;—graithlich, † 858;—grathliche, † 562;—grathly, † 711.

Grembe, *n.* S. anger, fierceness, 2080, † 221, † 279. "In Isl. *grimd*; see *Gautrek's Saga*, p. 251." —M. *Cf.* Grame.

Grendes, 2 *p. pr. s.* thou grindest, † 510.

Gresli. *See* Grisli.

Grete, *adj.* great; used (in *pl.*) substantively (as at present) for persons of rank, 1107, 1595, 1936; *comp.* gretter, 1859; *sup.* grettest, 928; *miswritten* grettes, 1196.

Grete, *v.* S. to greet, accost, 1430; *pr. s.* gretes, 233; *pt. s.* gret, 1393, 1986; grett, 873, 4532; grette, 369; *pt. pl.* gretten, 1334; grette, † 920; *imp. pl.* gretes, 355; greteþ, 359; *pres. part.* gretand, 3816.

Greteli, *adv.* greatly, 1292;—gretliche, 975, 2444;—gretly, 600;—grettli, 2665;—gretteli, 4872.

Gretyng, *n.* S. salutation, 234.

Greue, *n.* S. a grove, 3634.

Greue, *v.* F. to vex, injure, 689, 2875, 4028; *pr. s.* greues, 530, 608, 889, 899; *pr. pl.* greuen (*sub.* wounds), 1378; *imp. s.* greue, 2793.

Greues. *See* Gref.

Grewes, Greeks, 2080.

Grim, *n.* S. anger, fury, † 904. A.S. *grim*, fury.

Grint, *pt. s.* S. ground, pierced through, 1242, 3443.

Gript, *pt. s.* S. gripped, seized, 744.

Grisli, *adj.* S. formidable, frightful, 1730;—grisiliche, 4343;—grissiliche, 4935;—grislich, † 434;—gresli, 1687.

Griþ, *n.* S. peace, security, 3891, 3899; *gradden hur griþ*, sued for peace, † 151; *graunted him griþ*, granted him peace, 3927.

Grocching. *See* Grucching.

Grom, *n.* S. groom, man, 1767. "Evidently the representative of *gome* and formed from it, as bride-*groom* is from *brid-guma*."—M.

Grot, *n.* groat, 4257. "It may also mean a thing of no value, from S. *greót*, pulvis."—M.

Growen, *pr. pl.* grow, 1812.

Grucche, *v.* F. to murmur, be unwilling; 2 *p. pr. subj.* grutche, 4257; *imp. s.* grucche, 1450; *pt. s.* grucched, 3927; *pres. part.* grocching, 271. Ch.

Grucching, *n.* S. murmuring, 1461, 2687.

Grunt, *pt. pl.* groaned, † 388.

Gryffouns, Greeks, 1961. Cf. *Griffouns* in Halliwell.

Gult, 1 *p. pt. s.* injured, 1172. *See* A-gult.

Gum. *See* Gome.

Gun, Gunne. *See* Ginne.

Gye, *v.* F. to guide, lead, govern, 1105, 2664, † 316, † 328;—gie, † 287. Ch.

Gye, *n.* F. guide, 2727, 2849.

Gyled, *pp.* beguiled, cheated, 689. Ch.

Gynne, *n.* a contrivance, art, † 1135; *pl.* ginnes, † 548, † 644. Ch.

Hache, *n.* S. ache, pain, 905;—hacche, 847; *pl.* haches, 615, 1575;—hacches, 826, 902. "Still pronounced *aitch* in Cheshire. *Vide* Wilbraham's Glossary."—M.

Hacches, *n. pl.* hatches (of a ship), 2770, 2776. Ch.

Hadden, Hadestow. *See* Haue.

Hakernes, *n. pl.* S. acorns, 1811.

Hal, *adj.* all, 323, 371.

Halde, *v.* S. to hold, 1304; *pr. s.* haldes, 905, 932; *pr. pl.* holden, 2711; *pt. pl.* helden, 946; *pp.* holde (bound, beholden), 317; hold, 4722; holde (considered as, esteemed), 2833, 3773, 4158; hold, 1355; *imp. s.* hald, 343; *imp. pl.* haldes, 106.

Half, *n.* side, 3971; *on goddes halue*, on God's side, in God's name, 2803.

Halp. *See* Helpes.

Hampris, *pr. s.* hampers, impedes, troubles, 668; *pp.* hampered, 441; hampred, 4694; *imp. pl.* hampres, 1115. *Cf.* Su.-Goth. *hæmma*, Dan. *hemme*, to *hem* in.

Han. *See* Haue.

Hange, *pp.* hung, 5479. [*Better* hanged. *Cf.* Honget.]

Hap, *n.* chance, fortune, 414, 440, 1794, 1798; — happ, 806; — happe, 32; *pl.* happes, 1815, 1840, 1885, &c.;—vp happe (perhaps), 2722. Icel. *happ*. W. *hap*. Ch.

Happe, *v.* F. to get, receive, light on, 3340. Cf. F. *happer*, to seize.

Happili, *adv.* haply, by chance, 2774, 4130;—happiliche (luckily), 2495.

Hard, *adj. used substantively to denote* danger *or* hardship, 435; — harde, 472, 2339; — as harde as (as fast as), 1082, 1857; cf. 1286.

Hardien, *vb.* to make hard, embolden, 1156.

Hardnesse, *n.* hardship, 1816. Ch.

Harmes, *n. pl.* sorrows, 453.

Harmles, *adj.* unharmed, 1671.

Harneis, *n.* harness, body-armour, horse-trappings, 1582; — harneys, 2349, 4187, 4281. Ch.

Has, *for* As, 1857.

Has, *for* Hast, 606.

Haselnotes, *n. pl.* hazel-nuts, 1811.

Hastely, *adv.* quickly, soon, 58, 233, 1566; — hasteli, 597, 1051; — hastilyche, 2571; *comp.* hastlier (sooner), 4160.

Hastou, Hastow, hast thou. *See* Haue.

Haue, *v.* to have, 72; 1 *p. pr. s.* haue, 519; 2 *p. pr. s.* hastou (hast thou), 1545; hastow, 1005, 1556; has, 606; 3 *p. pr. s.* haþ, 477, &c.; has, 475; 2 *p. pr. pl.* han, 4093; haue, 1030; *pr. pl.* han, 361; 2 *p. pt. s.* hadestow (hadst thou), 1816; *pt. s.* had, 369; *pt. pl.* hadden, 1014; hadde, 1289; *imp. s.* a, 1177; *imp. pl.* haueþ, 3339; 2 *p. pr. s. subj.* haue, 4255.

Hautene, *adj.* F. haughty, proud, 3982; — hauteyn, 472, 529, 707, 729; (loud), 2187.

Hawes, *n. pl.* haws, berries, 1811.

Hed, *pt. pl.* hid, 2848; — hedde, 1793; *pp.* hed, 688.

Heie, *adj.* high, 749; — heiȝ, 103; — heiȝh, 569, 1156; — heye, 252; — hiȝe, 5372; *adv.* hyeȝ, 707; *comp.* herre, 529, 1178; *superl.* heiȝest, 2907. *Heie gates*, highways, 1691; *heiȝ-waye*, 1846. *On heiȝ*, 2020. *Hiez midniȝt*, 2066. *Heiȝe dese*, high daïs, 4011.

Heili, *adv.* highly, greatly, *often joined to the vb.* herie, *as*, heriȝeden heili, 3461;—heriend heiliche, 1584; — heriede hiȝliche, 1798; — to herien heiȝli, 1875; — hilich herie, †703; — heiȝli (earnestly), 5495;—heiȝeliche, 2336;—heiȝeli, 4720.

Heiȝ vs, *vb. refl.* *See* Hiȝe.

Heiȝing, *n.* hurrying, fast travelling, 2440.

Heiȝresse, *n. pl.* S. hairs, i. e. hair-

cloths (by way of penance), 4778. *Cf.* P. Pl. A. v. 48. The spelling *heiȝresse* for *heiȝres* is like that of *bodiesse* for *bodies*, 3767, and *lordesse* for *lordes*, 4539. A.S. *hæra*, a hair-cloth.

Hel, *n.* S. a hill, 2233, 2318; *pl.* helles, 2432.

Held, *n.* S. (*put for* Eld), age, 403.

Helden. *See* Halde.

Hele, *v.* S. to hide, conceal, 960, 4206; 2 *p. s. pr. subj.* hele þou, 945. Ch.

Hele, *v.* S. to heal, 595; *pp.* heled, 1329, 1575.

Hele, *n.* S. health, 597, 1375. Ch.

Helpes, *imp. pl.* S. help ye, 2378; helpeþ, 4409; *pt. s.* halp, 2206; *pp.* holpen, 3611; holpe, 4012, 4149; holp, 4494.

Helplich, *adj.* helpful, † 187.

Hem, *pron. dat.* to them, 169; *acc.* them, *passim.* Hemself (themselves), 812, &c.

Hende, *v.* to end, 540.

Hende, *n.* end, 2333, 4178.

Hende, *adj.* courteous, gentle, 106, 184, 348, 362, † 665, &c.;—hend, 165, 1103. O.N. *hendt*, adapted; Dan. and Sw. *händig*.

Hende, *adv.* at hand, near, 278, 2513.

Hendeli, *adv.* courteously, gently, 1917, 4311; — hendely, 269, 523, † 187, † 248; — hendli, 2469, 3032; — hendly, 2785.

Heng, *pt. s.* hung, 734.

Henne, *adv.* hence, 1746, 2553; hennes, 329. Ch.

Hennes-forþ, henceforth, 1050.

Hent, *v.* S. to take, catch, get, 2394; 1 *p. pr. s.* hent, 414; 2 *p. pr. s.* hentest, 2787; *pr. s.* hentes, † 527; hentis, 907; 1 *p. pt. s.* hent, 615; *pt. s.* hent, 150, 1010, 2754, &c.; *pt. pl.* henten, 4023; hent, 2420. Hentes vp (catches up), 1896; hent vp (caught up), 3948.

Hepus, *n. pl.* hips, berries, 1811.

Her, *conj.* ere, 1516. *See* Er.

Herande, Herend. *See* Erand.

Herberwed, *pp.* harboured, lodged, 1626. Ch.

Herberes, *n. pl.* garden-plots, 1768. *See* P. Pl. Crede, 166.

Herde, *n.* S. host, army, 1120.

Herden, *pt. pl.* heard, 1298.

Here, *pers. pron.* her, 1716, &c.; — hire, 150, &c; — hir, 673, &c.; — hure, 2915. *The spelling* hire *is the commonest;* hure *occurs but once;* here *is used of* the sun, 3073.

Here, Hire, *poss. pron.* her. *See* page 95.

Here, *poss. pron.* their, 14, 73, &c.

Here-bi-fore, heretofore, 3043, 3959.

Herende. *See* Erande.

Heres, 2 *p. imp. pl.* hear ye, 2291, 2624. *Cf.* Herden.

Herien, *v.* S. to praise, 1875; herie, 5208, † 703; *pt. pl.* heriede, 1798; heriȝeden, 3461; *pp.* heriȝed, 4484, 5372; heried, 4577, † 536; *pres. part.* heriend, 1584. Ch. *See* Heili.

Heried, *pt. s.* S. harried, harrowed, 3725. *An allusion to* "The Harrowing of Hell."

Herken, *v.* S. to hearken, 213; 2 *p. imp. pl.* herkenes, 2248, 2617.

Hert, *n.* S. a hart, 2569.

Herted, *pp.* encouraged, 3417.

Herre. *See* Heie.

Hertily, *adv.* heartily, 97, 102;—hertly, 3324.

Herto, *adv.* hitherto, 4656.

Hese, *n.* ease, 1638, 3208.

Hest, *n.* S. command, 468, 495, 2137, 2146, &c.;—heste, † 160. A.S. *hǽs.*

Hete, *v.* S. to bid, tell, 1021 ; 1 *p. pr. s.* hete. 572, 1002, 1626 ; *pt. s.* 1082, 2045, 2089 ; hett, † 543 ; *imp. pl.* hete, 4159. *See also* Hote, Hiȝt.

Hetterly, *adv.* violently, angrily, 150, 886, 1243 ; — hetterli, 2756. *Cf.* A.S. *hǽtol*, hot, furious ; Sw. *hetta*, heat ; O.N. *heitr*, hot, angry. See *Gawayne and the Grene Kniȝt*.

Heue vp, *v.* to heave up, 348.

Hewe, *n.* S. hue, 3502, 3572.

Hewen, *pp.* hewn, 3616.

Hi, they, † 231.

Hiden, *v.* S. to hide, 4697 ;—hude, 2743. *And see* Hed.

Hider, *adv.* hither, 2277.

Hider-to, hitherto, up to the present time, 3510.

Hidous, *adj.* hideous, 3177, 3201, 3218.

Hidus, *n. pl.* hides, 3201.

Hight. *See* Hiȝt.

Him, *referring to* day, 2993.

Hir, Hire. *See* Here.

Hirne, *n.* S. a corner, 3201 ;— hurne, 688. Ch.

Hirt, *pt. s.* hurt, 3607.

His, *put for* Is, 3836.

Hise, *poss. pron. pl.* his, 4115.

Hit, it, 198, 470, &c.

Hiȝe, *v.* S. to hasten, haste, 1082, 1286, 2146, 3454, 4162, 5258 ; heiȝ us, 1746 ; hiȝe hire, 1969 ; hiȝe me, 5196 ; *used as transit. vb.* to make to haste, 1482 ; *pt. s.* hiȝed, 1261, 2177 ; *pt. pl.* hiȝed, 1123 ; hiȝed hem, 1940 ; heiȝden, 2280 ; heȝeden, 2285 ; hieȝeden, 2878 ; hiȝeden, 4546 ; *imp. pl.* hiȝes, 4486 ; hiȝes ȝou, 1187 ; heiȝe ȝou, 1051.

Hiȝt, 1 *p. pr. s.* am called, 70 ; *pt. s.* hiȝt (was called), 2838, 2918 ; hight, † 23, † 34 ; hyght, † 52, † 119, † 133 ; *pt. pl.* hiȝten, 4775 ; *pp.* hote, hoten. *See* Hote. *Cf.* A-hiȝt.

Hiȝt, promised. *See* Hote.

Ho, *pron.* who, 188, 4919 ; *pl.* ho, 2733. Ho-so (whoso), 1286, 4519 ; hoo-so, 2135.

Hok, *n.* S. oak, 1793. *See* Ok.

Hol, *adj.* S. whole, sound, 1056, 1566, 1655, 3522.

Holde, *n.* S. a fortress, place of strength, 2836, † 257 ; — hold (prison), 4573 ; *pl.* holdes, 5472, † 921.

Holde, Holden. *See* Halde.

Holde, *adj.* S. faithful, true, 2833, 3773.

Holle, *adj.* whole, complete, †521.

Holli, *adv.* wholly, 1106 ; — hollich, † 117 ; — holliche, 945, 974 ; — holly, 495, 531, 534, † 327.

Holpe, Holpen. *See* Helpes.

Holw, *adj.* hollow, 1793.

Hom-kome, *n.* home-coming, 807.

Homward, homeward, 2477, 2487.

Hond-werk, *n.* handiwork, creatures, 929.

Honget, *pp.* hung, 2020 ;—honged, 2086.

Hony, *n.* S. honey (as a term of endearment), 1655.

Hope, 1 *p. pr. s.* I believe, think, 1344, 1780 ; *pt. pl.* hopeden, 4308.

Hordere, *n.* order, 4461.

Hors, *n. pl.* horses, 1940, 4187, 4281, 4820. Hors charge (horses' load), 388.

Hote, 1 *p. pr. s.* I tell, 1123, 1384, 4989 ; *imp. s.* hote, 4162 ; 1 *p. pt. s.* hiȝt (promised), 1030 ; *pt. s.* hiȝt (promised), 58 ; het (called), 521 ; *pp.* hoten (called), 405, † 13 ; hote, 3497, † 172, † 364. *See also* Hete, Hiȝt.

Hotend, *pres. part.* hooting, shouting, 2387. See *Hoot* in Wedgwood.

Houȝ, *adv.* how, 4265 ; — hov, 97, 98, 225.

Houes, 723. *See* the note.

Hude, *v.* S. to hide, 2743. *Cf.* Hiden, Hed.

Hue, she, † 34, † 36, † 39.

Hulde, *v.* to flay, take off the covering or hide, 1708; 1 *p. pl. imp.* hulde, 2587. "From the same root proceeds the modern verb *to hull*, to take off the *hull* or husk. It corresponds to the Goth. *and-huljan*, Lu. x. 22. Hence also A.S. *hyldere*, a butcher."—M.

Hules, *pr. s.* fondles, lulls, hushes, 97. See *Hull* in Wedgwood.

Hupes, *n. pl.* hips, † 190.

Hur, her, † 185; (their), † 4, † 65. *See* Here.

Hure, *v.* S. to hear, 3270.

Hurne. *See* Hirne.

Hurtel, *v.* F. to strike together, meet together with a shock, 5013. *See* the note. Ch.

Hyeȝ. *See* Heie.

I-, Y-, a prefix, used (in these poems) chiefly in past participles, where it represents the A.S. *ge-*; or as an abbreviation for *in*, as in *i-fere*, *y-fere*, *i-liue*.

[*The past participles are here collected for convenience.*]

I-armed, armed, † 485.

Ibene, been, † 1023.

I-bent, bent, † 181.

I-bet, bettered, remedied, 4613.

Ibore, born, † 849.

Iborne, born, † 642.

Ichaped. *See* I-schapen.

I-charged, loaded, 2499.

I-cloþed, clothed, 2416.

I-corue, carved, † 569.

I-diȝt, prepared, 3918.

I-fed, fed, 768.

Ifenked, vanquished, † 117.

Igett, begotten (*or, perhaps*, born), † 633.

Igraue, graven, † 830.

Igrett, greeted, worshipped, † 731.

I-herd, heard, † 656.

I-holde, held, † 598.

I-horsed, mounted, 1950.

I-kid, known, renowned, † 453.

Ilaide, laid, † 203.

I-lengþed, lengthened, 1040.

Imaked, made, † 630.

I-painted, painted, † 733.

I-proued, proved, 4661.

I-putt, put, † 845.

I-quelled, killed, 1166.

I-schapen, shaped, 2634; — i-schape, † 191, † 628; — ischaped, † 186; — ishape, † 732.

I-seie, seen, 1874.

I-sett, set, † 339, † 618, † 728.

I-slayne, slain, 3908.

I-told, told, 1493.
[*See also under* Y-.]

Iced, *pt. pl.* issued, 3789. See *Isch* in Jamieson.

Ich, I, 548, 598, 624, &c.

Icham, (*for* Ich am), I am, 594, 1743, 3951.

Ich, each, 332, 510. *See* Eche.

I-fere, together, 2180, 2523, † 340. *See* Infere.

Iknowe, *v.* to know, † 607. [*The only instance of an infinitive preceded by* i-.]

Ilk, *pron.* S. same; *almost always preceded by* þat. *Hence*, þat ilk = that same, that very, 281, 688, 2878; *used absolutely* (that very thing, that very time), 531, 629, 1041, &c. *Also*, þis ilk, 2263; þat ilk selue (that very same), 4106. *Spelt* þat ilke, 1041; þat ilche, † 448. Ch.

I-liue, in life, i. e. alive, 1690.

Imped, set, *lit.* engrafted, † 616.

Incle, *v.* to give an inkling of, to hint, † 616.

In-fere, together, 2984, 3300, 3342. *Cf.* I-fere, Y-fere, Fere.

Inkest, *sup. adj.* darkest, blackest, † 1061. [*The word is a little doubtful.*]

Inne, *n.* an inn, lodging, 1485, 1524, 1574, &c.

Inned, *pt. s.* lodged, 2479; *pp.* 1638. Wycl. Gloss.

I-now, *adv.* enough, 483, 1121; i-nov, 100; i-nouȝ, 714; i-nouȝe, 1673; y-now, 836; y-nouȝ, 118.

Ioly, *adj.* F. jolly, i. e. pleasant, pretty, 3479.

Ioyned, *pp.* adjoined, adjoining, 751.

Irn, *adj.* iron, 3232. *Cf.* Yren.

Is, *put for* His, 8, 69, 181, &c. *Both spellings occur in* l. 4369.

It-selue, itself, 3116.

Iuste, *v.* to joust, 1237. P. Pl.

Iustislich, *adv.* justly, exactly, closely, 1724; — iustili, 2596; — iustly, 751.

Iurnes, *n. pl.* journeys, 4286.

I-wisse, *adv.* verily, truly, 697, 739, 960, &c.; — i-wis, 3397. *See* Y-wisse. Ch.

[*For some words beginning with* ka, ko, ku, *see under* C.]

Kairus, go ye, † 623. *See* Caire.

Kan. *See* Can.

Kares, *imp. pl.* be ye sad, be anxious, † 563. *Cf.* Carestow.

Karp, Karpes. *See* Carpen.

Kast, *sb.* design, † 146. Ch.

Kastyng, *sb.* casting, 942.

Kauȝt. *See* Cacche.

Kaysers, *n. pl.* Cæsars, emperors, 483.

Kechene. *See* Kichen.

Ked, *adj.* renowned, famous, † 556. *See* Kid. [In P. Pl. A. xi. 56, MS. U has *kedde* where MS. T has *kid.*]

Kempe, *n.* S. knight, champion, 4029; — kemp, 3746; *pl.* kempes, 3352. A.S. *cempa.* Icel. *kempa.*

Ken, *n.* kindred. *See* Kin.

Ken, *n. pl.* kine. *See* Kin.

Kende. *See* Kenne, *v. intr.*

Kende, *adj.* natural. *See* Kinde.

Kendely. *See* Kindeli.

Kene, *adj.* keen, eager (*said of* thought), 616; (cold), 908; (kisses), 1011; (knights), 1205.

Keneli, *adv.* sharply, eagerly, shrilly, 4843; — kenely, 152, 859; — kenly, 37, 2174; — kenliche, 2532.

Kenne, *v. tr.* to inform, shew, instruct, charge, 1665; *pt. s.* kenned, 2212, 5205; *pt. pl.* kenned, 343; *imp. pl.* kennes, 591. "Kenne, or teche. *Doceo.*" Prompt. Parv.

Kenne, *v. intr.* to know, † 623; *pt. s.* kende, † 193; *pt. pl.* kende, † 367. Ch. "Kennyn, or knowyn. *Agnosco.*" Prompt. Parv.

Kepen, *v.* S. to keep, take care of, 8; — kepe, 66, 123; 1 *p. s. pr.* kepe = I care, intend, wish, 993; kepe = I tend, 244; kepe = I regard, desire, 4738; *pt. s.* keped, 171; *pt. pl.* keped, 187; kepten, 3645; *pp.* kepud, 5; ceput, 4094.

Kerneles, *n. pl.* battlements, 2858; — cournales, † 295. Ch. Rom. Rose, 4195. P. Pl. A. vi. 78. O. F. *crenelx.*

Kesse, *v.* S. to kiss, 5045; *pt. s.* kest, 63, 1265, 1570, 3205; keste, 1587, 1613, 4015; kessed, 1833; kessede, 4239; kust, 675; *pt. pl.* keste, 3100; kest, 2424; *pp.* kest, 859; *pres. part.* kessing, 1396. Ch.

Kessing, *n.* kissing, 1053, 3076,

3474; —kesseng, 3659. [*Always joined with* clipping.]

Kete, *adj.* bold, fierce (?), *or* quick, smart (?), 330, 3793. A rare word, of which the following are instances. We find, "in a poem of the 13th century:—

Pikede beth the shete,
And wormes ther beth *kete*
To don the soule tene.
Sawe of Seint Bede, MS. Digby 86, f. 127 *b*."—M.

We also find mention of "a king *kete*," Rel. Ant. ii. 9; and the beams of the sun are called "*kete*," in Wright's Popular Treatises on Science, p. 138, l. 262 of the English fragment. Cf. also "Clerkes and *kete* men," P. Pl. A. xi. 56, where *kid* and *kedde* are other readings. "In our text, the most obvious etymology seems to be the Teut. *kut*, Belg. *kuyt*, audax, ferox."—M. Coleridge suggested O. N. *katr*, glad; and the Sw. *katighed*, boldness, may also be worth considering. Or again, as we find the forms *moulder* and *smoulder*, *knap* and *snap*, we may connect it with the O. E. *skeet*, O. N. *skjóttr*, sharp, quick, which is connected with *to shoot* and *to skate*. This would give the sense *sharp*, *quick*, or *smart*, which seems not inappropriate. *See* Ketli.

Ketli, *adv.* quickly, smartly (?), 3023; —ketly, 1986, 2105. *See* Kete.

Keþþe. *See* Kiþen.

Keuer, *v. tr.* F. to make to recover, to heal, 635; — keuere, 1521; — kuuere, to attain to, 128; —keueren him gate = to procure *or* make for himself a passage, †904; *pt. s.* cuuerede (recovered), 2824; *pt. pl.* keuered hem = obtained for themselves, †235; *also* (2) keuer, *v. intr.* to recover, become whole, 1488; *pt. s.* keuered, made good his retreat, retreated, 3625; *pt. pl.* keuered, 3647; *cf.* vp-kcuerede, 2759; *pp.* keuered, procured, made ready (*unless it means* covered), 4450. [Connected with F. *recouvrer*, Lat. *recuperare*.]

Keuered, *pt. s.* covered, 3034; *pp.* keuered (*unless it is from the preceding*), 4450. [Connected with F. *couvrir*, Lat. *cooperire*.] *See* Kuuere.

Kichen, *n.* kitchen, 2171; — kychene, 1707; — kechene, 1681.

Kid, *pt. t.* and *pp. of* Kiþen, q. v. *Also, as adj.* renowned, famous, far-known, †11, †172, †310, †597; — kud, 51, 111, 114, 501, 512, 713, &c.; ked, †556; *sup.* kuddest, 631, 3047, 4231; *in the first of which it simply means* best. "It is very evident, that the *adj.* and *pp.* of kiþe are one and the same word."—M.

Kin, *n.* S. kindred, 584; — ken, 513, 722; — kun, 110.

Kin, *n. pl.* kine, 480, 503; — ken, 6; — kyn, 244.

Kinde, *adj.* natural, related, *spoken of* that which is conferred by kindred or acquired by birth, 128, 3138, 3474, 4098; — kynde, 241; — kende, 513; — kyn, 364.

Kinde, *n.* S. nature, kindred, birth, 107, 109, 821, 3136; — kynde, 1445, 2506; bi kinde = by birth, 1425; bi kynde, 507.

Kindeli, *adv.* by nature, kindly, in an accustomed manner, 1265, 1570; — kindely, 111, 522; — kindliche, 1697; — kindeliche, 1613; — kyndely, 14; — kyndeliche, 1396; — kendeli, 4867; — kendely, 1110.

Kinghod, *n.* S. kingly office, 4059.

King-riche, *n.* S. kingdom, 2127.

Kinhed, *n.* S. kindness, such as one relation shews to another, 4514.

Kinnesman, *n.* S. kinsman, 365. [Probably an error for *Thomasin*; see note.]

Kinrade, *n.* S. kindred, 522.

Kiþ, *n.* S. country, 4254, 4511, †241, †298; — kith, †48, †65, †591.

Kiþen, *v.* S. to cause to know, to make known, shew, declare, †162; — kiþe, 1184, 2126, 2986, 4086, †286; — kithe, †655; — kuþe, 1680; — keþþe, 4964; 2 *p. s. pr.* kuþest, 603; kiþes, 4515, †509; *pr s.* kiþes, †298, †529; kithes, †716, †783; *pt. s.* kudde, 231; kid, †222, †842; *pt. pl.* kidden, 2301, 4526; kudden, 1223; kiþed, 5287; kuþþed, 1011; *imp. s.* kiþe, 626; *pp.* kid, †169; kyd, 321, A.S. *cyðan.* [In l. 2301, kidden = shewed how to *rather than* knew how to.]

Kleped. *See* Clepe.

Knaue, *n.* S. a boy, 2394. Ch.

Knightweede, *n.* S. knight's clothing, armour, †544.

Knoulecheden, *pt. pl.* acknowledged, 4782.

Knowen, *v.* S. to know, 577; 2 *p. s. pr.* knowes, 1174; knowestow (knowest thou), 5365; 2 *p. pl. pr.* knowen, 594; 2 *p. s. pt.* knew, 3182; *pt. pl.* kneu, 2209; *pp.* knowe, 726. Ch.

Kolieres, *n. pl.* colliers, 2523; —choliers, 2520.

Komaundment, *n.* commandment, 1084.

Kome. *See* Com.

Konichauns, *n.* F. cognisance, badge, 3569. P. Pl. Crede, 185.

Konyng. *See* Conyng.

Kontre, Kontrey. *See* Cuntre.

Koraious. *See* Coraious.

Kortesie, *n.* F. courtesy, 3926; —kurteysie, 501.

Kortesliche. *See* Curtesliche.

Kosses, *n. pl.* kisses, 1011.

Kouchid him, laid him down, 2240.

Koueyne. *See* Couyne.

Koure, *v.* to cower, crouch down, kneel, †558. *See* Couren.

Kowden. *See* Can.

Krepe of, creep out of, 3084. *See* Crep.

Kud. *See* Kid, Kiþen.

Kun. *See* Kin.

Kunne. *See* Can.

Kuntenaunce. *See* Contenaunce.

Kunteyned, *pt. s.* demeaned himself, 3301. *See* Contenaunce.

Kurteyslyche. *See* Curtesliche.

Kust. *See* Kesse.

Kuþe, Kuþest, Kuþþed. *See* Kiþen.

Kuþþes, *n. pl.* S. manners, habits, 331.

Kuuere, (1) *v.* F. to cover, 1037; *pt. s. and pp.* keucred, q. v.

Kuuere, (2) *v.* F. to attain to, succeed, 128. *See* Keuer.

Kyrke, *n.* church, 4086.

Lac, *v.* S. to lack, be without, 453. [Sir F. Madden suggests to read *lat*, dismiss: I think *lac* may stand.]

Laced, *pt. s.* laced up, 1736.

Lachen, *v.* S. to catch, receive, take, acquire, embrace, †4, †199; lache, †123, †214; *pr. s.* lacchis, 4525; *imp. s.* lacche, 666; *pt. s.* lauȝt, 1234, 2237, 4708; lauȝt lond (landed), 2761; laught leue (took leave), †250; lauȝt vp (caught up), 2308; lauȝt out (drew out), 1244; *pt. pl.* lauȝten leue, 5413; lauȝt leue, 5087, 5201; lachte (they embraced, greeted, i.e. the Phocians and their allies), †427; *pp.* lauȝt, 671; lauht, †161. A.S. *læccan, gelæccan,* whence E. *c-latch.*

Ladde, *pt. s.* led, 1609, 2618; *pt. pl.* ladden, 1226, †20; ladde, 4292; lad, 459; ledden (governed), 5463.

Lafte. *See* Leue (2).

Laike. *See* Layk.

Lang, long, 4130.

Langes. *See* Long.

Langour, *n.* F. languishing, faintness, pain, 918, 986, † 245; — langor, 869; — langure, 737; *pl.* langoures, 1034. Ch.

Langured, *pp.* F. pined, languished, 983.

Lappen, *v.* S. to lap, wrap, 1712; lappe, 2576; *pt. s.* lapped, 1908; *pp.* lapped, 740, 2153, 2246.

Laske, *v.* F. to relax, slacken; *hence*, to shorten, 570; lask it (= lask it, relax it, assuage it), 950. *Cf.* O. F. *lascher;* Sc. *lasche* (lazy); E. *lax, slack;* Sw. *läska-dryck* (cooling-draught); Sw. *sloka*, to droop, &c. *Cf.* Lask, *sb.* in Halliwell.

Lasse, *adj. comp.* less, 1079, 1490, 2414, &c. Ch.

Last, *conj.* lest, 641, 953, 2971.

Last, *pp.* lasted, endured, 1281; *pres. part.* lastend (enduring, strong), 1736.

Late, *v.* S. to let, permit, 2680; 2 *p. s. imp.* late, 2336, 2355; 3 *p. s. pr. subj.* late, 2581; 2 *p. pl. pr. subj.* late, 985; — late me worþ, 2355, 3597; *cf.* † 1186. *See* Lete.

Lauȝeden, *pt. pl.* laughed, 1784.

Lauȝt. *See* Lachen.

Launced, *pt. s.* launched, i. e. leapt, 2755. *Cf.* F. *se lancer*, and see *Lans* in Jamieson.

Launde, *n.* a lawn, or open space in a wood, † 520, † 710. Ch.

Layk, *sb.* a "lark," a game, play, 678, 1784; — laike, 3110. Sw. *lek.*

Layke, *v.* to play, 1021; *pt. s.* layked, 1026; layked him, 31, 1411; *pt. pl.* laykeden, 3110; *pres. part.* layking, 699.

Layne, *v.* to conceal, act falsely, 906, 918, 1309. O. N. *leyna.*

Leame. *See* Leme.

Lebard, *n.* F. leopard, 2935; — lybard, 2896; *pl.* lebardes, 2874.

Leche, *n.* S. a physician, 576, 1032; *pl.* leches, 1328. Ch.

Ledden. *See* Ladde.

Ledes. *See* Lud.

Lederes, *gen. sing.* leader's, provost's, 2303.

Leef, Leefe, *adj.* *See* Leue.

Leef, leave we, 1836. *See* Leue.

Leese, Leeue. *See* Lese, Leue.

Lef, *adj.* lief, dear, 1879, 4372; (glad), 517; *as sb.* (dear one, the dear one), 2314, 1645; lef þinkes (seems dear, i. e. pleases), 384; *cf.* leefe thought (pleased), † 60; — leefe, † 774; — leef, 1839; — leue, 341, 666, 887, 1183, † 847; — leeue, † 226; *sup.* leuest, 3213. Ch.

Leflich, *adj.* trustful, † 427; — leeflich (trusty), † 139. A. S. *leóflíc*, lovely, faithful. *Cf.* Leue.

Lege, *adj.* F. liege, 1174, 2663, 3004.

Legge, *v.* S. to lay, 3234; *pp.* leide, 1448. Ch.

Leie, *pt. pl.* *See* Ligge.

Lel, *adj.* F. loyal, leal, true, just, 5119; *pl.* lele, 1312, 4158; *sup.* lellest, 4809.

Lelen, *v.* to make leal, sanction, authorize, 5284.

Lelli, *adv.* F. loyally, leally, truly, 687, 1281, 1807; — lelly, 985, 989; — lelliche, 117, 999; — lellyche, 357; — lelich, † 64; *sup.* leliest, 592. [*It occurs more than* 30 *times.*]

Leme, *n.* a limb, 1736.

Leme, *n.* gleam, light, † 774; — leame, † 1078. Ch.

Lemman, *n.* S. (lief-man), love, sweetheart, 663, 666, 695, 717, &c. [*Used of both sexes.*] Ch.

Lende, *v.* to tarry, stay, 1466. See *Leind* in Jamieson. *Cf.* Lengen.

Lene, 3 *p. s. imp.* grant, impart, give, bestow, afford, 327; 2 *p. s. imp.* 4398; *pt. s.* lente, 1233; lent, 885; *pt. pl.* lent, 22; *pp.* lend, 4578. Ch.

Lengen, *v.* S. to tarry, stay, remain long, dwell, † 44; lenge, 5421, 5538; leng, † 455, † 758; *pr. s.* lenges, 843, 5536; lengeþ, 2070; 2 *p. pl. pr.* lengen, † 1; *pt. s.* lenged, 2842; *pt. pl.* lenged, 2205, 5408, 5462; *pp.* (beþ) lenged, 1457; (is) lengged, † 196. A.S. *lengian*, to prolong. [*In* l. 2680, *the* MS. *can be read* lengþe *or* lengye; *read* lengye, *another form of the infinitive.*]

Lenger, longer, 633, 1113, &c. Ch.

Lengþe, *v.* S. to lengthen, 957; *miswritten* lengeþ, 1944; *imp. pl.* lengþes, 4348; lengþeþ, 4353; *pp.* lengþed, 1351, 1549; *miswritten* lengeþd *or* lengeyd, 2345.

Lep, *pt. s* leapt, 702, 2756.

Lere, *n.* S. countenance, features, 227. A.S. *hleor.* P. Pl.

Leren, *v.* S. to teach, 4770; 1 *p. pr.* lere, † 325; *pt. s.* lerde, 341; *pp.* lered (taught, learned), † 603, † 1152. A.S. *lǽran.*

Lere, *v.* S. to learn, 119. Ch.

Lese, *n.* S. a pasture, 175, 3138, 3141. See *Lease, Leasow*, in Halliwell; *cf.* A.S. *lǽsu.* It is not the plural of *lea.*

Lese, *v.* S. to lose, 1258, 1484, 1645, † 280; leese, † 378; *pr. pl.* lesen, † 126; *imp. s.* les, 988; *imp. pl.* leses, 3369; *pt. s.* les, 887, 1234. Ch.

Lesed, *pp.* *See* Lissen.

Lesten, *v.* to listen to, 31; 1 *p. imp. pl.* lesten, 3528; 2 *p. imp. pl.* lestenes, 1183, 3329; listenes, 170, 1929; lusteneþ, 384; lesteneþ, 4607; lesten, 1439. Ch.

Lestes. *See* Listes.

Lesteþ, *pr. s.* lasts, 5538.

Leten, *v.* to forego, let go, leave, forsake, 2184; 1 *p. s. pr.* lete, 382, 5465; *pt. s.* let (liȝtere of, i. e. thought the less of), 2119; 1 *p. pl. imp.* let, 3528; *imp. pl.* lettes, 1186; 3 *p. pr. subj.* lette, 4144; *pp.* lete (left), † 563. *As a simple auxiliary vb. it is spelt* late, q. v. *It is common with infinitives in the sense* to cause; *as*, he let sende, 2145; lete wite, 2171; let make, 5532. *See* Do. - *For the phrase*, lete him worþe, † 1186, *see note to* "Werwolf," 3597.

Leþerly, *adv.* wickedly, evilly, 1231; — luþerli, 2646, 3151; — luþerly, 2334, 2775. *See* Liþer.

Letrure, *n.* F. letters, reading, † 1152. Ch.

Lette, *n.* S. stay, hindrance, 1340, 2685, 4751. Ch.

Lette, *v.* S. to prevent, hinder, 1253, 3552, 4258; — lett, 2971, † 149. *Cf.* Late, Lete. [*It is worth noting that this verb, in the sense* to permit, *is usually spelt* late; *in the sense* to forego, *it is* lete; *in the sense* to prevent, *it is* lette.] *Cf.* A.S. *lætan, lettan.*

Lettered, *pp.* learned, instructed, 4088.

Letteres, *n. pl.* (*in sing. signification*), a letter, 4842, 4844.

Leue, *v.* S. to believe, 708, 4175; 1 *p. s. pr.* leue, 497, 1032, 4105; leeue, † 639; 2 *p. s. pr.* leuestow (believest thou), 2358; *imp. s.* leue, 1553; *imp. pl.* leue, 1351, 2071; leueth, 5068. Ch.

Leue, *v.* S. to leave, 2358; *pt. s.* lafte, 1858; *pp.* leued, 83; 1 *p. pl. imp.* leef, 1836; 2 *p. pl. imp.* leues, 1806. *In neuter sense*, to remain, dwell, *pt. pl.* left, 1588; *cf.* Leuis.

Leue, *adj.* dear. *See* Lef.

Leued, *pp.* leaved, covered with leaves, 22, 757.

Leuer, *comp. adv.* liefer, rather, 453, 546, 855, 918, &c. *Cf.* Lef. Ch.

Leuere. *See* Liuere.

Leuis, *pr. s.* lives, dwells, 525 ; *cf.* left *in* l. 1588. *See* Liuen.

Leute, *n.* F. loyalty, fealty, 4838. Ch.

Leye, *v.* S. to lay ; "leye mi lif," 2169 ; *pr. s.* leyes on (lays on), 1208.

Liand, Ligand. *See* Ligge.

Libbing. *See* Liuen.

Liche, *adj.* like, 3678, 3698, † 767.

Liche, *n.* S. body, † 195.

Lidene, *n.* S. speech, † 782 ; — ludene, † 601. A.S. *lyden.* Ch.

Lift, *adj.* left (arm), 2961, 5499.

Ligge, *v.* to lie, dwell, 2194, 3062, † 689 ; lygge, † 1158 ; *pr. s.* ligges, 166 ; lis, 965 ; *pr. pl.* lyen, 2266 ; *pt. pl.* leie, 4307 ; *part. pres.* liand, 2180 ; ligand, 2246. Ch.

Liif, *n.* life, 957, 961, 994.

Liken, *v.* like, 2 *p. pl. pr.* 5529 ; lyken, 162 ; *as impers. vb.* (= pleases), likes me wel, 450 ; likes þe, 957, 1727 ; likes ȝou dere, 1050 ; *pt.* liked him, 28, 678 ; liked hire, 2032 ; *pres. part.* likand (pleasing), † 192 ; *pp.* lyked, 1012. Ch.

Liking, *n.* S. pleasure, 452, 2023 ; —likyng, 869, 1021. Ch.

Lime, *n.* S. limb, † 1121. Ch.

Lisse, *n.* S. comfort, happiness, 631, 2828, 5228. A.S. *liss.* Dan. *lise.* Ch.

Lissen, *v.* to loosen, assuage, mitigate, heal, 848 ; — lisse, 631 ; *pp.* lissed, 869 ; lesed, 1577. A.S. *lysan.*

List, *v. impers. pt. s.* it pleases, † 658 ; *pt. s.* lust, 1907 ; list, 2600. A.S. *lystan.*

Listenes. *See* Lesten.

Listes, *n. pl.* lists (*in the phrase*, lists of love), 740, 1057 ; — lestes, 946.

Listli, *adv.* S. slily, 2742 ; — listly, 2355 ; — listely, 25. A.S. *listlice*, artfully.

Litel and litel, 950.

Liþ, *n.* S. a joint, 1724. [*It also means* a limb. Ch.]

Liþer, *adj.* S. wicked, evil, bad, 2169 ; — luþer, 5240. A.S. *lyðer.* Ch.

Liuen, *v.* to live, 5394 ; *pr. s.* leuis, 525 ; *pt. pl.* liueden, 4802, 5508 ; *pres. part.* liuande, 3678 ; liuand, 1690 ; libbing, † 790.

Liuere, *n.* F. delivery (of blows), 3822 ;—leuere, 1233.

Liȝt, *v.* S. to lighten, gladden, 10. Ch.

Liȝtere, *comp. adv.* lighter, less, 2119 ; — liȝttere, *adj.* (nimbler, lighter), 154.

Liȝteli, *adv.* lightly, 702 ; — liȝtly, 1244 ; — liȝtli, 1973 ; *comp.* liȝtliere, 1894.

Lo, lo ! 731 ; — loo, 1208.

Lof, *n.* S. love, 430.

Loged, *pp.* F. lodged, 1918.

Loke, *v.* S. to keep, guard, take care of, 1757, 3166, 4770 ; *imp. s.* loke, 430.

Lome, *adv.* frequently, often, † 321 ; — ilome, † 521. A.S. *gelóme.*

Londe, *n.* S. land, 2763 ; — lond, 2761 ; *pl.* londes, 1175, 3055. Ch.

Long, *v.* S. to belong, † 547 ; *pr. s.* longeþ, 143 ; longes, 360 ; langes, 331 ; *pt. s.* longed, 73, 1147 ; longet, 2719 ; *pt. pl.* longede, 2766 ; *pres. part.* longyng, † 635.

Loos. *See* Los.

Lorchipe (*read* lordchipe), *n.* S. lordship, 3680 ;—lorldschip, 3955. [*Cf.* Lorld, Lorlde (*for* Lord), 3404, 3405.] Lordship = lords, † 335.

Lordesse, *n. pl.* lords, 4539. *Cf.* Heiȝresse.

Lordinges, *n. pl.* lords, 1183, 1206, 3004.

Lore, *n.* S. lore, learning, teaching, advice, 328, 346, 2070, 2917. Ch.

Lore, *pp.* lost, 1360, 1556, 2584; —lorn, 668;—lorne, 4396. Ch.

Lorel, *n.* F. laurel, 2983.

Lorked, *pt. s.* lurked, slunk along, 25; *pres. part.* lorkinde, 2213.

Los, *n.* F. praise, 1386, 5132; — loos, 1448, 3973; — loose, † 4. Lat. *laus*. Ch.

Losengeres, *n.* F. flatterers, 5482. Ch.

Loþ, *adj.* S. loath; him loþ þouȝt (= it seemed loath to him), 1255; hem loþ were, 5201. Ch.

Loþed, *pt. pl.* loathed, † 335.

Loþli, *adj.* S. loathly, 50; — loðelike, † 99. Ch.

Loueliche, *adj.* S. lovely, 965; *adv.* in a lovely manner, excellently, 975, 1315.

Louen, 2 *p. pl. pr.* love, 162.

Lourand, *pres. part.* louring, 2119. Du. *loeren*. P. Pl.

Louwe (hire), *v.* S. to lower herself, condescend, 708; *pt. s.* lowed, 695.

Louȝte, *v.* S. to bow, make obeisance, submit, 2900; *pt. s.* louted, 3485; *pt. pl.* louted, 3464. A.S. *hlútan*. *Cf.* A-louted. Ch.

Lowed. *See* Louwe.

Lud, *n.* S. a man, 452, 535, 1001, † 231, &c.; — lude, † 588; — lued, † 44; *pl.* ludes, 390, 525, † 331; ledes, 195, 1233. Londes and *ledes*, 4001; londes and *leedes* (where the MS. has *leethes*, with a *d*, or a ð, above it), † 12. On this difficult phrase see Sir F. Madden's reply to Mr Singer's remarks on Havelok. Cf. also Wedgwood on *Lease*, *Leet*. It seems to mean "lands and *leases*," or "lands and tenements," as Robert of Brunne uses it frequently to mean *tenements*, *rents*, or *fees*. The older form of the word is *lethe* or *lithe*, and it may, after all, not be connected in any way with *ledes*, the plural of *lud*. In l. † 12, we surely ought to read *leeðes* or *leðes*.

Lufsum, *adj.* S. lovesome, lovable, † 176.

Lust. *See* List.

Lusteneth. *See* Lesten.

Luþerli. *See* Leþerly.

Lybard. *See* Lebard.

Lykame, *n.* S. body, 227. P. Pl.

Lyked. *See* Liken.

Lyst, *n.* S. desire, inclination, † 794. Ch.

Lysted, *pt. s.* desired, † 776. *Cf.* List.

Lyte, *adv.* S. little, † 323.

Maat. *See* Mat.

Maister, *n.* F. master, 2735, † 682; *pl.* maistres, 2744.

Maistres, *n.* F. mistress, 1016.

Maistrie, *n.* F. mastery, victory, † 170; — maistry, 3341; — maistrye, 3137. Ch.

Make, *n.* S. mate, companion, 1898, 2498, † 249, † 843, &c.; *pl.* makes, 1757. Ch.

Makeles, *adj.* matchless, † 799.

Makes, *imp. pl.* make ye, 4933; *pp.* maked, 1951, 4131, 4933; mad, 4876; *pres. part.* makende, 2985.

Malencoli, *n.* F. anger, 4362.

Malskrid, *pt. s.* wandered, 416. Probably with the sense of *bewilderment*; cf. *Maskede* in Halliwell, *Mask* in Coleridge's Glossarial Index, and *masquer* in Burguy. *Malskred* seems = bewildered, *Allit. Poems*, ed. Morris. C. 255.

Manchipe, *n.* S. manhood, courage, 3337;—manchip, 2676.

Maner, *n.* manner, kind (*used without* of *following*), 698, 1155, 3278.

Manerli, *adv.* in a mannerly way, 5008.

Manhede, *n.* S. manhood, 431; — man-hede, 4390; — manhed, 197. Ch.

Mankynne, *n.* S. mankind, 143.

Manly, *adv.* S. manly, *hence*, fittingly, suitably, 1042, 2040; — manli, 2690, 3341; — manliche, 2325, 3253; — manlich, † 375. "This adverb is often used as a mere expletive, merely to fill up the alliteration, as *manly hem meked*, 1276."—M.

Manly, *adj.* S. manly, 1424; *sup.* manlokest, 3419.

Manquellere, *n.* S. mankiller, murderer, 993.

Marche, *n.* S. boundary, limit of territory, territory, † 312, † 1031; *pl.* marches, 2214, † 14, † 137; *no doubt* marques *is written for, or is equivalent to*, marches, † 173; cf. † 14.

Mark, *v.* F. to inflict by way of reprisal, † 497; — merken, † 284; *pt. s.* marked, † 932. O. F. "*marquer*, user de représailles." Roq. *Cf. the phrase*, letters of *marque*.

Marques. *See* Marche.

Marres, *pr. s.* mars, harms, 1171; *pp.* marred (bitterly vexed, maddened with chagrin), 438, 664, 884, 995, † 1041.

Marring, *n.* a harming, injuring, 4362.

Mase, 1 *p. pr. s.* am confounded, am at a loss, 438; *pp.* mased (stupefied), 884. *Cf.* A-mased.

Massager, *n.* F. a messenger, 4156; —messanger, 4204; *pl.* massegeres, 4251; — messageres, 1441; — messageris, 1382; — messagers, 1465; — messangers, 1330; — messangeres, 1143.

Mat, *adj.* F. dejected, faint, almost dead, 2441;—maat, 1776. Du. *mat.* Fr. *mat.* G. *matt. Cf.* Span. *matar*, to kill. Ch.

Maugre, *n.* F. ill-will, spite, harm, † 932; *used as an adv.* in spite of, † 101, † 680; — mawgrey, 3745. F. *mal grè*. Ch.

May, *n.* S. maiden, 659. Mœso-Goth. *mawi*. Ch.

Mayne, *n.* S. a company, host of attendants, 416; — meyne, 184, 202, 1199, 1573. G. *menge*. Mœso-Goth. *managei*.

Mayntene, *v.* F. to maintain, 2698; — meintene, 3002; — meyntene, 3642; *imp. pl.* meyntenes, 2676. [*Miswritten* meynte, 1098.]

Mechef. *See* Meschef.

Mede, *n.* S. reward, 2135, 4726, 5355; to mede (= by way of return, by way of security), 2341; to medis (= by way of requital on *my* part), 3253. P. Pl. Ch.

Mede, *adj.* meet, fitting, 604. *Cf.* A.S. *médeme*.

Meded, *pt. s.* bribed, 4646.

Medle, *v.* F. to mingle (in fight), † 93; *pt. s.* medled him (was busy), 2492, † 170; medled, 2325; *pp.* medled (meddled), † 964. Ch. [*It occurs also in the shorter form* mele (2) q. v.]

Meken, *v.* to humble oneself, to submit, 2118; — meke him, 2104, 3928; 1 *p. s. pr.* meke me, 665; *pt. pl.* meked hem, 1276; *imp. s.* meke, 3919; *imp. pl.* mekes (quiet, silence), 4604.

Mekeli, *adv.* S. meekly, 642, 659, 1480; — mekkeli, 4456; — mekliche, 408; — mekeliche, 808.

Mele (1), *v.* S. to talk, speak, discuss, 621, 4009; 2 *p. pl. pr.* mele, 1342; *pt. s.* meled, 4684, 5204; *pt. pl.* meleden (twittered), 821. A.S. *mǽlan*, to speak, converse. [*Observe the distinction between this word and the next.*]

Mele (2), *v.* F. to mingle in fight, to fight, 3325; *pt. s.* meled (assembled), 1287; melled hire (busied herself), 1709, 1719. O.F. *mesler*, to meddle, mingle, mell. [*This verb is a shortened form of* medle, q. v.]

Meling, *n.* S. conversation, 760. *See* Mele (1).

Meling, *n.* mingling, 5257; *hence*, meling-while (hour of combat), 3858. *See* Mele (2).

Menden, *v.* F. to mend, 647; *imp. pl.* mendes, 845.

Mene, *v.* S. to mean, intend, signify, tell, 4808; 1 *p. s. pt.* mente, 560; mennede, 1925; *pt. s.* ment, 641; *pt. pl.* mened, 4845; *pp.* ment (intended, designed), 1819. A.S. *mænan*. Ch.

Mene, *v.* S. to bemoan oneself, mourn, 493; *pt. s.* mened, 940; *pp.* mened, 561, 1490. A.S. *ménan*.

Menge, *v.* S. to tell, speak, mention, 1422; — mengge, 449; — meng, 613; — minge, 1624, 1925, 1937, 4327, 5032, &c.; — munge, 831, 1441, 1635, 2616, 2735, 4767; — myng, 1404; *pr. s.* minges, 1067, † 839; 2 *p. pl. pr.* mingeþ, 1876; 1 *p. s. pt.* munged, 4863; *pt. s.* munged, 833; *pt. pl.* munged, 2999; minged, 3711; mynged, 1335; *pp.* munged, 4847; minged, 2844; 1 *p. pl. imp.* munge, 3097; menge, 794; myng, † 45. A.S. *myngian*.

Mennes, *gen. pl.* men's, 6; — mennis, 480.

Mensk, *n.* S. honour, worship (*lit.* humanity), 1257, 2028, 3900, 5527; — menske, 313, 2050. Cf. *P. Pl. Crede*, 81. O.S. *menniski*.

Mensk, *v.* to honour, 4815; — menske, 4834; *pp.* menskked, 5132.

Menskful, *adj.* honourable, worshipful, 202, 242, 405, 431, 508, &c.; — menskfull, † 555; *sup.* menskfulles[t], 1435.

Menskfully, *adv.* honourably, worshipfully, 1142; — menskfulli, 4992, 5048.

Menskliche, *adv.* honourably, with worship, † 173. *Cf. the preceding.*

Menstracie, *n.* F. minstrelsy, 1155, 1619, 3812; — menstracye, 1951; — minstracie, 5011.

Merciabul, *adj.* F. merciful, 4406, 5131; — merciabule, 5146; — mercyabul, 5118.

Merie, *adj.* S. *pl.* 1148, 1880; — merye, 821; — mirie, 1905, † 821; — murie, 2853; — muri (houndes), 2192; *sup.* muriest, 4926.

Merken. *See* Mark.

Merþe, *n.* S. mirth, 823, 2017; —murþe, 1634.

Meschef, *n.* F. mischief, misfortune, sorrow, 1044, 1247, 1362, 3096; — mechef, 5131.

Mest, *sup. adj.* most, chief, 2735; *adv.* chiefly, above all, 1433, 4729.

Mesurabul, *adj.* F. moderate, 333. P. Pl.

Mete, *v.* S. to meet, 815; *imp. pl.* meteþ, 3338.

Mete, *v.* S. to dream, 658, 862; *pt. s.* mette, 2869; mett, † 726, † 1142; met, † 821; *used reflexively*, hire mette, 2920, 5497. Ch.

Meting, *n.* S. a dream, 900; — metyng, 698, 706, 716, 733, † 839, &c. Ch.

Meued, *pt. s.* moved, 4285; — meeued, † 204; *pt. pl.* meuede, 4330. Ch.

Meuwe, *n.* F. a mew, i. e. a cage, prison, 3336. Ch.

Miche, *adj.* S. great, much, 117, 1362, 3555; — mich, † 600, † 932; — moch, 313; — moche, 202, 891, 1073; — muche, 2374. *Cf.* Mo.

Michel, *adv.* S. greatly, very, very much, 4305; — mochel, 367, 900, 1044, 1406, 1490, 2039; — muchel, 850. Ful mochel (very

much), 4095; to mochel (too much), 1747. *See* Mo.

Midde, *prep.* with, 5009;—mide, 2133;—myd, 3143. A.S. *mid.*

Midesomer, *n.* midsummer, 1464.

Middel-erþe, *n.* S. the earth, world, 1004.

Mildeliche, *adv.* S. mildly, 1898.

Mile-wei, *n.* a mile-way, *used to denote* a very short space of time, 1578. *Cf.* Ch. Shipm. Ta. 276.

Minge, Minges, Minged. *See* Menge.

Mires, *n. pl.* miry places, 3507; *cf.* 2619.

Mirie. *See* Merie.

Misdone, *v. tr.* S. to wrong, harm, 2581; *pt. pl.* misdede, 2548; *intr.* 2 *p. pl. pr.* misdon (do amiss), 3949.

Misdrede ȝow, *imp. pl.* fear, 1567.

Misferde, *pt. pl.* fared amiss, 2999; *pp.* misfaren, 1359; misfare, 995.

Mis-gilt, *n.* S. offence, fault, 2118, 3919, 4792;—mis-gelt, 3996, 4397;—mis-gelt, 1541;—misse-gilt, 2104.

Mislikede me, *pt. s. impers.* misliked me, 2039.

Misproude, *adj.* S. *pl.* haughty, † 312;—misseproude, 2944.

Missaide, 1 *p. pt. s.* reproved, 2040.

Misse, *n.* S. a fault, error, offence, 532; *hence* mysse, *adv.* amiss, wrongly, 141, 1480. *Perhaps in* l. 1480 myssetrowed *is one word; cf.* Mistrowe.

Misse, *v.* S. to miss, 1016; *pt. pl.* misseden, 1827.

Misseliche, *adv.* S. wrongly, 711;—missely (mistakenly), 207.

Misseproude. *See* Misproud.

Missespeche, *n.* S. evil report, defamation, 1523. "In the same manner is formed the Isl. *mismæli*, from *mis* and *mæli*, loquela."—M.

Mister, *n.* F. need, want, 1919. O.F. *mester;* Roq.

Mistrowe, *n.* S. mistrust, 3314.

Miswerche, *v.* S. to act amiss, 5148.

Mite; *in phrase* a mite worþ (the worth of a mite), 4543.

Mix, *n.* S. a vile wretch, 125. *Cf.* Felþe, *which is similarly used.* A.S. *meox.* O.E. *mixe*, filth. Hence the *pp.* mixed = filthy.

"That *fule* traytour, that *mixed* cherl." Havelok, 2533.

Miȝt. *See* Mow.

Miȝth, *n.* S. might, 3508.

Miȝthi, *adj.* S. mighty, 2859.

Miȝtow, thou mightest, 3041. *See* Mow.

Mo, *comp. adj.* S. more, 1162, 1189, 1454, 2780, 5241;—more (greater), 3464.

Mo, *adv.* more, 1271, 3457. More beter, 2134.

Moche, Mochel. *See* Miche, Michel.

Mod, *n.* S. mood, mind, 1985.

Moder, *n.* S. mother, 242; *gen. sing.* moder, 1177.

Molde, *n.* S. mould, i. e. earth, 85;—mold, 377, 528, 618. *Men vpon molde* is a common phrase, both here and in P. Pl.

Mornes, *imp. pl.* mourn ye, 633; *pt. s.* morned, 1761; *pres. part.* mornyng, 1640.

Morning, *n.* S. mourning, sorrow, 742;—mornyng, 746.

Morwe, *n.* S. morning, 763, 776. A morwe (on the morrow), 1296.

Most, Moste. *See* Mot.

Mot, 1 *p. s. pr.* I am obliged, I must, I ought, 548; *pr. s.* mot, 4141, 4171; 1 *p. pl. pr.* mot, 3988;

2 *p. pl. pr.* mote, 1043; *pt. s.* most, 5188; *pt. pl.* moste, 1052; *pr. s. subj.* mot (expressing a *wish*), 602, 1433, 1547, 4509; 1 *p. pt. subj.* most (= might, would), 3252; *pt. s. subj.* most, 3547, 3978, 4226, 4817; must, † 68; *pt. pl. subj.* most, 4798. Mot nede, *pr. s.* 4141; most nedes, *pt. s.* 5188. A.S. *ic mót*, pt. t. *ic móste.*

Mountance, *n.* F. amount, 2391.

Mow, 1 *p. s. pr.* I may, I can, I am able, 636, 3802; *pr. s.* 730, 2085, 3998; 1 *p. pl. pr.* mowe, 2794, 3903; 2 *p. pl. pr.* mow, 1458, 4092; *pr. pl.* mowe, 4162; 1 *p. s. pt.* miȝt (could), 2351; *pt. s.* miȝt, 3623; miȝth, 3621; *pt. pl.* miȝth, 3539; miȝt, 3632. Miȝtow (= mightest thou), 3041. A.S. *magan*, pr. t. *ic mæg*, pt. t. *ic mihte.* Mœso-Goth. *magan*, pr. t. *ik mag*, pt. t. *ik mahta.*

Muche. *See* Miche.

Muchel. *See* Michel.

Munde, *n.* S. mind, 4123.

Munge, Munged. *See* Menge.

Muntaynes, *n. pl.* F. mountains, 2619, 3507.

Mures, *n. pl.* moors, 2619. *Cf.* Mires *in* l. 3507.

Murdred (to deþe), *pp.* 2859; — murþered (to deþe), 1774.

Muri, Murie. *See* Merie.

Mut, *n.* F. cry of hounds, 2192. O. F. *esmeute*; Cotgrave.

Mys, *adj.* false, 716. [But *mys* is generally a substantive, or a prefix, and I should prefer to read *mys-metyng.*] *See* Misse.

Myslych, *adj.* S. various, of all kinds, † 1160. Mœso-Goth. *missaleiks.*

N. "This letter, by a species of prosthesis, is often taken from the end of an article or pronoun, and prefixed to the substantive which follows. Examples of this occur in *no neiȝ*, for *non eiȝ*, 83; *a noynement*, for *an oynement*, 136; *my nother*, for *myn other*, 468; *thi narmes*, for *thin armes*, 666; *ȝister neue*, for *ȝistern eue*, 2160, &c. *See* Tyrwhitt's Gloss. in v. *nale.* The practice existed in familiar writing so late as the reign of Q. Elizabeth, and, perhaps, later still."—M. *Cf.* note on Nones.

Na, *adv.* not, 1172. *See* Ne. Namore, no more, 2812, 2924, 4907; *written* na more, 2556; na mo, 1271.

Nad (*contr. from* ne had), *pt. s.* had not, 154; — nade, 1358; — nadde, 119, 1350, 2465; *pt. pl.* nad, 460.

Nam. *See* Nym.

Nameliche, *adv.* S. namely, especially, 1203; — namliche, 2604; — namli, 2508.

Namned. *See* Nempne.

Narmes. *See under* N.

Nas (*contr. from* ne was), was not, 278, 2784, † 460, &c.

Naþ (*contr. from* ne haþ), hath not, 4934.

Naþeles, *adv.* nevertheless, 1751, 4506, 5265. Ch.

Naueye, *n.* navy, collection of ships, 2719. Ch.

Nay, *adv.* no, 251, 482, 543, 547, 1559, 1814, 1826, 2003, 2314, &c.; — nai, 916, 965. *There is a clear distinction between* no *and* nay. No *signifies assent to the previous speaker*; nay *implies strong denial, and is generally followed by an oath. See* No, *and* Nickes.

Ne, *adv.* not, nor, 315, 450, 457, &c. Hence, *nad* for *ne had*; *nis* for *ne is*; *nas* for *ne was*; *nath* for *ne hath*; *nel* for *ne wil*; *nere* for *ne were*; *nolde* for *ne wolde*; *not* for *ne wot*; *nist* for *ne wist.*

Ned, *n.* S. need, 3210; — nede, 119; *pl.* nedes, 1436, 4164, 4251.

Neded, *pt. s.* needed, 1919.

Nedes, *adv.* of necessity, necessarily, 1042, 1679, 5185, 5188; — nede, 3922, 4141. A.S. *neádes, neáde.*

Needely, *adv.* S. urgently, † 747; —nedelich (necessarily), † 817. Ch.

Neiȝ. *See* Nest.

Neiȝh, *adv.* nigh, nearly, 434, 664, 686; — neiȝ, 151; — neiȝe, 1511; —neieȝ, 3185; — neȝh, 979; — ney, 2074. *Comp.* nerre, 1911; þe nere, 758. Neiȝhonde (*lit.* nigh hand), nearly, 1494; —neiȝ honde, 884; —neiȝh hondes, 438.

Neiȝhe, *v.* S. to approach, draw nigh, 3230, 3241; — neȝh, 278; — nye, † 493, † 700, † 764; *pt. s.* neiȝed, 770; neiȝet, 2599; neiyed, 1606; neihed, † 739; nyed, † 136, † 505; *pt. pl.* neiȝed, 4899; neyȝþed, 2179. [*In* l. † 493 it *may* mean, to *annoy; cf.* Noyȝed.]

Neiȝede, *pt. s.* S. neighed, 3238.

Nel (*for* ne wil), 1 *p. s. pr.* I will not, 484, 718, 1098, 4907; *pr. s.* nel, 986, 4260; *pr. pl.* nelle, 4937.

Nempne, *v.* S. to name, tell, 4213; — nymphe, 2179; *pt. s.* nemned, 368; *pp.* namned, † 524. Ch.

Nende; *here,* a nende = an ende, 3946.

Nere (*contr. from* ne were), *pr. s. subj.* were not, 714, 2409. *Cf.* Nas.

Nere, Nerre. *See* Neiȝh.

Nere, never, † 316; *the usual form is* neuer, 735, &c.

Nesche, *adj.* S. soft. In hard and in nesche, 495; to harde and to nesche, 534. Ch.

Nest, *n.* 83. "Nest and no neiȝ (= nest and non eiȝ, i. e. nest and no egg), evidently a proverbial phrase."—M.

Neuen, *v.* S. to name, tell, 2453, 2517. Ch.

Neuew, *n.* F. nephew, 1198, 3537, 4211; — newe, 1023, 3418, 4983; — neweu, 5095, 5098 (*in which last line it seems to mean* great-nephew).

Newe, *adv.* S. newly, lately, 1354; (anew), 2999.

Newene, *v.* S. to renew, 779.

Nickes with nay, refuses with a "no," 4145. "A proverbial phrase familiar to our old poets. See *Gawayne and the Grene Knyȝt,* 706; *Pistill of Susan,* st. xii. ap. Laing; *Amis & Amiloun,* 2176, ap. Weber; *King Estmere,* 47, ap. Percy, and Pinkerton's Scotish Poems, vol. iii. pp. 15, 72, 82."—M. Cf. Swed. *neka.*

Nigramauncy, necromancy, 119; —nigremauncie, † 460, † 981.

Nigremaunciens, necromancers, † 837.

Nis (*contr. from* ne is), is not, 377, 1357, 3210; —nys, 712.

Nist. *See* Not.

No, *adv.* no, 2701, 3115; — ne, 1556. *See note on* Nay.

No, *put for* Ne, not, 67, 85, &c. *Conversely, we find* ne *for* no; *see the preceding.*

Nobul, *adj.* noble, 1109, 1198.

Noiþer. *See* Noþer.

Nold (*for* ne wold), would not, 1 *p. s. pt.* 1731, 1877; *pt. s.* 561, 2692; nolde, 2184; *pt. pl.* nolde, † 236.

Nome, Nomen. *See* Nym.

Non, *pron.* no one, 396, 443, 2461; (neither of them) 2423; *adj.* (= no) 509; — no, 275, 1282; — none, 74; *adv.* no, 2455.

Nones, for þe, 1157, 2015. In the note to l. 7160 of Dr White's Ormulum, vol. ii. p. 642, we find— "*Forr þe naness,* for the purpose. This phrase is so written in the MS., but its grammatical structure, as admitted on the authority of the late Mr Price and of Sir F. Madden,

requires the form *forr þen aness*, being a slight variation of the A.S. *for þan ænes*, literally *for the once*. In Laȝamon we have *to þan anes*, *to þau ane*, for that only." For further information, see the rest of the note, and cf. the remark under N.

Nory, *n.* F. nurse, 1511.

Not (*for* ne wot), know not, 1 *p. s. pr.* 320, 541, 903, 4155; *pt. s.* nist (*for* ne wist), 741.

Noþer, *conj.* neither, 1675; — noiþer, 722, 2385. "This broad pronunciation is not peculiar to the English provinces, but has also been remarked in France, in such words as *chandoile* for *chandelle*, &c. A writer on the subject says, "En general, quand, dans le Français, se trouve un *e* ouvert, le rustique y substitue *oi*." *Melanges sur les langues*, p. 71. 8vo. Paris, 1831."—M.

Noþer; *we find* my noþer (= myn oþer), my other, 468; no noþer (= non oþer), no other thing, nothing else, 1679; *spelt* no nooþer, † 489, † 756.

Nov, *adv.* now, 78, 79; — nou, 454; — nouþe, 1543; — nowþe, 354, 356, 603; — noþe, 1005, 5032; — nouȝ, 626.

Nouȝt, *adv.* not, 13, 299, 358, 450, &c.; *n.* nothing, naught, 72, 83; *miswritten* nouȝ, 720.

Noyce, *n.* noise, 823.

Noynement, 136. *A noynement* = an oynement, an ointment, unguent.

Noyȝed, *pp.* annoyed, grieved, 770. *See* note to Neiȝhe.

Nyce, *adj.* foolish, 491. Ch.

Nym, *v.* to take (take prisoner), 1364; *pt. s.* nam, 1203, 2450, † 468; nam hede (took heed), 368; *pt. pl.* nomen (*the nom. case being* sondes), 1309; *pp.* nome, 2330. Mœso-Goth. *niman*, pt. t. *ik nam*, pl. *weis nemum*, pp. *numans*.

Nymphe. *See* Nempne.

O, *art.* and *adj.* one, a, 1112, 1350, 1628, 2461, 3017, 4033, 4321, 4733; — on, 192, 403, 1345; þat on (the one), 1198.

O, *miswritten for* Or, 1455.

O, *prep.* on, † 258.

Of, *prep.* of, *passim*; (out of), 1039, 3084, 3141; (off), 1218; (for), 442, 500. Brouȝt *of* liue, brouȝt *of* dawe (brought out of life, brought out of day), killed, 1159, 3817; as opposed to *on liue*. As a verbal prefix, it is the A.S. *of-* or *a-*. Mœso-Goth., Du., Dan., Swed., Isl. *af-*. It occurs in Of-reche, Of-se, Of-sende, Of-sette, Of-souȝt, Of-take; see below.

Of-reche, *v.* to reach to, 3874; *pt. s.* of-rauȝte, 1233. A.S. *a-rǽcan*. *Cf.* Rob. Glouc. 285,6.

Of-se, *v.* S. to perceive, 2223; *pt. s.* of-sei, 2245; of-seie, 273, 2771; of-sey, 4444; of-seye, 224; of-saw, 49, 3283; *pt. pl.* of-seiȝyen, 1221. A.S. *of-seón*.

Of-sende, *v.* S. to send after, send for, 5293; *pt. s.* of-sent, 1081. *See of-sended* in Laȝamon.

Of-sette, *pt. pl.* beset, 2648; *pp.* of-sett, † 308, † 895. A.S. *of-settan*.

Of-souhte, *pt. s.* searched out, *hence* approached, † 1217; *pp.* of-souȝt (sought after), 1676; of-sought (attacked), † 25. A.S. *a-sécan*.

Of-take, *v.* to overtake, 1275, 2198, 2398, 2590; *pt. s.* of-tok, 3895; of-toke, 3916; *pt. pl.* of-toke, 3881. See *oftake*, *atake*, in Wycl. Gloss., and *oftake* in Laȝamon.

Of-turned, *pt. pl.* turned off, stripped off, 2590. [*Perhaps the words* of *and* turned *should be separated.*]

Ofte, *adv.* S. oft, often, 1570; *comp.* ofter, 610.

Oiþer, *conj.* or, 3130. *See* Oþer.

Ok, *n.* S. an oak, 295.

Omage, *n.* F. homage, 1306, 5403, 5474.

On, *prep.* in; often represented in modern language by *a-*; see Acts xiii. 36. *On dayes*, by day, 244, 773. *On face*, in face, 2634. *On felde*, afield, 173. *On gate*, on their way, 2092; *see* Gate. *Vpon hast*, hastily, 5195. *On heiȝ*, on high, 2020. *On liue*, alive, 2100 (cf. *I-liue*, 1690). *On-loft*, aloft, † 1186. *On morwe*, in the morning, 3640. *On niȝtes*, by night, 739; *on a niȝt*, 656. *On peces*, in pieces, 3410. *On-sunder*, asunder, 5455 (cf. *a-sunder*, 1759). *On swowe*, in a swoon, 87. *On weie*, on their way, 1751.

On, *adj.* one. *See* O.

One, *adj.* S. alone, 211, 511, 3156. *Al him-self one*, 3316; *him-self one*, 657; *bi here-self one*, 3101. *Him one*, 17, 4112; *hym one*, † 792. Þei þre one, 1415. *Al-one*, 659, 864; *allone but*, 1532. *God one*, 4002. *On þe one* (by thee alone), 4575. Cf. *Alane* in Jamieson.

Ones, *adv.* S. once, 195, 611, 637. *At ones* (at once), 5412; *at onis* (to-gether), 5180; (once for all), 3255.

On-honged, *pp.* S. hanged, 1564.

Onliche, *adv.* S. only, 3155, 3799.

Onwhar, *adv.* anywhere, somewhere, 1820; — onwar, 2251.

Or, *adv.* S. before, 147, 1747, 2351, † 30, † 142, † 310.

Or-trowed, *pt. s.* supposed, imagined, † 738. See *or-troweden* in Wycl. Gloss., and cf. Ouer-trowe.

Ost, *n.* F. host, 1127, 1197, 3767. Ch.

Oþer, *conj.* or, 696, 966, 1498, 1823; (or else), 4067. Oþer—or (either—or), 1212, 1822. Ch.

Oþer, *adj.* other; *hence*, þat oþer = the second, the next, 1199; *pl.* oþer (others), 5218. Oþer-gate (otherwise), 3761; *and hence, elliptically*, oþer = otherwise, 2071, 2122.

Ouer-borde, overboard, 2823; — ouer-bord, 2778.

Ouer-gret, *adj.* over-great, very great, 1069. *The* MS. *has* ouer-gart gret ost, *probably by mistake*. "*Ouer-gret* is used by Chaucer, Cant. T. 16116 (Chan. Yem. Prol.)."—M.

Ouer-macched, *pp.* over-matched, 1216.

Ouer-pase, *v.* to pass by, pass unnoticed, 4113.

Ouer-ride, *v.* to ride over, harry, 4147, 4262. Ch.

Ouer-slide, *v.* to pass away without effort to retain it, to slip away, 3519.

Ouer-trowe, *n.* S. mistrust, suspicion, 1402. *Cf.* Or-trowed.

Our, *adv.* over. *But our on titly tumbel*, except one (of us) soon tumble over, 3388.

Our, *poss. pron.* our, 4223; *pl.* oure, 3385.

Out, *prep.* out of, 1640; — ouȝt (out), 3068; — ouȝt of (out of), 1204, 1691.

Out-wende, *v.* S. to go out, 4853.

Ouȝt, *n.* S. anything, aught, 952; — out, 1823, 2090, 2971; *adv.* ouȝt (at all), 2395, 3244, 5219.

Out, *pt. s.* possessed, 2627; ouȝt, 3229; aught, † 14, † 173, † 237; *pt. pl.* ouȝten (owed), 1080. *As auxil. vb.* out, *pt. s.* ought, 520, 874, 1323; aught, † 547; 1 *p. pl. pr.* ouȝt, 3589; 2 *p. pl. pr.* ouȝt, 4129; *pr. pl.* ouȝt, 5221.

Ow, you, 106. *See* ȝou.

Paide, *pt. s.* pleased, 4988; *pp.* payed, 1313, † 1038. *From* Lat. *pacare*. Ch.

Paie, *n.* F. pleasure, 193, 5427, † 701; — paye, 5492, 5524, † 159.

Paleis, *n.* F. palace, 2838; — paleys, 2845.

Pane, *n.* F. cloth, *or* fur, 5356. "See *Sir Tristrem*, p. 37."—M. See also *Pane* in Wedgwood and Halliwell.

Paradiȝs, Paradise, 443.

Paramours, *n.* F. mistress, lover, 1534; *gen. pl.* paramoures, lovers', 2987; for paramours, for love, 1758; of paramours, of love, 1412.

Parayled, *pp.* apparelled, 1990.

Park, *n.* a park, 2845. F. *parc.* A.S. *pearroc.*

Partened, *pt. pl.* belonged, 1419.

Party, *n.* F. to hold *party* to = to maintain the battle against, 3643; *pl.* partiȝes, sides, 1146; partyes, 1150.

Pas, *n.* F. course, 3915; a "passus," canto, 161; — pase, pace, 4337.

Passed, *pt. s.* passed, went, 4112; passad, 3068; *pt. pl.* passeden, 2166, 3938.

Patriarkes, *n. pl.* patriarchs, 5047.

Pauilons, *n. pl.* pavilions, tents, 1630; — pauilounns, 1627.

Payenes, *gen. sing.* pagan's, 365.

Payþe, *or* Paþþe, *n.* path, 1674.

Pellure, *n.* F. costly fur, 53. "See Roq. and Jamieson's examples, which might be greatly augmented." —M. *Cf.* P. Pl. A. ii. 9.

Peple, *n.* F. people, 1122; — puple, 499, 4139, 5061.

Perauenture, peradventure, 254.

Perced, *pp.* pierced, 1225.

Pere, *n.* F. peer, equal, 443, 709; *pl.* pers, 3976. Ch.

Perelouste, *sup. adj.* F. most perilous, 1191.

Perles, *adj.* F. peerless, 499, 516, 740, 933, &c.

Perrey, *n.* F. precious stones, jewels, 53. *Cf.* P. Pl. A. ii. 12, and Ch.

Pert, *adj.* F. true, *lit.* evident, 4930. Lat. *apertus.*

Pertly, *adv.* F. openly, clearly, plainly, 180, 2536; — pertli, 2489; — pertely, 156, 684; — pertily, 1225; — pertili, 4384; — pertliche, 5044; — pertelyche, 53; — pertilyche, 361; — pertiliche, 96, 291. *Cf* Apertli.

Pes, *n.* F. peace, 2951.

Peter, by saint Peter! 681. The line means—"But, by saint Peter! it was only his pillow," &c. *Cf.* P. Pl. A. vi. 28; Ch. House of Fame, ii. 526; Morte Arth. (ed. Perry), 2884.

Peyne, *v.* S. to punish, 2898, 3662; *pt. pl.* pinte, † 238; *pp.* peyned, *in phr.* þat on croyce was peyned, that was put to a painful death on the cross, 350, 3127, 4151.

Piled, *pp.* F. robbed, plundered, 5123. Ch.

Pilus, *n. pl.* feathers, down, † 814. "*Poil folet*, the first down or soft feathers of a young bird." Cotgrave.

Pitous, *adj.* F. piteous, 643; — pytous, 1180; — pitevows, 5488. Ch.

Pitousli, *adv.* F. piteously, 1168; — pitously, 933; pituosli, 1756.

Piȝt, *pp.* S. pitched, 1627. Ch.

Plece, *v.* F. to please, 4729; — plese, 5435.

Pleie, *v.* to play, 678, 1020, 2736; *pt. s.* pleide, 216, 1195; *pt. pl.* pleide, 1477; pleyed, 1058.

Pleint, *n.* F. complaint, 1180. Ch.

Plenerli, *adv.* F. fully, 5435.

Plenteousliche, *adv.* F. plenteously, 180; — plenteousli, 4970; — plentiuosly, 1122.

Pleyn, *adv.* F. full, 3158. Ch.

Pleyned hem, *pt. pl.* complained, 1845.

Pliȝt, *n.* S. plight, condition, 5373.

Pope, 1957. See the note.

Porayle, *n.* F. the poor, the lower order of people, 5123. Ch.

Porsewed, *pt. pl.* pursued, 2196; *pp.* porsewed, 2474.

Portingale, Portugal, 116.

Portreide, *pp.* pourtrayed, 445, 619.

Posterne, *n.* F. postern-gate, 1752, 3068; posterne-gate, 2166; posterne-ȝate, 2871.

Pouert, *n.* F. poverty, 5373. Ch.

Praide, *pt. s.* he prayed, 270; praiȝed, 3546; preiede, 1168; preide, 643; *pt. pl.* preid, 1903; *imp. pl.* preieth, 164; preiȝes, 5529.

Praire, *n.* prayer, 996.

Praisen, *pr. pl.* praise, 617.

Preeued, *pp.* proved, approved, † 604.

Preued, *pp.* pinned, † 420. See *Preia* in Jamieson. A.S. *preon*, Dan. *preen*, a bodkin. We still use the phrase, "*pinned* to the earth."

Prent, *n.* F. print, † 845.

Pres, *n.* F. press, throng, crowd, 1191, 1225, 1481, 3431; — prese, 3848. Ch.

Presed, *pt. s.* pressed forward, 3424, 4959.

Prest, *adj.* F. ready, prepared, 1598, † 6, † 165, † 422, † 595, &c. Ch.

Prestly, *adv.* F. readily, quickly, soon, 1146, 1232, † 171, † 368; — prestli, 2649; —prestely, 291, 335, 996; — presteli, 1237, 1717; — prestili, 3319, 3431; —presteliche, 399; —prestlich, † 792. [It occurs more than 20 times.]

Prie, *v.* to pry, look, 5019; *pt. s.* pried, 96.

Prike, *v.* S. to spur, ride fast, 2382; *pt. s.* priked, 1191, 3319; prikede, 1481, 3362; *pt. pl.* prikeden, † 382.

Pris, *adj.* F. worthy, choice, rich, noble, 161, 411, 2442, † 306, † 466; *pl.* pris, † 6; prise, † 1038; price, 1630.

Prisely, *adv.* choicely, well, † 733.

Prisoun, *n.* F. a prisoner, 1251; *pl.* prisouns, 1290; prisons, 3458, 4215. P. Pl.

Proddest, *sup. adj.* proudest, 2942.

Properly, *adv.* F. properly, truly, 652; — propirli, 619; — propirly, 672.

Proueyed hire, *pt. s.* provided for herself, procured, 3064.

Prouost, *n.* provost, 2265, 2270.

Pult, *v.* to put, 3093; *pt. s.* pult, 4593; *pp.* pult, 381, 4219, 4223, 4236, 4522, 5373. "In O.E. the word *put* was frequently written with an intrusive *l*, *pult*, analogous to the *l* in *falter*, *halt*, *jolt*."—Wedgwood; who derives it from F. *bouter*. In l. 2951 we find *Put*.

Puluere, *n.* F. a pillow, 675, 681, 684;—pulwere, 672.

Puple. *See* Peple.

Pure litel, very little, 3093.

Purli, *adv.* purely, wholly, 4219; —purliche, 4428; —purlich, † 1038.

Pursewend, *pres. part.* F. pursuant, suitable, 5028.

Purueaunce, *n.* F. provision, 1598, 1605.

Purueyed, *pp.* provided, 1605.

Quarrere, *n.* F. quarry, 2232, 2319; —quarrer, 2281, 4692.

Quaþ, *pt. s.* quoth, said, 251, 2028, 2168, † 638; quod, 3753, † 682.

Queite, *pt. s.* whisked, darted, moved swiftly, 4344. Sir F. Madden suggested a derivation from the A.S. *cwehte*, moved (which is, however, transitive), or that it might

mean *crept*, from the F. *quatir*, explained by Roquefort to mean *se tapir*, i. e. to squat. But it is rather from the W. *chwido*, to move nimbly, and is familiar to us in Lowland Scotch in the forms *quhid* and *whid*. See *quhid* in Jamieson.

Queintyse, *n.* F. cunning, skill, 4220.

Quelle, *v.* S. to kill, 1246, 2123, 2773, 2811, &c.; *pr. s.* quelles, 179; *pt. s.* quelled, 1109. *Cf.* kyllen *in* l. † 924.

Queme, *v.* S. to please, delight, satisfy, 3404, † 227, † 682, † 1181; 2 *p. s. pr.* quemest, † 593; *pp.* quemed, † 788. Ch.

Quemfull, *adv.* S. pleasing, giving delight, † 582.

Queynt, *adj.* F. quaint; i. e. cunning, skilful, 4136, 4254;—quinte, 1401. Ch.

Queyntli, *adv.* F. quaintly, i. e. cunningly, 4644; — queyntliche, 3233. Ch.

Quic, *adj.* S. alive, 1564;—quik, 1212. Ch.

Quicliche, *adv.* S. quickly, soon, 908; — quikliche, 2127.

Quinte. *See* Queynt.

Quite, *v.* F. to repay, requite, 325, 4726; *pr. s. subj.* quite, 4713. Ch.

Quitly, *adv.* freely, entirely, 2341. "Used by Ch. Cant. T. 1794 (Knightes T. 934)."—M.

Quod. *See* Quaþ.

Radde. *See* Rede, *v.*

Raddely, Radely, Raþli. *See* Redeli.

Rauȝt, *pt. s.* S. reached, 1193, 4424; raught, † 1174; *pp.* rauȝt, 4823.

Railled, *pp.* striped, decked, 1618. See *Rail* in Wedgwood, *Riolè* in Cotgrave, and cf. Norman *Railer*, to score, draw lines, streak.

Rapli, *adv.* very quickly, hastily, 3179. Du. *rap*, nimble. P. Pl. A. v. 176.

Real, *adv.* F. royal, splendid, 866, 1310, 1405, 1597, 1601; — riall, † 178, † 267; *sup.* realest, 3944. Ch.

Realy, *adv.* F. royally, 352, 1260, 1391, 1426, 1618; — reali, 5460; — rialiche, 4859; *comp.* realiere, 4852. Ch.

Realte, *n.* F. royalty, splendour, 5006; — reaute, 1926, 1959; — reaulte, 5331, 5345;—riaulte, 5057.

Reaume, *n.* F. realm, 1310, 1964, 3920, 4102.

Reching, *n.* explanation, † 599. A.S. *recan*, to say, explain.

Recuuer, *n.* F. to recover, i. e. to gain, 2801; *pt. s. intr.* recuuered (recovered), 3874.

Recuuerere, *n.* F. recovery, revival, 439.

Reddour, *n.* F. violence, injury, 2953. [The words *reddour* = violence (O.F. *roideur*), and *reddour* = fear (Suio-Goth. *rædde*), are often mistaken for each other.]

Redè, *adj.* ready, 1963.

Rede, *n.* S. advice, counsel, 803, 1458, 1692, 5115, † 356. *What is me to rede*, what is advisable for me, 903; shortened into *what to rede*, 3885; *take hire to rede*, considered as advisable for herself, 133. *Cf.* A.S. *to ræde*, s.v. *ræd* in Bosworth.

Rede, *v.* S. to advise, counsel, 1356; 1 *p. pr. pl.* rede, 1112; *pt. s.* radde, 1301; (= read), 4433; *pr. s. subj.* rede, 2262. *Too rede*, to read, to explain, † 856. Ch.

Redeles, *adj.* S. without counsel, at a loss what to do, † 394; — redles, 2915.

Redeli, *adv.* S. readily, quickly, soon, 461, 1824, 1828, 2516; — redeliche, 439, 5467; — redili, 3563; — rediliche, 1226; — redli,

2143, 2488; — redly, 866, 1153; — reddely, 1367; — radely, 41; — raddely, 810. [It occurs nearly 30 times. In l. 3179 Sir F. Madden explains *raþli* by *quickly*, but we should read *rapli, as in the* MS.]

Regal, *n.* F. regality, 282.

Reioische, *v.* F. to enjoy, 4102. Cf. *Reioshe* in Coleridge's Gloss. Index.

Reken, *v.* S. to reckon, tell, 1597, 3179; — rekene, 336, 1934, 1958. Ch.

Remued, *pt. s. intr.* removed, went, 1325; remewed, 5106, 5317; *pt. pl.* remewed, 1297. Ch.

Renkes. *See* Rink.

Renne, *v.* S. to run, 219, 2268, 3179. Ch.

Reproue, *n.* F. reproof, 652.

Res, *n.* S. rush of emotion, conflict of mind, 439; attack, onset, † 389; violence, † 1189. A.S. *rǽs*, rush, onset, violence. Ch.

Resset, *n.* F. a place of shelter or refuge, 2801. See *Recet* in Coleridge's Gloss. Index.

Restored, *pp.* stored, 2846.

Rette, *v.* to impute, ascribe, 461. "Rectyn, or rettyn, or wytyn. *Imputo, reputo, ascribo.*" Prom. Parv. Used by Ch. O.N. *retta.*

Reue, *v.* S. to rob, bereave, 1824, 4392; reued, 2755. Ch.

Reueles, *n. pl.* F. revels, 1953.

Reuested, *pp.* dressed, 1959, 5047.

Reuliche, *adv.* ruefully, pitiably, 86.

Reuowres, *n. pl.* S. robbers, 5478.

Reuþe, *n.* S. ruth, pity, 2115, 3270.

Reward, *n.* F. regard, 3339.

Rewes me, *pr. s.* grieves me, 562; *pt. s.* rewed him, grieved him, 4987. Ch.

Rialiche. *See* Reali.

Riaulte. *See* Realte.

Riche, *v.* F. to enrich, *or more probably*, to be rich, 3014.

Riche, *n.* S. a kingdom, † 58.

Richesse, *n.* F. riches, 1935, 3014, 5057. [It is in the sing. number.] Ch.

Richlier, *adv.* more richly, 1934.

Ridende, *pres. part.* 1954.

Rif, Rifliche. *See* Riuedli.

Rigge, *n.* S. back, † 1174. Ch.

Rink, *n.* S. a man, hero, warrior, 1193, 1935, 3563, † 105, † 480; — rynk, 1472; — ring, 5213; — ryng, † 1145; *pl.* rinkes, 1213, 1226, † 341, † 354; renkes, 1153.

Rise, *n.* Reggio, in Calabria, 2717. "See Panizzi's Life of Bojardo, vol. ii. p. lxxxi. *n.* The same change seems to have taken place in regard to *Riez* in Provence, as remarked by Mr Nicol, to whom I am indebted for a reference to Martiniere's Dictionary, sub. v. *Riez.*"—M.

Rist, *n.* S. rising; sonne rist = rising of the sun, † 791; *hence*, the East, † 855.

Rit, *adv.* right, 4268;—riȝt, 273.

Riue, *adj.* S. rife, abundant, full, 4415, 5414, † 726; — ryfe, † 268.

Riuedli, *adv.* abundantly, widely, 2953, 3840;—riuedliche, 2115;—rifliche, 1472; — rif, 1953.

Riȝt, *adv.* *See* Rit.

Riȝtes, *n. pl.* rights, 3218. At here riȝttes, exactly, rightly, suitably, 4906; — at alle riȝtes, 4255; — to þe riȝtes, 5006, 5026; — to þe riȝttes, 53; —to riȝtes, 1957; — to riȝttes, 1605, 1632;—too rightes, † 660, † 846, † 980; to rightus, † 1222. Anon riȝtes, straightway, immediately, 1306; —anon riȝttes, 235. Vp-riȝttes (upright), 1789; doun-riȝtes, 1165. Riȝtes gates, by the right way, 5322. [In *At*

all riȝtes, to riȝtes, &c., I suppose *riȝtes* to be the pl. of *riȝt*, sb.; in *anon riȝtes, vp-riȝttes, doun-riȝtes*, it is the gen. case sing. used adverbially; cf. *rihtes*, adv. in Laȝamon. In *riȝtes gates*, I think *riȝtes* is the gen. sing. of *riȝt*, adj. agreeing with *gates*, gen. of *gate*; the whole expression being used adverbially.]

Riȝtleche, *v.* S. to govern, 282, 1310. A.S. *rihtlæcan*.

Riȝtly, *adv.* directly, straightway, 232. *Cf.* Rit.

Roche, *n.* F. rock, 2367. Ch.

Rode, *n.* S. rood, cross, 1669, 1802, 2083, 2360. Ch.

Rode, *n.* complexion, † 178. O.N. *rodi*. *Cf.* A.S. *rudu*, redness.

Romed, *pt. s.* roamed, 1608; *pt. pl.* romden, 810. Ch.

Rote, *n.* S. root, 638. Ch.

Roted, *pp.* rotted, 4124.

Route, *v.* F. to trouble, harass, 5478.

Route, *n.* F. a rout, company, troop, 1213, 1616, 1942, 3354; — rouȝte, 4276; — rowte, 397. Ch.

Roum, *n.* a room, i. e. a space, while, † 1030.

Rouȝt hem, it recked them, i. e. they cared, 3353; *pl.* rought (recked), † 383.

Rowe, *adj.* S. rough, 4778. Ch.

Rudli, *adv.* rudely, 3270.

Sad, *adj.* firm, steadfast, *in various senses;* as, discreet, steady, sober, 228; firm, massive, 1072; firm, sure, 1463; severe, grievous, 2775; — sadde, firm, sure, 1371; *sup.* saddest, chiefest, 677; *in which last instance it is very nearly equivalent to* most joyous; cf. l. 3675. "In the sense of heavy, hard, or solid, it is used in the Wycliffite Bible, in the Prompt. Parv. (A.D. 1440), and in Stanbridge's Vocab. (A.D. 1513). In the North, this signification is not yet obsolete; see Brockett, and Hunter."—M. Cf. Welsh, *sad*, firm, steady, discreet. Ch.

Sadly, *adv.* firmly, 1014; seriously, 488, 557; steadfastly, 469, 524; earnestly, 418, 1165, 2388; — sadli, fixedly, 762; discreetly, 969; earnestly, 2524; seriously, 4146, 4170; purposely, 2750; heavily, 539; — saddeli, closely, 2281, 2592; — saddely, quietly, in a low tone, 311; *sup.* saddest, most earnestly, 3675; *cf.* l. 677. Ch.

Saf. *See* Sauf.

Sai, Saie. *See* Se.

Saile, *v.* to sail, 2673; — sayle, 2721; *pt. pl.* saileden, 2763.

Sake, *n.* S. cause; *hence*, for þat sake = on that account, 2019. A.S. *sacu*, a dispute, suit at law, cause.

Saluede, *pt. s.* saluted, 4017.

Samen, *adv.* S. together, 433, 909, 1288, 1907, 2267, 2445, &c.; — same, 4318, 4899; — samme, † 342. It occurs 19 times. The expressions *samen to-geder* (909), and *samen y-fere* (2267) are pleonastic. It is found in Spenser.

Samli, *adv.* together, 1835; *cf.* ll. 433, 909. A.S. *samodlice*.

Sarre, *comp. adv.* more sorely, 2025, 3441.

Sauf, *adv.* F. safe, sound, whole, 868, 1329, 2816, 4634; — saf, 1332. *Sauf and sound*, 868, 2816. *See* Fouche.

Saufly, *adv.* safely, 3051; — saufli, 2688; — saufliche, 256; — safliche, 258. Ch.

Saules, *n. pl.* souls, 3705.

Saundbruel; the name of a horse, 3585. "So named from its colour." —M.

Sauor, *n.* F. scent, perfume, 638, 818; — sawour, 849.

Sauȝt, *n.* F. assault, 2651; —

saute, † 301; *pl.* sauȝtes, 2682; sautes, 2857. Ch.

Sawe, *n.* S. saying, word, 1112, 1305, 1483, † 757; *pl.* sawes, 1439.

Say. *See* Se.

Sayle. *See* Saile.

Schal, *pr. s.* shall, 2938, 2945, &c.; 1 *p. pl. pr.* schul, 5422; 2 *p. pl. pr.* schul, 5162; schulle, 3690; chul, 3339; *pr. pl.* schul, 964, 2943, 2952; schulle (ought), 3807; 2 *p. s. pt.* schuldest, 5194; *pt. s.* schold, 2969, 2971; chold, 2014; 2 *p. pl. pt.* schuld, 3685; *pt. pl.* schuld, 3810. *See* next word.

Schaltow, shalt thou, 340, 5132; —schalstow, 325.

Schamful, *adj.* S. harmful, 1855.

Schamly, *adj.* S. shameful, 556.

Schap, *n.* S. shape, 2885.

Schape, *v.* F. to escape, 2749; *pt. pl.* schaped, 2752; *pp.* schaped, 460, 731, 1282; schapit, 2151.

Schapen, *pp.* shapen, shaped, 126, 225, 1447; — schape, 3214.

Scharplyche, *adv.* S. sharply, 178.

Schaþe, *n.* S. scathe, harm, disgrace, 3008, 3084, 4051.

Schaþeles, *adv.* S. scatheless, without injury, 1855; — scaþeles, 2749.

Schaþli, *adv.* harmfully, hardly, 2794. [But it may be a mistake for *schaþelesli*.]

Schawes, *n. pl.* groves, 178. Ch.

Schawes, *n. pl.* men, † 484. The sing. *shawe*, † 766, should rather be spelt *schawe*. A.S. *scealc*, a servant, man.

Sche, *pron.* she, 836, 837, &c.; — hue, † 34, † 35, † 36; — che, 462, 641. A.S. *heo*.

Scheche, *v.* S. to seek, 2068.

Scheld, *n.* S. shield, 3214; — schel, 3216.

Schenchip, *n.* S. shame, dishonour, 556, 1803. Ch.

Schende, *v.* S. to shame, dishonour, disgrace, 556, † 995; — schend, † 566; *pp.* schent (destroyed, dead), 2798, † 1028. Ch.

Schene, *adj.* S. fair, beautiful, bright, 3214, 3296; — scheene, † 202. Used as *sb., lady* being understood, 733, 3299. Ch.

Scheenely, *adv.* S. brightly, † 631.

Schepe, *n.* S. ship, 5088; — schipe, 5212; — schip, 2729; *pl.* schippes, 2728.

Schete, *v.* S. to shoot, 2399; — schote, 178; *pt. s.* shet (*read* schet), † 277.

Schette, *v.* S. to shut, fasten, 3649; *pt. pl.* schetten, 3267. *Cf.* Bi-schet, 2014.

Scheuered, *pp.* shivered, 3411.

Schilde, 3 *p. s. imp.* shield, 1803.

Schille, *adj.* shrill, 213; *adv.* (shrilly), 37, 3831. Du. *schel.*

Schinnes, *n. pl.* skins, 2420.

Schipmen, *n. pl.* sailors, 2768; —chipmen, 2811, 2818.

Schire, *adj.* clean, † 1008. See *Sheer* in Wedgwood.

Schoche, *v.* F. to suspect, 1398, — souche, 1983; *pt. s.* scouched, 1413; souched, 1059. O. F. *souche*, souci. Roq.

Schon, *n. pl.* shoon, shoes, 14.

Schonde, *n.* S. shame, dishonour, 555.

Schore, *n.* S. a score; foure schore, 1102, 2540; ten schore, 3909.

Schorned, *pp.* scorned, 554.

Schortely, *adv.* shortly, 1132; — chortly, 2035.

Schortet, *pp.* shortened, 1549.

Schote. *See* Schete.

Schour, *n.* S. shower; scharp

schour = shower of darts or blows, 4514; *cf.* l. 2756. Cf. *flana scuras*, showers of arrows, in the A.S. fragment of Judith.

Schoute[s], *n. pl.* flat-bottomed boats of light draught, † 484. See *Shout* in Halliwell. Du. *schuit*.

Schrewe, *n.* a wicked person, 4643; *pl.* shrews, † 80. See *Shrew* in Wedgwood. Ch.

Schrewedest, *sup. adj.* most wicked, 4643. See Wycl. Gloss.

Schuft, *pt. s. either* shifted, *from* A.S. scyftan, *or* shoved, *from* A.S. scufan, 3290. See *Shift* in Wedgwood.

Schuft, *pp.* well-shaped, † 186. A.S. *sceaft*, adj., formed, made.

Schul. *See* Schal.

Sclaunder, *n.* F. slander, 4045. Ch.

Se, *v.* S. to see, 765; — sen, 1283, 3203; sene, 759, 3834, 4487; 1 *p. s. pt.* sai, 2160; 2 *p. s. pt.* sei, 276; *pt. s.* sei, 2117; sey, 4901; seiȝ, 34, 590, 871, &c.; say, 228, 1585; seie, 1505; seiȝe, 402, 2183; seye, 26; 1 *p. pl. pt.* seiȝen, 3501; *pt. pl.* seiȝen, 1063; seien, 4503; seȝen, 2760; saie, 2232; *pp.* seie, 279, 2344, 2886; seien, 5003; seiȝen, 1792; seyn, 5058; *imp. pl.* seþ, 1715.

Seccleled, *pt. s.* sickened, 575. A.S. *sæclian*.

Sece, *v.* to cease, 2124; *pp.* seced, 2114; 1 *p. pl. imp.* sece, 2707; *pt. pl.* sesed, 2190. *See* Sese.

Seche, *v.* S. to seek, 223, 2203; *pr. s.* secheþ, 4121, 5520; *pres. pt.* sechande, 2603. *See* Souȝt.

Sechyng, *n.* S. a seeking, searching, 2190.

Sede, Seide, &c. *See* Seie.

Seemeli, Seemlich. *See* Semli.

Seg, *n.* S. a man, 226, 518, 772, 839, &c.; — segge, † 232; *pl.* segges, 1341, 2223, † 286; seges, 1063. P. Pl.

Seged, *pp.* F. besieged, 3805.

Segging, *n.* S. a saying, a repetition of words of incantation, † 531.

Seie, *v.* S. to say, 1279; — seiȝ, 60; seye, 1281; segge, † 584, † 1033; sigge, † 8; 2 *p. s. pr.* seistow, 2256; *pt. s.* seide, 70, 3191; seyde, 954; sede, 943; seyede, 2274; 2 *p. s. pt.* seidestow (= seidest þow), 267; *imp. pl.* seie, 4173; seiþ, 4170; seiȝth, 593.

Seile, *n.* S. 2731; *where* þe seile = sailing, voyage; *we find* sayle = a sail, 568.

Seiȝt, of his = out of his sight, 420. [*Probably miswritten for* siȝt.] *See* Siȝt.

Sek, *adj.* S. sick, 557, 590, 1489.

Sekly, *adj.* S. sick, 1505. [*We still use* sickly *as an adj.*]

Seknes, *n.* S. sickness, 842; — sekenes, 841; — seknesse, 593.

Selcouþ, *adj.* S. strange, wonderful, admirable, 1621, 2708; — selcouþe, 658, 700, 2329; — selcoþe, 2869, 2989; — selkouthe, † 130. *Used as sb.*, thing *being understood*, selcouþ, 2291, 2579; selcouþe, 700, 3488.

Selcouþli, *adv.* S. strangely, wonderfully, 2650, 4924, 5064; — selcouþeli, 3263; — selkouþely, 3330.

Sell, *n.* F. a seal, † 834, † 853.

Sell, *n.* F. a cell, † 525. Ch.

Selue, S. self, same, very, 1149, 1300, &c.; — self, 1839; *pl.* selue, 727, 889, &c. Selue wise, very way, same way, 462, 490, 1438. Þat selue, the very same, 3502. Þe selue duk, the duke himself, 1368. What I suppose þe selue, what if I suppose that very thing, 549.

Seluer, *n.* S. silver, 2554.

Semblant, *n.* F. outward semblance, appearance, show, 228, 841, 3502, 4512.

Sembul, *v.* F. to assemble, gather,

3555; *pp.* 2147, 3319. *In* l. 3811, *we have pt. pl.* sembled, *which probably means* encountered; *cf.* l. 3815. Semblyng = encountering *occurs in* Lancelot of the Laik, 2951.

Semes, me = it seems to me, 620; *pl.* me semen, seem to me, 1686; *pt. pl.* semde, 2880.

Semes, *n. pl.* S. horse-loads, 2554. "A sack of eight bushels is now called a *seam*, which was a horse-load—hence generally *a load, a burden.*" Bosworth, in v. *seam.* Cf. G. *saum*, a burden. F. *sommier*, a *sumpter* or pack-horse, &c. [Sir F. Madden suggests that the word (which is somewhat indistinct) may, however, be *selues.*]

Semli, *adj.* S. seemly, comely, fair, 829, 1882; — semly, 298, 765, 837, 849; — semliche, 49, 1454, 2232; — semlyche, 568; — seemelich, †322; — seemeli, †232. Þat semly = that seemly person *or* lady, 732, 853, 871, &c. *Sup.* semlyest, 518, 551.

Semly, *adv.* in a seemly manner, courteously, 1432; — seemlich, becomingly, †189.

Sendeth, *imp. pl.* send ye, 2068.

Sene, 3035. This can hardly mean *seen*, and I have no doubt that it is simply miswritten for *sone* = soon, which ends l. 3037 below. It is an instance of the common confusion between *e* and *o*, like *sweto* for *swete* in l. 818.

Sent, *n.* assent, agreement; *in the phr.* at o sent = with one assent, 3017, 5253; at sent = in agreement, well aware, 1983. Halliwell quotes

"Many armys were tynt,
That were never *at the sent*
To come to that tournament."
MS. Lincoln, A. i. 17. f. 134.

Sere, put for Sire, sir, 3570. *See* Sire.

Serliche, 2149, } *adv.* explained
Serreli, 3316, } by Sir F. Madden to mean "surely." But I would suggest different explanations in both places, and I take them to be distinct words: (1) serliche, closely; cf. "*Serre*, to join closely" (Halliwell), from F. *serrer;* also "*Sarreliche*, closely" (Halliwell). (2) serreli, lordly, in a *sir-like* manner, as explained by Wedgwood, s. v. *Surly:* cf. "Sike *sirly* shepherds han we none," Spenser, Sheph. Cal. July, l. 203, where the "Glosse" has "*Surly*, stately and prowde."

Sertes, *adv.* F. certainly, 268, 280, 543, 899, &c.

Serued, *pp.* deserved, 4352.

Serues, *n.* F. service, 3729.

Sese, *v.* to cease, 1516; — sece, 2124; *pt. pl.* sesed, 2190; *pp.* sesed, 648; seced, 2114; 1 *p. pl. imp.* sece, 2707.

Sese, *v.* to seize, †135; *pr. pl.* †299; *pt. s.* sesed, 1236; *pt. pl.* seseden, †234. See notes to ll. †135, †299. In l. 5391, *sese* is explained by Sir F. Madden to mean to *take, attain;* it is rather the regular law term, to *seize* a person of a thing, i. e. to put him into legal possession of it. Cf. Ch. *Troil. and Cres.* (Aldine ed.), bk. iii. st. 57.

Seþþe, (1) *adv.* S. since, afterwards, then, 433, 902, 2047; — seþþen, 104, 206, 420; — seþen, 1370, 3672; — siþþe, 3050; — siþþen, †308; — sithen, †624; — sithe, †45; *also in the sense* ago, 1647, 4210; seþþe a gret while = since a great while, 1991; (2) *conj.* since, seeing that, after that, 329, 454, 456, 516, 4207; — seþ, 973.

Set, *pt. s.* dealt (a blow), 2775; — sette (set), 2459; *pt. pl.* setten, appointed, 1462.

Sete, 1 *p. s. pt.* did sit, sat, 1622. [It implies that the reciter of the story did not stand, but sat.] *See* Sittus.

Setled, *pp.* S. settled, sunk, 2452; —setteled, settled, composed, 4562.

Seue-niȝt, *n.* seven-night, a week, 766; — seueniȝt, 573.

Seurte, *n.* F. surety, 1463. Ch.

Seute, *n.* F. suit, case, 1080, 1250.

Seute, *n.* F. pursuit, chase, 2392, 2615.

Sewe, *v.* F. to follow, pursue, 2821; —sew, 2751; —seuwe, 581; *pr. s.* sewes, 1376; seweþ, 4897; *pt. s.* sewede, 3354; sewed, 418; sued, † 957; *pt. pl.* seweden, 2193, 2766; sewede, 204; sewed, 2190, 2388, 3506; *pp.* sewed, 1773; *imp. pl.* sewes, 1116. Ch.

Sexti, *num.* sixty, 1087.

Sigge, *v.* to say, † 8. *See* Seie.

Signifiaunce, *n.* F. significance, 2958. Ch.

Sikamour, *n.* a sycamore, 829.

Siken, *v.* S. to sigh, † 395;—sike, 691, 780; 1 *p. s. pr.* sike, 433; siȝh, 909; *pt. s.* siked, 1487, 1641, 4069; siȝt, 2971; *pres. pt.* sikande, 5448; sikand, 539, 662; sikende, 894; sikinde, 490; siking, 5189, 5209. Ch.

Siker, *adj.* S. secure, sure, 2361, 4366, 4657; *sup.* sikerest, surest, strongest, † 334. Ch.

Sikered, *pp.* secured, assured, 1463.

Siking, *n.* S. a sighing, lament, 5451;—sikyng, 601; *pl.* sikingges, 566.

Simple, *adj.* F. of low degree, 714.

Sin, *conj.* since, † 103.

Sinifieth, *pr. s.* signifieth, † 853. *Cf.* Signifiaunce.

Sire, *n.* F. sir, 326, 1250; — sir, 1095;—sere, 3570; *pl.* sires, 2248.

Siþe, *n.* S. *only in pl.* 780, 1755; (þousand) 1696, 5154; (six) 2098; *also in form* siþes, 103, 1038, 1265, 2470, 5200. Ch. [*The form* siþes = A.S. *síþas;* siþe = A.S. síþon *or* síþum, *forms which often follow numerals.*]

Sittus, *pr. s.* sits, 446; — sittes, 620; 1 *p. s. pt.* sete, 1622.

Siȝt, *n.* S. sight, 933, 1687, &c.

Siȝtes, *n. pl.* S. 924. "Sights, used for the singular."—M. But may it not mean *sighs*, which suits the context better, and requires no forcing? Cf. Du. *zucht*, a sigh; A.S. *siccet.* See *sihten* in Stratmann.

Skil, *n.* S. reason, 1680, 4098; — skille, 336. Ch.

Skoumfit, *pp.* F. discomfited, defeated, † 371; — skoumfyt (*miswritten* skoumkyt), † 86.

Slake, *v.* (1) *trans.* to slacken, relax, assuage, abate, 728, 778, 788, 1521; *pt. s.* slaked on = fell relaxingly upon, † 779; *pp.* slaked, 1507, 4796; (2) *intr. pr. s.* slakes, becomes less, 924; *pt. s.* slaked, died out, faded away, † 714. Icel. *slökva*, to extinguish, O.N. *slokna*, to die out. Suio-Goth. *släcka* (v. Ihre); Sw. *slakna*, to become slack, A.S. *slacian.* Ch.

Sle, *v.* S. to slay, 2797; *pt. s.* slow, 1196; slouȝ, 3890; *pt. pl.* slowen, 1275; slowe, 1165, 3459; *pp.* slawe, 1779, 3421, 3435; sleie, 379. Ch.

Sleiȝþe, *n.* S. sleight, 2151.

Slepend, *pres. pt.* sleeping, 2291; *pt. s.* slept, 656; *pt. pl.* slepten, 2292.

Sliȝli, *adv.* slily, secretly, insensibly, 792; — sliȝliche, 1065; — sliliche, 1413; — sleiliche, 637. Ch.

Slod, *pt. s.* S. slid, slipped, 792.

Smyland, *pres. part.* smiling, 991.

So, *adv.* S. so; *hence*, wat so = whatsoever, 607; what so = whatsoever, 621; who-so = whosoever, † 87. *See* Ho. So as = in like manner as, 338.

Soberliche, *adv.* soberly, i. e. seriously, prudently, 237; — soburli, 991. Ch.

Socoures, *imp. pl.* succour ye, 4349.

Sode, *pp.* S. sodden, 1849.

Softili, *adv.* softly, gently, 632, 677.

Soget, *n.* F. subject, 473; *pl.* sogettes, 463. Ch.

Solas, *n.* F. solace, comfort, enjoyment, 677, 1550. Ch.

Solas, *v.* F. to solace, delight, 1621.

Solempne, *adj.* F. *lit.* solemn; suitable to a great occasion, 1599; grand, famous, 1454. See *Solempne* in Roq.

Solempte, *n.* F. solemnity, solemnization of marriage, 1462.

Son. *See* Sowne.

Sond, *n.* S. *lit.* that which is *sent*, just as a *find* is that which is *found*; hence (1) a messenger, 1872; *pl.* sondes, 1078, 1308, 1594, 5271, † 291; (2) a message, 5195, 5199; (3) a God's-send, a gift, that which is sent us by God's grace, 4561; — sonde, 64, † 973; and hence we may explain the difficult phrase "seemely to sonde" in † 175 as meaning "a comely creature for a man to acquire;" cf. l. 64 of the *Werwolf*.

Sonken, *pp.* sunk, 4111; — sounk, † 1092.

Soothelich. *See* Soþli.

Sor, *n.* S. sorrow, 894; — sore, 891; *pl.* sores, 598; soris, 639. Cf. *sorwe* in l. 3543.

Sore, *adv.* S. sorely, 593; *comp.* sorer, 634.

Sorful, *adj.* S. sorrowful, 3541.

Sori, *adj.* worthless, 3509; painful, 3696.

Sorly, *adv.* 463. "Surely (?); see *Serliche*."—M. Probably miswritten for *serly*, as Sir F. Madden suggests, in which case I would explain it by *straightly*, *strictly*, *closely*; see note on *Serliche*. The French has, "sont il a lui oïl por voir, et font *du tot* a son voloir."

Sorwfuliche, *adv.* sorrowfully, 2971.

Soþe, *n.* S. truth, 108, 116, 238, 772, &c. Ch.

Soþ, *adj.* S. truê, 2799; soþly soþ, verily true, true indeed, 700.

Soþli, *adv.* truly, verily, 949, 1194; — soþly, 76, 379, 473; — soþliche, 1452; —soothelich, † 973.

Sotilest, *sup. adj.* most subtle, most secret, 2603.

Sotiliche, *adv.* subtly, 3117, 4783. Ch.

Souche, *v.* to suspect, 1983; *pt. s.* souched, 1059, 1065. *See* Schoche.

Soudiour, *n.* Low Lat. soldier, 3954; — sowdiour, 3951. Ch.

Souerayn, *n.* F. chief, leader, 4938; *gen. sing.* souerayne, provost's, 4695. "The title is still retained in some towns in Ireland."—M.

Souerayнest, *sup. adj.* most sovereign, chiefest, above all others, 524, 4932; *cf.* most souereyn, 518.

Souerayнli, *adv.* above all, chiefly, supremely, 1062.

Souked, *pt. s.* sucked, 2702. Ch.

Soupe, *v.* F. to sup, 3524. Ch.

Souȝt, *pt. s.* of *to seche*, but used in a peculiar manner; thus, souȝt forþ = found out his way onward, 4677; souȝt out = ventured out, went out, 4681; sought to = made for, reached, † 95; *pl.* souȝt to = reached, 2717; soute on-sunder = parted, 5455; souȝten on gate = went on their way, 5214. *Cf.* Seche.

Sowdiour. *See* Soudiour.

Sowne, *n.* F. sound, 210; — son, 39. [It is vulgar to say *gownd* for

gown, but custom has sanctioned *sound* for *soun*. Ch. has *soun*, but *sownde* is the form in the Prompt. Parv. A. D. 1440.]

Spakly, *adv.* wisely, knowingly, excellently, well, 19; *but more generally it is an expletive, meaning* quickly, soon, as in 966; — spakli, 3357, 3631; — spacly, 3399; — spacli, 3389, 3392, 3529, 4499, 4887, 5212. "The root is, apparently, to be sought in the Su-Goth. *spak*, Icel. *spakr*, sapiens. See Ihre." —M. The same root probably is that of Sc. *spae*, and of O. H. Ger. *spahi*, prudent; Dan. *spaae*, to predict; and probably also of Ger. *spähen*, Eng. *spy*, &c. The word occurs in the form *spakely* in Morte Arthur, ed. Perry, l. 2063.

Spaynols, *n. pl.* Spaniards, 3631, 3730, 3770, 5168, 5212; — spaynoles, 3399; — spaynolus, 3529; —spaynolnes, 3357.

Spede, *v.* (in *out-spede* or *out spede*) to succeed, 548; *pp.* spedde, 1293, 1715; (2) *trans.* to help, succour, in *pt. s.* spedde, 4922.

Spedeliche, *adv.* speedily, 19; — spedly, 5468, † 296.

Speiȝed, *pt. pl.* spied, saw, 3399. *Cf.* A-spie.

Speldes, *n. pl.* S. splinters, 3392, 3603, 3855. Cf. E. *spell* or *spill*, originally a chip of wood for lighting a candle. See *Spall*, *Spelk*, *Spell* in Wedgwood. "In the Prompt. Parv. we have *Spalle*, or chyppe. *Quisquilia, assula.* The latter term is still used in the North; v. Brockett."—M. See also *Spawl*, *Speall*, *Speel*, *Spelder*, *Spelk*, *Spelt*, in Halliwell, all meaning a *chip;* and cf. G. *spalten*, to split.

Spenen, *v.* S. to spend, † 362; *pp.* spended, distributed, 4324.

Spille, *v. trans.* to destroy, confound, overthrow, 966, 1891, 3009, 3437, 4100, 4395; *pp.* spilt, 3764; (2) *intrans.* to die, 1 *p. s. pr.* spille, 1535. Ch.

Spire, *v.* S. to inquire, seek, 4594. Sc. *speir*.

Spors, *n. pl.* spurs, 1482. Ch.

Spret, *n.* S. a boatman's pole, 2754; — sprite, a pole, † 1097. See *Spret* in Halliwell. "It is still preserved in the term bow-*sprit*." —M. A *sprit*-sail has its name from the pole that traverses it diagonally.

Stabled, *pp.* established, † 514.

Stalkeden, *pt. pl.* S. walked cautiously, one step at a time, 2728. "Dan. *stalke*, to go with high uplifted feet, with long steps;" Wedgwood. Ch.

Stalworþ, *adj.* S. strong, stout, 1950.

Standes, *imp. pl.* stand ye, 2263; *pt. pl.* stoden, 2728.

Stede, *n.* S. place, stead, 3521, † 303, † 769. Ch.

Stef, *adj.* S. stiff, strong, 2894, 3600, 3604; — styf = deep, profound, 4056;—stif, 3535.

Stelen, *adj.* of steel, 3535, 3859; —stel, † 416.

Stepchilderen, *n. pl.* 131.

Stepmoder, *n.* stepmother, 2640; *pl.* stepmoderes, 130, 4099.

Sterne, *adj.* S. stern, fierce, brave, 159, 2981, 3243; —sturne, 3409, 3780; *sup.* sturnest, 3226.

Sternely, *adv.* S. sternly, fiercely, bravely, boldly, 1158; — sternli, 2894, 3240; — sturnli, 3907. Ch.

Stert, *v.* S. to start off, gallop, 3600; 1 *p. s. pt.* sterte, I started off, I ran, 2277; *pt. s.* stert vp, started up, 4355; stirte vp, 3275. Ch.

Sterue, *v.* S. to die, † 445; *pp.* storue, died, 1515. Ch.

Stif. *See* Stef.

Stifly, *adv.* S. earnestly, eagerly,

profoundly, 736, 880; — stifli, 1657; — stiffuly, 219.

Stiked, *pp.* pierced, 3818.

Stint, *n.* S. stop, delay, 2350, 5379.

Stint, *v.* S. to stop, dwell, cease, pause, leave off, 159, 1612, 1961, 5232; — stinte, 1042; — stynt, 2781; *in transitive sense*, to make to leave off, 4056; *pt. s.* stint, 61, † 951; stinte, 1574; *pt. pl.* stinten, † 445; stint, † 386; *imp. s.* stint, 1652; *imp. pl.* stintes, 1206; stinteþ, 1113. "It is inserted in the Prompt. Parv. 'Styntyn'. *Pauso, desisto, subsisto.*'"—M. Ch.

Stirte vp. *See* Stert.

Stiþ, *adj.* S. strong, † 91.

Stiued, *pp.* baked hard, 3033. Sw. *stufva*, Dan. *stuve*, Eng. *stew*. See *Stew* in Wedgwood, and cf. F. *estuver*.

Stiward, *n.* S. a steward, 3378, 4211; *gen. sing.* stiwardes, 3446. Ch.

Stiȝt, *pp.* S. set, fixed, 4425.

Stiȝtli, *v.* S. to dispose, arrange, manage, 3841, 5379; stiȝtli togadere = arrange matters between them, 3281; *pt. s.* stiȝtled, 1199; (disposed of), 2899. *Cf.* P. Pl. Crede, 315.

Stightlich, *adv.* disposedly, in right order, in their proper place, † 293.

Stoden, *pt. pl.* stood, waited, 2728. *Cf.* Standes.

Stonen, *adj.* of stone, 1072.

Store, *n.* F. story, 4806.

Storue. *See* Sterue.

Stoteye, *n.* cunning, stratagem, 4985. Lat. *astutia*, O.F. *astuce*.

Stounde, *n.* S. a space of time, a while, 159, 1360, 1574, 1657, 2263, † 630; bi a stounde, for a short while, 1832; a stounde while, a moment, † 951. Ger. *stunde*. Ch.

Stoundemele, *adv.* = A.S. *stundmælum*, by little times, by degrees, 736. Cf. *stownd-meel* in Wycl. Gloss., and see Ch.

Stour, *n.* F. battle, conflict, 3536, 3907; — stoure, 4214; — sthoure, 3530. O.F. *estour*; cf. Icel. *styrr*, a battle. Ch.

Stoutliche, *adv.* stoutly, 1950.

Strane, *pr. pl.* strain, † 349. See the note.

Strawed, *pp.* strewn, 1617.

Strecche, *v.* S. to stretch, 219; *pt. s.* streyt, 2957; streiȝt him = went, 3279; *pp.* straiȝed, 3617; *imp. pl.* strecches, 1113.

Streiȝt, *adv.* straight, 3328; — streiȝet (*probably miswritten for* streiȝte), 3592. Ch.

Strek into a studie = fell into deep thought, 2981, 4038. A.S. *strican*, to pass on. Cf. G. *streichen*, to strike, to fly, &c. It is even applied to the flowing onward of a stream—"Ase strem that *striketh* stille:" Lyric Poetry; ed. T. Wright. Percy Soc. 1842, p. 44.

Striked, *pp.* streaked, strewn, 1617.

Striued, *pt. s.* strove, 4099.

Sturne, Sturnli. *See* Sterne, Sternely.

Studie, *n.* F. deep thought, 4038, 4056. *Cf.* l. 130.

Sty, *n.* S. a path, 212.

Sued, *pt. s.* followed, † 957. *See* Sewe.

Sufreded, *pt. s.* suffered (*miswritten for* Sufred), 783; *pp.* suffred, 1014; *imp. pl.* suffreþ, permit ye, 3337.

Sunder, *v. intr.* to part, 1052.

Sunner, *comp. adv.* sooner, 962, 3366.

Surgens of salerne = surgeons of Salerno, 964, 1576; *spelt* surgyens, 1033. *Cf.* "A surgyne of Salerne

ensorches his wondes." Morte Arthure; ed. Perry, l. 4312.

Suster, *n.* S. sister, 2643, 5093, †175; *gen. sing.* susteres, †236. Ch.

Swapped, *pp.* struck off with a sweeping blow, 3609. Cf. A.S. *swapan*, to sweep; *swipe*, a whip. Ch.

Swelt, *pt.* s. S. fainted, 4268. "Swalteryn for hete, or febylnesse, or other cawsys. *Exalo, sincopizo.*" Prompt. Parv. A.S. *sweltan*, to die, perish.

Swenged. *See* Swinge.

Sweteliche, *adv.* sweetly, 1329.

Sweting, *n.* S. sweetheart, a term of endearment, 916, 1537, 2799, 3088.

Sweuen, *n.* S. a dream, 2312, 2869, 2916, &c.; — sweuene, 658, 915, 2294; *pl.* sweuenes, †599. Ch.

Swiche, such, 414, 544, 710, 766, 781, &c.; — swich, 869. A.S. *swilc*. Ch.

Swifliest, *sup. adv.* swiftliest, 3454.

Swinge, *pr. pl.* they strike, 3439; *pt. s.* swenged, 3444; *pt. pl.* swonge, 3856. A.S. *swingan*, to beat.

Swiþe, *adv.* S. quickly, 41, 266, 1078, 1129, 1256, 1303, 1824, 4843, 5214; *before an adj.* swiþe = very, *as in* 1628, †107; *and as in* †546, †567, †833, *where it is spelt* swith. As swiþe = as quickly as may be, 108, 352, 837; alse swiþe, 3158. Swiþe vpon hast, very fast, very soon, 5195. [It was by his criticisms upon this word as occurring in Havelok that Mr Singer demonstrated his singular ignorance. He interprets *swiþe* to mean *a sword!* At this rate "a *swith* faire *sword*" in Alisaunder, l. 833, would be tautological indeed.]

Swowe, *n.* S. swoon, 87. Ch.

Tabours, *n. pl.* 3813.

Tach, *n.* F. spot, blemish, disgrace, †282. Ch.

Takes, *pr. s.* bestows, gives, 866; *pt. s.* tok, delivered, gave, 4683; *pp.* take, 1271, 1289; *put for* untake, 1280.

Tale. *See* Telle.

Taliage, *n.* F. a tax, impost, 5124. O.F. *taillage*.

Talke, *v.* to tell, 1018, 1322, &c.

Talliche, *adv.* in a seemly manner, 1706. "This obsolete and unusual word, from the S. *tela*, bene, is preserved in the Prompt. Parv. *Tally*, or semely and in semely wyse. *Decenter, eleganter.*"—M. Cf. Welsh *telaid*, graceful. The Fr. *taillé* sometimes means *well proportioned*.

Tamid, *pt. pl.* tamed, subdued, †84.

Targe, *v.* to tarry, † 211, † 410; *pt. s.* targed, †94. O. F. *targer*, whence *targa*, which occurs at p. 210, l. 8 of this volume.

Te, put for To, 1222. *Cf.* forte= for to, note to l. 788.

Teiȝed, *pp.* S. tied, 3226;—teied, 3232.

Telle, *v.* to tell, 34;—tele, 4993; —tale, 160; *pr. pl.* tellus, 198; *pt. s.* teld, 1475; told, 2009; *pt. pl.* telden, 1662; tolde, 1469; *pp.* teld, 2009; told, 1478; i-told, 1493; *imp. pl.* telles, 1346; telleþ, 4621.

Tended, *pt. pl.* attended, regarded, 1781; *pp.* tended of all, heard by all with attention, †997; *imp. pl.* tend, †7.

Tene, *n.* S. (1) sorrow, trouble, grief, 607, 1107, 2369, 2476, 3013, 3735, 5192; — teene, †142, †241, †285; *pl.* tenes, 1013; *also* (2) teene = anger, wrath, †94, †806; treie and tene, vexation and anger, 2073. Ch.

Tene, *v.* S. to vex, 2812 ;—teene, †380; *pt. s.* tened, 2025; *pp.* tened, 1992, 2201 ; teenid, †71 ; teened, †345. Ch.

Tenful, *adj.* S. vexatious, grievous, painful, 2666, 4712 ; — teeneful, † 282.

Tenefully, *adv.* grievously, 437 ; —teenfully, harmfully, † 353.

Tent, *n.* intent, purpose, 1662. See *Tent* in Halliwell.

Tentifly, *adv.* attentively, diligently, 2258 ;—tentyfli, 5124. Cf. *tentyf* in Ch.

Tenþedel, *n.* S. tenth part, 4715 ; —tiþedel, 5346. Cf. *twentiþe parte*, 5354.

þa, *pron.* that, the, 765, 2458, 3059, 3422 ; *rel. pron.* who, which, 843, 2536, 4115 ; *pl.* 5274 ; — þe (*rel. pron.*) 1687, 4422 ; *conj.* that, 544, 571, 903, 1983.

þa, put for þo, then, 571. *See* þo. [*Or else miswritten for* þan.]

þai, they, 11, &c. ;—þei, 24, &c. ; *pl.* þaim, them, 5407. *See* Hem.

þan, the, *acc. sing. of def. art.*, 91.

þan, then, 83, 92, &c. ; — þanne, 100, &c. ;—þen, † 730.

þan, than, 589 ;—þen, † 319.

þarto, thereto, 808.

þat, " when prefixed to a verb in the present tense, [sometimes] gives it a subjunctive or optative signification, as in 319, 2795, &c." — M. þat, those who, 3459. þatou, that thou, 3128, 5159 ; — þatow, 285, 914, 2787 ; — þattow, 4060.

þe, *rel. pron.* which, 4422 ; *pl.* þe, 1687. A.S. þe, which is often a relative pronoun, and is indeclinable.

þede, *n.* S. land, country, 1658.

þeder, *adv.* thither, 2235 ; — þider, 33.

þederward, *adv.* thitherward, 835.

þei, they. *See* þai.

þeiȝh, *conj.* S. though, 451, 689, 3342 ; — þeȝh, 919, 1017 ; — þei, 1563 ; — þouȝh, 349 ; — þouh3, 2347 ; — ðei, † 677. þei ðei = though they, † 511. Ch.

þemperour, put for þe *emperour*, 212, 218, &c. ; but written þe *emperowr*, 205. The pl. *þemperoures* also occurs, 1612.

þen, than, † 319. *See* þan.

þenchesoun = þe enchesoun, the occasion, the cause, 2624. Ch. *See* Encheson.

þende = þe ende, the end, 4869, 5092. Ch.

þenke, *v.* S. to think, 4908 ; 1 *p. s. pr.* þenke, 711 ; þenk, 1624 ; 2 *p. pl. pr.* thinken, †2 ; *pr. s. subj.* þenk, 3370 ; *imp. pl.* þinkes, 3701. *Impersonal*, seems, *as in* me þinkes, 430, 446, 622 ; me þinkeþ, 839 ; ȝou dere þinkes, 4727 ; ȝou lef þinkes, 384. Ch.

þennes, *adv.* thence, 2191 ; — ðennes, † 67. Ch.

þer, *adv.* S. where, 1627, 3319, &c. ;—þere, 216, 279, &c.

þer as, there where, 1232, 1708 ; —þere as, 3480.

þer a-boute, about it, 972.

þer-a-gayn, against it, 1450.

þer-mide, therewith, 5358.

þer-out, thence, 2820.

þer-tille, thereto, thereof, 2337.

þer-to-fore, before that time, until then, 3435, 2611.

þer-vnder, under it, 3034.

þer-wiȝt, therewith, 138.

þerþe, put for þe *erþe*, the earth, the ground, 3866, 5014. Ch.

þerwe, through, 107. *See* þrouȝ.

þewe, *n.* S. slave, bondman, 5514. A.S. *þeow*.

þewes, *n. pl.* S. manners, customs,

189, 342, 500, 518. A.S. *þeáw*. Ch.

Þider, *adv.* thither, 33, 752, 1082;—þeder, 2235.

Þilke, the same, 2954; *pl.* those, 3530. Ch.

Þinkes. *See* Þenke.

Þirles, *pr. s.* S. pierces, thrills through, 612, 3512; *pr. pl.* þurlen, 910; *pt. s.* þirled, 3696; thurlude, † 608; *pp.* þirled, 826. Ch.

Þies, *n. pl.* S. thighs, † 191.

Þis, *used in pl.* these, 2240, 4251;—þise, 849, 889. Ch.

Þo, *adv.* S. then, 1865, 3265, 3591, 4342, &c.;—þa, 571. A.S. *þa*. Ch.

Þo, *pl. pron.* those, them, 1757, 2285, 3648, † 125, † 137, † 233. A.S. *þá*.

Þo, *probably miswritten for* Þe, 2901.

Ðof, though, † 966. *See* Þeiȝh.

Þole, *v.* S. to suffer, 918, 1247; *pp.* þoled, 4514. Ch.

Þonges, *n. pl.* thongs, 1720, 1736.

Þonke, *n. sing.* S. thanks, 297.

Þonke, *v.* S. to thank, 3522;—þonk, 2794; 1 *p. s. pr.* 1248; *pr. s.* þonkes, 63; *pt. s.* þonked, 1003, 1038, 1269; thonked, 2143; *pt. pl.* þonked, 1716, 2444. Ch.

Þorou-oute, throughout, † 191.

Þort, *pt. s.* need, might, ought, 1076, 3563, 3671;—þurt, 3355, 4441, 4541, 4705, 4821, 4960; *pt. pl.* þurte, 3788. "It is derived immediately from S. *tharf-an, thearf-an, thurf-an, thorf-ian*, making in pt. t. *thorfte*, and is allied to a large class of words in the remaining Gothic dialects. Thus, '*dar* (= *thar*) no mon hem wite,' [l. 2434] in the *pr. t.* corresponds precisely to 'no gom *thurt* him wite,' [l. 4705] in the *pt. t.* Hence may be corrected the explanation of the word in Havelok, vv. 9, 10.

He was the wicteste man at nede,
That *thurte* riden on ani stede.

A few more instances may not be out of place. In Robert of Brunne's translation of the *Manuel des Pechés*, completed in 1303, we have:

He wax so mylde and so meke,
A mylder man *thurt* no man seke.
MS. Harl. 1701, fol. 39.

So also, in the Romance of the Seven Sages:

He toke a chamber nere that stede,
Him *thurt* noght care than for his brede.
MS. Cott. Galb. E. ix. fol. 30 *b*.

In Barbour's Bruce, according to Jamieson [p. 407] is written:

For scho wes syne the best lady,
And the fayrest, that men *thurst* se.

But we evidently ought to read *thurt* se."—M. The verb occurs even in Mœso-Gothic, as, "land bauhta jah *tharf* galeithan jah saihwan thata"—"I have bought land, and I *need* to go and see it," Luke xiv. 18; and in the *past* tense, "hwa gatawida Daweid, than *thaurfta* jah gredags was"—"how David did, when he *needed* and was hungry," Mark ii. 25.

Þourh, through, 4219. *See* Þrouȝ.

Þoutest, 2 *p. s. pt.* thoughtest, 1249;—þoutes, 4066; *pt. s.* þouȝt, 462; þout, 855; *impersonal*, me þout, 2298; him þouȝt, 673; þouȝt him loþ, 1255; hire þouȝt, 857; hire þout, 2908; him del þouȝt, 349.

Þouȝ, *pers. pron.* thou, 312, 692.

Þouȝh, þouhȝ. *See* Þeiȝh.

Þouȝt, *n.* S. thought, 4054;—þout, 4116;—ȝout (*read* þout?), 447; *pl.* þouȝtes, 861, 941, 4064.

Þridde, *adj.* S. third, 2866, 4941.

Þristliche, *adv.* S. *lit.* boldly; *hence*, beautifully (much as our poets use *bravely*), † 191.

Þro, *adj.* vehement, eager, 3264,

3564. *Shortened from the word following.*

þroli, *adj.* S. vehement, severe, 3518;—þroly, 612. A.S. *þreá-líc*, severe, dire. Cf. *thra* in Jamieson.

þroli, *adv.* vehemently, heartily, eagerly, earnestly, 910, 1038, 3176, 3407, 3664; — þroly, 127, 1696; —þroliche, 103, † 215. It occurs in P. Pl. A. ix. 107.

þropes, *n. pl.* S. thorpes, small villages, 2141. See Halliwell.

þrouȝ, *prep.* S. through, 459; — þurth, 216, 254, 522, 635, &c.; — þurȝth, 1320, 1643; — þurh, 2149; — þurȝh, 655; — thorou, † 612, † 897. [In l. 3799 we find *ȝourh*, probably miswritten for *þourh*, (*cf.* 4219), owing to confusion with the word *ȝour* following soon after.]

þrowe, *n.* S. time, while, a trice, 462, 622, 649, 679, &c. Ch.

þrusch, *n.* a thrush, 820. } There
þrustele, *n.* a throstle, 820. } seems to be a distinction here. Palsgrave gives *gryue* (*grive*) as the French for *thrush*, and *maulvis* (*mauvis* = Sc. *mavis*) as the French for *throstle*.

þurlen, Thurlude. *See* þirles.

þurth, þurh, þurȝh, þurȝth. *See* þrouȝ.

þurth-out, throughout, 1472; — þurth-oute, 5028; — þorou-oute, † 191.

Tid. *See* Tit.

Tide, *v.* S. (*often impers.*) to befall, betide, 3017;—tyde, 326; *pr. s. subj.* tide, 137, 607; tyde, 1560; *pt. s.* tidde, 198, 797, 1067, 1416, 2496, 3962; tid, 787, 4178; (*followed by an acc. case*) *pr. s.* him tides, † 681; *pt. s.* hem tidde, 1659, 1763, 2829; ȝou tidde, 1346; *pp.* tidde, 4918. *See also* Bi-tide.

Tide, *n.* S. time, season, 859, 4952.

Tidi, *adj.* timely, seasonable; *hence, also*, fair, brave (time), 1710; (host), 3556; (men), 4166; (carldom), 5384; — tidy (child), 160; (tidings), 1339; (words), 3077;— tide (werwolf), 2496; *sup.* tidiest, 3909; tideȝist, 3556. A.S. *tíd-líc*. Du. *tijdig*. G. *zeitig*.

Tidili, *adv.* seasonably, suitably, fitly, 4454;—tidely, 5482;—tidily, † 194.

Tiding, *n.* tidings, news, 1478; *pl.* tiding, 1493, 4877; tyding, 1075, 1134, 2677; tidinges, 4942; tiþinges, 250. [*The use of* tiding, tyding *as pl. forms is worth notice.*]

Tidly. *See* Titli.

Tiffed, *pt. s.* attired, dressed, arrayed, 2995; *pp.* tiffed, 2995, 3183. Cf. O. N. *typpa*. See Coleridge's Gloss. Index.

Tille, *prep.* S. unto, to, 232, 662, 864, 977, 4039; — till, † 605, † 1025;—til, 412, 788, 1475. Ch.

Timbred, *pp.* S. built, 2015.

Time, *v.* to happen, *in the phr.* so me wel time (so may it happen well to me, so may good betide me), 3570, 5433;—so me wel tyme, 279. A.S. *getimian*, Sw. *tima*, Dan. *times*, to happen. See the note in Wedgwood on the word *Beteem*. [Mr Wedgwood is of opinion that I have wrongly explained *tymen* in P. Pl. Crede, 742, and that "Y miȝt *tymen*" = I could find it in my heart to, as in the phr. "I could *teeme* it," for which see Halliwell, s. v. *Teem*. This would connect *tymen* in the *Crede* with A.S. *getimian*, to happen, not with A.S. *tymian*, to tame, compel.]

Tine, *v.* to lose, 299, 1365, † 358, † 378; — tyne, 358, 2176; 2 *p. pl. pr.* tine, 3015; *pp.* tint, † 30; tynt, 1560. O. N. *tyna*. [Marked as A.S. by Halliwell, but not given by Bosworth.]

Tire, *v.* to attire, 4478; *pp.* tyred, 263.

Tiþedel. *See* Tenþedel.

Tiþinges. *See* Tiding.

Tit, *adv.* quickly, soon, 1013, 1054, 3445, 3552, 4066, †90; — tyt, 1373, 4245; — tid, 753, 4167, 4192, 4763, †377, †549; — tiȝt, 133. As tit = as soon as might be, thereupon, 328, 3550; as tyt, 238, 292. As tit as, as soon as, 852, 2921; *sup.* tittest, soonest. Icel. *tilt*, from *tíð*, time. Sw. *tidt*, from *tid*, time. Hence the word is nearly related to *Tidily*. *Cf.* Titli, *also spelt* Tidly.

Titli, *adv.* quickly, soon, 2666; — titly, 1416, 2694, 3388; — titliche, 2528; — tytely, †7; — tiȝtli, 1706, 2282, 2476; — tiȝtly, 66, 285, 487, &c.; — tidly, †640, †809, †974. As titly, very soon, 2108. [In ll. 66 and 1706 it is possible that *tiȝtly* or *tiȝtli* may mean tightly, closely.]

To, *adv.* too, 11, 5024.

To, two, 2877. *See* Two.

To-, *verbal prefix.* It does not seem to have been hitherto sufficiently noted, that there are, in A.S., two distinct prefixes spelt alike. They are (1) *to-*, O. Sax. *te-*, Mœso-Goth. *dis-*, Ger. *zer-*, Lat. *dis-*, meaning *apart, asunder, in two pieces;* and (2) *to-*, Du. *toe-*, G. *zu-*, Mœso-Goth. *du-*, which is merely the prep. *to* in composition. Examples of the *first* are common in Early Eng., but of the *second* less so, which has led to an undue disregard of its force. Of the examples below, only the two last, *To-wawe* and *To-ȝelde*, belong to the latter class; and in the Wycl. Gloss. there is but *one*, viz. to-neȝhen = to approach. The verbs with this prefix are here collected.

To-barst, *pt. s.* S. burst asunder, 374. G. *zerbersten*, O. Sax. *tebrestan*. Ch.

To-brak, *pt. s.* S. brake in pieces, 3237 (see Judges ix. 53); *pp.* to-broke, utterly broken, 3410. G. *zerbrechen*. Ch.

To-clatered, *pp.* broken to pieces with a loud clatter, 2858. "This reading is rendered certain by a passage in the Romance of Ferumbras;

Ys scheld that was wyth gold y-batrid : & eke wyth ire ybounde,
Sone thay had hit al *to-clatrid:* the peeces laye on the grounde.
MS. Ashm. 60 β, fol. 12."—M.

I add another example.

"And on the hed he hym batrid
That hys hedd all *to-clatride*."
Sir Degaré, MS. Camb. Univ. Lib. Ff. ii. 38, fol. 259 *b*.

And see Halliwell.

Too-clef, *pt. s.* S. *intr.* broke in half, split asunder, †1009.

To-cleued, *pt. s.* S. *trans.* clove asunder, 3865.

To-drawe, *pp.* S. drawn asunder, 1564, 2020, 2086, 2138, 3740, 4773, 5479.

To-hewe, *pp.* S. hewn to pieces, 3412. G. *zerhauen*. Ch.

To-shett, *pt. s.* S. brake in half, †1008. *Lit.* shot asunder; *cf.* the quotation in Halliwell, "Hys fote *schett*" = his foot shot aside, slipped.

To-sprong, *pt. pl.* S. sprang asunder, cracked asunder. G. *zerspringen*.

To-tere, *v.* S. to tear in pieces, 3884; *pt. s.* to-tare, 3884. Ch.

To-twiȝt, *pt. s.* S. twitched violently, pulled up by the roots, 2097. See *To-twitch* in Coleridge's Gloss. Index.

To-wawe, *v.* S. move about, toddle to and fro like a child, 19. *Wawe* = *wag* is common; but it is also found in the exact sense used here.

"Thanne is the child quic anon : of strenȝthe naveth hit noȝt
Enes for to *wawe:* er hit beo furthe i-broȝt;

Of thulke soule hath ech man: that may *wawi* and gon," &c. Pop. Treatises on Science, ed. T. Wright, p. 139.

The prefix *to-* has here nearly the force of the G. *zu-* in *zuwanken*. The compound verb is very rare, but it is the same, I believe, as occurs in a transitive sense in the following—" weder bið fæger . . . beoð wolcen *to-wegen;*" i. e. "the weather is fair, the clouds are *removed*." *Phœnix*, pt. III. (l. 2); in Codex Exoniensis, ed. Thorpe. Cf. Sc. "*wauchle*, to move from side to side in walking, like a young child;" Jamieson. Cf. G. *zuwanken*, *zugehen*, A. S. *To-gewægan*, to carry to.

To-ȝelde, *pt. s.* yielded to; vp to-ȝelde = yielded up to, *with the* to *repeated*, 3924. Cf. G. *zugeben*, to grant, as showing the force of the prefix *to-*.

To-fore, *prep.* S. before, 2091; *also adv.* before (of time), 142, 793, 925, 2446, &c.; (of place), 2390; — to-for, 2886; — tofore, † 46, † 930. Ch.

To-gaderes, *adv.* S. together, 699; —to-geder, 909;—to-gidere, 1011.

Tokeneþ, *pr. s.* betokens, 2937.

Tol, *n.* tool; egge-tol = edged tool, weapon, 3755.

Tom, *n.* leisure, 3778. Cf. Sc. *toom*, Dan. and Sw. *tom*, vacant. The word occurs in P. Pl. A. ii. 160. "Toom. *Spacium, tempus, opportunitas.*" Prompt. Parv.

Tombled, *pt. s.* tumbled, 2776, 3866. *See* Tumbel.

Ton, *n. pl.* toes, † 194. Ch.

Too-clef. *See the word preceding* To-cleued.

Top ouer tail, head over heels, 2776. "A proverbial phrase, used also in Lyndsay, which I believe is not yet obsolete."—M. It occurs in Barbour's Brus, ed. Jamieson, v. 755. Halliwell gives another instance.

Tor, *adj.* difficult, 1428, 5143; — toor, 5066. "From the Su-G. and Isl. *tor*, difficile. This term, spelled *tore* and *teir*, occurs also in the three Romances of *Sir Gawayne*, in the *Houlate*, pt. 2. st. 9, and in *Rauf Coilzear*, ap. Laing, st. 37." —M. See *Gawayne and Grene Knizt*, ed. Morris, 165, 719.

To-riȝtes, 3066, &c. *See* Riȝtes.

Touche, *v.* F. to touch upon, talk, treat of, 5033; 1 *p. s. pt.* touched, 4108; *pt. s.* toched, 4991; *pt. pl.* touched, 4993; *pt. s.* (= belonged to), 5384; *pres. part.* touchend, 1383.

Tour, *n.* F. a tower, 2015. Ch.

Tow, *used for* þou (thou), after þat preceding, 4478. *Cf.* Seidestow, &c.

To-ward, *adv.* S. forward, forthcoming, ready at hand, 1443;— toward, 1101. Cf. *Toward* in Nares.

To-heuene-ward, towards heaven, 102.

Trattes, *n. pl.* old women, spoken contemptuously, 4769. " See Jamieson's notes on this word, and Tyrwhitt on Chauc. v. 7164. The most obvious etymon is Teut. *trot*, a woman, an old woman, a witch. See Wachter, *in v.*"—M. See also *Trot* in Halliwell; and cf.

" An aged *trot* and tough did marie with a lad."

Of a contrerie mariage, by G. Turberville, ab. A.D. 1567.

Trauaile, *n.* F. labour, 1560;— trauayle, 358, 2176; — trawayle, 299; *pl.* trauayles, 2666, 4712.

Traysted, *pp.* F. deceived, betrayed, 2075, 4769. " See Jamieson, in v. *Betreyss*, and Skinner. From the latter Chatterton borrowed the word, therefore Bryant might have saved himself the trouble of quoting passages from the present poem to prove the authenticity of the phan-

tom Rowley."—M. Cf. O. F. *traistre*, a traitor.

Treie, *n.* S. vexation, 2073. See the note.

Trestes, 2 *p. s. pr.* trustest, 970.

Trewe, *adj.* S. true; leue me for trewe = believe me to be true, 1562;—trew, 596.

Triacle, *n.* treacle, i. e. an antidote against poisons and diseases, † 198. See *Treacle* in Prompt. Parv., and Way's note. Ch.

Trie, *adj.* F. *lit.* tried, proved; *hence* choice, excellent, noble; (tree), 761; (attire), 1721, 4542; (lords), 1289; (order), 4465; (towers), † 16; (town), † 157; (treacle), † 198; (places), † 333; (folk), † 345;—tri (tree), 753, 789; —trye (game), 387; *sup.* triest, 1443. "The same word occurs in the Romance of *Richard Coer de Lion*, l. 6450, 'with fyn syluyr and gold ful *trye*;' in the Romance of *Octavian*, l. 1467, 'of Sarsyns stout and *trye*;' in Chaucer's *Cant. T.* 'with suger that is *trie*;' and in the poems of Friar Michael Kyldare, MS. Harl. 913, which contain the earliest instances of it I have yet met with. It is undoubtedly an abbreviation of the *pp. tried*, as shown by the various readings of the Wycliffite texts of the Bible, Exod. c. xvi. and Lev. c. ii., where is the expression *trie* or *tried* flour." — M. So also *trieste*, *trieest*, and *tryest* are various readings for *triedest* in P. Pl. A. i. 126, q. v.

Trieliche, *adv.* choicely, excellently (*always joined with* a-tired), 4819; — triliche, 1228; — tryli, 3198; — tri3liche, 4861.

Trist, *imp. s.* S. trust thou, † 489.

Tristy, *adj.* trusty, 596, 1228, 2015, † 329, † 952.

Tri3ed, *pt. s.* 3556, *in* "& tri3ed him to a tidi ost." Explained by Sir F. Madden to mean "drew, joined." But I believe that *him to* is put for *to him*, (a not uncommon usage, *cf.* ll. 662, 864, &c.), and then *tri3ed to him* = chose out for himself, picked out the best men he could find, which is the drift of the passage. Cotgrave gives "*Trier*, to pick, chuse, cull out from among others;" which further explains why the word *trie* bears the sense of *choice*. *See* Trie.

Trompes, *n. pl.* trumpets, 3358; —trumpes, 3813.

Trowe, *v.* S. to believe, trow, hold for a truth, 4840; 1 *p. s. pr.* trowe, 540, 1031, 1995; trow, 299; *pt. s.* trowed, 1018; trowede, 1480; *pt. pl.* trowed, † 919; *imp. s.* trowe, 4363; *imp. pl.* trowe þ, 2112. Ch. [In l. 1480 perhaps we should read *mysse-trowede* as one word; but l. 141 renders this doubtful.]

Trusse, *v.* to pack up, † 549. Cf. *Havelok*, 2017.

Trustili, *adv.* S. courageously, 3904.

Tumbel, *pr. s. subj.* tumble, 3388. *See* Tombled.

Tunnes, *n. pl.* S. casks, 2743.

Tvo, two, 1688, 1698, 1777, 2162, &c.;—to, 2877.

Tweie, two, 2008, 2147;—tweine, 2507;—tweyne, 812, 929, 1528. [The distinction between this word and *tvo* is that *tweie* is used *after the personal pronouns* vs, hem, þei, &c.; whilst *tvo* precedes a noun.]

Twentiþe, twentieth, 5354.

Twi3es, *adv.* twice, 3721.

Twynne, *v.* S. to part, 1572. Ch.

Tyr, *n.* F. attire, 1725. *Cf.* A-tir.

Uch, each, every, 776, 884, 1488; —uche, 5000;—vch a, 511.

Venge, *v.* F. to avenge, 5197; *cf.* auenged, *pp.*, † 281.

Venorye, *n.* F. beasts of the chase, game, 1685.

Verali, *adv.* verily, 5197; — veraly, 639.

Vitayles, *n. pl.* F. victuals, 1121. Ch.

Vmbe-cast, *pp.* S. beset, surrounded, 2319, 4693. *Cf.* Bi-cast. [The prefix is the A.S. *ymb-*, Old Saxon *umbi-*, G. *um-*, Du. Dan. and Sw. *om-*, Gk. *αμφι-*.]

Unclainte, *pr. s.* † 1172. This is surely miswritten for *unclamte* = unclamped, unfastened, from A.S. *clam*, a clamp. The only difference between *m* and *in*, in the handwriting of the MS., would consist in there being a dot over the first of the three downstrokes. The copyist may have been thinking of *unchainte* = unchained.

Vndede, *pt. s.* undid, unfastened, 4846; *pp.* vndo, 2078.

Vnder-fonge, *v.* S. to take, receive, 5259.

Vndersto (*miswritten for* vnderston), *pr. pl.* they understand, 5533; *pt. s.* vnderstod, 877; *pp.* vnderston, 5262.

Vnglad, *adj.* S. joyless, 2106.

Ungome, *v.* S. to unman, to drive the men away from, † 294. [The meaning is clear, but I know of no other instance of the word.] *Cf.* Gome.

Vn-hendly, *adv.* S. discourteously, 492. *Cf.* Hende.

Un-hent, *pp.* S. uncaught, uncaptured, 1671. *Cf.* Hent.

Unkinde, *adj.* S. unnatural, †34. Ch.

Unkouthe, *adj.* unknown, unfamiliar, strange, † 48;—unkouth, unknown, not understood, † 683. Ch.

Vnneþe, *adv.* S. scarcely, 132. Ch.

Vn-tetche, *n.* disgraceful action, 509. *Tetche* is another form of *Tach*, q. v. The O.F. *tache* means a quality or disposition, either *good* or *bad*; so in the Prompt. Parv. "*Tetche*, or maner of condycyone, *Mos, condicio.*" Hence *vn-tetche* means an *evil* habit, or *disgràceful* act. At the same time, as the word was most commonly used in a *bad* sense, we find *tach* used for a *blemish*. See *tache, tacher, teche*, in Roq.; *tacches* in P. Pl.; *tache* in Halliwell and Cotgrave.

Vntille, *prep.* unto, 2998.

Vntydi, *n. pl.* mean, poor, 1455. *Cf.* Tidi.

Unwele, *adj.* S. wicked, † 513. *Well* = good, *adj.* is given in Coleridge's Gloss. Index.

Vn-woundet, *pp.* unwounded, 1280.

Vowche-sauf, *imp. s.* vouchsafe, grant, 1449. *Cf.* Fouche. Ch.

Vp, *prep.* S. upon, 2378, 2809. Cf. G. *auf*.

Vp happe, perhaps, 2722.

Vp-keuerede, *pt. s.* recovered, rose again, 2759.

Vp-leped, *pt. s.* leapt up, 3283.

Vp-rise, *v.* S. to rise up, 1791; *pr. s.* vp-rises, 872. Ch.

Vp-riȝttes, upright, 1789. *Cf.* Riȝtes.

Wahan, Wan, Wanne. *See* Whan.

Waie, *miswritten for* weie, † 530. *See* Weiȝ.

Waite, *v.* F. (1) *intr.* to watch, look about, spy about, 1821, † 760; —wayte, 1023; *pt. s.* waited, 2729; waited him, 1230; waited out, 2425; wayted, 835; wayted aboute, 682; weited, 3030; *pt. pl.* wayteden out, 3300; weyteden out, 5018; waited aboute, 2231; *pres. part.* waytend out, 2982; waitende out, 3713; weytende to, 779. (2) *trans.* to be on the look-out for, watch for, seek after, *pr. s.* waites him = seeks out

for himself, † 808; *inf.* whayte, 1885; waite, 4051; wayte, 148. [*In the latter sense it generally has a* double *accusative.*] *Cf.* A-weite. O.F. *waiter, gaiter.* See *Wait* in Wedgwood; and cf. "*Waytyn* or dōne harme, waytyn to harme. *Insidior.*" Prompt. Parv.

Wake, *v.* S. to watch, keep awake, 2007.

Walken, *v.* S. to walk, go, 2129; *pres. pt.* walkende, 2427.

Wallop, *n.* F. gallop; *hence*, a wallop, on the gallop, 1770. "In the Prompt. Parv. we read, '*Waloppynge* of horse. *Voluptacio;*' and '*Waloppōn*, as horse. *Volupto.*'" —M. See Gloss. to *Romans of Partenay.*

Walt, Walte. *See* Welde.

Waltres, 2 *p. s. pr.* S. waverest, rollest about, 947. See *Welt* and *Welter* in Jamieson, *Waltrynge* and *Welwynge* in Prompt. Parv., and *Wallow, Welter* in Wedgwood. A.S. *wealtian*, to reel. See Wycl. Gloss.

Wan, Wanne (when). *See* Whan.

Wan (*pt. s.* won). *See* Winne.

War, *adv.* where, 3832. *See* Whar.

War, *adj.* S. aware, 1201, 1238, 1769, 3594, 3635, 3827; — whar, 3382.

Warchet. *See* Waryshe.

-Ward; *implying direction. See* Cheping-ward, To-ward.

Ward, *n.* F. guard, keeping, 1370, 2202; —warde, 376, 961. Ch.

Warded, *pp.* F. guarded, kept, 101.

Wardeyn, *n.* F. commander, 1104.

Ware, *pt. pl.* = were, 420.

Warfore, *adv.* S. wherefore, 2027; —werfore, 1081.

Warison, *n.* F. reward, 2259; — warcson, 2253, 2379. O. F. *warison, garison;* from *garir*, to guard. *Cf.* Garisun. Ch.

Warnestured, *pp.* furnished, provided, 1121. O. F. *warnesture*, provisions; Roq. Cf. *Warnestore* in Ch.

Warnished, *pp.* furnished, 1083. O.F. *warnir, garnir.* Roq.

Warysche, *v.* F. to cure, 4283; *pp.* warsched, 604; warchet = guarded, 2622. O.F. *garir*, guérir, préserver, garantir. Roq. "In the first sense it occurs [used intransitively] in the Prompt. Parv. '*Warschyn*' or *recuryn* of sekenesse. *Convalesco, convaleo.*'"—M. Ch. Wycl. Gloss.

Was, *used for* had, 538. "This is still provincial."—M.

Waschen, *pp.* washed, 5070; — whasche, 2997.

Wast, *in phr.* in wast = in waste, i.e. in vain, 703, 718, 802, 1660, &c.

Wat, *put for* What, 2829, 4246. Wat so, whatsoever, 607.

Wateren, *v.* S. to water, provide with water, 3234. Wycl. Gloss.

Wawe, *n.* S. wall, 19. So in Sir F. Madden's edition; but see *To-wawe*, and the note on this line.

Wax, Waxen. *See* Wexe.

Waywarde, *adj.* S. (*used as sb.*) wayward, perverse, averse, 3985.

Wayned, *pt. pl.* 2386. Wayned from = got away from, departed. "The original meaning seems to be that of gaining, getting. In some O.E. works *wayne* is used like our word *get.*

Than past up the proude quene into preve chambre,
Waynes out at wyndow, and waytes aboute.
Alexander, ed. Stevenson, 944."

Quoted by Morris, Gloss. to *Allit. Poems.* The context shews that *waynes out* in this quotation = puts out her head. See also P. Pl. A. vi. 92, where for *wynne vp*, MSS. of B-type have *wayne vp. Cf.*

Winne. [*Obs.* This word is sometimes confused with *wayue*, O.F. *guesver*.]

Wede, *n.* S. clothes, armour, 585, 3535; *pl.* wedes, 1932, 2563, 3087. Ch.

Weder, *n.* S. weather, 2440; *pl.* wederes, 5216. Ch.

Wei, *n.* S. a way, road, 1578; — weie, 1732; — wey, 205, 1781; — weye, 1019; *pl.* weies, 2131, 2150; weyes, 1224; weiȝes, 2207, 3507, 4677. In a mile wei = in a short space, i.e. in a short time, 1578.

Weih, *n.* S. a balance, 947. Waltres in a weih = waverest in a balance; as we now say, tremblest in the balance. A.S. *wǽge*, *wége*, a *weighing* machine, balance. Cf. *Weihe*, Wycl. Gloss.

Weilawey, *interj.* S. alas! 935. A.S. *wa*, *la wa* = wo, lo! wo! *whence* wei la wey, *of which* well-away *is an unmeaning corruption.*

Weited, Weytende. *See* Waite.

Weiȝ, *n.* S. a man, 4466;—weiȝh, 281, 745, 790, 793, &c.; — weie, † 777; — weih, † 1184; — waie, † 530; — whiȝ, 4463; — wiȝh, 565, 724, 2021, 2415; *pl.* weies, † 164, † 653; whiȝes, 1221, 3456; whieȝs, 3364; wies, 208; wiȝes, 239, 2036, 2521; wiȝhes, 1932; wieȝs, 2709; wieȝes, 3652. A.S. *wiga*, warrior, from *wig*, war.

Weiȝes, *n.* S. wise, manner, 5526. *A better spelling is* Wice, q. v.

Wel, *adv.* S. very; *thus*, wel old, very old, 4; wel long, very long, 936; wel gret, very great, 1545; wel sore, very sorely, 1552; wel wo, very woful, 1642; wel god spede, very good pace, 1846. Wel is, it is a good thing for (*the opposite of* wo is), 3303.

Welde, *v.* S. to wield, have power over; *hence*, to possess, enjoy, have, 2946, 5157, † 206; — weld, 76, 135, 717, 1356, 1385, 1453, 2017, 2253, 2959, 4741; 1 *p. s. pr.* weld, 282, 4000; *pr. s.* weldes, 712, 1651, 1873, 3313, 3752, 3753, 3832, 4466; weldes his hele, enjoys his health, 1375, 1377; weldes a wrong, enjoys a possession wrongfully, † 87; *pt. s.* walt, 144, 2990, 3887, 4730; walte, † 450; welt 142, 230, 3710, 4835; welte, 3680; 2 *p. pl. pt.* walt, 3691; *pp.* welt, 856. [*It often has little more force than simply.* to have.] *Cf.* Wycl. Gloss.

Wele, *n.* S. wealth, 1325, 3658, 4073, 5046, 5054. [*In phr.* "worchip and wele," *except in* 4073.] Ch.

Wem, *n.* S. blemish, injury, 2460. Ch.

Wen. *See* Whan.

Wende, *v.* S. to go, 320, 329, 425, 2089; — wend, 771, † 727; —wen[d], 5185; wende of, to depart, 1663; 1 *p. s. pr.* wende, 1555; 2 *p. s. pr.* wendest, 1555; *pr. s.* wendes, 232, 1640, 1897; wendes of, departs from, 5537; wendeþ, 408; *pt. s.* went, 1839, 2069; wende, 259; *pt. pl.* went, 4201; *imp. pl.* wendeþ, 3338; *pres. pt.* wending, 1821. *Phrase:* be went = be gone to, *as in* is went, 701, 2064; was went, 15, 28, 376, 1984, 2109; were went, 208, 5409; be went, 2071. *We also find* was gon, 1859; *and* haue went, 1853.

Wene, *v.* S. to ween, think, expect, suppose, 554, 706, 715; 1 *p. s. pr.* wene, 931; 2 *p. s. pr.* wenestow = wenest þou, 1558; *pr. s.* weneþ, 3116; 2 *p. pl. pr.* wene, 4205; *pt. s.* wende, 680, 687, 731, 1853, 1943; wend, 229, 671, 1488, 1773, 4982, † 789; wen[d], 261; *pt. pl.* wend, 2765. Ch.

Wenne, 4263. *See* Winne.

Wepe, *v.* S. to weep, 310; *pt. s.* wepte, 38; wept, 45; wep, 50; wepud, 2914; *part. pres.* wepand, 1668; wepande, 2357, 2419. Ch.

Wer, *n.* doubt, perplexity, 3513. "Tyrwhitt considers this word, and, apparently, with reason, to be the Fr. *guerre*. See Gloss. to Chaucer, and Jamieson's examples, in v."—M. Perhaps it may be better to say. rather, that *guerre* is obviously from a Teutonic source. Cf. Du. *werre*, contention (Kilian); G. *wirre*, confused; *gewirre*, confusion. In fact, the word occurs in O. Saxon. "The thit *giuuer* frumid, he who makes a *sedition*, or *disturbance*." Heliand, ed. Schmeller, p. 148, l. 1. *Cf.* Werre.

Wer, *adv.* where, 3030; — were, 222, 4839.

Werche, *v.* to work, 650; — wirche, 1173, 1372, 2244, 2323, 3925, 4790; — wirch, † 517; — wirchen, 468, † 412; — worche, 257, 548, 809; *pr. s.* werches, 1207; wirches, 1176; worcheþ, 2579; *imp. s.* wirche, 667. *And see* Wrouȝt.

Werder, *adj.* 3185. Sir F. Madden suggests "wild," but doubtfully. By a mere guess, I suggest *werder-bestes* = harmful beasts, as if from *werder*, a harmer, from the A.S. *wyrdan*, to harm, which is used in the Ormulum in the forms *weordenn* and *werdenn*. The word is very plain in the MS., or we might conjecture it to be an error for *wonder* = wonderful, as in ll. 1873, 2786.

Werfore, wherefore, 1081.

Werne, *v.* S. to refuse, oppose, 305; 2 *p. pl. pr.* wern, † 1105; *pt. pl.* werned, † 66, † 905. Ch.

Werre, *n.* S. war, 1083, 2349, 2613, 2645;—wer, 2625.

Werre, *v.* S. to war, 1070, 1077, 1173; *pp.* werred, 3997.

Werwolf, *n.* S. man-wolf, *passim; pl.* werwolfs, 2540. *Cf.* P. Pl. Crede, 459.

Wery, *adj.* S. weary, 2236; wo wery, weary with woe, 793. See the note.

Weues, *pr. s. trans.* sways, causes to waver, makes to vacillate, causes to change from hope to fear and from fear to hope, keeps in agitation, 922; *infin. intr.* weue, waver or hover in the air, 4368. [*In the* latter case, Sir F. Madden calls it the *pp.*, but we may translate it, "the ashes of her body (shall) waver in the wind." The A.S. verb is *wafian*, to waver. Cf. G. *weben*, (intr.) to float about.]

Weued, *pt. s.* raised, lifted, 2978. [The word implies a *swaying* or quivering motion in the thing lifted; see the preceding word. Cf. "*wefden* up þa castles ȝate" = weighed up the castle-gate; *Lazamon*, iii. 373; and see *Wevynge* in Prompt. Parv. In P. Pl. A. vi. 92, for *To wynne vp þe wiket-ȝat* two MSS. have *To weue out þe wyket.*]

Wexe, *v.* S. to grow, become, 124; — wex, 563, 737, † 668; *pr. s. subj.* wex, 266; *pt. s.* wax, 630, 785, 828, 1035, 1204, 1911, 2053, 2222, 4095; wex to = became, 140; *pt. pl.* waxen, 2931; *pp.* wox, 109, 798; wexen, 1776; woxen, † 54. Ch.

Whayte. *See* Waite.

Wham, *pron.* S. whom, 314, 441, 769, 1275, 4155. [In l. 4340 it is spelt *whan*, unless we supply *hire*, which is preferable.]

Whan, *pt. s.* procured, 2852. *See* Winne.

Whan, *adv.* when, 305, 308, 744, &c.;—whanne, 80, 145, &c.;—wanne, 11, 854, 1262;—wan, 2484, 4026; — wen, 2821; — wahan, (*read* whan?), 1572.

Whar, *adv.* where, 394; — war, 3832. Wharbi, why, 2256.

Whar, *adj.* aware, 3382. *See* War.

Whas, *pron.* whose, 1441.

Whas, *put for* Was, 3912.

Whasche, *pp.* washed, 2997. *See* Waschen.

What = what if, 549.

What rink so, whatsoever man, 1193.

What, *put for* Wot, knows, 1172. *See* Wite.

Whatow, *put for* What þow, what thou, 4066.

Whedir, Whederward. *See* Whider.

Whennes, *adv.* whence, 478, 3122.

Where, *put for* Were, 261, 502, 2750.

Where, *adv.* whether, 2946; — wher, 799. Ch.

Where as, where that, 1782.

Whiche, *used in the sense* what sort of, 1777, 2705, 3118. *See* Wich.

Whider, *adv.* whither, 104, 701, 948, 2689;—whedir, 2309. *Whider* sometimes has the sense of *where*, as in 2486.

Whiderward, *adv.* whither, in what direction, 105, 223, 2167; — whederward, 2827. Whiderward as, wherever, 2830.

While, *n.* S. while, time, 15, 574; —wile, 79, 487;—wille, 988.

While, *adv.* whilst, 2537;—wile, 537; — whille, 129; — wil, 1492, 2277, 5228, 5536. Ch.

Whiles, *adv.* S. meanwhile, 2736. "Is formed, like *nedes*, from the *gen. case*. Hence our *whilst*."—M. Cf. *Whilis*, Wycl. Gloss.

Whiles, *n. pl.* S. wiles, 862.

Whilum, *adv.* sometimes, at times, 1788; — whilom, in former times, formerly, 2846. [In † 521 *whilome* is a gloss for *ilome*, q. v.] As *whiles* is the *gen. sing.* of A.S. *hwil*, so *whilum* is the *dat. plural*. Ch.

White, *v.* *See* Wite (to blame).

Whiȝ, *n.* *See* Weiȝ.

Whiȝt, *n.* *See* Wiȝt.

Wic. *See* Wicke.

Wicche, *v.* S. to practise witchcraft, use sorcery, 2539; *pp.* wicched, bewitched, 4427. A.S. *wiccian*.

Wicchecraft, *n.* S. witchcraft, 118, 120, 4427;—wichecraft, 4044.

Wice, *n.* S. wise, way, 4380. *Cf.* Weiȝes, Wise.

Wich, *pron. acc. sing.* what, 3981; *acc. pl. masc.* whom, 4093, 4161. Wiche a = what sort of a, 3354; wiche an = what sort of a (*referring to the* hart *only, and we must suppose* wiche *repeated before* an hinde), 2820.

Wicke, *adj.* wicked, evil, bad, 4599;—wic, 4652; — wicked (*applied to* ways), 3507. Ch.

Wide, *v.* S. to grow mad, 1509. The A.S. is *wedan*, and *wide* is perhaps miswritten for *wede*. *Cf.* A-wede.

Wide where a-boute, *adv.* S. abroad, everywhere, 2605, 4763; — wide wher a-boute, 82, 2202. The word wide went, 1569. "A phrase much used in our old writers. See notes to Havelok, l. 959."—M. *Cf.* P. Pl. A. ix. 53, and Ch.

Wieȝs, Wieȝes. *See* Weiȝ.

Wikkedly, *adv.* S. cruelly, dangerously, 1218.

Wil, Wile, Wille. *See* While.

Willeful, *adj.* S. willing, desirous, bent upon, 5493; — wilfull, † 412. Wycl. Gloss.

Wilfulli, *adv.* S. willingly, with good will, readily, heartily, 1782, 3300, 3322, 4733; — wilsfully, † 590. Ch.

Willenyng, *n.* S. wish, desire, choice, 3983. Cf. A.S. *willnung*.

William, *gen. case*, 1221, 1372.

Wilne, *v.* S. to wish for, desire, 719, 3563, 4597, 4736; — willne, 3983, 3985; 1 *p. s. pr.* wilne,

4732; 2 *p. pl. pr.* wilne, 3343; *pr. s.* wilnes, 265, 301, † 622; *pr. pl.* wilnen after, 59; 1 *p. s. pt.* wilned, 4132; *pt. s.* wilned, 3925, 4590; *imp. s.* wilne, 4734; *pp.* wilned, 2134. Ch.

Wilsfully. *See* Wilfulli.

Wilsum, *adj.* S. loved, desirable, amiable, 5394.

Winne, *v.* S. to win, acquire, come (*used much as we use* get *colloquially*); winne in siȝt = get in sight, come in sight, 94; winne hom = get home, 2457; winne him awei = get him away, 3623; winne þe = get hold of thee, 4263; winne nere him, get near him, 3889; 1 *p. s. pt.* wan, 2026; *pt. s.* wan (got), 190, 1920, 2500; (came), 2498; wanne, 3973; whan, 2852; wan in (came in), 4237; wan bi (went by), 417; wan vp (got up), 3289; *pt. pl.* wonne, 1224, 2242; *pp.* wonne, 82, 1117.

Wirch, Wirchen, Wirches. *See* Werche.

Wirdernesse, *probably an error for* wildernesse, 3311.

Wise, *n.* S. way, manner, 485, 490, &c.;—wice, 4380. Ch.

Wisli, *adv.* S. truly, verily, 2947, 3118;—wisly, 661;—wiseli, 4615; —wisseli, 673, 721; wislich, † 754. Ch.

Wisse, *v. tr.* S. to make to know, to teach, instruct, shew, tell, 1356, 1666, 2110, 3086; (to protect), † 806; — wissen, 640; *pr. s. subj.* wisse, 1804; *pt. s.* wissed, 2207, 2716, 2727; wist, 172; *pt. pl.* wissed, 5445; *imp. s.* wisses, 4004. P. Pl.

Wisse; *phr.* i wot wel to wisse, I know for certain, 3397. *Here* wisse *seems to be an adj.* (A.S. *gewis*, Old S. *uuiss*, certain). *Cf.* l. 4114.

Wit-oute, *prep.* without, 2573.

Wite, *v.* S. to blame, 458, 530, 4705, † 972; — white, 304; 1 *p. s. pr.* wite, 900; *pp.* wited, 519; *imp. pl.* witeþ, 2069; wite, 4335, 4600, 5525. Ch.

Wite, *v.* to keep, guard, preserve, 257; 2 *p. s. pr. subj.* 302; *pt. s.* wited, 176; *imp. pl.* witeþ, 3008. *See* Gloss. to Havelok and Laȝamon.

Wite, *v.* S. to know, 542, 560, 1458, 2081, 2733, &c.; 1 *p. s. pr.* wot, 105, 239, 316, 478, 697, &c.; wott, † 754; 2 *p. s. pr.* wost, 4065; wostou (= wost þou), 2274; *pr. s.* wot, 314, 1871; what, 1172; 2 *p. pl. pr.* witen, 4328; 2 *p. s. pr. subj.* wite, 281; *pr. s. subj.* wite, 937; *pt. s.* wist, 40, 375, 690, 951, 1118, † 334, &c.; wiste, 145, 830, 836; *pt. pl.* wisten, 2195, 5283, † 372; wist, 1663; *imp. s.* wite, 38; white, 1884; witow (= wite þou) 68, 105, 300, &c.; wittow, 375, 752; wittou, 3178; *imp. pl.* witeþ, 4351. Lete wite, 2171. Do vs to wite, 1459. Ch.

Witerly, *adv.* plainly, openly, clearly, unmistakably, certainly, 40, 229, 289, 316, 533, 624, 680; — witerli, 5288; — witterli, 667, 815, 2705; — witterly, 491, 514, 1407. Cf. Dan. *vitterlig*, publicly known. Ch.

Wiþ, *prep.* with (*used in the sense of* by), 1060, 1367, 1492; — wiȝt, 2177; wiȝth, 163; *cf.* þerwiȝt *in* l. 138. *Observe* ll. 411, 824.

Wiþ-drow him, *pt. s. refl.* withdrew, 2993; *pt. pl.* wiþ-drow hem, 1285.

Withlich. *See* Wiȝtly.

Wiþ-oute, *prep.* besides, 1291.

With-sede, *pt. s.* gainsaid, contradicted, opposed, 3930. Ch.

Wiþ-þatow, on condition that thou, 3161.

Wiþtli. *See* Wiȝtly.

Witly. *See* Wittily.

Witte, *n.* S. senses, reason, understanding, 1204, 1483, &c.; — witt, 36, 142; *pl.* wittes, 468. Ch.

Wittened, *pt. pl.* imputed it to be, ascribed it as being, 3462. [*Placed under* Wite, to know, by Sir F. Madden, but may it not be from A.S. *wítan*, which has the sense to ascribe (honour) as well as to impute (blame)? If so, it may be connected with A.S. *witnian*, a derived form of the same *wítan*. *Cf.* "Witton' or retton'. *Imputo*." Prompt. Parv.

Wittily, *adv.* S. wisely, prudently, sagaciously, 2602; — wittili, 3364, 4142; — witly, 259, 1259.

Witty, *adj.* S. possessed of reason, sagacious, wise, skilled, 145, 158, 2712, 2832; — witthi, 2182; — witti, 2204. Wycl. Gloss.

Wiue, *n.* S. wife, 242; *dat.* wiue, 2946.

Wiȝh, Wiȝes, Wiȝhes. *See* Weiȝ.

Wiȝt, Wiȝth, *prep.* *See* Wiþ.

Wiȝt, *n.* S. a wight, person, 407, 685, 786; — wiȝth, 758; — whiȝt, 4037; — wight, † 590; *pl.* wightes, † 598. Ch.

Wiȝt, *adj.* nimble, active, agile, brave, 2877, 3349; — wiȝht, 3293; — wyght, † 54; *comp.* wiȝtere, 3441; wiȝttere, 3576. Sw. *vig.* *See* Prompt. Parv. and Ch.

Wiȝtly, *adv.* nimbly, actively, quickly, bravely, 92, 140, 489, 669, 791, &c.; — wiȝtli, 135, 265, 1861, 4188; — wiȝtliche, 65, 310, 1195; — wightly, † 3; — withlich, † 326; — wiþtli (*or* wiytli), 1695; — wiȝttli, 3612; — wiȝtthli, 3581; — wiȝttili, 3640. [*The spelling* wiȝth *in the former edition* (*in* l. 1861) *is a misprint* for wiȝtli.]

Wlonke, *adj.* S. gay, proud, elate, grand (*spoken of* mirth), 1634; (*of* a den), 80; (*of* wits), 468. [*In the two latter places it is written* wolnk. The A.S. is *wlonc, wlanc;* the Old Saxon is *uulanc*, arrogant, proud.]

Wo, *n.* S. woe, sorrow; *spelt* woȝh, 544; woo, 1483. Him was wo, 1167. Wo is me, 1642.

Wod, *adj.* S. mad, 36, 554, 715, 1483, 1770, &c. Ch.

Wodly, *adv.* S. madly, 550; — wodli, 3883, 4026. Ch.

Wol, 1 *p. s. pr.* I will, 486, 533, 607, 906, &c.; 2 *p. s.* wolt (wilt), 324, 4263; 3 *p. s.* wol, 326, 482, 5126; wol sche = is she willing, 4203; 1 *p. pl. pr.* wol, 2260; 2 *p. pl.* wol, 4004; 1 *p. s. pt.* wold, 457, 1558; *pt. s.* wold, 529, &c.; *pt. pl.* wold, 5185. *The form* wil *also occurs, as in* 1568. [*Schal* is more often used than *wol*. *Ne wil* is contracted into *nel*, and *ne wold* into *nold*.]

Wold, *n.* S. power, possession, 4429. A.S. *wald*. G. *gewalt*.

Wolnk. *See* Wlonke.

Won, *n.* S. quantity, † 546. Ch. The A.S. is *winn*, what is acquired, a winning; in Laȝamon are the *pl.* forms *winne* and *wunnen*, possessions.

Won, *n.* S. any dwelling-place; *hence*, a town, a country, a place, † 164, † 237, † 337; — wonne, † 598, † 622. Cf. A.S. *wun-stow*, a dwelling-place.

Wonde, *v.* S. to hesitate from fear, hesitate to say, 4071, † 347; — wond, 614; *imp. s.* wonde, 275. A.S. *wandian*, to fear. *Wond* = to fear, occurs in *Kyng Alisaunder* (Weber's Metr. Rom.), l. 6525. *Cf.* Ch. Leg. Good Women. Dido, 262.

Wonded, *pp.* wounded, 1377. Ch.

Wonder, *adj.* S. wonderful, strange, 1873, 2786. Ch.

Wonder, *adv.* wonderfully, 1895.

Wonderli, *adv.* wonderfully, surprisingly, 1214, 1668, 2535; — wonderliche, 345; wonderly, 3682.

Wonne. *See* Winne, *and* Won.

Wonye, *v.* S. to dwell, 3312; *pr. s.* woneþ, 4471; *pt. s.* woned, 4, 1492; *pp.* woned, 3311. A.S. *wunian*. Ch.

Woode, *adj.* S. mad, † 914. *See* Wod.

Worche, Worcheþ. *See* Werche.

Worchep, *n.* S. worship, honour, 551, 4000; —worchepe, 497, 515; —worchip, 618; —worchipe, 1324, 3343.

Worchipeþ, *pr. s.* honoureth, 511.

Worchipfulli, *adv.* S. honourably, 5157.

Word, *possibly an error for* wiȝh, 883. *See* the note.

Wore, *written for* Were, 2370, 2485.

Worli, Worliche. *See* Worþliche.

Worþ, *written for* Wroþ, *adj.* 4335. *Cf.* 2002.

Worþi, *adj.* S. worthy, honoured, dear, 2792, 2795; *contracted to* worþ (= A.S. *wurð*), 2498, 2522, 2990.

Worþliche, *adj.* S. worthy, dear, 1814; —worthlich, † 596; wortlych, † 1024; worþiliche, 1642; worþili, 2786; worliche, 2700; worli, 138.

Worþli, *adv.* S. worthily, honourably, 673, 3202.

Worþe, *v.* S. to be, to become, 327, 3081; 3 *p. s. imp.* worþe, 2567; *pr. s.* worþ (*with future signification*, will become, will be), 2534, 2667, 2947, 3341; (*used as an auxiliary verb*, will be), 1673, 4181, 4253; *pl.* worþ, 2291. Wo worþ me, wo be to me, 4118. Late me worþ, let me be, let me alone, 2355, 3597; lete hym worthe, † 1186. A.S. *weorðan*. G. *werden*. Mœso-Goth. *wairthan*.

Woruȝt, *written for* Wrouȝt, 5182.

Wot, Wost, Wostou. *See* Wite.

Wox. *See* Wexe. [In l. † 337 *wox* should rather have been *wax*.]

Woȝh. *See* Wo.

Wowes, *n. pl.* S. walls, † 1122. A.S. *wáh*. Wycl. Gloss.

Wraþed, 1 *p. s. pt.* made angry, 981.

Wreche, *n.* S. revenge, vengeance, 3404, † 937. A.S. *wrace*. Ch.

Wreche, *v.* S. to revenge, avenge, wreak vengeance, † 806; —wreke, 1111, 3335; *pp.* wroke, 5431; wroken, † 76. Ch.

Wrong, *adj.* false, 706.

Wronger, *comp. adv.* more wrongly, 1176.

Wroþli, *adv.* S. angrily, wrathfully, 3683, 3738; — wroþliche, 2074.

Wrouȝt, 1 *p. s. pt.* I wrought, did, 3694; —wrout, 725; *pl.* wrouȝten, 3873; wrout, 1571; *pp.* wrought, † 76; wruȝt, 1503. *Cf.* Werche.

Wus, *n.* S. ooze, juice, † 712, † 813. A.S. *wós*.

Wynli, *adv.* pleasantly, 749. A.S. *wynlíc*, pleasant. [Explained as *laboriously, carefully*, by Sir F. Madden; as if from A.S. *win*, labour. See *wynne* in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris, and *wynnelych*, pleasant, in *Gawayne and Grene Knizt*, l. 980.]

[*For past participles beginning with* I- *or* Y-, *see below, and also under* I-.]

Y-armed, armed, † 230.

Y-charged, loaded, 182.

Y-clepud, called, 121. Ch.

Y-gladed, gladdened, 850.

Ytryed, selected, choice, 1233. F. *trier*, to pick, select.

Yeeme. *See* ȝeme.

Yern, *n.* iron, † 1119, † 1133. *Cf.* Irn.

Y-fere, together, 2267. *See* I-fere.

Yie, *n.* S. eye, † 277, † 451; *pl.* yien, † 182. *See* Eiȝen.

Y-now, enough, 836, † 8, † 265. *See* I-now.

Yond, *adv.* yonder, 263 ;—ȝond, 846. *See* ȝond. Ch.

Youlden, *pt. pl.* yielded, † 304. *See* ȝeld.

Y-wisse, *adv.* verily, 846, 937 ;—y-wis, † 465. *See* I-wisse.

ȝ *in these poems is equivalent to* y *at the beginning of a word, as in* ȝa, ȝate; *to* gh *in* niȝt, burwȝ; *in* ȝhe *it seems to be a guttural; cf.* hue. *But it is also found (perhaps by mistake) in place of* þ *in the words* ȝanked, ȝout, ȝourh.

ȝa, *adv.* S. yea, 268, 326, 923, 1380, 2255, 2585, 3245, 3723, 4728, 4742, 5367, 5432;—ȝe, 2275, 3493. *See* ȝis.

ȝaf. *See* ȝeue.

ȝain-torn, *n.* S. way of escape, 3552. *Cf.* Aȝen-turn.

ȝald, ȝalde. *See* ȝelden.

ȝanked, *pt. s.* thanked, 642.

ȝare, *adj.* S. quick, nimble, ready, 895, 1963, 3265, &c.; *sup.* ȝarest, 2729.

ȝate, *n.* S. gate, 3757 ; *pl.* ȝates, 3267, 3649, † 304. Ch.

ȝe. *See* ȝa, ȝis. *Also, see* ȝou.

ȝede, *pt. s.* went, 1767 ; *pt. pl.* 1429, 2199, 2238; ȝeede, † 304. Ch.

ȝef, if, 1677. *See* ȝif.

ȝeft, *n.* S. a gift, 3664 ; *pl.* ȝiftes, 1061, 5357. Ch.

ȝelden, *v.* to yield, requite, 3019; ȝelde, 321, 601, 3941; ȝeld, 319, 1547; *pr. s.* ȝeldes, 234; *pt. s.* ȝalde, 3661; ȝald, 1256; *pt. pl.* ȝolde, 2708; youlden, † 304; *imp. s.* ȝeld, 1252, 3917; 3 *p. s. imp.* ȝelde, 4711. Ch.

ȝeme, *v.* S. to take care of, to take charge of, rule, provide for, 91, 2734, 3249, † 318, † 365, † 439; yeeme, † 43; *pr. s.* ȝemes, 2790; *pt. s.* ȝemed, 2806; *pt. pl.* ȝemed, 3267, 3320. Ch.

ȝepli, *adv.* S. quickly, 3346, 3649, 3896, 3941; — ȝeply, 1252. A.S. *gæp*, shrewd. P. Pl.

ȝerd, *n.* S. wand, rod (yard), † 481.

ȝere, *n. pl.* years, 1040 ;— ȝer, 5369 ;—ȝeres, 1057. P. Pl.

ȝerne, *v.* S. to yearn for, wish for, 58, 1633, 4730; *pt. s.* ȝerned, 782.

ȝerne, *adv.* eagerly, quickly, soon, fast, 1893, 2027, 2197, &c.; al so ȝern (very soon), 2043. P. Pl.

ȝer-while, *adv.* erewhile, a short time ago, 1246, 3104.

ȝete, *adv.* yet, 2274 ;— ȝit, 186, 577, 609 ;— ȝut, 515, 800, 993 ;— ȝutte, 1955.

ȝeue, *v.* S. to give, 1110 ; ȝiuen, 2963; ȝif, 5071; 3 *p. imp. s.* ȝif, 258, 876, 5536; *pt. s.* ȝaf, 5381; *pp.* ȝeuen, 2857; ȝeue, 1471, 5355; ȝiue, 2254. Ch.

ȝhe, she, 141, 172, 1983. *Cf.* Hue.

ȝif, if, 147, 172, 324, &c. ; —ȝef, 1677. But ȝif (except), 472.

ȝis, yes, 697, 1567, 2260, 3184, 3490, 4731, 4746, 5149. *See* ȝa. [*There is certainly a distinction between* ȝa (ȝe) *and* ȝis. ȝa = I admit that, granted that, that's true, *or else it simply answers a simple question; but* ȝis *is an affirmative of great force* = yes, I swear it, by all means, *and is often followed by* i-wisse, certes, bi marie, bi crist, *or it answers a question involving a negative. See* Marsh, Lectures, 1st Series, p. 579.]

ȝister-neue (= ȝistern-eue), yester-eve, yesterday evening, 2160.

ȝit. *See* ȝete.

ȝolde. *See* ȝelden.

ȝomen, *n. pl.* yeomen, 3649.

ȝond, *adj.* yon, 3384 ; — ȝone, 4572 ; þe ȝond (the person yonder), 3052. *Cf.* Yond, *adv.* Mœso-Goth. *jains.* G. *jener.*

ȝore, *adv.* S. long ago, formerly, 1503, 2513, 3298;—for ȝore, 4174; —full ȝore, 4046.

ȝou, you, 262; —ȝow, 238; —ȝouȝ, 634, 2262, 3121; —ow, 106. *It is the acc. case*, the *nom. being* ȝe, 251, 269.

ȝourh (*used for* þourgh), through, 3799.

ȝout (*used for* þout), *n.* thought, 447.

ȝut, ȝutte. *See* ȝete.

Note. Dr Stratmann (in his Dictionary of Old English) cites examples from the poem of "William of Palerne" thus: "*hel*, a hill. *Will. Gloss.* 229." The numbers merely refer to the page *of the glossary* in which the word is found, not to the pages or lines *of the poem*. The references in the glossary to the edition by Sir F. Madden are to the *pages* of the book, and the following list is given, in order to shew *with what line each page of his book begins*. Most of his pages contain 28 lines, but page 1 contains only 16; page 16 has 24 lines; p. 131 has 27 lines; p. 170 has 26 lines; p. 177 has 27 lines; p. 196 has 27 lines; and p. 199 has 17 lines, being the last page of the text.

Page	Line	Page	Line	Page	Line	Page	Line
1	1	5	101	9	213	13	325
2	17	6	129	10	241	14	353
3	45	7	157	11	269	15	381
4	73	8	185	12	297	16	409
						17	433

To find with what line any one of the succeeding pages begins, we must multiply the *number of the page* by 28, *subtracting* 43 for pp. 18—131; *subtracting* 44 for pp. 132—170; *subtracting* 46 for pp. 171—177; and *subtracting* 47 for pp. 178—196. Thus p. 196 begins with line $196 \times 28 - 47 = 5441$. Page 197 begins with l. 5468; p. 198 with l. 5496; and p. 199 with l. 5524.

INDEX OF NAMES TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE."

[In this Index, the references under words in large capitals are to the *pages* of the book; otherwise, the references are to the lines.]

Abelot, 363.

Acelone, l. 42 on p. 2; — Achillones, 4775.

Akarin, 364.

ALISAUNDRINE, daughter of the duke of Lombardy, p. 28; advises and assists Melior, pp. 28, 29; causes William to dream, p. 30; brings Melior to find William, pp. 34—41; aids the lovers to escape, pp. 59—62; excuses them to the emperor, p. 69; meets Melior again, p. 156; is betrothed to Braundnis, p. 159; is married, p. 160.

Almauns, Germans of Saxony, 1165.

ALPHOUNS (THE WERWOLF), steals William away, p. 3; leaves William in the den, p. 7; sees William adopted by the cowherd's wife, p. 9; his father was king of Spain, p. 10; he is made a WERWOLF by his stepmother, p. 10; finds that William and Melior are dressed up in bear-skins, and guards them, and provides them with food, pp. 65—67; saves them from the hounds, p. 75; brings them to Benevento, p. 75; saves their lives by stealing the provost's son, pp. 80—83; kills a hart and a hind for them, p. 86; brings them to Reggio, p. 90; helps them over the Straits, pp. 91—94; is seen by the queen of Palermo, p. 113; salutes the king of Spain, p. 129; threatens his stepmother, pp. 139, 140; is disenchanted, p. 142; is embraced by William, p. 144; he falls in love with Florence, p. 144; tells William's history, pp. 147—150; is betrothed to Florence, p. 151; is married, p. 160; is made king of Spain, p. 167; meets William for the last time, p. 168; swears friendship to William once more, p. 172.

Apulia. *See* Poyle.

Bonuent, Benevento, 2221; — Boneuent, 4692.

BRAUNDE, BRAUNDEN, *or* BRAUNDINE, is queen of Spain, and princess of Portugal, p. 10; enchants Alphouns, p. 10; receives an embassy from her lord, pp. 135, 136; goes to Palermo, p. 137; is attacked by the werwolf, p. 139; disenchants him, p. 141; returns to Spain, p. 164.

Braundinis, Braundnis, *or* Braundyns, prince of Spain, asks Florence in marriage, p. 88; is taken prisoner by William, p. 117; is betrothed to Alisaundrine, p. 159; is married, p. 160; comes to Palermo, p. 168; returns home, p. 171. [The name occurs in ll. 4944, 5299, 5411.]

Calabre, Calabria, 2628, 5512.

Cisile, Sicily, 2603, 2628.

Ebrouns. *See* Embrons.

Edwardes, (King) Edward's, 166, 5531. [Sir Humfrey de Bohun's mother was a daughter of King Edward I.]

Embrons, *or* Ebrouns, king of Palermo, p. 2; loses his son William, p. 3; pursues the werwolf without success, pp. 4—6; dies, p. 88; the story of his horse Saundbruel, pp. 106, 107; his resemblance to his son William, p. 119.

Englysch, English, 168.

Far, a name for the Straits of Messina. *See* page 4, and the note.

Felice, queen of Palermo, and daughter of the emperor of Greece, p. 2; her grief at losing her son William, p. 5; is besieged in Palermo by the king of Spain, p. 94; her dream, p. 95; the dream expounded, pp. 96, 97; she encourages her knights, p. 99; she puts on a hind's skin, p. 100; she overhears about Melior's dream, p. 102; addresses William, p. 103; takes the hides off William and Melior, p. 105; sees the werwolf, p. 113; perceives a likeness between William and King Ebrouns, p. 119; discovers that William is her son, p. 147; her dream comes true, p. 174.

Florence, daughter to the queen of Palermo, and sister to William, is sought in marriage by Braundyns, p. 94; is admitted to see the werwolf after his disenchantment, p. 143; marries Alphouns, p. 160. [The name occurs in l. 4490.]

Frensche, 167, 5522, 5533.

Gergeis, *n. pl.* Greeks, 2200. *Possibly miswritten for* Gregeis. *Cf.* Gryffouns.

Gloriande, l. 41 on p. 2;—Gloriauns, 4775.

Glouseter, 166.

Grece, a grom of, 1767.

Greece, emperor of, is father to Queen Felice, p. 2; sends an embassy to Rome, p. 53; comes to Rome, p. 58; raises a hue and cry after William and Melior, p. 73; sends an embassy to Palermo, p. 157.

Greece, prince of. *See* Partenedon.

Grewes, *n. pl.* Greeks, 2080. *See* Gryffouns.

Gryffouns, *n. pl.* Greeks, 1961. Roquefort gives the forms *Gréu*, *Gréeux*, *Grégéois*, *Grifons*, &c., as equivalent to the Lat. *Græcus*. Hence the forms *Gregeis* (miswritten *Gergeis*), *Grewes*, and *Gryffouns* in the present poem.

Hereford, 5530;—Herford, 165.

Huet, 362.

Hugones, Hugo's, 363.

Hugonet, 362.

Humfray de Bowne, 165;—Humfray de Boune, 5530. [Sir Walter Scott rimes *de Boune* with *soon*; Lord of the Isles, Bk VI. c. xiv.]

Kostant-noble, Constantinople, 1425.

Krist, Christ, 1315.

Lumbardie, 585, 1315.

Marie, 838, 2229, 2698, &c.

Martynet, 363.

Meliadus, 3846, 3858, 3863, 3869.

Melior, *or* Meliors, daughter of the emperor of Rome, p. 19; falls in love with William, p. 23; her soliloquy, pp. 23—26; is comforted by Alisaundrine, p. 28; goes to the garden, p. 34; and finds William asleep there, p. 35; is betrothed to William, p. 40; is wooed by the prince of Greece, p. 53; escapes with William, disguised as a bear, pp. 61—67; arrives at Benevento, p. 75; is saved by the werwolf, pp. 76—81; is disguised as a hind, p. 86; comes to Reggio, p. 90; is nearly killed by a barge-boy, p. 92; comes to Palermo, p. 93; her dream, p. 102; is received by the queen of Palermo, p. 105; her meeting with her father, p. 156; is married to William, p. 160; is crowned empress of Rome, p. 169; her children, p. 174. *See* William.

Midesomer, Midsummer, 1464.

Moyses, Moses, the name of a priest, 2918, 3025.

Nauerne, Navarre, 4076.

Palerne, Palermo, l. 61 on p. 3; 2838, 4223, 4287; *spelt* Pallerne, 2628.

Palerne, queen of. *See* Felice.

Partendo, *or* Partenedon, son of the emperor of Greece, and brother of Queen Felice, wooes Melior, p. 53; waits at church for his bride, who does not come, p. 68; arrives at Palermo, p. 157; returns to Greece, 161. [The name occurs in lines 4930, 4939, 5039, 5078, 5088.]

Payenes, Pagan's, 364.

Petyr, cherche of seynt, 1956.

Pope, 1957.

Portingale, Portugal, 116.

Poyle, Apulia, 156, 2628, 5512.

Rise, Reggio, 2717. "It is so termed by the French and Italian Romancers of the middle ages. See Panizzi's Life of Bojardo, vol. ii. p. lxxxi. *n.* The same change seems to have taken place in regard to *Riez* in Provence, as remarked by Mr Nicol, to whom I am indebted for a reference to Martinière's Dictionary, sub v. *Riez.*"—M.

Roachas, 1437.

Romaynes, Romans, 5167.

Rome, emperor of, finds William in a forest, p. 13; talks to the cowherd, p. 14; adopts William, pp. 15—19; defeats the duke of Saxony, pp. 42—49; consents that his daughter Melior shall marry Partenedon, p. 54; loses Melior, p. 68; his wrath, pp. 69—71; finds his daughter at Palermo, p. 155; his last advice to Melior, p. 163; his death, p. 166.

Saundbruel (a horse), 3585.

Saxoyne, duke of, 1068, 1108, 1318.

Spayne, king of, father of Alphouns the werwolf, p. 9; marries Braunde, p. 10; besieges Palermo, p. 88; seeks to revenge his son Braundinis, p. 121; is taken prisoner, p. 127; is saluted by the werwolf, p. 129; tells William his story, pp. 131, 132; escorts Melior to church, p. 160; returns to Spain p. 165; his death, p. 167.

Spain, prince of. *See* Braundinis.

Spaynols, Spaniards, 3631, 3770, 5168;—Spaynoles, 3399;—Spaynolus, 3529;—Spaynolnes, 3357.

William (of Palerne), son of King Ebrouns and Queen Felice, p. 2; stolen by the werwolf, pp. 3—6; found and adopted by a cowherd, pp. 7—9; found and adopted by the emperor of Rome, pp. 13—23; is beloved by Melior, p. 23;

dreams of Melior, p. 30; betrothed to Melior, p. 40; is knighted, p. 43; defeats the duke of Saxony, pp. 45—49; his sickness, p. 55; is healed, p. 57; escapes with Melior, disguised as a bear, pp. 59—65; is saved by the werwolf, p. 75; hides with Melior in a quarry, p. 76; bids Melior save herself, p. 79; takes off the bear-skin, p. 81; hides with Melior in a forest, p. 82; is nearly discovered by some colliers, p. 84; disguises himself as a hart, and Melior as a hind, p. 86; comes to Reggio, p. 90; embarks secretly in a ship with Melior, p. 91; carries her to land, p. 92; is found by the queen of Palermo, p. 103; undertakes to assist her, p. 104; has a *werwolf* painted on his shield, p. 105; mounts King Ebrouns' horse, p. 107; attacks the Spaniards, pp. 110 — 112, 117 — 126; takes prisoner Prince Braundinis, p. 118; and the king of Spain, p. 127; sends for Queen Braunden to disenchant the werwolf, p. 134; embraces Alphouns, p. 144; his story and parentage, pp. 147—150; is king of Apulia, p. 154; marries Melior, p. 160; is emperor of Rome, p. 167; creates the cowherd an earl, p. 170; his wise rule, p. 173; his children, p. 174.

William (the author's name), 5521.

INDEX OF NAMES TO "ALISAUNDER."

Ægypt, 454.

Alisaunder, son of Amyntas, 22, 27, 37.

Alisaunder, son of Philip, 1034, 1049, 1095, 1148, &c.

Amon, 661, 727, 805.

Amyntas, 13.

Arabes, 498.

Arisba. *See* Erubel.

Aristote (Aristotle). *See* page 211.

Arofagi, *a corruption of* Agriophagi, i. e. eaters of *wild* animals, 500.

Artasarses, 491.

Assyriens (*a mistake for* Illyriens), 109, 130.

Assyrie (*a mistake for* Illyrie), 159.

Attenes, Athens, 157; — Attens, 898; —Attanus, 90.

Atteniens, Athenians, 415; — Attenicins, 902, 938.

Augmi *or* Augni, 498.

Barbre, Barbary (*a mistake for* Barbarians, Lat. *Barbari*), 533, 536.

Bosorij, 499.

Byzaunce, Byzantium, 1208; — Byzance, 1222.

Cappadoce, Cappadocia (*a mistake for* Chalcidice), 944, 1111.

Comothonham (*a corrupt name for* Methone). *See* Methone.

Constantine, 1225.

Constantinoble, 1223; —Constantinople, 1229.

Egipt, 486, 534, &c.

Elaine, Helen (mother of Constantine), 1226.

Enomanus, 429.

Epaminondas, 52, 75.

Erubel, 172 ;—Eruba, 240.
Ethiope, Æthiopia, 552.

Eurydice, 34.

Greece, 258, &c.

Jupiter (the planet), 1077.

Komothonham (*a corrupt spelling of* Methone). *See* Methone.

Lacedemonie, 335, 336, 417, 444 ;—Lacedemoine, 449, 879.
Lacedemonieins, 351.
Larissea, 119 ;—Larisse, 131, 161.
Latine, 458.

Macedoine, 14, 59, &c.
Medie, 495.
Mercurie (the planet), 1077.
Mesopotamie, 497.
Methone, 255, 310 ; *corruptly spelt* Comothonham, 255 ; *and* Komothonham, 310.
Molosor (*also* Malasor), *a corruption of* Molossis, 173, 204.

Nectanabus, 459, 505, &c.

Olympias, 177, 576, &c.

Pausanias, 1218, 1246.
Perce, Persia, 492, 494 ;—Perss, 462, 471.
Perthe, Parthia, 494.
Philip, *passim.*
Philomelo, 364, 421.
Phocus, Phocis, 365, 413, 428, 446, 878 ;—Phocos, 336.
Phosus, *pl.* Phocians, 391.

Roome, 103, 1224.

Seraphin, Serapis, 557, 572.
Sparte, 1246.
Syria, 496.

Tebeniens, Thebans, 877 ;—Tebenieins, 351, 380.
Tebes, Thebes, 51, 71 ;—Tebs, 94.
Tessalonie, Thessalonica, 913.

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

66666

PR
1119
E5
no. 1
1973

Guillaume de
Palerne.
The romance of
William of
Palerne; or
William and ...

UNIVERSITY OF TEXAS AT TYLER
PR1119.E5 no.1, 1973
The romance of William of Palerne,
0 00 01 0070347 9